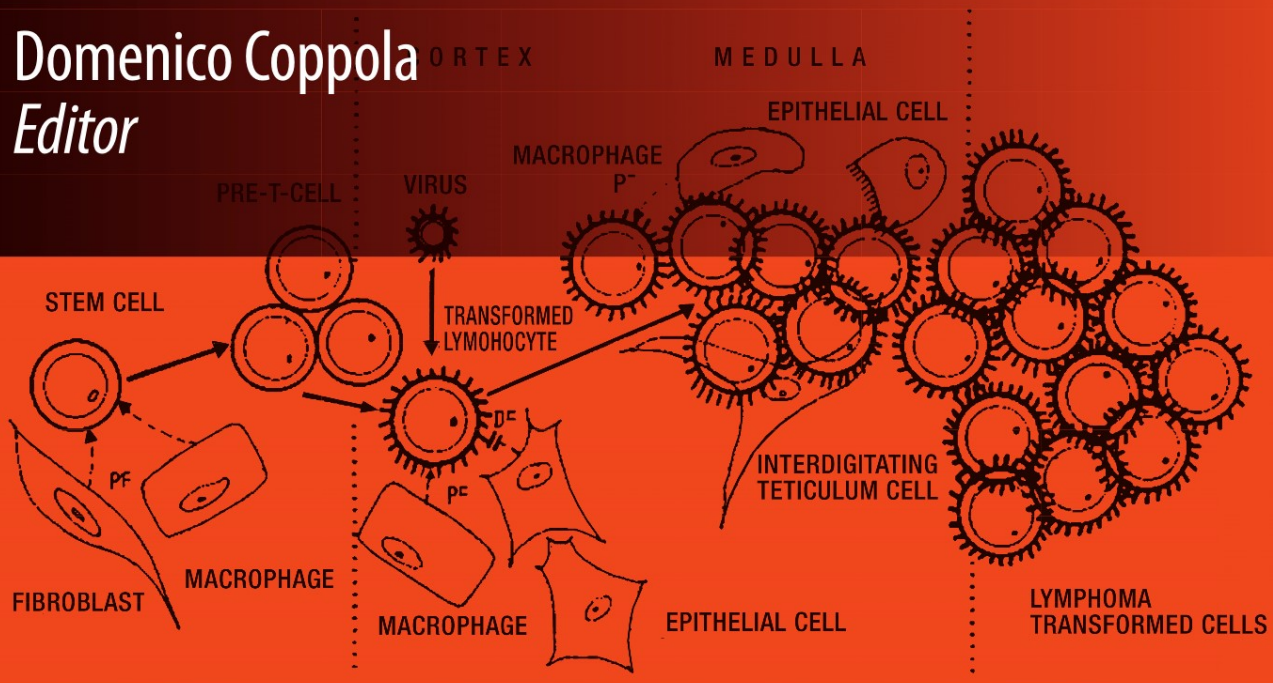
Domenico Coppola
Editor



Mechanisms of Oncogenesis

An Update on Tumorigenesis

Springer

MECHANISMS OF ONCOGENESIS

Cancer Growth and Progression

Volume 12

Founding Editor

Hans E. Kaiser†, D. Sc.

Series Editors

Aejaz Nasir, M.D., M. Phil., FCAP
Department of Interdisciplinary Oncology-Pathology,
Moffit Cancer Center & Research Institute,
Tampa, FL, U.S.A.

Timothy J. Yeatman, M.D.
Professor of Surgery,
Executive Vice President Translational Research,
President & Chief Scientific Officer M2Gen,
Moffit Cancer Center & Research Institute,
Tampa, FL, USA

For further volumes:
http://www.springer.com/series/5721

Mechanisms of Oncogenesis

An Update on Tumorigenesis

Edited by

Domenico Coppola
Moffitt Cancer Center, Tampa, FL, USA

Springer

Editor
Prof. Domenico Coppola
H. Lee Moffitt Cancer Center &
Research Institute
12902 Magnolia Drive
Tampa FL 33612
USA
Domenico.Coppola@moffitt.org

ISBN 978-90-481-3724-4 e-ISBN 978-90-481-3725-1
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1
Springer Dordrecht Heidelberg London New York

Library of Congress Control Number: 2010922896

Printed on acid-free paper

Springer is part of Springer Science+Business Media (www.springer.com)

Preface

This volume is a continuation of the encyclopedic work entitled "Cancer Growth and Progression," that was originally edited by Professor Hans E. Kaiser. As a tribute to the memory of Dr. Kaiser and his contributions to the field, this new edition is following his example of providing the most current information about cancer literature and comprehensive coverage of all aspects of tumor growth and progression.

This particular tome is divided into two sections: the first addressing general causes of oncogenesis such as environmental factors and tumor mechanisms; and the second addressing the oncogenic mechanisms of tumor in specific organs. This book is written and compiled by world renowned leaders in their respective fields and focuses on the most recent developments in basic oncogenesis. This definitive text will provide the practitioner, whether in research, academia or clinical practice, with a fount of easily accessible information on the most common tumors.

Contents

Contributors

Geza Acs Department of Anatomic Pathology and Comprehensive Breast Program, Moffitt Cancer and Research Center, Tampa, FL, USA; Departments of Oncologic Sciences, Pathology and Cell Biology, College of Medicine, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA, Geza.Acs@moffitt.org

Hymie Anisman Institute of Neuroscience, Carleton University, Ottawa, ON, Canada

Jeffrey Aufman Anatomic and Clinical Pathology, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA, Jeffery.Aufman@moffitt.org

Steven Brem Department of Neuro-Oncology, Moffitt Cancer Center, Tampa, FL, USA

Marilyn M. Bui Departments of Anatomic Pathology and Sarcoma, Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, Tampa, FL, USA, Marilyn.Bui@moffitt.org

Kenneth B. Calder Department of Pathology and Cell Biology, College of Medicine, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA, kcalder@health.usf.edu

Barbara A. Centeno Department of Anatomic Pathology and Gastrointestinal Tumor Program, Moffitt Cancer Center, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA, Barbara.Centeno@moffitt.org

Jin Q. Cheng Department of Molecular Oncology, H. Lee Moffitt Cancer Center, Tampa, FL 33612, USA

Shang-Tian Chuang Department of Pathology, Moffitt Cancer and Research Center, Tampa, FL, USA, tian.chuang@moffitt.org

Domenico Coppola Department of Anatomic Pathology, Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, Tampa, FL, USA; Department of Anatomic Pathology, College of Medicine, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA, Domenico.Coppola@moffitt.org

Jose J. Correa Genito-urinary Oncology Fellow, Moffitt Cancer Center, Tampa, FL, USA

Nicole M. DeMers Department of Pathology and Cell Biology, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA

Shohreh Iravani Dickinson Department of Pathology, H. Lee Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, Tampa, FL, USA, Shoreh.Dickinson@moffitt.org

Gary E. Gallick Department of Cancer Biology, The University of Texas MD Anderson Cancer Center, Houston, TX, USA, ggallick@mdanderson.org

Enid Gilbert-Barness Department of Pathology and Cell Biology, Pediatrics and Obstetrics and Gynecology, University of South Florida College of Medicine at Tampa General Hospital, Tampa, FL, USA, egilbert@tgh.org

Michael J. Gray Department of Cancer Biology, The University of Texas MD Anderson Cancer Center, Houston, TX, USA

Ardeshir Hakam Department of Pathology, Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, Tampa, FL, USA

Eric A. Hudson Laboratory of Analytical, Cellular and Molecular Microscopy, Van Andel Institute, Grand Rapids, MI, USA

Farah Khalil University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA; H. Lee Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, Tampa, FL, USA

Pawini Khanna University of South Florida College of Medicine, Tampa, FL, USA

Eric J. Kort Laboratory of Analytical, Cellular and Molecular Microscopy, Van Andel Institute, Grand Rapids, MI, USA, korter@resident.grmerc.net

Alexander W. Kusnecov Department of Psychology, Rutgers University, Piscataway, NJ, USA, Kusnecov@rci.rutgers.edu

Larry K. Kvols Neuroendocrine Cancer Research Divisions, GI Tumor Program, Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, Tampa, FL, USA

Brandon Leeser Laboratory of Analytical, Cellular and Molecular Microscopy, Van Andel Institute, Grand Rapids, MI, USA

R. Leibowitz-Amit Tel Aviv University, Tel Aviv, Israel

Hon Fong L. Mark Cytogenetics Laboratories, Boston University School of Medicine, Boston, MA, USA; KRAM Corporation, The Warren Alpert Medical School, Brown University, Providence, RI, USA, HonFong_Mark@brown.edu

Omie Mills Anatomic Pathology, GI Tumor Program, Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, Tampa, FL, USA

Christine R. Moore Laboratory of Analytical, Cellular and Molecular Microscopy, Van Andel Institute, Grand Rapids, MI, USA

Michael B. Morgan Pathology and Dermatology, James A. Haley VA Hospital, College of Medicine, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA

Lynn C. Moscinski Department of Oncologic Sciences, Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA

Sharon Moskovitz Tel Aviv University, Tel Aviv, Israel

Mojdeh Naghashpour Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, University of South Florida College of Medicine, Tampa, FL, USA, Mojdeh.Naghashpour@moffitt.org

Aejaz Nasir Anatomic Pathology, GI Tumor Program, Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, Tampa, FL, USA; Neuroendocrine Cancer Research Divisions, GI Tumor Program, Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, Tampa, FL, USA, Nasir_Aejaz@Lilly.com

Nelly A. Nasir Department of Anatomic Pathology, Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, Tampa, FL, USA; Department of Anatomic Pathology, College of Medicine, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA; Department of Pathology, Sir Mortimer Jewish General Hospital, McGill University, Montreal, CA, USA

Julio Pow-Sang Professor of Surgery and Oncology, Moffitt Cancer and Research Center, Tampa, FL, USA, Julio.Powsang@moffitt.org

Dahui Qin Department of Anatomic Pathology, Moffitt Cancer and Research Center, Tampa, FL, USA, Dahui.Qin@moffitt.org

Susana C. Raimondi Department of Pathology, Cytogenetics Laboratory, St Jude Children's Research Hospital, Memphis, TN, USA

James H. Resau Laboratory of Analytical, Cellular and Molecular Microscopy, Van Andel Institute, Grand Rapids, MI, USA

Amyn M. Rojiani Departments of Anatomic Pathology and Neuro-Oncology, Moffitt Cancer Center, Tampa, FL, USA, Amyn.Rojiani@moffitt.org

Mumtaz V. Rojiani Department of Pathology and Cell Biology, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA

Elizabeth Sagatys Department of Pathology and Cell Biology, University of South Florida College of Medicine, Tampa, FL, USA, Elizabeth.Sagatys@moffitt.org

Shaokun Shu Department of Molecular Oncology, H. Lee Moffitt Cancer Center, Tampa, FL 33612, USA, Shaokun.Shu@moffitt.org

Robert Sokolic Disorders of Immunity Section, Genetics and Molecular Biology Branch, National Human Genome Research Institute, Bethesda, MD, USA

Gregory M. Springett Moffitt Cancer Center, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA

Jonathan R. Strosberg Neuroendocrine Cancer Research Divisions, GI Tumor Program, Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, Tampa, FL, USA

Robert A. Tracy Department of Anatomy and Neurobiology, St. Louis University, St. Louis, MO, USA

Galia Tsarfaty Tel Aviv University, Tel Aviv, Israel

Ilan Tsarfaty Tel Aviv University, Tel Aviv, Israel

Leslie Turner Department of Anatomic Pathology, Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, Tampa, FL, USA; Department of Anatomic Pathology, College of Medicine, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA

Arthur C. Upton University School of Medicine, NY, USA; University of Medicine and Dentistry of New Jersey, Robert Wood Johnson Medical School, New Brunswick, NJ, USA, acupton@eohsi.rutgers.edu

Michael J. Wagoner Department of Pathology and Cell Biology, College of Medicine, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA

Elizabeth K. Weisburger Division of Cancer Etiology, National Cancer Institute, Rockville, MD 20850, USA

Ximing J. Yang Department of Pathology, Northwestern Memorial Hospital, Chicago, IL, USA

G.M. Yerushalmi Tel Aviv University, Tel Aviv, Israel

Paul J. Zhang Division of Anatomic Pathology, Department of Pathology and Lab Medicine, University of Pennsylvania Medical Center, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Chapter 1

Cytokines and Stressors: Implications for Cancer Immunotherapy

Alexander W. Kusnecov and Hymie Anisman

Contents

1.1 Introduction

Stressful events have been implicated as being fundamental in provoking some pathologies and exacerbating the course or symptoms of others. In this regard, it has been suggested that certain pathological states, such as depressive and cardiovascular illness, may be related to antecedent stressors (or emotional states), although the biological outcomes leading to such effects remain to be fully deduced [1–3]. The view has likewise been expressed that life-stressors (or depressive illness that might be associated with stressful events) may contribute to the exacerbation of neoplastic disease [4–6], although the available data in humans supporting this position has been limited, and the validity of this perspective has been challenged [7–11]. Yet, treatment of depression in cancer patients has been found to increase survival times suggesting that psychological attributes, possibly involving stressor-related processes, may influence the course of cancer progression [6, 12].

Studies in animals indicated that stressors exacerbated the growth of some types of transplanted or carcinogen-induced tumors, but it was clear that such an outcome was dependent on characteristics of the tumor system being examined (e.g., syngeneic vs. nonsyngeneic, hormone-dependent *vs*. hormone-independent, fast vs. slow growing). Moreover, at least some of the effects of the treatments were independent of immune functioning, as the stressor-elicited tumor augmentation was evident in syngeneic tumors that presumably had escaped immune surveillance [13]. Of course, this does not belie the possibility that stressor effects on immune functioning may have influenced some types of tumors. Likewise, it is certainly possible that stressors may have impacted tumor growth by affecting the activity of cytokines (signaling molecules of the immune system), which influenced hormonal and other processes, and thus tumor growth.

Given the complexity of the processes associated with cancer development and progression, it is not surprising that the impact of stressors on these processes is not well understood. The difficulty in appraising the stress-cancer relationship is compounded by the fact that stressors may have diverse effects on various biological systems (e.g., autonomic nervous system,

A.W. Kusnecov (✉)
Department of Psychology, Rutgers University, Piscataway, NJ, USA
e-mail: Kusnecov@rci.rutgers.edu

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_1,

central nervous system, neuroendocrine and immune processes), and these effects are dependent on a variety of characteristics related to the nature of the stressor, including the type of stressor employed, its controllability, predictability and chronicity, as well as various attributes of the organism, including age, sex, species and strain.

Although any number of processes may contribute to the effects of stressors on tumor development, one promising avenue of research in this respect concerns the analysis of stressor effects on cytokine functioning. To be sure, cytokines have been used increasingly in the treatment of certain types of cancer. In the present review, we report on the effects of stressors on the activity of various cytokines, as well as the effects of cytokines on neuroendocrine and central neurotransmitter processes. Inasmuch as cytokines may also contribute to the provocation of depressive illness, we suggest that psychological state and tumor growth, by virtue of the related neurochemical changes, may be intertwined. In this review we will briefly describe (a) the effects of stressors on neuroendocrine and cytokine processes, (b) the influence of cytokines on neuroendocrine and central neurotransmitter functioning, and finally (c) the impact of cytokine immunotherapy on cancer progression, and the effects evident with respect to psychological processes, particularly those affected by stressors (especially depressive states).

It should be stated at this point that the study of stress has typically been approached from a negative perspective. That is, the driving hypothesis is that stressors are thought to produce disruptive physiological changes that might contribute to pathology, whether physical or psychological. However, in the review of data below, it should be considered that all changes taking place in response to a given environmental and/or psychological challenge represent normal adjustments in function that may or may not return to pre-stress levels, but nonetheless represent engagement of resources that evolved to cope with the stressor. The challenge of stress research is to determine the conditions under which the consequences of stressor exposure result in biological functioning that as a result of the "stress experience" no longer operates to serve the interests of health and survival. Many of these conditions, including the intensity, chronicity and frequency of stressor exposure, as well as various organismic variable, including sex and genetics, have already been alluded to above.

1.2 Stressor Effects on Neurochemical Processes

Stressors have repeatedly been shown to instigate a cascade of central and peripheral neurochemical changes that are thought to facilitate the organism's ability to contend with the challenge. Among other things, these varied neuroendocrine and neurotransmitter changes may have permissive or suppressive actions, enhance the effects of other neuroendocrine factors, blunt the physiological and psychological impact of stressors, and preclude excessive physiological activation [14].

1.2.1 Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Effects of Stressors

Ordinarily, acute stressors increase the activity of the prototypical neuroendocrine system comprising hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal functioning. In response to stressors, the paraventricular nucleus of the hypothalamus is activated, giving rise to the release of corticotropin releasing hormone (CRH) from the median eminence, which then stimulates ACTH release from the anterior pituitary gland. The ACTH thus enters circulation, provoking glucocorticoid secretion from the adrenal gland [15–17]. In the case of some stressor-related pathologies, such as depression, elevated circulating cortisol levels may be evident [18], although levels of morning cortisol may be reduced among individuals that experienced traumatic events that resulted in the development of posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) [19].

Typically the HPA response to stressors occurs rapidly and normalization of corticoid levels occurs fairly soon after stressor termination [14]. Interestingly, however, with the passage of time following acute stressors, or in response to chronic stressors, long lasting phenotypic variations of neurosecretory neurons occur so that increased arginine vasopressin (AVP) is present within corticotropin releasing hormone (CRH) terminals located within the external zone of the median eminence [20–22]. When released concurrently, AVP and CRH synergistically stimulate pituitary ACTH release, so that exaggerated

responses are elicited by later stressor exposure, particularly when this involves a novel insult [22]. Thus, in assessing the impact of stressors on pathological states, whether these involve psychological or biological processes, it is important to consider that stressors have proactive effects in addition to their immediate impact. Indeed, in assessing the development of PTSD, it was shown that the neuroendocrine response to trauma is influenced by previous traumatic experiences [23] and adverse early-life events likewise influenced the adult neuroendocrine response associated with a subsequent laboratory stressor [24].

1.2.2 Central Neurochemical Effects of Stressors

In addition to the HPA hormonal effects of stressors, a variety of challenges influence the activity of neurotransmitters in numerous brain regions including hypothalamic nuclei and in limbic sites. For instance, stressors promote CRH mRNA expression and increase in vivo CRH release at the central amygdala (CeA) [25–26], possibly through 5-HT and NE processes [27]. In addition to these CRH variations, stressors markedly influence the utilization of monoamines, norepinephrine (NE), dopamine (DA) and serotonin (5-HT), and the magnitude of the effects observed are dependent on several experiential and organismic factors (e.g., age, strain) [28]. The NE and 5-HT variations are notable in specific hypothalamic nuclei (e.g., paraventricular nucleus of the hypothalamus and various mesolimbic sites), as are the DA alterations (e.g., arcuate nucleus, mPFC, ventral tegmentum, nucleus accumbens shell) [28–29], and even mild stimuli (tailpinch, novelty, social defeat) and psychosocial stressors increased in vivo mesolimbic DA release [30–32]. However, if the stressor is sufficiently severe, then the increased amine utilization may exceed synthesis and levels of the transmitter decline [28]. It ought to be underscored at this juncture, however, that not all stressors necessarily induce identical outcomes. Specifically, like neurogenic (physical) stressors, psychogenic insults (e.g., psychological threats such as learned fear cues, predator odor) influence NE and amygdala CRH release [33]. However, it seems that the effects of certain stressors, particularly "prewired" predator-related challenges, induce monoamine and neuroendocrine alterations distinguishable from those elicited by learned stressors [34–35]. It is equally possible that differential neurochemical changes in humans may likewise be related to the nature of the stressor experienced.

While stressors encountered by humans can be either acute or chronic, relatively severe stressors may involve anticipatory periods (e.g., anticipation of surgery) or rumination over stressors already encountered (e.g., loss of a loved one), and in this sense these stressors have a chronic component. Thus, it especially important to consider the impact of chronic strain on neurochemical processes that may influence pathology. Of course, in this context it is essential to consider that individuals differ widely in their appraisal of stressors and in the way they cope with varied insults. Thus, in human studies that attempt to link stressors and pathology, it will be necessary to consider the contribution of these and other psychosocial factors that may influence illness vulnerability and progression.

Studies in animals have indicated that the course of stressor-provoked neurochemical changes varies with the severity, chronicity and predictability of the stressor experience. For instance, the reductions of monoamine levels associated with relatively intense acute stressors may be absent following exposure to a repeated or chronic stressor [28, 36], likely owing to a compensatory enhancement of NE and 5-HT synthesis [36–37] and moderation of DA utilization [28]. Chronic stressors also promote down regulation of ß-NE receptor activity and the NE sensitive cAMP response [38], and chronic challenge may decrease 5-HT_{1B} receptor expression [39]. It is important to underscore, however, that while the increased amine turnover may be of adaptive significance over the short-term, if neuronal changes are sustained, then the wear and tear on physiological systems may become excessive (allostatic load), ultimately rendering the animal vulnerable to a variety of pathological outcomes [40]. As will be seen shortly, it also appears that the effects of stressors on immunity may be fundamentally linked to stressor chronicity, in that the immunoenhancement elicited by acute stressors turns to immunosuppression after protracted insults [41].

As in the case of the CRH changes described earlier, it appears that the increased amine utilization elicited by an acute stressor persists for a brief period,

but can readily be re-induced upon reexposure to the same stressor (sensitization) or to a different stressor (cross sensitization) [28, 42–45]. In addition to the sensitized monoamine utilization seen upon reexposure to an acutely experienced stressor, it appears that chronic stressors also promote sensitization of mechanisms associated with amine synthesis [46]. The amine changes elicited by stressor reexposure or stressor-related cues can be attenuated by anxiolytics (diazepam) [47–48] and by 5-HT_{1A} receptor manipulations [48]. The important point for the present purposes is that both acute and chronic stressors may have long-term neurochemical repercussions, including neurotransmitters within brain regions thought to be important in contending with stressors and in mediating mood states.

1.3 Cytokine Contribution to the Stress Response and Mood States

Traditionally stressors have been considered to be of a "processive" nature, comprising either neurogenic or psychogenic insults that involve the appraisal or processing of information. Yet, the view has been taken that this definition may be too narrow and that systemic insults, such as bacterial or viral infection, ought to be considered as being stressors [49], despite the fact that they do not engender the appraisal in the same way that psychogenic and neurogenic insults do.

1.3.1 Neurochemical Consequences of Cytokine Treatment

Beyond their other functions, cytokines may contribute to communication processes between the immune system and the CNS. Despite the fact that cytokines are large, hydrophilic polypeptides that do not readily cross the blood brain barrier (BBB) [50–51], entry into the brain can occur at circumventricular organs [52], which lack an efficient BBB, or through saturable carrier mediated transport mechanisms [50], ultimately reaching various brain nuclei through volume diffusion [53]. As well, systemic administration of proinflammatory cytokines, such as IL-1β and TNFα appear to non-selectively stimulate cells of large blood vessels and small capillaries, and can disrupt the BBB [54–55]. Once present in the brain, cytokines can bind to specific cytokine receptors [56–57], and may promote activation of intracellular second messengers [58]. In addition to direct actions within the brain, increased CNS activity can be provoked indirectly through stimulation of afferent vagal fibers [52, 59–60] or receptors located at circumventricular and other vascular regions [51, 61]. As well, it seems likely that neuronal activity within limbic sites, such as the CeA, can be provoked through stimulation of the parabrachial nucleus and paraventricular thalamus [62]. Irrespective of how the brain changes come about, it seems that cytokine factors may come to promote neurochemical and behavioral changes akin to those characterizing mood disorders.

There are ample data indicating that, like processive stressors, challenges with viral and bacterial products, as well as cytokines, influence central monoamine activity [63–64] and profoundly increase the release of stress-reactive hormones, including ACTH and corticosterone [64–65]. Given the similarity between the effects of processive and systemic insults, we argued that the brain may be interpreting systemic challenges as if they were stressors [63], and as in the case of stressors, cytokine challenges were found to promote the sensitization of neuropeptide functioning so that the response to later psychogenic stressors was increased [22]. Furthermore, it was reported that treatment with an interleukin antagonist attenuated the ACTH, corticosterone and hypothalamic monoamine changes induced by a psychogenic stressor [66], indicating that cytokines act as part of the stressor-sensitive HPA loop. Of course, as already alluded to, this does not imply that processive and systemic stressors have identical effects. In this regard, it was suggested [49] that these insults impact HPA functioning through different neural circuits. It will be recalled, as indicated earlier, that processive stressors profoundly influence central amygdala and prefrontal cortical neuronal functioning and may contribute to the affective and cognitive processes related to mood and anxiety disorders. Limbic neurochemical changes are likewise influenced by cytokine challenges [52, 63], but likely do not involve appraisal processes such as those associated with processive stressors. Yet, systemic and processive stressors may act synergistically, and cytokines may provoke the sensitization of neurochemical systems,

thereby leading to exaggerated stress responses upon subsequent encounters with processive challenges [22, 63].

1.3.2 Behavioral Effects of Cytokines

Immune activation or administration of IL-1β and TNFα, induce an array of behavioral symptoms often referred to as "sickness behaviors" [67]. Although peripheral factors contribute to these effects, it appears that they may be mediated, at least in part, by central mechanisms [59, 68]. For instance, systemically administered cytokines elicit soporific effects, anorexia fever, fatigue, reduced motor activity, curled body posture [59, 69] sleep [70], and reduced sexual behavior [71], and several of these behavioral outcomes are provoked by central cytokine administration [59]. It has further been reported that cytokines disrupt operant responding for food reward [72], and disturb exploration and social interaction [59, 68]. These behavioral changes are thought to be adaptively significant as they act to minimize energy expenditure and sustain body temperature [52, 69]. In this vein, it is significant that the expression of the sickness behaviors are contextually dependent in that the behavioral signs are suppressed under conditions where this would be advantageous to the organism, e.g., in a threatening environment [73–74].

As indicated earlier, cytokines affect central neurochemical functioning and affect hormonal processes. Moreover, the nature of the changes observed are reminiscent of those associated with stressors, and are also those that have frequently been implicated as factors associated with depressive illness [28]. Indeed, the position has been advanced that activation of the inflammatory immune response may play a provocative role in the evolution of depressive illness [75]. Consistent with this view, increased cytokine activity may elicit anhedonia (i.e., a diminution in the rewarding value of otherwise positive stimuli), a symptom that is a characteristic feature of depression [76–80], and it appears that the effects of cytokines are exacerbated in previously stressed animals [81].

While cytokines clearly influence peripheral processes, it was suggested that at least some of the effects of cytokines are mediated by central mechanisms as they can be induced by direct administration into brain, and the actions of systemically administered cytokines can be attenuated by central antagonist administration [59, 82]. To be sure, it is difficult to dissociate the sickness from the motivational attributes of the cytokine treatment. After all, an animal feeling sick may be less motivated to respond in response to otherwise hedonic stimuli. Yet, it does seem that a prime characteristic of sickness (anorexia) elicited by IL-1β can be distinguished from the motivational (anhedonic) effects of this treatment. In particular, while anorexia induced by the treatment is fairly short lasting (1–2 days) the anhedonia (e.g., reflected by operant responding for sucrose on a schedule of reinforcement where a progressively greater number of responses is required for a fixed amount of sucrose, thus providing an index of the motivation to work for reward) is much longer lasting (∼4 days). Furthermore, while chronic antidepressant (fluoxetine) treatment attenuated the responding for sucrose reward, this treatment did not influence the anorexia [80].

1.3.3 Cytokines and Mood States

Consistent with the view that the inflammatory immune response might be related to depression, it has been reported that the immune profile of severely depressive patients was reminiscent of that ordinarily associated with an acute phase reaction. Specifically, increased concentrations of soluble IL-2 receptors (sIL-2R), IL-1β, IL-1 receptor antagonist (IL-1Ra), IL-6, sIL-6R, and IFNγ were repeatedly observed among melancholic patients [75]. As well, depression was associated with increased levels of complement proteins, C3 and C4, as well as positive acute phase proteins, haptoglobin, α1-antitrypsin, β1 and β2 macroglobulin, coupled with reduced levels of negative acute phase proteins. The elevated levels of IL-1β, IL-6 and α1-acid glycoprotein normalized with antidepressant medication; however, the upregulated production of sIL-2R, IL-6, IL-10, sIL-6R and IL-1Ra in severe depression, and the elevated IL-1β seen in patients suffering from chronic low grade depression (dysthymia) [83], were not attenuated with antidepressant medication [75, 84–85]. Thus, the possibility exists that

these factors may be trait markers of the illness but do not play a provocative role in depressive illness. Of course, the possibility cannot be dismissed that normalization of these cytokines occurs with alleviation of depressive symptoms but this requires more sustained treatment or might occur over time following symptom remission.

In considering the data suggesting that cytokines affect central neurochemical processes and hence mood states, it is important to underscore that although numerous reports have examined the effects of IL-1, TNFα and IL-6, far fewer studies examined the effects of IL-2. Indeed, those studies that assessed the effects of IL-2 generally indicated that this cytokine had either weak or no effect on HPA hormonal activity [86–87], and had limited effects on central neurotransmitter functioning [88]. The central effects of other cytokines, such as IFNγ, have received still less attention. Nevertheless, studies in animals have indicated that IL-2 may induce anhedonic-like effects [86], and may affect cognitive processes [88–89]. Moreover, as will be discussed later, cytokines appear to be rather potent depressogenic agents.

1.4 Immunological Consequences of Stressor Exposure

The fact that stressors, or the behavior associated with stressors, produce changes in immune function is well documented [89]. In fact, much of the evidence has been so extensively reviewed [90–98], that little can be added that might shed new light on this phenomenon. What is perhaps more important is to address the question of whether the information that has been gathered to date can be used to aid clinical practice, especially in the field of oncology, where efforts to increase the aggressiveness of cytotoxic immune mechanisms against cancer cells may be compromised by suppressive feedback regulation by the CNS. Indeed, the neuroendocrine and autonomic nervous system responses that are elicited by immune challenges, and cytokines in particular, are believed to provide a feedback regulatory influence on ongoing immune processes. Much of this research has focused on the HPA axis, with adrenocorticoid hormones, such as glucocorticoids, serving to inhibit or attenuate the magnitude of immune responses. This may prevent the appearance of autoimmune dysregulation, as well as septic or bacteraemic shock. Whether this benefit takes place at the cost of effective immune surveillance or elimination of tumor cells, is not presently certain, since few studies systematically addressed this question. Nonetheless, there is growing evidence that administration of cytokines as part of cancer immunotherapy can produce significant deleterious effects on behavior, and these, in turn, may be associated with neuroendocrine and neuromodulatory changes that could negatively impact on therapeutic outcome.

Prediction of what types of immune parameters and how they may be affected by a specific stressor regimen is not fully understood. Studies in humans have largely relied on blood measures of immune function and in this regard, mainly in vitro measures of mitogen-induced proliferation or natural killer (NK) cell activity. Both suppression and enhancement of responsiveness have been noted, which only serve to complicate the question of prediction. More recently, there have been studies in humans that have addressed in vivo outcomes of immune function. Among the more dramatic demonstrations of this is the impact of chronic life stressors, such as caregiving (e.g., for a partner with a neurodegenerative disorder such as Alzheimer's), on reductions and/or delay of wound healing [99], possibly through an impact on reparative immune mechanisms (eg., IL-1 production) [100]. These particular findings are clinically relevant since post-operative recovery of cancer patients may be influenced by psychological factors that either preceded or followed surgical intervention. Other studies in humans have addressed antibody production in response to immunizations [101]. Here the data provide some support of the animal literature, in that humoral immune responses can be modulated by stressors, although a comprehensive review of the human literature concluded that this is by no means dramatic, nor readily predictable [101]. Much of this uncertainty is likely due to methodological compromises inherent in doing human studies of normal antibody reactivity in humans – especially, where this involves a merger with established guidelines for carrying out community vaccinations. For example, control of antigen dose and even the composition of the injected vaccine (in the case of influenza studies) can vary, as is the difficulty of determining the relationship between stressful episodes and measures of antibody.

1.5 Stress and Cytokine Production

One aspect of immune function that may be especially sensitive to stressor effects is that of cytokine production. The ability of lymphocytes and macrophages to alter synthesis and rates of cytokine production as a function of neuroendocrine impact represents an important influence on the cascade of events that culminate in the effector phase of the immune response. Hence, regulation of T-helper cell cytokines may influence antibody production and the antigen specificity of antibody subtypes. Moreover, the amplification and lytic ability of cytotoxic T cells and natural killer cells can be influenced by a variety of T cell and macrophage-derived cytokines, including interferon-γ (IFNγ) and tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α).

1.5.1 Stressors Influence Th1 and Th2 Derived Cytokines

In recent years there has also been an emphasis on examining the balance between Th1 and Th2 cytokine production. Shifts in this balance are considered to reflect a bias towards either proinflammatory processes through activation of macrophages (if shifted towards Th1) or humoral immune responsiveness (if shifted towards Th2). Excessive and prolonged skewing in either direction can promote various types of infectious and autoimmune pathology. Investigation of the effects of stressors on cytokine production has focused on the following Th1 cell cytokines: IL-2, IFNγ, and TNF-α; while IL-4, IL-6 and IL-10 *inter alia* – the main Th2 cell cytokines – have received the most attention (it should be noted, however, that cytokines from either Th cell subtype are also produced by other types of immune cells, as discussed further below). Early in an immune response to pathogen, predominance of Th1 cell function is typically desired to drive increased phagocytic functions (through activation of macrophages and stimulation of opsonizing antibodies). However, eventual down-regulation by Th2 cell cytokines, in particular, by IL-10, can serve to shift the immune response away from the development of an unnecessarily protracted and potentially damaging impact on tissue function. Therefore, if stressors modify the production of Th1 and Th2 cytokines, this may induce critical imbalances in their mutual counter-regulatory functional relationship, and that may result in pathology.

1.5.1.1 Impact on Interferon-γ

Assessment of the effects of stressors on cytokine production has focused on in vitro determinations after stimulation with mitogens (eg., phytohemagglutin [PHA] or concanavalin A [Con A]) and recall antigens that were used to prime animals or humans in vivo. Splenic lymphocytes from rats exposed to acutely applied stressors (e.g., electric shock or conditioned fear) showed suppressed IFNγ production following mitogenic stimulation [102–104]. Similarly, in mice, exposure to a 24 h session of restraint suppressed Con-A stimulated spleen cell IFNγ production [105], while repeated daily restraint produced the same effect in response to tetanus toxin, herpes simplex virus, influenza virus, tumor antigens, ovalbumin, and CD3 crosslinking with monoclonal antibody [106–109]. Suppression of INFγ production is not restricted to the spleen, but has also been demonstrated among cells isolated from regional lymph nodes [102–110].

As in the case of INFγ, there have been multiple reports of suppressed IL-2 production following various psychogenic stressors in rats [104–111] and mice [108, 110, 112], although failure of suppression in rat spleen cells stimulated with Con A has been noted [113]. In general, however, it is evident that exposure of laboratory rodents to a number of commonly used experimental stressors exerts a suppressive influence on Th1 cytokine production, when this is assessed by in vitro restimulation methods. However, less work is available on measures of Th1 cytokine production in vivo, which may help to determine whether the implications of these studies to susceptibility to Th1 dependent diseases can be complicated by stress. Yet, it has also been demonstrated that infectious disease processes can be promoted by stressors, indirectly validating the significance of the in vitro findings [114–115].

1.5.1.2 Impact on Interleukin-4

Interestingly, the production of IL-4, a Th2 cytokine important in regulating B cell activation and differentiation, but most prominent in promoting IgE

antibody responses, was reduced in response to a brief psychosocial stressor or academic examinations [125, 116], although in another study utilizing a social stressor (public speaking task), no changes of mitogen-induced IL-4 production were noted [127]. The discrepancy between these studies may have been due to the source of T cell activation, since Buske-Kirschbaum et al. [125] utilized the T cell superantigen, Toxic-Shock Syndrome Toxin (TSST-1) as the activating agent. Nonetheless, it is clear that further research is needed to address important interactions between stress and immunological mechanisms underlying allergic reactions, which in some cases represent a significant life-risk.

With respect to Th2 cell cytokine production induced in vitro, it has been found that IL-10 production in response to tetanus toxin and influenza virus is suppressed following prolonged restraint [106]. In contrast, restraint exposure was without effect on IL-4 production in response to T cell mitogenic stimulation [105, 108], but suppressed splenic IL-4 production induced by herpes simplex virus [112]. At first glance, the case could be made that under infectious circumstances, Th2 cell cytokine production is more likely to be inhibited by stressors in order to extend the course of Th1 mediated immune reactivity that drive inflammatory and phagocytic functions relevant to the elimination of pathogen. While suppression of IFNγ by stressors may be inconsistent with this view, reduced production of nitric oxide (NO) by macrophages stimulated with IFNγ may promote disinhibition of T cell functions, since NO has been shown to be activated by a conditioned stressor and to suppress T cell proliferation [117].

It seems that it may still be premature to make definitive conclusions concerning the impact of stressors on Th1 and Th2 cytokine functioning. It remains to be determined whether stressors differentially influence cytokine activity within different immune compartments (e.g., spleen vs. blood), and whether the effects observed are unique to certain types of stressor regimens, or even to certain types of stressors. What the available data do make clear, however, is that stressors are able to modulate cytokine activity. As more studies are conducted that vary stressor parameters, alternative interpretations may arise that will hopefully provide a uniform picture of how stressors affect Th1 and Th2 cytokine function. This is particularly pertinent since the extrapolation of animal data to human studies requires conceptual agreement that is sometimes lacking. While both human and animal data agree that stressors impact the immune system, closer examination of how cytokine production by human immunocytes is affected by stressors reveals a divergence from the animal literature. Admittedly, human studies are restricted largely to the analysis of the peripheral blood compartment of the immune system, and the obvious issues of control over subject variables such as genetic background, experiential history and age are inherently difficult to address. Nonetheless, important observations have been made with potential clinical relevance.

1.5.1.3 Impact on Interleukin-10 and Interleukin-2

Just as stressors have been found to either enhance or reduce immune functioning in humans, stressor exposure appears to be associated with both suppression and enhancement of T cell cytokine production in response to mitogens, as well as antigens. Of particular interest are studies examining the relationship of IL-10 to that of the Th1 cytokines IL-2 and IFNγ. This relationship is particularly important in that elevations of IL-10 serve to increase inhibitory feedback effects on Th1 cell activity, thereby limiting the magnitude of proinflammatory processes. Among elderly subjects vaccinated against influenza, increased levels of perceived distress as well as social activity were associated with greater IL-10 production in response to influenza antigen restimulation in vitro [118]. Interestingly, younger caregivers experiencing high levels of stress showed elevated levels of IL-10^+ T cells, without any changes in IL-2^+ or IFNγ^+ T cells [119]. This same category of subjects (viz., caregivers) had previously been shown to display attenuated responses to influenza vaccine, and reduced IL-2 production [120], which may be consistent with higher levels of IL-10 producing T cells. Similarly, in response to the distress of academic examinations, participants showed elevated IL-10 production [121–124], which was associated with reduced production of IFNγ in some studies [121, 123], but increased production of IFNγ in others [122, 124]. The latter finding is consistent with exposure of human subjects to experimentally-induced psychosocial stressors [125–127]. Moreover, the increased IFNγ

production is seen in participants with atopic dermatitis or multiple sclerosis [125, 127], suggesting that increased Th1 responses may exacerbate ongoing clinical conditions. To complement the increased production of IFNγ, it has been noted that another Th1 cytokine, IL-2, is also increased in response to examination stress, along with an associated down-regulation of IL-2 receptor expression, suggesting increased ligand-receptor interactions [128]. Overall, the reported studies suggest that elevated production of IL-10 might introduce the risk of greater inhibition of Th1 cytokine production. This may impair the initial phase of immunological responsiveness during which memory formation and effector function needs to be optimal against potential pathogens. However, the observation that IL-2 and IFNγ are also increased in response to stressor exposure suggests possible changes in sensitivity to IL-10 and/or changes in the percentage number of Th1 subsets. Moreover, the observed increases in IL-10 may be compensatory responses to the elevated Th1 cytokines. Much of this is speculative at present, and therefore, additional data are needed to fully examine this set of complex relationships.

1.5.1.4 Impact on Interleukin-5

The effects of stress on the production of Th2 cytokines other than IL-10 have also been investigated. The stress of academic examinations was found to increase the production of IL-5 in sputum-derived cells obtained from students with mild asthma, although IFNγ production was unaffected [129]. Interleukin-5 has been shown to play an important role in recruitment and/or activation of eosinophils, granulocytic leukocytes that are concentrated around the epithelium of mucosal areas such as the gut and respiratory systems, and hence important in protection against microbial infection. In fact, the stress-induced increase of IL-5 production in asthmatic individuals was associated with eosinophilia [130]; once again suggesting that increased production of certain cytokines can result in increased inflammation and life-threatening allergic reactions in susceptible individuals. Indeed, in subjects suffering from atopic dermatitis, stressor experience was shown to promote peripheral blood eosinophilia [125].

1.5.1.5 Impact on Interleukin-6

The cellular origins of cytokines tend to be quite variable, with IL-2 and IL-4 originating mainly from T cells, as opposed to other cytokines such as IL-5 and IL-10, which in addition to arising from T cells, can be produced by cells of the innate immune system, such as eosinophils, monocytes and macrophages. Moreover, many cytokines have been identified in the central nervous system, where astroglial cells tend to be the main cellular source of production. Aside from T cell-derived cytokines, therefore, it should come as no surprise that alterations in the production of cytokines emanating from innate compartments of the immune system have been observed following stressor experiences. In particular, considerable attention has been directed to IL-6, which appears to be measurable under induced and spontaneous conditions (without antigenic/mitogenic stimulation). One of the major functions of this cytokine is promotion of cell growth and differentiation, in particular among activated B cells [130], although fibroblast and neuronal growth is also influenced by IL-6 [130–131]. Consequently, stressor-induced alterations in the production and/or release of IL-6 may impact humoral immune functions, as well as the functional status of immune cells and the CNS.

The production of IL-6 among spleen cells stimulated with PHA was enhanced by exposure to a conditioned stressor, but only in lactating female rats [132], suggesting an important role for IL-6 during critical periods of physiological change. Moreover, while the IL-6 measured in this study may have been derived from T cells and macrophages present in culture, the enhanced production is consistent with evidence in mice that social disruption increases the in vitro IL-6 response of macrophages to LPS [133]. However, in vitro enhancement following stressor exposure is not universal, as viral stimulation of IL-6 production is reduced following persistent restraint [110, 112], although this may be regionally determined, since lymph nodes (and not splenic cells) displayed augmented IL-6 output in response to influenza virus [96]. Human studies have similarly reported bi-directional effects on mitogen or antigen induced IL-6 production. For example, highly stressed parents of young cancer patients showed suppressed IL-6 production [134], although the distress of exams, public speaking or exercise has been shown to augment in vitro IL-6 production in response to mitogens [121, 124,

135]. To some degree, the latter differences may be accounted for by the chronicity (and possibly intensity) of the stressor experience, since intuitively, at least, it is expected that significant qualitative differences exist in the psychological impact of coping with a child that has cancer as opposed to sitting for an exam or performing a public speaking task. As such, it is essential to examine more closely the differential impact of chronic versus acute stressor exposure, as well as the nature or severity of the stressor experiences.

Of considerable interest in view of the current emphasis on using cytokines to predict various neuropathological, psychiatric and cardiovascular disorders, is the impact of stressors on basal levels of circulating plasma cytokines. At issue in these studies is the cellular source of the cytokines that have been measured. One cytokine that has been closely monitored is plasma IL-6. Since the initial studies by LeMay et al. [136] and Zhou et al. [137] there has been a growing recognition that elevations of plasma IL-6 follow exposure to a variety of psychogenic and neurogenic stressors, such as electric shock, restraint, social-disruption, novel environments, conditioned fear stimuli, and handling [137–140]. In human studies, exposure to stressors results in similar findings [141–142]. The reliability of stressor-induced plasma IL-6 elevations has all the hallmarks of an endocrine index of distress, such as corticosterone, with which IL-6 may have a close functional relationship, in that stressor-induced corticosterone responses may rely on IL-6 production [143]. The cellular source of IL-6 in plasma within a mere hour of stressor exposure is unlikely to be an immunocyte, since splenic mRNA for IL-6 is not detectable after stressor exposure [139]. However, liver parenchymal cells respond with increased mRNA for IL-6 after exposure to restraint [139], suggesting that these may partly contribute to circulating levels of IL-6 following stressor exposure.

1.5.1.6 Impact on Interleukin-1 and Tumor Necrosis Factor-α

The determination of cytokine responses in vitro may carry the problem of biological meaningfulness. This is typically addressed through in vivo studies, although in some cases the range of stimuli used in vivo deviate significantly from those used in vitro. For example, replicating the in vitro effects of Con A or PHA is difficult, since commonly used T cell antigens (e.g., KLH) do not readily induce measureable cytokine responses in vivo. However, the macrophage activating stimulus, LPS, has proven to be a reliable in vitro and in vivo stimulus. Indeed, injections of LPS produce robust elevations of plasma cytokines in rats and mice, and it has been shown in mice that an acute episode of restraint stress can inhibit the magnitude of the IL-1 response to systemically administered LPS [144]. Interestingly, after several days of social disruption, mice challenged with LPS responded with greater amounts of IL-1 and TNFα in lymphoid regions (e.g., spleen and lung) and brain [145]. This finding is surprising in that repeated stressor exposure might be expected to reduce the proinflammatory response to LPS. However, such was not the case, and reinforces the notion that different types of stressors interacting with different forms of immunological stimulation may reveal unexpected patterns of responding that heretofore had not been expected. Indeed, stressor-induced augmentation of immune responses has previously been demonstrated in both rats and mice challenged with T cell antigens [146–148], albeit following acute stressor exposure. Alternatively, chronic stressor exposure has been shown to suppress T cell mediated immune responses in vivo [149]. Hence, the observation that LPS challenge after repeated – as opposed to acute – exposure to social disruption results in augmented cytokine reactivity [145], suggests that innate immune mechanisms, such as those involving macrophages, may be primed to react in a more exaggerated manner after chronic stressor exposure. Similar observations have recently been made in rats exposed to a single session of inescapable tailshock and subsequently shown to display a heightened IL-1β and TNFα response to LPS challenge [150]. Interestingly, the latter study also found that brain IL-1β increases were also sensitized by the prior neurogenic stressor exposure [150].

Proinflammatory cytokines, such as IL-1, have also been measured in significantly higher concentrations after stressor exposure [138, 151]. Some of these effects can actually be prevented by prior activation of the immune system, since it was shown that restraint failed to increase plasma levels of IL-1 and IL-6 only if animals had been pretreated with LPS more than a week earlier [137]. While the mechanism for this immunologically-induced “desensitization” to a psychological stressor remains to be determined, there

are opposite phenomena with respect to the neurobiological and behavioral effects of cytokines, such as TNF-α and IL-1β which was discussed earlier. For example, pretreatment with TNF-α or IL-1 has been shown to sensitize animals to greater neuroendocrine and behavioral responses to additional cytokine and/or psychogenic stressor exposure.

The foregoing discussion of the effects of stressors on cytokine production by lymphocytes and macrophages, as well as the elevation of plasma cytokines (most notably IL-6), highlights the importance of CNS-mediated effects on immunological processes. As discussed earlier, certain cytokines, such as IL-1, TNFα and IL-6, target neuroendocrine pathways in the brain, ultimately causing elevated peripheral levels of noradrenergic and glucocorticoid activity. Whether this efferent output from the brain is in response to psychogenic or systemic stimulation, the consequences may be similar, namely modification of peripheral cytokine production. This is important to keep in mind, considering that immunotherapy with cytokines is in principle similar to experimental studies that established the impact of cytokines on CNS function. Therefore, the patient that receives large doses of IL-2 or IFNα may respond to these cytokines both at the immunological level and that of the CNS. Activation of the latter can result in neuroendocrine responses that may conceivably impact ongoing immune processes. Moreover, neurobehavioral changes may render the individual more sensitive to psychogenic stressors, ultimately leading to the question as to whether exogenous treatment with cytokines for therapeutic reasons, may actually result in serious dysregulation of endocrine functions that militate against optimal therapeutic outcome. These questions have not been fully addressed, but as will be indicated shortly, there is evidence that cytokine immunotherapy results in serious behavioral consequences.

1.6 Cytokines and Depression

Studies in animals, as indicated earlier, have revealed that treatment with IL-2 as well as proinflammatory cytokines gives rise to central neurochemical changes that have been linked to depressive illness. Likewise, in animals these cytokines promote neurovegetative and behavioral changes reminiscent of those that characterize depression in humans [63]. Paralleling these findings, severe depression in humans has been associated with increased circulating levels of various cytokines and their soluble receptors, as well as increased mitogen-stimulated cytokine production [75]. The relationship between cytokines and depression was further reinforced by the finding that the administration of an endotoxin to humans induced changes of mood, particularly the induction of mild depression [152].

Another line of evidence comes from studies that evaluated the effects of immunotherapy (IL-2, IFNγ and TNFα in humans undergoing treatment for various forms of cancer or for hepatitis C). These studies indicated that high doses of these cytokines induced neuropsychiatric symptoms, including depression and/or anxiety, often of sufficient severity to require discontinuation of therapy [153–170]. Moreover, it seemed that many of the diverse effects of the cytokine treatments were dissociable (e.g., sickness vs. mood changes). Specifically, it appeared that the somatic and neurovegetative symptoms (such as anorexia, fatigue and pain) emerged during the initial 2 weeks of IFNγ treatment, whereas mood-related symptoms (depression, anxiety) and cognitive disturbances tended to appear later [156].

The processes through which cytokines induce depressive symptoms remain to be elucidated. It will be recalled that cytokines affect CRH and monoamine activity within several limbic sites, and it was suggested that these neurochemical alterations give rise to the affective disturbances [78]. Thus, it is particularly significant that the depressive symptoms provoked by IFNγ were attenuated by treatment with the selective 5-HT reuptake inhibitor, paroxetine [171]. Moreover, it appeared that the antidepressant markedly influenced mood-related symptoms, whereas fatigue and anorexia were hardly attenuated by the antidepressant treatment. In effect, these data are consistent with a causal role for cytokines in depressive illness, and also indicate that the cytokine-provoked mood and sickness effects can be dissociated from one another, such that antidepressants act principally on mood-related characteristics. Further, these data raise the possibility that the efficacy of immunotherapeutic treatments, by virtue of the diminution of side effects, can be augmented by appropriate antidepressant pretreatment. At the same time, it ought to be considered that the effects of cytokine therapy were assessed in a fairly atypical

population, namely patients with severe illness that certainly would have been associated with considerable distress. In effect, the actions of the cytokines may have reflected the additive or synergistic actions of the treatment superimposed on the backdrop of a stressor. In this regard, there are indeed indications that stressors and cytokines may synergistically affect neurochemical functioning [63].

1.7 Conclusion

Admittedly, we have circumvented the issue of whether stressors exacerbate cancer progression. Simply put, the available data are frequently confusing or contradictory, and insufficient prospective information is available to assess this relationship adequately. There are certainly ample data indicating that stressors impact immune functioning, although the nature of the effects observed vary with a host of conditions, including the nature of the stressor, its severity and chronicity, previous stressor experiences, and the immune compartment being examined. Importantly, the way a stressor influences these processes, as it affects others, is likely related to the way the individual appraises or interprets challenges, and the coping method endorsed to deal with such insults. In the case of cytokine changes an array of different factors influence the impact of stressors, and these effects seem to vary with the specific cytokines being appraised, and no doubt will vary across individuals, depending on a constellation of organismic and experiential variables. Clearly, whether the various immune and cytokine changes provoked by stressors affect tumor progression will be difficult to decipher.

Paradoxically, while a link has often been proposed between stress and cancer progression, cytokines which have multiple stressor like effects and may induce depression, have been shown to attenuate the course of some cancers. Thus, it might reasonably have been expected that stressors, like cytokines, would actually have an attenuating effect on neoplastic disease. A resolution of this mismatch may not be readily forthcoming. However, we provisionally offer the suggestion that to understand the relationship between stressors and cancer, it is essential to distinguish between acute, subchronic, and chronic unpredictable stressors. While mild and acute stressors may instigate adaptive neurochemical systems that militate against adverse outcomes, including tumorigenic actions, stressors experienced on a chronic, unpredictable basis may lead to excessive utilization of those adaptive resources that ordinarily act against pathology. It will be recalled that with sustained stressors the wear and tear on neurochemical systems may become excessive (termed allostatic load), precluding adaptive responses being mounted [40], hence rendering the organism more vulnerable to pathology. Further, it is proposed that among individuals who are, for whatever reason, particularly vulnerable to stressor effects, subchronic insults may be sufficient to exacerbate the development of pathology. We suggest that such outcomes will be most pronounced among those individuals that had previously encountered traumatic events or protracted stressors that sensitized those neurotransmitter, neuroendocrine, or cytokine systems that otherwise would serve in an adaptive capacity.

Acknowledgements Supported by PHS grants DA14186, MH60706 and an NIEHS Center Grant ES05022 and by Grant FRN 13124 from the Canadian Institutes of Health

References

1. Bairey Merz, C.N., Dwyer, J., Nordstrom, C.K., Walton, K.G., Salerno, J.W. and Schneider, R.H. (2002). Psychosocial stress and cardiovascular disease: pathophysiological links. Behav. Med. 27, 141–147.
2. Griffiths, J., Ravindran, A.V., Merali, Z. and Anisman, H. (2000). Dysthymia: Neurochemical and behavioral perspectives. Mol. Psychiat. 5, 242–261.
3. Williams, R.B. and Littman, A.B. (1996). Psychosocial factors: role in cardiac risk and treatment strategies. Cardiol. Clin. 14, 97–104.
4. Cooper, C.L. and Faragher, E.B. (1993). Psychosocial stress and breast cancer: the inter-relationship between stress events, coping strategies and personality. Psychol. Med. 23, 653–662.
5. Scurry, M.T. and Levin, E.M. (1979). Psychosocial factors related to the incidence of cancer. Int. J. Psychiat. Med. 9, 159–177.
6. Spiegel, D. and Kato, P.M. (1996). Psychosocial influences on cancer incidence and progression. Harv. Rev. Psychiatry 4, 10–26.
7. Burgess, C. (1986). Stress and cancer. Cancer Surv. 6, 403–416.
8. Dalton, S.O., Boesen, E.H., Ross, L., Schapiro, I.R. and Johansen, C. (2002). Mind and cancer: Do psychological factors cause cancer? Eur. J. Cancer 38, 1313–1323.
9. Fox, B.H. (1995). The role of psychological factors in cancer Incidence and prognosis. Oncology 9, 245–253.

10. Garssen, B. and Goodkin, K. (1999). On the role of immunological factors as mediators between psychosocial factors and cancer progression. Psychiatry Res. 85, 51–61.
11. Levenson, J.L. and Beamis, C. (1991). The role of psychological factors in cancer onset and progression. Psychosomatics 32, 124–132.
12. Spiegel, D. and Sephton, S.E. (2001). Psychoneuroimmune and endocrine pathways in cancer: effects of stress and support. Semin. Clin. Neuropsychiatry 6, 252–265.
13. Sklar, L.S. and Anisman, H. (1981). Stress and cancer. Psychol. Bull. 89, 369–406.
14. Sapolsky, R.M., Romero, L.M. and Munck, A.U. (2000). How do glucocorticoids influence stress responses? Integrating permissive, suppressive, stimulatory, and preparative actions. Endocr. Rev. 21, 55–89.
15. Lightman, S.L. (1994). How does the hypothalamus respond to stress. Sem. Neurosci. 6, 215–219.
16. Lightman, S.L., Windle, R.J., Julian, M.D., Harbuz, M.S., Shanks, N., Wood, S.A., Kershaw, Y.M. and Ingram, C.D. (2000) Significance of pulsatility in the HPA axis. Novartis Found Symp. 227, 244–257.
17. Rivier, C. and Vale, W. (1985). Effects of corticotropin-releasing factor, neurohypophyseal peptides and catecholamines on pituitary function. Fed. Proc. 44, 189–195.
18. Nemeroff, C.B. (1996). The corticotropin-releasing factor (CRF) hypothesis of depression: New findings and new directions. Mol. Psychiatry 1, 336–342.
19. Yehuda, R. (2002). Post-traumatic stress disorder. N. Engl. J. Med. 346, 108–114.
20. Bartanusz, V., Jezova, D., Bertini, L.T., Tilders, F.J., Aubry, J.M. and Kiss, J.Z. (1993). Stress-induced increase in vasopressin and corticotropin-releasing factor expression in hypophysiotrophic paraventricular neurons. Endocrinology 132, 895–902.
21. Schmidt, E.D., Binnekade, R., Janszen, A.W. and Tlders, F.J. (1996). Short stressor induced long-lasting increases of vasopressin stores in hypothalamic corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) neurons in adult rats. J. Neuroendocrinol. 8, 703–712.
22. Tilders, F.J.H. and Schmidt, E.D. (1999). Cross-sensitization between immune and non-immune stressors. A role in the etiology of depression? Adv. Exp. Med. Biol. 461, 179–197.
23. Resnick, H.S., Yehuda, R., Pitman, R.K. and Foy, D.W. (1995). Effect of previous trauma on acute plasma cortisol level following rape. Am. J. Psychiat. 152, 1675–1677.
24. Heim, C. and Nemeroff, C.B. (2002).Neurobiology of early life stress: clinical studies. Semin. Clin. Neuropsychiatry, 7, 147–159.
25. Merali, Z., McIntosh, J., Kent, P., Michaud, D. and. Anisman, H. (1998). Aversive as well as appetitive events evoke the release of corticotropin releasing hormone and bombesin-like peptides at the central nucleus of the amygdala. J. Neurosci. 18, 4758–4766.
26. Pich, E.M., Lorang, M., Yeganeh, M., de Fonseca, F.R., Raber, J., Koob, G.F. and Weiss, F. (1995). Increase of extracellular corticotropin-releasing factor-like immunoreactivity levels in the amygdala of awake rats during restraint stress and ethanol withdrawal as measured by microdialysis. J. Neurosci. 15, 5439–5447.
27. Stutzmann, G.E., McEwen, B.S., LeDoux, J.E. (1998). Serotonin modulation of sensory inputs to the lateral amygdala: dependency on corticosterone. J. Neurosci. 18, 529–538.
28. Anisman, H., Zalcman, S. and Zacharko, R.M. (1993). The impact of stressors on immune and central neurotransmitter activity: bidirectional communication. Rev. Neurosci. 4, 147–180.
29. Deutch, A.Y., Bourdelais, A.J. and Zahm, D.S. (1993). The nucleus accumbens core and shell: accumbal compartments and their functional attributes. In P.W. Kaliovas and C.D. Barnes (Eds) Limbic Motor Circuits and Neuropsychiatry. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp. 45–88.
30. Doherty, M.D. and Gratton, A. (1992). High-speed chronoamperometric measurements of mesolimbic and nigostriatal dopamine release associated with repeated daily stress. Brain Res. 586, 295–302.
31. Feenstra, M.G.P., Botterblom, M.H.A. and Van Uum, J.F.M. (1995). Novelty-induced increase in dopamine release in the rat prefrontal cortex in vivo: inhibition by diazepam. Neurosci. Lett. 189, 81–84.
32. Tidey, J.W. and Miczek, K.A. (1996) Social Defeat stress selectively alters mesocorticolimbic dopamine release: an in vivo microdialysis study. Brain Res. 721, 140–149.
33. Merali, Z., Kent, P., Michaud, D., McIntyre, D., Anisman, H. (2001). Differential effects of psychogenic and neurogenic stressors on central corticotropin-releasing hormone and bombesin-like peptides in the fast and slow seizing rat. Brain Res. 906, 60–73.
34. Anisman, H., Hayley, S., Kelly, O., Borowski, T., and Merali, Z. (2001). Psychogenic, neurogenic and systemic stressor effects on plasma corticosterone and behaviors: Mouse strain-dependent outcomes. Behav. Neurosci. 115, 443–454.
35. Morrow, B.A., Redmond, A.J., Roth, R.H. and Elsworth, J.D. (2000). The predator odor, TMT, displays a unique, stress-like pattern of dopaminergic and endocrinological activation in the rat. Brain Res. 864, 146–151.
36. Weiss, J.M., Simson, P.G. (1985). Neurochemical mechanisms underlying stress-induced depression. In: T. Field, P. McCabe, N. Schneiderman (eds.) Stress and Coping, New Jersey, Erlbaum, pp. 93–116.
37. Nankova, B., Devlin, D., Kvetnansky, R., Kopin, I.J., and Sabban, E.L. (1993). Repeated immobilization stress increases the binding of c-fos-like proteins to a rat dopamine-β-hydroxylase promoter enhancer sequence. J. Neurochem. 61, 776–779.
38. Stone, E.A. (1987). Central cyclic-AMP-linked noradrenergic receptors: New findings on properties as related to the actions of stress. Neurosci. Biobehav. Rev. 11, 391–398.
39. Bolanos-Jimenez, F., Manhaes de Casatro, R., Seguin, L., Cloez-Tayarani, I., Monneret, V., Drieu, K. and Fillion, G. (1995). Effects of stress on the functional properties of pre- and postsynaptic 5-HT1B receptors in the brain. Eur. J. Pharmacol. 294, 531–540.
40. McEwen, B.S. (2000). Allostasis and allostatic load: Implications for neuropsychopharmacology. Neuropsychopharmacology, 22, 108–124.
41. Dhabhar, F.S. (2000). Acute stress enhances while chronic stress suppresses skin immunity. The role of stress

hormones and leukocyte trafficking. Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci. 917, 876–893.
42. Anisman, H., Hayley, S. and Merali, Z. (2003) Sensitization associated with stressors and cytokine treatments. Brain Behav. Immun. 17, 86–93.
43. .Jordan, S., Kramer, G.L., Zukas, P.K. and Petty, F. (1994). Previous stress increases in vivo biogenic amine response to swim stress. Neurochem. Res.19, 1521–1525.
44. Kalivas, P.W. and Stewart, J. (1991). Dopamine transmission in the initiation and expression of drug- and stress-induced sensitization of motor activity. Brain Res. Rev. 16, 223–244.
45. Robinson, T.E. (1988). Stimulant drugs and stress: Factors influencing individual differences in the susceptibility to sensitization. In P.W. Kalivas and C.D. Barnes (Eds.). Sensitization in the Nervous System. Telford Press, Caldwell, NJ, pp. 145–173.
46. Nisenbaum, L.K., Zigmond, M.J., Sved, A.F. and Abercrombie, E.D. (1991). Prior exposure to chronic stress results in enhanced synthesis and release of hippocampal norepinephrine in response to a novel stressor. J. Neurosci. 11, 1478–1484.
47. Coco, M.L., Kuhn, C.M., Ely, T.D., and Kilts, C.D. (1992). Selective activation of mesoamygdaloid dopamine neurons by conditioned stress: attenuation by diazepam. Brain Res. 50, 39–47.
48. Wedzony, K., Mackowiak, M., Fijal, K. and Golembiowska, K. (1996). Evidence that conditioned stress enhances outflow of dopamine in rat prefrontal cortex: A search for the influence of diazepam and 5-HT1A agonists. Synapse 24, 240–247.
49. Herman, J.P. and Cullinan, W.E. (1997) Neurocircuitry of stress: Central control of hypothalamo-pituitary-adrenocortical axis. Trends Neurosci. 20, 78–84.
50. Banks WA. (2001). Cytokines, CVSs, and the blood-brain-barrier. In: R. Ader, D.L. Felten, N. Cohen (eds.). Psychoneuroimmunology, Vol. 2. Academic Press, New York, pp. 483–498.
51. Laflamme, N. and Rivest, S (1999). Effects of systemic immunogenic insults and circulating proinflammatory cytokines on the transcription of the inhibitory factor kappaB alpha within specific cellular populations of the rat brain. J. Neurochem. 73, 309–321.
52. Konsman, J.P., Parnet, P. and Dantzer, R (2002) Cytokine-induced sickness behaviour: mechanisms and implications. Trends Neurosci. 25, 154–159.
53. Vitkovic, L., Konsman, J.P., Bockaert, J., Dantzer, R., Homburger, V. and Jacque, C. (2000). Cytokine signals propagate through the brain. Mol. Psychiat. 5, 604–615.
54. Banks, W.A. (1999). Physiology and pathology of the blood-brain barrier: implications for microbial pathogenesis, drug delivery and neurodegenerative disorders. J Neurovirol. 5, 538–555.
55. Mayhan, W.G. (2002). Cellular mechanisms by which tumor necrosis factor-a produces disruption of the blood-brain barrier. Brain Res. 927, 144–152.
56. Cunningham, E.T. and De Souza, E.B. (1993). Interleukin 1 receptors in the brain and endocrine tissues. Immunol. Today 14, 171–176.
57. Kinouchi, K., Brown, G., Pasternak, G. and Donner, D.B. (1991). Identification and characterization of receptors for tumor necrosis factor-a in the brain. Biochem. Biophys. Res. Comm. 181, 1532–1538.
58. Tancredi, V. (1992). Tumor necrosis factor alters synaptic transmission in rat hippocampal slices. Neurosci. Lett. 146, 176–178.
59. Dantzer, R. (2001). Cytokine-induced sickness behavior: mechanisms and implications. Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci. 933, 222–234.
60. Konsman, J.P., Luheshi, G.N., Bluthe, R.M. and Dantzer, R. (2000). The vagus nerve mediates behavioural depression, but not fever, in response to peripheral immune signals; a functional anatomical analysis. Eur. J. Neurosci. 12, 4434–4446.
61. Rivest, S. (2001). How circulating cytokines trigger the neural circuits that control the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis. Psychoneuroendocrinology 26, 761–788.
62. Buller, K.M. and Day, T.A. (2002). Systemic administration of interleukin-1beta activates select populations of central amygdala afferents. J. Comp. Neurol. 452, 288–296.
63. Anisman, H. and Merali, Z. (1999). Anhedonic and anxiogenic effects of cytokine exposure. Adv. Exp. Med. Biol. 461, 199–233.
64. Dunn, A.J. (1995). Interactions between the nervous system and the immune system. In: F.E. Bloom, D.J. Kupfer (Eds.). Psychopharmacology: The Fourth Generation of Progress. Raven Press, New York, pp. 719–731.
65. Rivier, C. (1993). Effect of peripheral and central cytokines on the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis of the rat. Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci. 697, 97–105.
66. Shintani, F., Nakaki, T., Kanba ,S., Sato, K., Yagi, G., Shiozawa, M., Aiso, S., Kato, R. and Asai, M. (1995). Involvement of interleukin-1 in immobilization stress-induced increase in plasma adrenocorticotropic hormone and in release of hypothalamic monoamines in the rat. J. Neurosci. 15 1961–1970.
67. Hart, B.L. (1988). Biological basis of the behavior of sick animals. Neurosci. Biobehav. Rev. 12, 123–137.
68. Dantzer, R. (2001). Cytokine-induced sickness behavior: Where do we stand. Brain Behav. Immun. 15, 7–24.
69. Maier, S.F. and Watkins, L.R. (1998). Cytokines for psychologists: Implications of bidirectional immune-to-brain communication for understanding behavior, mood, and cognition. Psychol. Rev. 105, 83–107.
70. Moldofsky, H. (1995). Sleep and the immune system. Int. J. Immunopharmac. 17, 649–665.
71. Avitsur, R. and Yirmiya, R. (1999). Cytokines inhibit sexual behavior in female rats: I. Synergistic effects of tumor necrosis factor alpha and interleukin-1. Brain Behav. Immun. 13, 14–32.
72. Bret-Dibat, J.L., Bluthe, R.M., Kent, S., Kelley, K.W. and Dantzer, R. (1995). Lipopolysaccharide and interleukin-1 depress food-motivated behavior in mice by a vagal-mediated mechanism. Brain Behav. Immun. 9, 242–246.
73. Aubert, A. (1999). Sickness and behaviour in animals: a motivational perspective. Neurosci. Biobehav. Rev. 23, 1029–1036.
74. Kawashima, N. and Kusnecov, A.W. (2002). Effects of staphylococcal enterotoxin A on pituitary-adrenal activation and neophobic behavior in the C57BL/6 mouse. J. Neuroimmunol. 123, 41–49.

75. Maes, M. (1999) Major depression and activation of the inflammatory response system. Adv. Exp. Med. Biol. 461, 25–45.
76. Anisman, H., Kokkinidis, L. and Merali, Z. (1996). Influence of interleukin-2 on responding for electrical brain stimulation from the hypothalamus. Brain Res. 731, 1–11.
77. Anisman, H., Kokkinidis, L., Borowski, T. and Merali, Z. (1998). Differential effects of IL-1, IL-2 and IL-6 on responding for rewarding lateral hypothalamic stimulation. Brain Res. 779, 177–187.
78. Anisman, H., Kokkinidis, L., and Merali, Z. (2002). Further evidence for the depressive effects of cytokines: Anhedonia and neurochemical changes. Brain Behav. Immun. 16, 544–556.
79. Larson, S.J., Romanoff, R.L., Dunn, A.J. and Glowa, J.R. (2002). Effects of interleukin-1beta on food-maintained behavior in the mouse. Brain Behav. Immun. 16, 398–410.
80. Merali, Z., Brennan, K., Brau, P.and Anisman, H. (2002). Dissociating anorexia and anhedonia elicited by interleukin-1β: Antidepressant and gender effects on responding for "free chow" and "earned" sucrose intake. Psychopharmacology, 165, 413–418.
81. Tannenbaum, B. and Anisman, H (2002). Impact of chronic intermittent challenges in stressor-susceptible and resilient strains of mice. Biol. Psychiat. 53, 292–303.
82. Bluthe, R.M., Dantzer, R. and Kelley, K.W. (1997). Central mediation of the effects of interleukin-1 on social explorationand body weight in mice. Psychoneuroendocrinology 22, 1–11.
83. Anisman, H., Ravindran, A.V., Griffiths, J. and Merali, Z. (1999). Endocrine and ytokine correlates of major depression and dysthymia with typical or atypical features. Mol. Psychiat. 4, 182–188.
84. Anisman, H., Ravindran, A.V., Griffiths, J. and Merali, Z. (1999). Interleukin-1 beta production in dysthymia before and after pharmacotherapy. Biol. Psychiatry 46, 1649–1655.
85. Sluzewska, A., Rybakowski, J.K., Laciak, M., Mackiewicz, A., Sobieska, M. and Wiktorowicz, K. (1995). Interleukin-6 serum levels in depressed patients before and after treatment with fluoxetine. Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci. 762, 474–476.
86. Anisman, H, and Merali, Z. (2002). Cytokines, stress, and depressive illness. Brain, Behav. Immun. 16, 513–524.
87. Hanisch, U.K. (2001). Effects of interleukin-2 and interferons on the nervous ystem. In: R. Ader, D.L. Felten, N. Cohen (eds). Psychoneuroimmunology, Vol. 2., Academic Press, New York, pp. 585–632.
88. Lacosta, S., Merali, Z. and Anisman, H. (2000). Central monoamine activity following acute and repeated systemic interleukin-2 administration. Neuroimmunomodulation 8, 83–90.
89. Kusnecov, A.W. and Rabin, B.S. (1994). Stressor-induced alterations of immune function: mechanisms and issues. Int. Arch. Allergy Immunol. 105, 107–121.
90. Leonard, B. (2000). Stress, depression and the activation of the immune system. World J. Biol. Psychiatry 1, 17–25.
91. Wilson, C.J., Finch, C.E., and Cohen, H.J. (2002). Cytokines and cognition–the case for a head-to-toe inflammatory paradigm. J. Am. Geriatr. Soc. 50, 2041–2056.
92. Eskandari, F. and Sternberg, E.M. (2002). Neural-immune interactions in health and disease. Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci. 966, 20–27.
93. Kiecolt-Glaser, J.K., McGuire, L., Robles, T.F. and Glaser, R. (2002). Psychoneuroimmunology: psychological influences on immune function and health. J. Consult Clin. Psychol. 70, 537–547.
94. Yang, E.V. and Glaser, R. (2002). Stress-induced immunomodulation and the implications for health. Int. Immunopharmacol. 2, 315–324.
95. Spiegel, D. and Sephton, S.E. (2001). Psychoneuroimmune and endocrine pathways in cancer: effects of stress and support. Semin. Clin. Neuropsychiatry 6, 252–265.
96. Miller, G.E. and Cohen, S. (2001). Psychological interventions and the immune system: a meta-analytic review and critique. Health Psychol. 20, 47–63.
97. Walker, J.G., Littlejohn, G.O., McMurray, N.E. and Cutolo, M. (1999). Stress system response and rheumatoid arthritis: a multilevel approach. Rheumatology (Oxford) 38, 1050–1057.
98. Glaser, R. and Kiecolt-Glaser, J.K. (1998). Stress-associated immune modulation: relevance to viral infections and chronic fatigue syndrome. Am. J. Med. 105, 35S-42S.
99. Kiecolt-Glaser, J.K., Marucha, P.T., Malarkey, W.B., Mercado, A.M. and Glaser, R. (1995). Slowing of wound healing by psychological stress. Lancet 346, 1194–1196.
100. Glaser, R., Kiecolt-Glaser, J.K., Marucha, P.T., MacCallum, R.C., Laskowski, B.F. and Malarkey, W.B. (1999). Stress-related changes in proinflammatory cytokine production in wounds. Arch. Gen. Psychiatry 56,450–456.
101. Cohen, S., Miller, G.E., and Rabin, B.S. (2001). Psychological stress and antibody response to immunization: a critical review of the human literature. Psychosom. Med. 63, 7–18.
102. Fleshner, M., Hermann, J., Lockwood, L.L., Laudenslager, M.L., Watkins, L.R. and Maier, S.F. (1995). Stressed rats fail to expand the CD45RC+CD4+ (Th1-like) T cell subset in response to KLH: possible involvement of IFN-gamma. Brain Behav. Immun. 9, 101–112.
103. Sonnenfeld, G., Cunnick, J.E., Armfield, A.V., Wood, P.G., and Rabin, B.S. (1992). Stress-induced alterations in interferon production and class II histocompatibility antigen expression. Brain Behav. Immun. 6, 170–178.
104. Luecken, L.J. and Lysle, D.T. (1992). Evidence for the involvement of beta-adrenergic receptors in conditioned immunomodulation. J. Neuroimmunol. 38, 209–219.
105. Iwakabe, K., Shimada, M., Ohta, A., Yahata, T., Ohmi, Y., Habu, S., and Nishimura, T. (1998). The restraint stress drives a shift in Th1/Th2 balance toward Th2-dominant immunity in mice. Immunol. Lett. 62, 39–43.
106. Tournier, J.N., Mathieu, J., Mailfert, Y., Multon, E., Drouet, C., Jouan, A., and Drouet, E. (2001). Chronic restraint stress induces severe disruption of the T-cell specific response to tetanus toxin vaccine. Immunology 102, 87–93.

107. Bonneau, R.H., Zimmerman, K.M., Ikeda, S.C., and Jones, B.C. (1998) Differential effects of stress-induced adrenal function on components of the herpes simplex virus-specific memory cytotoxic T-lymphocyte response. J. Neuroimmunol. 82, 191–199.
108. Li, T., Harada, M., Tamada, K., Abe, K., and Nomoto, K. (1997). Repeated restraint stress impairs the antitumor T cell response through its suppressive effect on Th1-type CD4+ T cells. Anticancer Res. 17, 4259–4268.
109. Fukui, Y., Sudo, N., Yu, X.N., Nukina, H., Sogawa, H., and Kubo, C. (1997). The restraint stress-induced reduction in lymphocyte cell number in lymphoid organs correlates with the suppression of in vivo antibody production. J. Neuroimmunol. 79, 211–217.
110. Dobbs, C.M., Feng, N., Beck, F.M., and Sheridan, J.F. (1996). Neuroendocrine regulation of cytokine production during experimental influenza viral infection: effects of restraint stress-induced elevation in endogenous corticosterone. J.Immunol. 157, 1870–1877.
111. Batuman, O.A., Sajewski, D., Ottenweller, J.E., Pitman, D.L., and Natelson, B.H. (1990). Effects of repeated stress on T cell numbers and function in rats. Brain Behav. Immun. 4, 105–117.
112. Bonneau, R.H. (1996). Stress-induced effects on integral immune components involved in herpes simplex virus (HSV)-specific memory cytotoxic T lymphocyte activation. Brain Behav. Immun. 10, 139–163.
113. Cunnick, J.E., Lysle, D.T., Armfield, A., and Rabin, B.S. (1991). Stressor-induced changes in mitogenic activity are not associated with decreased interleukin 2 production or changes in lymphocyte subsets. Clin. Immunol. Immunopathol. 60, 419–429.
114. Rojas, I.G., Padgett, D.A., Sheridan, J.F., and Marucha, P.T. (2002). Stress-induced susceptibility to bacterial infection during cutaneous wound healing. Brain Behav. Immun. 16, 74–84.
115. Konstantinos, A.P. and Sheridan, J.F. (2001). Stress and influenza viral infection: modulation of proinflammatory cytokine responses in the lung. Respir. Physiol 128, 71–77.
116. Uchakin, P.N., Tobin, B., Cubbage, M., Marshall, G., Jr., and Sams, C. (2001). Immune responsiveness following academic stress in first-year medical students. J. Interferon Cytokine Res. 21, 687–694.
117. Coussons-Read, M.E., Maslonek, K.A., Fecho, K., Perez, L., and Lysle, D.T. (1994). Evidence for the involvement of macrophage-derived nitric oxide in the modulation of immune status by a conditioned aversive stimulus. J. Neuroimmunol. 50, 51–58.
118. Kohut, M.L., Cooper, M.M., Nickolaus, M.S., Russell, D.R., and Cunnick, J.E. (2002). Exercise and psychosocial factors modulate immunity to influenza vaccine in elderly individuals. J. Gerontol. A Biol. Sci. Med. Sci. 57, M557–M562.
119. Glaser, R., MacCallum, R.C., Laskowski, B.F., Malarkey, W.B., Sheridan, J.F., and Kiecolt-Glaser, J.K. (2001). Evidence for a shift in the Th-1 to Th-2 cytokine response associated with chronic stress and aging. J. Gerontol. A Biol. Sci. Med. Sci. 56, M477–M482.
120. Kiecolt-Glaser, J.K., Glaser, R., Gravenstein, S., Malarkey, W.B., and Sheridan, J. (1996). Chronic stress alters the immune response to influenza virus vaccine in older adults. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A 93, 3043–3047.
121. Paik, I.H., Toh, K.Y., Lee, C., Kim, J.J., and Lee, S.J. (2000). Psychological stress may induce increased humoral and decreased cellular immunity. Behav. Med. 26, 139–141.
122. Maes, M., Christophe, A., Bosmans, E., Lin, A., and Neels, H. (2000). In humans, serum polyunsaturated fatty acid levels predict the response of proinflammatory cytokines to psychologic stress. Biol. Psychiatry 47, 910–920.
123. Marshall, G.D., Jr., Agarwal, S.K., Lloyd, C., Cohen, L., Henninger, E.M., and Morris, G.J. (1998). Cytokine dysregulation associated with exam stress in healthy medical students. Brain Behav. Immun. 12, 297–307.
124. Maes, M., Song, C., Lin, A., De Jongh, R., van Gastel, A., Kenis, G., Bosmans, E., De, Meester, I., Benoy, I., Neels, H., Demedts, P., Janca, A., Scharpe, S., and Smith, R.S. (1998). The effects of psychological stress on humans: increased production of pro-inflammatory cytokines and a Th1-like response in stress-induced anxiety. Cytokine 10, 313–318.
125. Buske-Kirschbaum, A., Gierens, A., Hollig, H., and Hellhammer, D.H. (2002). Stress-induced immunomodulation is altered in patients with atopic dermatitis. J. Neuroimmunol. 129, 161–167.
126. Larson, M.R., Ader, R., and Moynihan, J.A. (2001). Heart rate, neuroendocrine, and immunological reactivity in response to an acute laboratory stressor. Psychosom. Med. 63, 493–501.
127. Ackerman, K.D., Martino, M., Heyman, R., Moyna, N.M., and Rabin, B.S. (1998). Stressor-induced alteration of cytokine production in multiple sclerosis patients and controls. Psychosom. Med. 60, 484–491.
128. Glaser, R., Kennedy, S., Lafuse, W.P., Bonneau, R.H., Speicher, C., Hillhouse, J., and Kiecolt-Glaser, J.K. (1990). Psychological stress-induced modulation of interleukin 2 receptor gene expression and interleukin 2 production in peripheral blood leukocytes. Arch. Gen. Psychiatry 47, 707–712.
129. Liu, L.Y., Coe, C.L., Swenson, C.A., Kelly, E.A., Kita, H., and Busse, W.W. (2002). School examinations enhance airway inflammation to antigen challenge. Am. J. Respir. Crit Care Med. 165, 1062–1067.
130. Lauta, V.M. (2003). A review of the cytokine network in multiple myeloma. Cancer 97, 2440–2452.
131. Obara, Y. and Nakahata, N. (2002). The signaling pathway of neurotrophic factor biosynthesis. Drug News Perspect. 15, 290–298.
132. Shanks, N., Kusnecov, A., Pezzone, M., Berkun, J., and Rabin, B.S. (1997). Lactation alters the effects of conditioned stress on immune function. Am. J. Physiol. 272, R16-R25.
133. Stark, J.L., Avitsur, R., Hunzeker, J., Padgett, D.A., and Sheridan, J.F. (2002). Interleukin-6 and the development of social disruption-induced glucocorticoid resistance. J. Neuroimmunol. 124, 9–15.
134. Miller, G.E., Cohen, S., and Ritchey, A.K. (2002). Chronic psychological stress and the regulation of pro-inflammatory cytokines: a glucocorticoid-resistance model. Health Psychol. 21, 531–541.

135. Goebel, M.U., Mills, P.J., Irwin, M.R., and Ziegler, M.G. (2000). Interleukin-6 and tumor necrosis factor-alpha production after acute psychological stress, exercise, and infused isoproterenol: differential effects and pathways. Psychosom. Med. 62, 591–598.
136. LeMay, L.G., Vander, A.J., and Kluger, M.J. (1990). The effects of psychological stress on plasma interleukin-6 activity in rats. Physiol. Behav. 47, 957–961.
137. Zhou, D., Kusnecov, A.W., Shurin, M.R., DePaoli, M., and Rabin, B.S. (1993). Exposure to physical and psychological stressors elevates plasma interleukin 6: relationship to the activation of hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis. Endocrinology 133, 2523–2530.
138. Hale, K.D., Weigent, D.A., Gauthier, D.K., Hiramoto, R.N., and Ghanta, V.K. (2003). Cytokine and hormone profiles in mice subjected to handling combined with rectal temperature measurement stress and handling only stress. Life Sci. 72, 1495–1508.
139. Kitamura, H., Konno, A., Morimatsu, M., Jung, B.D., Kimura, K., and Saito, M. (1997). Immobilization stress increases hepatic IL-6 expression in mice. Biochem.Biophys.Res.Commun. 238, 707–711.
140. Nukina, H., Sudo, N., Aiba, Y., Oyama, N., Koga, Y., and Kubo, C. (2001). Restraint stress elevates the plasma interleukin-6 levels in germ-free mice. J. Neuroimmunol. 115, 46–52.
141. Steptoe, A., Willemsen, G., Owen, N., Flower, L., and Mohamed-Ali, V. (2001). Acute mental stress elicits delayed increases in circulating inflammatory cytokine levels. Clin. Sci. (Lond) 101, 185–192.
142. Maes, M., Lin, A.H., Delmeire, L., van Gastel, A., Kenis, G., De Jongh, R., and Bosmans, E. (1999). Elevated serum interleukin-6 (IL-6) and IL-6 receptor concentrations in posttraumatic stress disorder following accidental man-made traumatic events. Biol. Psychiatry 45, 833–839.
143. Bethin, K.E., Vogt, S.K., and Muglia, L.J. (2000). Interleukin-6 is an essential, corticotropin-releasing hormone-independent stimulator of the adrenal axis during immune system activation. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A 97, 9317–9322.
144. Goujon, E., Parnet, P., Laye, S., Combe, C., Kelley, K.W., and Dantzer, R. (1995). Stress downregulates lipopolysaccharide-induced expression of proinflammatory cytokines in the spleen, pituitary, and brain of mice. Brain Behav. Immun. 9, 292–303.
145. Quan, N., Avitsur, R., Stark, J.L., He, L., Shah, M., Caligiuri, M., Padgett, D.A., Marucha, P.T., and Sheridan, J.F. (2001). Social stress increases the susceptibility to endotoxic shock. J. Neuroimmunol. 115, 36–45.
146. Shanks, N. and Kusnecov, A.W. (1998). Differential immune reactivity to stress in BALB/cByJ and C57BL/6 J mice: in vivo dependence on macrophages. Physiol. Behav. 65, 95–103.
147. Wood, P.G., Karol, M.H., Kusnecov, A.W., and Rabin, B.S. (1993). Enhancement of antigen-specific humoral and cell-mediated immunity by electric footshock stress in rats. Brain Behav. Immun. 7, 121–134.
148. Kusnecov, A.W. and Rabin, B.S. (1993). Inescapable footshock exposure differentially alters antigen- and mitogen-stimulated spleen cell proliferation in rats. J. Neuroimmunol. 44, 33–42.
149. Dhabhar, F.S. and McEwen, B.S. (1997). Acute stress enhances while chronic stress suppresses cell-mediated immunity in vivo: a potential role for leukocyte trafficking. Brain Behav. Immun. 11, 286–306.
150. Johnson, J.D., O′Connor K.A., Deak, T., Stark, M., Watkins, L.R., and Maier, S.F. (2002). Prior stressor exposure sensitizes LPS-induced cytokine production. Brain Behav. Immun. 16, 461–476.
151. Merlot, E., Moze, E., Dantzer, R., and Neveu, P.J. (2002). Suppression of restraint-induced plasma cytokines in mice pretreated with LPS. Stress. 5, 131–135.
152. Reichenberg, A., Yirmiya, R., Schuld, A., Kraus, T., Haack, M., Morag, A. and Pollmacher, T. (2001). Cytokine-associated emotional and cognitive disturbances in humans. Arch. Gen. Psychiat. 58, 445–452.
153. Baron, D.A., Hardie, T., Baron, S.H. (1993). Possible association of interleukin-2 treatment with depression and suicide. J. Am Osteopath. Assoc. 93, 799–800.
154. Bonaccorso, S., Marino, V., Puzella, A., Pasquini, M., Biondi, M., Artini, M., Almerighi, C., Verkerk, R., Meltzer, H. and Maes, M. (2002). Increased depressive ratings in patients with hepatitis C receiving interferon-alpha-based immunotherapy are related to interferon-alpha-induced changes in the serotonergic system. J. Clin. Psychopharmacol. 22, 86–90.
155. Bonaccorso, S., Puzella, A., Marino, V., Pasquini, M., Biondi, M., Artini, M., Almerighi, C., Levrero, M., Egyed, B., Bosmans, E., Meltzer, H.Y. and Maes, M. (2001). Immunotherapy with interferon-alpha in patients affected by chronic hepatitis C induces an intercorrelated stimulation of the cytokine network and an increase in depressive and anxiety symptoms. Psychiat. Res. 105, 45–55.
156. Capuron, L., Gumnick, J.F., Musselman, D.L., Lawson, D.H., Reemsnyder, A. and Nemeroff, C.B. (2002). Neurobehavioral effects of interferon-alpha in cancer patients: phenomenology and paroxetine responsiveness of symptom dimensions. Neuropsychopharmacology 26, 643–652.
157. Capuron, L., Ravaud, A. and Dantzer, R. (2001). Timing and specificity of the cognitive changes induced by interleukin-2 and interferon-alpha treatments in cancer patients. Psychosom. Med. 63, 376–386.
158. Capuron, L., Ravaud, A., Gualde, N., Bosmans, E., Dantzer, R., Maes, M. and Neveu, P.J. (2001). Association between immune activation and early depressive symptoms in cancer patients treated with interleukin-2-based therapy. Psychoneuroendocrinology 26, 797–808.
159. Capuron, L., Ravaud, A. and Dantzer, R. (2000). Early depressive symptoms in cancer patients receiving interleukin 2 and/or interferon alfa-2b therapy. J. Clin. Oncol. 18, 2143–2151.
160. Caraceni, A., Martini, C., Belli, F., Mascheroni, L., Rivoltini, L., Arienti, F. and Cascinelli, N. (1992). Neuropsychological and neurophysiological assessment of the central effects of interleukin-2 administration. Eur. J. Cancer 29A, 1266–1269.
161. Denicoff, K.D., Rubinow, D.R., Papa, M.Z., Simpson, L., Seipp, L.A., Lotze, M.T., Chang, A.E., Rosenstein, D. and Rosenberg, S.A. (1987). The neuropsychiatric effects

of treatment with interleukin-2 and lymphokine-activated killer cells. Ann. Int. Med. 107, 293–300.

162. Dutcher, J.P., Logan, T., Gordon, M., Sosman, J., Weiss, G., Margolin, K., Plasse, T., Mier, J., Lotze, M., Clark, J. and Atkins, M. (2000). Phase II trial of interleukin 2, interferon alpha, and 5-fluorouracil in metastatic renal cell cancer: a cytokine working group study. Clin. Cancer Res. 6, 3442-3450.
163. Eton, O., Talpaz, M., Lee, K.H., Rothberg, J.M., Brell, J.M. and Benjamin, R.S. (1996). Phase II trial of recombinant human interleukin-2 and interferon-alpha-2a: implications for the treatment of patients with metastatic melanoma. Cancer 77, 893–899.
164. Gore, M.E., Galligioni, E., Keen, C.W., Sorio, R., Loriaux, E.M., Grobben, H.C. and Franks, C.R. (1994). The treatment of metastatic renal cell carcinoma by continuous intravenous infusion of recombinant interleukin-2. Eur. J. Cancer 30, 329–333.
165. Legha, S.S., Gianan, M.A., Plager, C., Eton, O.E. and Papadopoulous, N.E.J. (1996).Evaluation of interleukin-2 administered by continuous infusion in patients with metastatic melanoma. Cancer 77, 89–96.
166. Maes, M., Capuron, L., Ravaud, A., Gualde, N., Bosmans, E., Egyed, B., Dantzer, R. and, Neveu, P.J. (2001). Lowered serum dipeptidyl peptidase IV activity is associated with depressive symptoms and cytokine production in cancer patients receiving interleukin-2-based immunotherapy. Neuropsychopharmacology 24, 130–140.
167. Meyers, C.A. and Valentine, A.D. (1995). Neurological and psychiatric adverse effects of immunological therapy. CNS Drugs 3, 56–68.
168. Miyaoka, H., Otsubo, T., Kamijima, K., Ishii, M., Onuki, M. and Mitamura, K. (1999). Depression from interferon therapy in patients with hepatitis C. Am. J. Psychiat. 156, 1120.
169. Vlasveld, L.T., Rankin, E.M., Hekman, A., Rodenhuis, S., Beijnen, J.H., Hilton, A.M., Dubbelman, A.C., Vyth-Dreese, F.A. and Melief, C.J. (1992). A phase I study of prolonged continuous infusion of low dose recombinant interleukin-2 in melanoma and renal cell cancer. Part I: clinical aspects. Br. J. Cancer 65, 744–750.
170. Walker, L.G., Walker, M.B., Heys, S.D., Lolley, J., Wesnes, K. and Eremin, O. (1997). The psychological and psychiatric effects of rIL-2 therapy: a controlled clinical trial. Psychooncology 6, 290–301.
171. Musselman, D.L., Lawson, D.H., Gumnick, J.F., Manatunga, A., Penna, S., Goodkin, R., Greiner, K., Nemeroff, C. and Miller, A.H. (2001). Paroxetine for the prevention of the depression and neurotoxicity induced by high dose interferon alpha. N. Engl. J. Med. 344, 961–966.

Chapter 2

The Role of Oncogene Activation in Tumor Progression

Michael J. Gray and Gary E. Gallick

Contents

2.1 Introduction

Normal cells become tumorigenic after multiple genetic and epigenetic alterations. This process alters complex signaling networks within these cells as well as interactions between these cells and the extracellular matrix. Cell growth and proliferation is a tightly regulated process in normal cells. Several cytokines and growth factors are capable of inducing proliferation, motility, and survival. Among the most widely studied mitogens are epidermal growth factor (EGF) and hepatocyte growth factor (HGF). These cytokines and/or growth factors activate specific transmembrane receptors that undergo phosphorylation events and in turn activate intercellular secondary messengers such as the Ras and Src oncogenes. Targets of these secondary messengers are numerous but include proteins that are involved in gene regulation, cell cycle components, and survival pathways.

The number of identified oncogenes involved in the malignant transformation process is abundant and growing. Oncogenes generally fall into one of three classes, those that initiate a signaling event from external stimulation such as tyrosine kinases receptors at the cell surface, those that are components of intracellular signal transduction cascades, and those that control gene expression. While it is beyond the scope of this review to focus upon the role of all oncogenes linked by one or more studies to malignant transformation, an examination of key discoveries to date will illustrate members of several types of oncogenes, the mechanisms of their activation, and roles in tumorigenic growth and tumor progression.

2.2 The Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Family

The epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) mediates numerous essential processes in normal cells

M.J. Gray (✉)
Department of Cancer Biology, The University of Texas MD Anderson Cancer Center, Houston, TX, USA

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_2,

including proliferation, survival, differentiation, adhesion and migration. Four EGFR family members (also known as the erbB family) exist in vertebrates: EGFR/ErbB-1, HER2/ErbB-2/neu-2, HER3/ErbB-3, and HER4/ErbB-4. The EGFR family contains an extracellular ligand binding domain, a trans-membrane domain, and a cytoplasmic domain with tyrosine kinase activity that is required for signal transduction [1]. At least eight ligands are capable of activating these receptors including EGF and transforming growth factor α (TGF-α) [2–5]. Unstimulated EGFR exists as a monomer but upon ligand binding forms either homo- or heterodimers with other EGFR family members [6]. Dimerization of the receptor results in activation of the receptors intrinsic kinase ability and tyrosine autophosphorylation and/or transphosphorylation occurs [1]. The ability of the EGFR family to heterodimerize allows for diversification of signal pathways [7, 8]. The phosphorylated residues of EGFR recruit and activate both transducer and adapter proteins that coordinate and activate downstream signal events. Numerous studies have shown the requirement for the cytoplasmic kinase domain of EGFR in normal and neoplastic signal transductions.

2.3 Mechanisms of EGFR Dysregulation

Dysregulation of the EGFR occurs by a variety of mechanisms including overexpression of ligand, EGFR, or both. In patients with lung carcinomas overall survival was greatly reduced in those groups that expressed high levels of EGF or TGF-α compared to those that did not [9, 10]. Some neoplastic tissues express both EGFR and one or more ligands capable of activating the receptor allowing autocrine activation of the receptor [11]. Overexpression of EGFR has been shown to inhibit receptor turnover presumably by overwhelming limiting factors involved in EGFR degradation [12, 14]. Mechanisms other than overexpression of EGFR or its ligands can also affect EGFR signaling. Mutations resulting in constitutive activation of the kinase domain have been identified in numerous cancers including brain, lung, stomach and breast, but have yet to be documented in nonmalignant tissues.

An alternative mechanism that results in increased activation of EGFR dependent signal transduction pathways occurs from EGFR heteodimerization with the EGFR family member HER2/ErbB2 as well as with other heterologous receptor systems. Overexpression of HER2 is associated with breast cancer and coexpression with EGFR is linked to poor patient prognosis [15, 16]. HER2 does not bind EGF or other EGF related ligands; rather it acts as a coreceptor by increasing the ligand affinity of its binding partner in the heterodimeric complex. EGFR/HER2 heterodimers result in elevated basal levels of activated receptors and increased activation of EGFR signaling networks [17–19]. Coexpression of EGFR and HER2 promotes cellular transformation and contributes to hormone independence of some cancers in vitro and overexpression of EGFR/HER2 correlates with poor patient prognosis [20–23]. Heterodimerization of EGFR and HER2 also results in increased receptor stabilization in part by down-regulating degradation and recycling pathways [8, 6]. In addition, EGFR-HER2 heterodimers differentially activate additional signal transduction pathways from those of EGFR homodimers [6].

Cross-talk between EGFR and other heterologous receptors such as the thrombin, endothelion-1, and LPA receptors can also influence EGFR activation [24–26]. These receptors, known as G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) activate numerous downstream events that can in turn activate EGFR directly or indirectly. These mechanisms include the activation of Src which can phorsphorylate EGFR at sites not targeted via EGFR autophosphorylation [27, 24, 28]. GPCRs can also activate metalloproteinases that target membrane-anchored pro-ligands that are activated by cleavage which can then bind and activate EGFR [29, 30].

2.4 The EGFR Receptor Signal Pathway

Activation of EGFR results in a series of complex downstream signal transduction events. Auto- and transphosphorylation of the kinase domain of EGFR allows the recruitment and activation of Src homology-2 domain (SH2) containing adapters and transducers including SHP-2, GRB2, phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K), Akt, phospholipase C-γ (PLC-γ), and members of the STAT transcription family [31–37]. A significant pathway activated via GRB2 is the Ras/Raf/mitogen activated kinase (MAPK) cascade [38, 39]. In addition to promoting cellular

proliferation, EGFR activation of PI3K also plays an important role in tumorigenesis and cell cycle progression [36, 37]. The cell cycle inhibitor p27 has been shown to be down-regulated via the PI3K/Akt pathway [40]. In addition, the angiogenesis promoting peptide vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) is transcriptionally upregulated by EGFR activation of PI3K [41–43].

2.5 EGFR-Targeted Therapy in Human Cancers

It is well established that disruption of normal EGFR activity occurs in numerous human tumors including breast, head and neck, gastric, ovarian, renal, pancreatic, bladder, colon, and non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) [44]. EGFR activation contributes to tumor progression by promoting angiogenesis, cell survival, proliferation, and invasion/metastasis [45–49]. Increased EGFR activation in malignant tissues can also result in resistance to standard therapies and poor patient prognosis [50–57].

Therapies directed towards the specific downregulation of EGFR on malignant tissues are being developed [58, 59]. A number of monoclonal antibodies designed to prevent EGFR activation by blocking ligand binding are being employed (e.g. IMC-225 and ABX-EGF). IMC-225, also currently in clinical trials, inhibits cell growth and survival in vitro and in vivo, inhibits angiogenesis, induces apoptosis in some cell lines, and reduces metastatic capability [60, 48, 61, 62]. Bispecific antibodies that target both EGFR and epitopes on immune surveillance cells are also being studied in the attempt to initiate immune system recognition and removal of malignant tissues (MDX-447). Additional antibody derived therapies employing the conjugation of toxins to antibodies specific for EGFR have also shown some success (scFv-14e1-ETA-Fusion toxin) [63].

Targeting the EGFR tyrosine kinase domain is also being extensively pursued as a therapeutic approach using chemical inhibitors. These EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitors (EGFR-TKIs) include ZD1839 (Iressa) and OSI-774, and prevent receptor activation by blocking ATP from reacting with the kinase domain. ZDS1839 has been shown to increase apoptosis, reduce cell proliferation, induce cell arrest, inhibit angiogenesis, and reduce invasion/metastasis [64–67]. ZD1839 is undergoing evaluation in phase III clinical trials on non-small cell lung carcinoma (NSCLC) in combination with other therapeutic agents but results have been somewhat disappointing after encouraging results from phase I and II trials [68–70]. Phase I and II clinical trials using OSI-774 in mono and combinatorial therapy have provided some encouraging results and phase III trials in pancreatic and lung cancers is currently being undertaken [71, 72]. Other anti-EGFR therapies include nucleotide antisense technology to inhibit translation of EGFR and/or its ligands, but of the current therapies IC-225 and the EGFR-TKIs ZD1839 and OSI-774 are the furthest developed tumoricidial agents.

2.6 Role of the EGFR Family Member ErbB2/HER2 in Breast Cancer

Abberant expression of the HER2 (also know as c-neu) gene occurs in a variety of human cancers but perhaps has been most studied for its role in breast carcinoma. Amplification of the HER2 gene in breast cancer is estimated at 20–30% [73]. HER2 expression/amplification is used as an independent prognostic factor towards patients' survival rates. HER2 dysregulation is associated with an aggressive disease and poor prognosis [74]. Overexpression of HER2 enhances proliferation, metastasis, and induction of angiogenesis and anti-apoptosis promoting factors [75, 76]. Activation of HER2 requires heterodimerization with other EGFR members for transphosphorylation as HER2 has no distinct activating ligand [77]. Interestingly homo- and heterodimers of the HER family have differential degrees of mitogenic stimulation. Heterodimers of HER2-HER3, the dominant HER complex found in carcinoma cells, are the most potent mitogenic combination [78–79]. The neuregulins (NRG, also known as neu differentiation factor (NDF), and heregulin) are the activation ligands of both HER3 and HER4. HER2 increases the affinity of its dimerization partner for its ligand in addition to increasing receptor stabilization, thus allowing enhanced activation of downstream pathways [8, 6].

The signaling pathway of HER2 is still being elucidated but, HER2 activation induces downstream

effector molecules involved in cell proliferation and metastasis [80–82]. These effectors include the cell proliferation ERK/MAPK pathway and members of the ETS transcription factors that regulate the expression of matrix remodeling proteins [83–85]. While these findings suggest that the aberrant activation of effectors pathways by HER2 overexpression may contribute to the development of metastatic breast cancer, the molecular pathway is still incompletely understood. This is complicated in part due to the ability of the EGFR/HER receptors to form some 9 potential dimer combinations allowing considerable signal diversification [78, 86]. Further investigation into HER2 biology will not only help decipher its role in breast cancer progression but also assist in the development of therapeutic agents.

Because gene amplification in cancer cells results in HER2 protein levels that may be 100 fold greater than in normal tissues, it has received rigorous examination as a potential therapeutic target [87, 88]. Therapies directed towards blocking HER2 expression and function are the two primary focuses. These therapies include the introduction of antisense oligonucleotides into cells directed towards HER2 or blocking the kinase activity of the HER2 receptor by chemical inhibitors [89, 90]. The greatest progress in HER2-targeted therapies has been made using monoclonal antibodies directed towards the extracellular domain of the HER2 receptor. Studies have suggested that these monoclonal antibodies may function by blocking requirements of cancer cells including angiogenesis, proliferation, and survival [91–94]. Currently the recombinant human antibodies (rHuMAb-HER2) Herceptin and tratuzumab have shown encouraging results in phase II and II clinical trials and are currently being used clinically in the treatment of patients with metastatic breast cancer [95, 96].

2.7 The c-Met Receptor

The tyrosine kinase receptor c-Met was first identified by chemically induced transformation of human osteogenic sarcoma (HOS) cell line [97]. In this transformed HOS cell line, the c-Met protooncogene on chromosome 7 underwent a translocation that resulted in a fusion protein that contained a constitutively active Met kinase domain [98]. Isolation of the cDNA of this oncogenic protein led to the identification of the full length c-Met receptor [97]. The transmembrane protein encoded by the c-Met gene is unusual compared to other kinase receptors in that the inactive single chain precursor undergoes intracellular proteolytic processing yielding a disulfide-linked heterodimer. The cytoplasmic c-terminal domain of the c-Met receptor contains a multifunctional site that has been shown to interact with a variety of signaling molecules [99–100]. The structural and biosynthetic properties define the Met receptor tyrosine kinase family which consists of three related members, c-Met, Ron, and c-Sea [101–103].

The ligand of the c-Met receptor is hepatocyte growth factor (HGF), also known as scatter factor (SF) [104, 105]. HGF/SF was initially identified as a mitogen for hepatocytes and a scattering/motility factor for epithelial cells [106–109]. Additional studies have shown that other cell types are biological targets of HGF/SF including endothelium, myoblast, hematopoietic and some neuronal tissues. The c-Met-HGF/SF signaling pathway effects a wide range of biological processes, including angiogenesis, embryonic development, organ regeneration, wound healing, cellular motility, proliferation, and invasion [110–118, 106, 119, 120]. Null mutations, of either HGF/SF or c-Met, result in embryonic lethality [116–117].

While regulating a wide range of essential physiological processes, the dysregulation of c-Met receptor kinase activity result in tumor development and progression [121]. c-Met-HGF/SF signaling can increase tumorigenicity in part by escalating cell invasiveness and metastatic capability [122]. Accumulation of high levels of HGF/SF in tumors is correlated with poor patient prognosis and a highly aggressive and invasive phenotype [123–125]. Overexpression of c-Met has been shown to occur in carcinomas of the colon, pancreas, ovary, and thyroid in addition to other types of cancers [98, 126–127]. Expression of both HGF/SF and the c-Met receptor is seen in gliomas, osteosarcomas, pancreas, lung, and breast cancers among others creating an autocrine loop and increased tumorigenicity [128–133]. Point mutations of the c-Met receptor resulting in constitutive activation occur in hereditary and sporadic papillary renal carcinomas, hepatocellular and gastric carcinoma and squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck [134–138]. Mutations in the c-Met receptor are also a contributing factor in primary cancers progression towards metastasis [122, 139].

Reduction of c-Met expression or activation in malignant tissues reduces or inhibits tumor growth, invasive, and metastatic potential [140–144].

2.8 The c-MET-HGF/SF Signal Pathway: Role in Malignant Progression

Activation of the c-Met receptor initiates a wide variety of signal pathways in the target cell. The c-Met receptor is a cell surface glycoprotein composed of an extracellular α-subunit and a transmembrane β-subunit. Binding of HGF/SF to c-Met, causes an increase in the tyrosine kinase activity of the β-subunit resulting in receptor autophosphorylation [145–147]. C-Met signaling is controlled through a multifunctional docking site comprised of two tandem arranged phosphotyrosines [146]. Mutational analysis has shown an absolute requirement of the multifunctional docking element for both physiological and pathophysiological properties of the c-Met receptor. Upon autophosphorylation this docking site binds and activates numerous SH2-containing adapters including GAB1, SHC, GRB2, and the signal transducers phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K), phospholipase C-γ (PLC-γ), Src, Akt, SHP2 phosphatase, and STAT3 [99, 148, 100, 126, 149–156] (Fig. 2.1), Interestingly, promotion of invasive growth by activated wild-type c-Met in neoplastic tissues is dependent upon physical association with the α6β4 integrin. The integrin serves as an additional docking platform for HGF/SF dependent transducers including PI3K and SHC that act synergistically with activators binding the c-Met catalytic domain [157].

Considerable data exist upon the individual roles of these signaling molecules and adapters in C-Met-mediated tumor progression. GRB2 is essential for

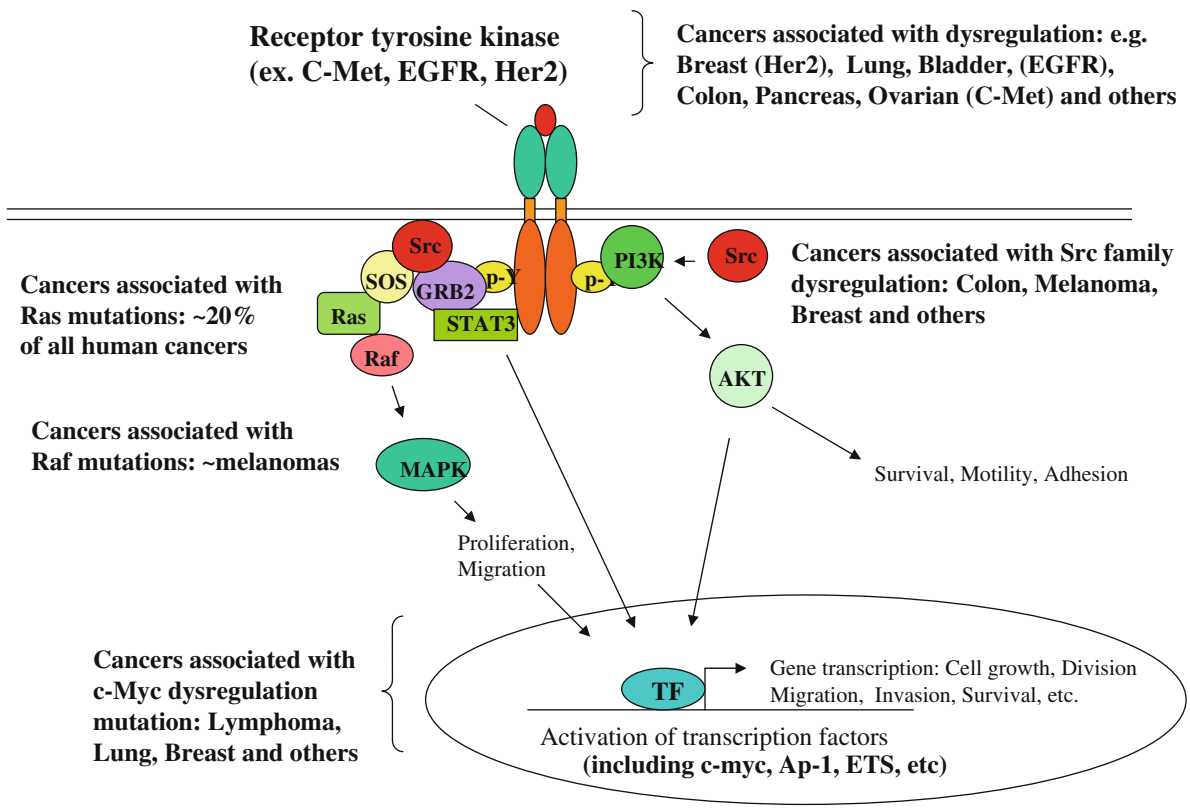


Fig. 2.1 Abbreviated signaling pathway mediated by protein tyrosine kinase receptors. Overexpression of receptors often contributes to malignant progression, and leads to activation of "downstream" proto-oncogenes. As discussed In the text, activation of these downstream signaling molecules may occur independently of receptor activation. Some of most frequent tumors in which activation occurs are shown in the Figure; however, many other tumors have these alterations.

HGF induced c-Met function including motility and invasion [158, 147, 159]. GRB2 links SOS to the activated c-Met receptor and results in the initiation of Ras signaling leading to MAPK activation [147]. In addition to controlling cell proliferation MAPK increases the invasiveness and metastatic capability of c-Met hyper-activation via upregulation of the serine protease urokinase (uPA) and it's receptor (uPAR) [160, 161]. Protease urokinase degrades components of the extracellular matrix (ECM) while activating additional proteases including plasmin and metalloproteinases (MMPs) that further degrade both the ECM and basement membrane [162]. PI3K is involved in the mitogenic effect of c-Met-HGF/SF activation and in conjunction with AKT inhibits apoptosis and enhances DNA repair [163, 164, 153, 156]. C-Met activated Src results in increased motility and anchorage independent growth [152]. Src has been shown to interact with paxillin and focal adhesion kinase (FAK), two kinases that participate in cytoskeletal rearrangements [165]. Currently, small molecule inhibitors of c-Met are in development and may prove to be important tools in the treatment of tumors with aberrant c-Met expression or activation.

2.9 The Ras Oncogene

The three members of the Ras family small GTP-binding proteins, H-, N-, and K-Ras, are important regulators of essential cellular processes including proliferation, differentiation, survival and apoptosis. While the Ras genes share a high degree of homology they are not entirely functionally redundant as only K-Ras is essential for development [166–168].

Ras acts as a membrane bound molecular switch, which cycles between a GTP-bound active and a GDP-bound inactive state. The cycle is regulated via guanine-nucleotide exchange factors (GEFs) that promote the active GTP-bound Ras, and GTPase activating proteins (GAPs), which increase the low-intrinsitic GTPase activity of Ras. Ras activation occurs following extracellular stimulation and receptor phosphorylation events that recruit GEFs to the plasma membrane where they bind via adapter proteins and induce the active Ras-GTP complex. The GTP-bound Ras activates several critical effectors including the serine-threonine kinase Raf-1. Raf-1 activates the extracellular-regulated kinase pathway (Erk, also known as MAPK) which regulates proliferation and differentiation [169, 170]. Other Ras activated effectors include phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K), which is involved in survival, proliferation and metabolism, and the nucleotide exchange factors for Ral GTPase RalGDS [171–173].

2.10 Mechanisms of Ras Dysregulation

Ras signaling in normal tissues is transient due to the gradual intrinsic guanine triphosphatease (GTPase) activity of Ras itself and by cytoplasmic GTPases that rapidly convert Ras into the GTP-bound inactive state. Dysregulation of Ras function typically occurs from overexpression, mutation, or loss of GTPases that target Ras. Ras overexpression has been documented in a variety of human cancers including neuroblastoma, colon, lung, breast, bladder, head and neck, and stomach [174–188]. Interestingly, the correlation of elevated Ras expression to patient prognosis is extremely variable. Head and neck cancers and neuroblastomas with elevated Ras have a favorable patient prognosis while gastric, colorectal, and lung do not [176, 181, 184, 186]. This disparity may be due in part to the stage of disease when Ras dysregulation occurs. Ras overexpression is postulated to be an early event in head and neck and neuroblastoma cancers, while in colorectal, lung, and gastric cancers a late stage event. Ras overexpression in late stage disease may accompany other genetic alterations that promote a more aggressive disease.

Ras mutations found in human cancers that induce malignant transformation have been reviewed extensively. Ras mutations are almost exclusively found in amino acids 12, 13, 59, and 61 [189]. These mutations alter the GTPase activity of Ras by preventing GAPS from promoting the hydrolysis of GTP-bound Ras resulting in constitutive Ras activation. Hyperactive Ras can also result from the loss of GAP expression or activity. Loss of the GTPase tumor suppressor gene product NF1 results in elevated Ras activation and neurofibromatosis type 1 cancers. These cancers include benign and malignant tumors of neural crest origin including melanomas [190, 191]. Enhanced Ras activation can also occur in response to increased stimulation by upstream mediators. These upstream mediators are

numerous but include kinase receptors such as c-Met, EGFR, and platelet derived growth factor receptor (PDGFR).

2.11 Ras Mediated Signaling Cascade: Implications in Malignant Progression

Increases in Ras activation result in the activation of downstream effectors that can promote oncogenesis and malignant progression. The most heavily studied Ras effector is the serine-threonine kinase Raf-1. Activated Raf phosphorylates and activates the mitogen-activated protein kinases 1 and 2 (MEK1 and MEK2), which in turn activate the mitogen-activated protein kinases (MAPKs) ERK1 and ERK2 (extracellular signal regulated kinases 1 and 2). Targets for the ERK proteins are numerous but include the Ets family of transcription factors [192, 193]. Genes activated by the Ets family include components of the AP-1 transcription factors which induce division by activating the cellular machinery that drives proliferation such as the D-type cyclins [194–196]. Ets also regulates genes that encode genes that are involved in invasion and metastasis including matrix metalloproteinase MMP-1 and MMP-9. The products of these genes participate in the degradation and remodeling of the extracellular matrix [197–198].

Additional effectors activated by Ras include phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K). PI3K regulates a number of important cellular processes such as proliferation, cytoskeletal rearrangements, transformation, and survival. Akt/PKB promotion of cell survival results from the induction of survival signals and downregulating of apoptotic inducing signals [47, 199]. Targets of AKT/PKB survival signals include both transcription factors and regulatory proteins [200, 47, 201–203]. Transcription factors activated by AKT/PKB include CREB, NFκB, and the Forkhead family member FKHRL1 [204]. Phosphorylation of FKHRL1 by AKT/PKB results in reduced transcription of the apoptosis-inducing factor Fas ligand [205]. Additional AKT/PKB survival signals include the desensitization of TNF-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL) and downregulation of glycogen synthase-3 (GSK-3) which suppresses proliferation and survival, and inactivation of the pro-apopotic Bcl-2 family member BAD [205–210].

2.12 Ras in Human Cancers and Targeted Ras Therapies

Approximately 20% of all human cancers contain Ras point mutations resulting in activated Ras. Some specific cancers have a high prevalence of Ras mutations (90% of pancreatic cancers, 50% of colon carcinomas, and 30% of lung carcinomas) [189, 166]. Due to the large numbers of tumors having Ras mutations the development of Ras specific inhibitors that target specific components of the signal transduction pathway is being pursued. One therapeutic strategy employs farnesyltransferase inhibitors (FTIs), which block the covalent attachment of a farnesyl isoprenoid group to the carboxy-terminal of Ras and are a requirement for membrane localization and activation. Despite preclinical evidence that these inhibitors (R115777 and SCH66336) may be effective in interrupting Ras mediated pathways, clinical results have been disappointing. Potential discrepancies between preclinical and clinical results may be due to the inability of the FTIs to effectively block the function of all isoforms of endogenous Ras. This is supported by the lack of toxicity from the FTIs in normal tissues, where Ras proteins are required for essential cellular functions. Additionally, FTIs may not exclusively target the farnesyl isoprenoid of Ras, but also other proteins similarly modified.

Other Ras specific therapies utilize kinase inhibitors that target components of the Ras pathway. These inhibitors target upstream activators of Ras such as growth factor receptors (EGFR receptors as discussed earlier), and downstream components including the RAF/MEK kinase pathway (BAY 43-9006 and CI-1040/PD184352 respectively). CI-1040/PD184352 has been shown to effectively inhibit proliferation, survival, and metastasis of some tumor cell lines in some preclinical models and is currently undergoing evaluation in clinical trials. The Raf inhibitor BAY 43-9006, which also targets the BRAF kinase, has been shown to reduce some proliferative pathways in patients and analysis of this drug in phase II and III trials will be significant. Additional therapies that may reduce Ras activation target the upstream

activators of Ras including EGFR and are discussed previously.

2.13 The Src Kinase Family

Src was initially discovered as an oncogenic protein of the Rous sarcoma retrovirus [211]. The transforming gene of the Rous sarcoma virus, v-src, is a mutated and activated form of a normal cellular gene, c-src, which encodes a protein with intrinsic tyrosine kinase activity. Following its initial discovery, eight closely related members have been identified which comprise the Src family kinases (SFKs); Src, Fyn, Yes, Lck, Hck, Fgr, Lyn, and Blk. All Src family members are composed of unique protein domains including an amino terminus membrane-targeting known as the SH4 domain (Src homology 4), a poorly conserved unique domain, an SH3 domain, SH2 domain, tyrosine kinase domain, and a regulatory region [212]. Src is maintained in an inactive state by intramolecular interactions between the SH2 and SH3 domains controlled via phosphorylation of Y-527 that restricts accessibility of the kinase domain for ATP and substrates. Activation of SFKs occurs by two primary mechanisms, dephosphorylation of Y-527 or by phosphotyrosine proteins that bind to the SH2 domain and prevent the inactive conformation. These mechanisms allow the activation of the intrinsic protein kinase activity and phosphorylation of critical tyrosine residues in the activation domain [213, 212].

The SFKs are membrane-associated non-receptor tyrosine kinases that regulate critical signal transduction pathways. While most of the SFKs are expressed in cells of hematopoietic origin, Src, Yes and Fyn show a ubiquitous pattern of expression and are highly expressed in platelets, neurons, and some epithelial tissues [214]. The Src kinases are activated in response to specific cellular signals and induce proliferation, survival, motility, and invasion. These kinases also participate in the regulation of cytokine receptors, receptor protein kinases, g-protein linked receptors and integrins [214]. While the Src kinase families are critical in normal cellular responses, overexpression and/or hyper-activation of specific family members occurs in some human cancers. C-Src c-Lck, and c-Yes dysregulation occurs in cancers of epithelial origin including colorectal, head and neck, and breast [215–221]. Other family members are postulated to have a role in cancers of hematopoietic origin including leukemia and lymphomas [222, 223].

2.14 Src Dysregulation

The dysregulation of Src family members has been extensively studied in human colorectal cancers and to a lesser extent in breast cancer. Src protein levels and kinase activity are frequently elevated in colon carcinoma relative to normal colonic muscosa [224, 215]. Studies also suggest that the progression of primary tumors to metastasis in colon cancers correlates with an increase in Src kinase activity and protein expression [217, 225]. The most common mechanism leading to aberrant Src expression or activity is through increased expression or activation of growth factors receptors that recruit and activate Src, or through improper regulation and/or loss of non-receptor factors that regulate Src kinase activity. The epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), Her2/Neu, and c-Met receptors are all commonly overexpressed or overactivated in a variety of human tumors including breast and colorectal cancers [226, 44, 227]. These receptors activate Src and elevated Src activity has been shown to increase metastatic and tumorigenic potential of some cancers [148, 228, 229]. Dysregulation of Src activity can also occur though aberrant expression or activity of proteins that regulate Src. The Csk family is comprised of critical negative regulators of Src and reduced expression of Csk with a subsequent increase in Src activation occurs in some cancers [230–232]. Csks overexpression in animal models results in reduced Src activation and suppression of metastasis of colon cancer cells [233]. Several potential positive regulators of Src activation have also been identified including PTP1, PTP-α, PTPO1, SHP-1 and SHP-2. Reduced expression of SHP-1 is capable of function as a positive regulator of Src function and elevated expression of PTP1B, with accompanying elevated Src activity, occurs in some breast cancer cell lines [234, 235]. Interestingly, mutations of the Src catalytic region resulting in a constitutively active isoforms has been reported but similar studies have not substantiated these results, suggesting that mutations of Src resulting in activation are a rare event and not a major contributor to Src's role in malignant tissues.

2.15 The Src Signaling Pathway–Implications in Malignant Progression

Downstream targets of Src family members are numerous and regulate many of the same functions essential to development, including proliferation, apoptosis, angiogenesis, and invasion/migration [214]. Src participation in cell proliferation is in part controlled via positive and negative regulators of the cell cycle. V-Src suppresses the cyclin kinase inhibitor p27 and induces expression and activation of cyclins which prevents a quiescent state and promotes proliferation [236]. Additional studies have shown that c-Src is required for mitogenic functions including DNA synthesis induced by the PDGF, EGF and CSF (colony stimulating factor) tyrosine kinase receptors [237, 238]. Src is also specifically required at the G1 and G2 to M phase transition in cell division [239, 240]. Transcription factors that undergo activation by Src include c-myc and members of the STAT family that regulate genes central to cell proliferation [241, 242]. STAT3 and STAT5 are have been shown to be constitutively activated in squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck (SCCHN) where EGFR is commonly overexpressed and hyperactivation of Src occurs [242]. While these studies suggest a direct role of Src in inducing cellular proliferation, other reports utilizing mutated PDGF receptors which fail to activate Src yet DNA synthesis still occurs, contradict these conclusions [243]. Possible explanations for these opposing results may be that basal levels of active Src are sufficient for cell proliferation or that Src activation does not require direct interactions with the PDGF receptor but occurs via other PDGF dependent mediators.

Src signaling has also been implicated in cell survival [244]. V-Src mediated anti-apoptotic pathways are dependent upon activation of the PI3K and AKT/PKB pathway [245]. Prior studies have shown that Akt/PKB promotes cell survival by phosphorylation of BAD, Caspase-9, and FKHR1 [47, 246, 205]. Akt/PKB phosphorylation of BAD prevents its interaction with the Bcl-2 and Bcl-xL, both apoptotic-inducing proteins, thus promoting cell survival [247]. Phosphorylation of caspase-9 by AKT inhibits the pro-apoptotic protein's degradation of critical cellular enzymes, while phosphorylation of the transcription factor FKHR1 reduces expression of several apoptosis inducing genes including the Fas ligand [246, 205].

The angiogenesis promoting vascular edothelial growth factor (VEGF) has been shown to stimulate Src activation in endothelial cells and activated Src associates with the VEGF receptor KDR/Flt1 [248, 249]. VEGF expression is also important in the neovascularization of growing tumor cells and both constitutive and inducible expression of VEGF by colon carcinoma cells has been shown to be Src dependent [250].

Src also contributes to an increase in invasiness and metastasis through regulation of proteins that are involved in cytoskeletal rearrangements. In cells with kinase-defective Src aberrant focal adhesions occur and their migration/invasive capabilities are reduced [251]. In addition downregulation of Src activation via the Src regulator protein Csk resulted in reduced FAK phosphorylation and aberrant cellular adhesion [252]. Src activation by VEGF results in activation of the focal adhesion kinase (FAK) that is involved in cytoskeletal rearrangements and migration/invasion. Enhanced FAK expression, like that of Src, commonly occurs in some cancers and is postulated to facilitate invasion and metastasis [253]. Src activation may also contribute to the invasiness of certain cancers including colon carcinoma through upregulation of matrix proteases that facilitate the degradation of the extracellular matrix [254]. Overexpression of the Src inhibitor Csk resulted in reduced expression of matrix metalloprotease MMP-2, further supporting a role for Src in metastasis and invasion [233]. An addition to degradation of the extracellular matrix is another important step in the progression of a metastatic phenotype is the disruption of cadherin-mediated cell-to-cell contacts. Studies in colon cancer have indicated that members of the Src kinase family can disrupt these cell-to-cell junctions [255]. Src expression results in a large decrease in cell-to-cell adhesion accompanied by cadherin phosphorylation and loss of cadherin/catenin association [221]. Another requirement of metastasis is the ability to detach from the primary tumor and surrounding matrix. Loss of cellular adhesion results in a form of programmed cell death termed anoikis. Activation of Src in colon carcinoma contributes to anoikis resistance and overexpression of activated Src enhanced this resistance [256].

2.16 The c-Myc Oncogene

C-myc, is the cellular homolog of v-myc oncogene, which was initially identified as a retroviral transforming factor in chickens [257, 258]. Following the initial discovery of c-myc four other closely related proteins have been identified: B-myc, L-myc, N-myc, and S-myc. These proteins comprise the myc family but only c-myc, N-myc and L-myc have transforming potential. Altered expression of c-myc occurs in a variety of human cancers including Burkitt's lymphoma, lung carcinoma, and breast carcinoma [259–261]. N-myc expression is altered in neuroblastoma and retinoblastoma [262–264]. Elevated expression of L-myc occurs in small cell lung carcinomas [265].

The c-myc, L-myc and N-myc proteins have a role in proliferation, growth, apoptosis, and terminal differentation [266–268]. Myc is rapidly induced in response to a variety of mitogenic stimuli and is an immediate early type response, requiring no gene expression or protein synthesis. Initial characterization suggested the myc proteins may function in gene regulation but failure of isolated full-length c-myc to bind DNA contradicted these conclusions [269]. It was the identification of Max, the heterodimerization partner of c-myc, which showed that myc could function as a sequence specific transcription factor capable of binding DNA and activating a variety of genes in mammalian and yeast cells [270–273]. Additional support for the requirement of the Max:Myc complex in c-myc mediated gene transcription was derived by showing that myc's transforming potential is negated by disruption of the heterodimer complex and deletion of either c-myc or Max results in embryonic lethality [274–276, 268, 277].

Early interpretations of the role of Max in myc regulation suggest that Max, which lacks a transactivation domain [273], targets the heterodimer complex to sequence specific DNA regions where c-myc activates transcription of downstream genes. It was also proposed that Max homodimers may compete with available DNA binding sites and act as a myc repressor, but actual in vivo repression eludes detection [278, 272, 273, 279]. Recently the identification of additional Max binding partners, the Mad family proteins, which when coupled to Max antagonize myc transactivation has shown that complex and cooperative regulation patterns are mediated by the myc:Mad:Max proteins [280, 281]. Numerous excellent reviews on the functional relationship of the myc:Mad:Max network have been published in recent years which discuss in detail the molecular interaction of these proteins [269, 282].

2.17 Mechanisms of c-Myc Dysregulation

In human cancers loss of normal myc regulation occurs though several mechanisms. In lymphoid cancers such as Burkitt's lymphoma, the c-myc proto-oncogene, which is located on chromosome 8q24, undergoes translocation in B-cells to one of the three immunogloblin genes located on chromosome 2, 14, or 22 and results in improper activation of the myc gene [259, 260, 283]. The c-myc gene is also amplified in a variety of human cancers including lung and breast, and elevated expression of the c-myc gene occurs in approximately 30% of both breast and colon carcinomas [261, 284–287]. Aberrant c-myc expression can occur via loss of regulatory mechanisms that control myc transcription. The adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) gene is frequently mutated in some human cancers including colon carcinoma [288, 289]. APC negatively regulates β-catenin, which is a coactivator for the transcription factor Tcf [290–292]. Tcf directly activates c-myc expression and loss of functional APC results in constitutive transcriptional activation by a beta-catenin-Tcf complex and increased expression of myc [292, 293]. In bladder cancer mutation of beta-catenin results in overexpression of c-myc and the cell cycle regulatory protein cyclin-D [294]. Occurrences of point mutations resulting in altered isoforms of the c-myc protein have also been reported [295, 296]. In Burkitt's lymphoma these sites occur at regions surrounding phosphorylation sites that are postulated to control negative regulation of c-myc activity and degradation of the c-myc protein [297–299].

2.18 The Role of c-myc in Oncogenesis and Malignant Transformation

Array analysis has identified a myriad of genes that are targets of c-myc regulation including the cyclin/cyclin-dependent kinases (CDK) and CDK inhibitors

[300–303]. The cyclins/CDKs and CDK inhibitors are essential cell cycle regulatory proteins whose dysregulation often occurs in the development of cancer [304, 300]. Cyclin D2 expression has been shown to be directly regulated by the myc/mad/max network [305]. Over-expression of cyclins A and E and CDK activation occurs with enhanced myc activity [306–308]. Activation of the D and E cyclin/CDK complexes is required for the synthesis (S) phase of the cell cycle [300]. Myc activation also downregulates the CDK inhibitor p27 (kip) and p21, which facilitates activation of the cyclin/CDK complexes and entry into the G1-S phase of the cell cycle [309–313]. Targets of the cyclin/CDKs include the retinoblastoma (RB) tumor suppressor gene [314, 315]. The RB protein, also a critical regulator of the G1-S stage of the cell cycle, represses transcriptional regulation of the E2F transcription factor. Inactivation of RB via cyclin/CDK phosphorylation events releases E2F and promotes the G1-S phase [316, 317]. Myc also interferes with RB function by enhancing expression of the RB repressing protein Id2 thus further ensuring RB inactivation and E2F activity [318].

Myc target genes also include those that are associated with cell growth and metabolism and are a separate function from that of cell cycle progression [319, 320]. These genes included those that are involved in protein and nucleotide synthesis, translational regulation, and protein folding, turnover and transport [301, 321]. In B cells and fibroblasts overexpression of myc results in enlarged cells and augmented growth independent of myc control of cell cycle regulation [322–324]. These processes, while being independent of cell cycle regulation by myc, further support the considerable role that myc participates in cell growth and division.

2.19 Conclusion

While considerable data exists, upon the role of oncogenes in the development of cancer and malignant transformation, our understanding is still incomplete. This is due in part because cancers themselves are characterized by several oncogenic events, each of which contributes to the maligiant phenotype. It is both these multiple genetic events and signaling pathway redundancy that present one of the biggest challenges in designing antineoplastic therapies. To date only the inhibitor STI-571, which targets the frequently mutated BCR-ABL oncogene in chronic myloid leukemia (CML), has shown great success as an inhibitor of a proto-oncogene. Other therapeutic agents have had mixed results in clinical trials, but combining therapies that target different oncogenes may prove effective. Ultimately it will be the molecular understanding of the collective roles of these oncogenes in each indivdual cancer and utilizing these observations in designing specific antineoplastic agents that will provide clinical impact.

References

1. Chen, W. S., C. S. Lazar, M. Poenie, R. Y. Tsien, G. N. Gill and M. G. Rosenfeld (1987). “Requirement for intrinsic protein tyrosine kinase in the immediate and late actions of the EGF receptor.” Nature 328: 820–823.
2. Massague, J. and A. Pandiella (1993). “Membrane-anchored growth factors.” Annu Rev Biochem 62: 515–541.
3. Chang, H., D. J. Riese, 2nd, W. Gilbert, D. F. Stern and U. J. McMahan (1997). “Ligands for ErbB-family receptors encoded by a neuregulin-like gene.” Nature 387: 509–512.
4. Zhang, D., M. X. Sliwkowski, M. Mark, G. Frantz, R. Akita, Y. Sun, K. Hillan, C. Crowley, J. Brush and P. J. Godowski (1997). “Neuregulin-3 (NRG3): a novel neural tissue-enriched protein that binds and activates ErbB4.” Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 94: 9562–9567.
5. Carpenter, G. (2000). “EGF receptor transactivation mediated by the proteolytic production of EGF-like agonists.” Sci STKE 2000: PE1.
6. Muthuswamy, S. K., M. Gilman and J. S. Brugge (1999). “Controlled dimerization of ErbB receptors provides evidence for differential signaling by homo- and heterodimers.” Mol Cell Biol 19: 6845–6857.
7. Karunagaran, D., E. Tzahar, R. R. Beerli, X. Chen, D. Graus-Porta, B. J. Ratzkin, R. Seger, N. E. Hynes and Y. Yarden (1996). “ErbB-2 is a common auxiliary subunit of NDF and EGF receptors: implications for breast cancer.” EMBO J 15: 254–264.
8. Lenferink, A. E., R. Pinkas-Kramarski, M. L. van de Poll, M. J. van Vugt, L. N. Klapper, E. Tzahar, H. Waterman, M. Sela, E. J. van Zoelen and Y. Yarden (1998). “Differential endocytic routing of homo- and hetero-dimeric ErbB tyrosine kinases confers signaling superiority to receptor heterodimers.” EMBO J 17: 3385–3397.
9. Gorgoulis, V., D. Aninos, P. Mikou, P. Kanavaros, A. Karameris, J. Joardanoglou, A. Rasidakis, M. Veslemes, B. Ozanne and D. A. Spandidos (1992). “Expression of EGF, TGF-alpha and EGFR in squamous cell lung carcinomas.” Anticancer Res 12: 1183–1187.

10. Umekita, Y., Y. Ohi, Y. Sagara and H. Yoshida (2000). "Co-expression of epidermal growth factor receptor and transforming growth factor-alpha predicts worse prognosis in breast-cancer patients." Int J Cancer 89: 484–487.
11. Di Marco, E., J. H. Pierce, T. P. Fleming, M. H. Kraus, C. J. Molloy, S. A. Aaronson and P. P. Di Fiore (1989). "Autocrine interaction between TGF alpha and the EGF-receptor: quantitative requirements for induction of the malignant phenotype." Oncogene 4: 831–838.
12. Wiley, H. S. (1988). "Anomalous binding of epidermal growth factor to A431 cells is due to the effect of high receptor densities and a saturable endocytic system." J Cell Biol 107: 801–810.
13. Sorkin, A. and C. M. Waters (1993). "Endocytosis of growth factor receptors." Bioessays 15: 375–382.
14. French, A. R., G. P. Sudlow, H. S. Wiley and D. A. Lauffenburger (1994). "Postendocytic trafficking of epidermal growth factor-receptor complexes is mediated through saturable and specific endosomal interactions." J Biol Chem 269: 15749–15755.
15. Tateishi, M., T. Ishida, S. Kohdono, M. Hamatake, Y. Fukuyama and K. Sugimachi (1994). "Prognostic influence of the co-expression of epidermal growth factor receptor and c-erbB-2 protein in human lung adenocarcinoma." Surg Oncol 3: 109–113.
16. Xia, W., Y. K. Lau, H. Z. Zhang, F. Y. Xiao, D. A. Johnston, A. R. Liu, L. Li, R. L. Katz and M. C. Hung (1999). "Combination of EGFR, HER-2/neu, and HER-3 is a stronger predictor for the outcome of oral squamous cell carcinoma than any individual family members." Clin Cancer Res 5: 4164–4174.
17. Guy, C. T., M. A. Webster, M. Schaller, T. J. Parsons, R. D. Cardiff and W. J. Muller (1992). "Expression of the neu protooncogene in the mammary epithelium of transgenic mice induces metastatic disease." Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 89: 10578–10582.
18. Ram, T. G. and S. P. Ethier (1996). "Phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase recruitment by p185erbB-2 and erbB-3 is potently induced by neu differentiation factor/heregulin during mitogenesis and is constitutively elevated in growth factor-independent breast carcinoma cells with c-erbB-2 gene amplification." Cell Growth Differ 7: 551–561.
19. Worthylake, R., L. K. Opresko and H. S. Wiley (1999). "ErbB-2 amplification inhibits down-regulation and induces constitutive activation of both ErbB-2 and epidermal growth factor receptors." J Biol Chem 274: 8865–8874.
20. Kokai, Y., J. N. Myers, T. Wada, V. I. Brown, C. M. LeVea, J. G. Davis, K. Dobashi and M. I. Greene (1989). "Synergistic interaction of p185c-neu and the EGF receptor leads to transformation of rodent fibroblasts." Cell 58: 287–292.
21. Dougall, W. C., X. Qian and M. I. Greene (1993). "Interaction of the neu/p185 and EGF receptor tyrosine kinases: implications for cellular transformation and tumor therapy." J Cell Biochem 53: 61–73.
22. van Agthoven, T., T. L. van Agthoven, A. Dekker, J. A. Foekens and L. C. Dorssers (1994). "Induction of estrogen independence of ZR-75-1 human breast cancer cells by epigenetic alterations." Mol Endocrinol 8: 1474–1483.
23. Knowlden, J. M., I. R. Hutcheson, H. E. Jones, T. Madden, J. M. Gee, M. E. Harper, D. Barrow, A. E. Wakeling and R. I. Nicholson (2003). "Elevated levels of epidermal growth factor receptor/c-erbB2 heterodimers mediate an autocrine growth regulatory pathway in tamoxifen-resistant MCF-7 cells." Endocrinology 144: 1032–1044.
24. Carpenter, G. (1999). "Employment of the epidermal growth factor receptor in growth factor-independent signaling pathways." J Cell Biol 146: 697–702.
25. Prenzel, N., E. Zwick, M. Leserer and A. Ullrich (2000). "Tyrosine kinase signalling in breast cancer. Epidermal growth factor receptor: convergence point for signal integration and diversification." Breast Cancer Res 2: 184–190.
26. Gschwind, A., E. Zwick, N. Prenzel, M. Leserer and A. Ullrich (2001). "Cell communication networks: epidermal growth factor receptor transactivation as the paradigm for interreceptor signal transmission." Oncogene 20: 1594–1600.
27. Jalink, K., T. Eichholtz, F. R. Postma, E. J. van Corven and W. H. Moolenaar (1993). "Lysophosphatidic acid induces neuronal shape changes via a novel, receptor-mediated signaling pathway: similarity to thrombin action." Cell Growth Differ 4: 247–255.
28. Tice, D. A., J. S. Biscardi, A. L. Nickles and S. J. Parsons (1999). "Mechanism of biological synergy between cellular Src and epidermal growth factor receptor." Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 96: 1415–1420.
29. Prenzel, N., E. Zwick, H. Daub, M. Leserer, R. Abraham, C. Wallasch and A. Ullrich (1999). "EGF receptor transactivation by G-protein-coupled receptors requires metalloproteinase cleavage of proHB-EGF." Nature 402: 884–888.
30. Hirata, M., T. Umata, T. Takahashi, M. Ohnuma, Y. Miura, R. Iwamoto and E. Mekada (2001). "Identification of serum factor inducing ectodomain shedding of proHB-EGF and studies of noncleavable mutants of proHB-EGF." Biochem Biophys Res Commun 283: 915–922.
31. Fedi, P., J. H. Pierce, P. P. di Fiore and M. H. Kraus (1994). "Efficient coupling with phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase, but not phospholipase C gamma or GTPase-activating protein, distinguishes ErbB-3 signaling from that of other ErbB/EGFR family members." Mol Cell Biol 14: 492–500.
32. Zhong, Z., Z. Wen and J. E. Darnell, Jr. (1994). "Stat3: a STAT family member activated by tyrosine phosphorylation in response to epidermal growth factor and interleukin-6." Science 264: 95–98.
33. David, M., L. Wong, R. Flavell, S. A. Thompson, A. Wells, A. C. Larner and G. R. Johnson (1996). "STAT activation by epidermal growth factor (EGF) and amphiregulin. Requirement for the EGF receptor kinase but not for tyrosine phosphorylation sites or JAK1." J Biol Chem 271: 9185–9188.
34. Prigent, S. A., M. Nagane, H. Lin, I. Huvar, G. R. Boss, J. R. Feramisco, W. K. Cavenee and H. S. Huang (1996). "Enhanced tumorigenic behavior of glioblastoma cells expressing a truncated epidermal growth factor receptor is mediated through the Ras-Shc-Grb2 pathway." J Biol Chem 271: 25639–25645.

35. Sartor, C. I., M. L. Dziubinski, C. L. Yu, R. Jove and S. P. Ethier (1997). "Role of epidermal growth factor receptor and STAT-3 activation in autonomous proliferation of SUM-102PT human breast cancer cells." Cancer Res 57: 978–987.
36. Moscatello, D. K., M. Holgado-Madruga, D. R. Emlet, R. B. Montgomery and A. J. Wong (1998). "Constitutive activation of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase by a naturally occurring mutant epidermal growth factor receptor." J Biol Chem 273: 200–206.
37. Wu, C. J., D. M. O'Rourke, G. S. Feng, G. R. Johnson, Q. Wang and M. I. Greene (2001). "The tyrosine phosphatase SHP-2 is required for mediating phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase/Akt activation by growth factors." Oncogene 20: 6018–6025.
38. Montgomery, R. B., D. K. Moscatello, A. J. Wong, J. A. Cooper and W. L. Stahl (1995). "Differential modulation of mitogen-activated protein (MAP) kinase/extracellular signal-related kinase and MAP kinase activities by a mutant epidermal growth factor receptor." J Biol Chem 270: 30562–30566.
39. Cai, T., K. Nishida, T. Hirano and P. A. Khavari (2002). "Gab1 and SHP-2 promote Ras/MAPK regulation of epidermal growth and differentiation." J Cell Biol 159: 103–112.
40. Narita, Y., M. Nagane, K. Mishima, H. J. Huang, F. B. Furnari and W. K. Cavenee (2002). "Mutant epidermal growth factor receptor signaling down-regulates p27 through activation of the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase/Akt pathway in glioblastomas." Cancer Res 62: 6764–6769.
41. Jiang, B. H., J. Z. Zheng, M. Aoki and P. K. Vogt (2000). "Phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase signaling mediates angiogenesis and expression of vascular endothelial growth factor in endothelial cells." Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 97: 1749–1753.
42. Maity, A., N. Pore, J. Lee, D. Solomon and D. M. O'Rourke (2000). "Epidermal growth factor receptor transcriptionally up-regulates vascular endothelial growth factor expression in human glioblastoma cells via a pathway involving phosphatidylinositol 3'-kinase and distinct from that induced by hypoxia." Cancer Res 60: 5879–5886.
43. Clarke, K., K. Smith, W. J. Gullick and A. L. Harris (2001). "Mutant epidermal growth factor receptor enhances induction of vascular endothelial growth factor by hypoxia and insulin-like growth factor-1 via a PI3 kinase dependent pathway." Br J Cancer 84: 1322–1329.
44. Salomon, D. S., R. Brandt, F. Ciardiello and N. Normanno (1995). "Epidermal growth factor-related peptides and their receptors in human malignancies." Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 19: 183–232.
45. Sainsbury, J. R., S. Nicholson, B. Angus, J. R. Farndon, A. J. Malcolm and A. L. Harris (1988). "Epidermal growth factor receptor status of histological sub-types of breast cancer." Br J Cancer 58: 458–460.
46. Ozawa, S., M. Ueda, N. Ando, N. Shimizu and O. Abe (1989). "Prognostic significance of epidermal growth factor receptor in esophageal squamous cell carcinomas." Cancer 63: 2169–2173.
47. Datta, S. R., H. Dudek, X. Tao, S. Masters, H. Fu, Y. Gotoh and M. E. Greenberg (1997). "Akt phosphorylation of BAD couples survival signals to the cell-intrinsic death machinery." Cell 91: 231–241.
48. Huang, S. M., J. M. Bock and P. M. Harari (1999). "Epidermal growth factor receptor blockade with C225 modulates proliferation, apoptosis, and radiosensitivity in squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck." Cancer Res 59: 1935–1940.
49. Khatua, S., K. M. Peterson, K. M. Brown, C. Lawlor, M. R. Santi, B. LaFleur, D. Dressman, D. A. Stephan and T. J. MacDonald (2003). "Overexpression of the EGFR/FKBP12/HIF-2alpha pathway identified in childhood astrocytomas by angiogenesis gene profiling." Cancer Res 63: 1865–1870.
50. Meyers, M. B., W. P. Shen, B. A. Spengler, V. Ciccarone, J. P. O'Brien, D. B. Donner, M. E. Furth and J. L. Biedler (1988). "Increased epidermal growth factor receptor in multidrug-resistant human neuroblastoma cells." J Cell Biochem 38: 87–97.
51. Klijn, J. G., M. P. Look, H. Portengen, J. Alexieva-Figusch, W. L. van Putten and J. A. Foekens (1994). "The prognostic value of epidermal growth factor receptor (EGF-R) in primary breast cancer: results of a 10 year follow-up study." Breast Cancer Res Treat 29: 73–83.
52. Newby, J. C., S. R. Johnston, I. E. Smith and M. Dowsett (1997). "Expression of epidermal growth factor receptor and c-erbB2 during the development of tamoxifen resistance in human breast cancer." Clin Cancer Res 3: 1643–1651.
53. Fischer-Colbrie, J., A. Witt, H. Heinzl, P. Speiser, K. Czerwenka, P. Sevelda and R. Zeillinger (1997). "EGFR and steroid receptors in ovarian carcinoma: comparison with prognostic parameters and outcome of patients." Anticancer Res 17: 613–619.
54. Wosikowski, K., D. Schuurhuis, G. J. Kops, M. Saceda and S. E. Bates (1997). "Altered gene expression in drug-resistant human breast cancer cells." Clin Cancer Res 3: 2405–2414.
55. Chen, X., T. K. Yeung and Z. Wang (2000). "Enhanced drug resistance in cells coexpressing ErbB2 with EGF receptor or ErbB3." Biochem Biophys Res Commun 277: 757–763.
56. Sartor, C. I. (2000). "Biological modifiers as potential radiosensitizers: targeting the epidermal growth factor receptor family." Semin Oncol 27: 15–20; discussion 92–100.
57. Magne, N., X. Pivot, R. J. Bensadoun, E. Guardiola, G. Poissonnet, O. Dassonville, M. Francoual, J. L. Formento, F. Demard, M. Schneider and G. Milano (2001). "The relationship of epidermal growth factor receptor levels to the prognosis of unresectable pharyngeal cancer patients treated by chemo-radiotherapy." Eur J Cancer 37: 2169–2177.
58. Arteaga, C. (2003). "Targeting HER1/EGFR: A molecular approach to cancer therapy." Semin Oncol 30: 3–14.
59. Gainet, M., E. Guardiola, A. Dufresne and X. Pivot (2003). "The Epidermal Growth Factor receptors (EGFR): a new target for anticancer therapy." Cancer Radiother 7: 195–199.
60. Wu, X., Z. Fan, H. Masui, N. Rosen and J. Mendelsohn (1995). "Apoptosis induced by an anti-epidermal growth

factor receptor monoclonal antibody in a human colorectal carcinoma cell line and its delay by insulin." J Clin Invest 95: 1897–1905.
61. Perrotte, P., T. Matsumoto, K. Inoue, H. Kuniyasu, B. Y. Eve, D. J. Hicklin, R. Radinsky and C. P. Dinney (1999). "Anti-epidermal growth factor receptor antibody C225 inhibits angiogenesis in human transitional cell carcinoma growing orthotopically in nude mice." Clin Cancer Res 5: 257–265.
62. Mendelsohn, J. and J. Baselga (2000). "The EGF receptor family as targets for cancer therapy." Oncogene 19: 6550–6565.
63. Baselga, J. (2002). "Why the epidermal growth factor receptor? The rationale for cancer therapy." Oncologist 7 Suppl 4: 2–8.
64. Ciardiello, F., R. Caputo, R. Bianco, V. Damiano, G. Fontanini, S. Cuccato, S. De Placido, A. R. Bianco and G. Tortora (2001). "Inhibition of growth factor production and angiogenesis in human cancer cells by ZD1839 (Iressa), a selective epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor." Clin Cancer Res 7: 1459–1465.
65. Moasser, M. M., A. Basso, S. D. Averbuch and N. Rosen (2001). "The tyrosine kinase inhibitor ZD1839 ("Iressa") inhibits HER2-driven signaling and suppresses the growth of HER2-overexpressing tumor cells." Cancer Res 61: 7184–7188.
66. Hirata, A., S. Ogawa, T. Kometani, T. Kuwano, S. Naito, M. Kuwano and M. Ono (2002). "ZD1839 (Iressa) induces antiangiogenic effects through inhibition of epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase." Cancer Res 62: 2554–2560.
67. Barnes, C. J., R. Bagheri-Yarmand, M. Mandal, Z. Yang, G. L. Clayman, W. K. Hong and R. Kumar (2003). "Suppression of epidermal growth factor receptor, mitogen-activated protein kinase, and pak1 pathways and invasiveness of human cutaneous squamous cancer cells by the tyrosine kinase inhibitor ZD1839 (Iressa)." Mol Cancer Ther 2: 345–351.
68. Herbst, R. S. (2002). "ZD1839: targeting the epidermal growth factor receptor in cancer therapy." Expert Opin Investig Drugs 11: 837–849.
69. Raben, D., B. A. Helfrich, D. Chan, G. Johnson and P. A. Bunn, Jr. (2002). "ZD1839, a selective epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor, alone and in combination with radiation and chemotherapy as a new therapeutic strategy in non-small cell lung cancer." Semin Oncol 29: 37–46.
70. Ranson, M., L. A. Hammond, D. Ferry, M. Kris, A. Tullo, P. I. Murray, V. Miller, S. Averbuch, J. Ochs, C. Morris, A. Feyereislova, H. Swaisland and E. K. Rowinsky (2002). "ZD1839, a selective oral epidermal growth factor receptor-tyrosine kinase inhibitor, is well tolerated and active in patients with solid, malignant tumors: results of a phase I trial." J Clin Oncol 20: 2240–2250.
71. Hidalgo, M., L. L. Siu, J. Nemunaitis, J. Rizzo, L. A. Hammond, C. Takimoto, S. G. Eckhardt, A. Tolcher, C. D. Britten, L. Denis, K. Ferrante, D. D. Von Hoff, S. Silberman and E. K. Rowinsky (2001). "Phase I and pharmacologic study of OSI-774, an epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor, in patients with advanced solid malignancies." J Clin Oncol 19: 3267–3279.
72. Grunwald, V. and M. Hidalgo (2003). "Development of the epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitor OSI-774." Semin Oncol 30: 23–31.
73. Hynes, N. E. and D. F. Stern (1994). "The biology of erbB-2/neu/HER-2 and its role in cancer." Biochim Biophys Acta 1198: 165–184.
74. Dowsett, M., T. Cooke, I. Ellis, W. J. Gullick, B. Gusterson, E. Mallon and R. Walker (2000). "Assessment of HER2 status in breast cancer: why, when and how?" Eur J Cancer 36: 170–176.
75. Kumar, R., M. Mandal, A. Lipton, H. Harvey and C. B. Thompson (1996). "Overexpression of HER2 modulates bcl-2, bcl-XL, and tamoxifen-induced apoptosis in human MCF-7 breast cancer cells." Clin Cancer Res 2: 1215–1219.
76. Harari, D. and Y. Yarden (2000). "Molecular mechanisms underlying ErbB2/HER2 action in breast cancer." Oncogene 19: 6102–6114.
77. Yarden, Y. and M. X. Sliwkowski (2001). "Untangling the ErbB signalling network." Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 2: 127–137.
78. Pinkas-Kramarski, R., L. Soussan, H. Waterman, G. Levkowitz, I. Alroy, L. Klapper, S. Lavi, R. Seger, B. J. Ratzkin, M. Sela and Y. Yarden (1996). "Diversification of Neu differentiation factor and epidermal growth factor signaling by combinatorial receptor interactions." EMBO J 15: 2452–2467.
79. Alroy, I. and Y. Yarden (1997). "The ErbB signaling network in embryogenesis and oncogenesis: signal diversification through combinatorial ligand-receptor interactions." FEBS Lett 410: 83–86.
80. Di Fiore, P. P., J. H. Pierce, M. H. Kraus, O. Segatto, C. R. King and S. A. Aaronson (1987). "erbB-2 is a potent oncogene when overexpressed in NIH/3T3 cells." Science 237: 178–182.
81. Graus-Porta, D., R. R. Beerli and N. E. Hynes (1995). "Single-chain antibody-mediated intracellular retention of ErbB-2 impairs Neu differentiation factor and epidermal growth factor signaling." Mol Cell Biol 15: 1182–1191.
82. Lindberg, L. E., S. Hedjazifar and D. Baeckstrom (2002). "c-erbB2-induced disruption of matrix adhesion and morphogenesis reveals a novel role for protein kinase B as a negative regulator of alpha(2)beta(1) integrin function." Mol Biol Cell 13: 2894–2908.
83. O'Hagan, R. C. and J. A. Hassell (1998). "The PEA3 Ets transcription factor is a downstream target of the HER2/Neu receptor tyrosine kinase." Oncogene 16: 301–310.
84. Bosc, D. G., B. S. Goueli and R. Janknecht (2001). "HER2/Neu-mediated activation of the ETS transcription factor ER81 and its target gene MMP-1." Oncogene 20: 6215–6224.
85. Bosc, D. G. and R. Janknecht (2002). "Regulation of Her2/neu promoter activity by the ETS transcription factor, ER81." J Cell Biochem 86: 174–183.
86. Graus-Porta, D., R. R. Beerli, J. M. Daly and N. E. Hynes (1997). "ErbB-2, the preferred heterodimerization partner of all ErbB receptors, is a mediator of lateral signaling." EMBO J 16: 1647–1655.

87. Venter, D. J., N. L. Tuzi, S. Kumar and W. J. Gullick (1987). "Overexpression of the c-erbB-2 oncoprotein in human breast carcinomas: immunohistological assessment correlates with gene amplification." Lancet 2: 69–72.
88. Pauletti, G., W. Godolphin, M. F. Press and D. J. Slamon (1996). "Detection and quantitation of HER-2/neu gene amplification in human breast cancer archival material using fluorescence in situ hybridization." Oncogene 13: 63–72.
89. Bertram, J., M. Killian, W. Brysch, K. H. Schlingensiepen and M. Kneba (1994). "Reduction of erbB2 gene product in mammary carcinoma cell lines by erbB2 mRNA-specific and tyrosine kinase consensus phosphorothioate antisense oligonucleotides." Biochem Biophys Res Commun 200: 661–667.
90. Zhang, L., Y. K. Lau, W. Xia, G. N. Hortobagyi and M. C. Hung (1999). "Tyrosine kinase inhibitor emodin suppresses growth of HER-2/neu-overexpressing breast cancer cells in athymic mice and sensitizes these cells to the inhibitory effect of paclitaxel." Clin Cancer Res 5: 343–353.
91. Baselga, J. and J. Albanell (2001). "Mechanism of action of anti-HER2 monoclonal antibodies." Ann Oncol 12 Suppl 1: S35–41.
92. Baselga, J., J. Albanell, M. A. Molina and J. Arribas (2001). "Mechanism of action of trastuzumab and scientific update." Semin Oncol 28: 4–11.
93. Izumi, Y., L. Xu, E. di Tomaso, D. Fukumura and R. K. Jain (2002). "Tumour biology: herceptin acts as an anti-angiogenic cocktail." Nature 416: 279–280.
94. Yakes, F. M., W. Chinratanalab, C. A. Ritter, W. King, S. Seelig and C. L. Arteaga (2002). "Herceptin-induced inhibition of phosphatidylinositol-3 kinase and Akt Is required for antibody-mediated effects on p27, cyclin D1, and antitumor action." Cancer Res 62: 4132–4141.
95. Baselga, J. (2001). "Herceptin alone or in combination with chemotherapy in the treatment of HER2-positive metastatic breast cancer: pivotal trials." Oncology 61 Suppl 2: 14–21.
96. Bell, R. (2002). "What can we learn from Herceptin trials in metastatic breast cancer?" Oncology 63 Suppl 1: 39–46.
97. Cooper, C. S., M. Park, D. G. Blair, M. A. Tainsky, K. Huebner, C. M. Croce and G. F. Vande Woude (1984). "Molecular cloning of a new transforming gene from a chemically transformed human cell line." Nature 311: 29–33.
98. Park, M., M. Dean, C. S. Cooper, M. Schmidt, S. J. O'Brien, D. G. Blair and G. F. Vande Woude (1986). "Mechanism of met oncogene activation." Cell 45: 895–904.
99. Graziani, A., D. Gramaglia, L. C. Cantley and P. M. Comoglio (1991). "The tyrosine-phosphorylated hepatocyte growth factor/scatter factor receptor associates with phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase." J Biol Chem 266: 22087–22090.
100. Graziani, A., D. Gramaglia, P. dalla Zonca and P. M. Comoglio (1993). "Hepatocyte growth factor/scatter factor stimulates the Ras-guanine nucleotide exchanger." J Biol Chem 268: 9165–9168.
101. Huff, J. L., M. A. Jelinek, C. A. Borgman, T. J. Lansing and J. T. Parsons (1993). "The protooncogene c-sea encodes a transmembrane protein-tyrosine kinase related to the Met/hepatocyte growth factor/scatter factor receptor." Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 90: 6140–6144.
102. Gaudino, G., A. Follenzi, L. Naldini, C. Collesi, M. Santoro, K. A. Gallo, P. J. Godowski and P. M. Comoglio (1994). "RON is a heterodimeric tyrosine kinase receptor activated by the HGF homologue MSP." EMBO J 13: 3524–3532.
103. Wang, M. H., C. Ronsin, M. C. Gesnel, L. Coupey, A. Skeel, E. J. Leonard and R. Breathnach (1994). "Identification of the ron gene product as the receptor for the human macrophage stimulating protein." Science 266: 117–119.
104. Bottaro, D. P., J. S. Rubin, D. L. Faletto, A. M. Chan, T. E. Kmiecik, G. F. Vande Woude and S. A. Aaronson (1991). "Identification of the hepatocyte growth factor receptor as the c-met proto-oncogene product." Science 251: 802–804.
105. Naldini, L., K. M. Weidner, E. Vigna, G. Gaudino, A. Bardelli, C. Ponzetto, R. P. Narsimhan, G. Hartmann, R. Zarnegar, and G. K. Michalopoulos (1991). "Scatter factor and hepatocyte growth factor are indistinguishable ligands for the MET receptor." EMBO J 10: 2867–2878.
106. Nakamura, T., H. Teramoto and A. Ichihara (1986). "Purification and characterization of a growth factor from rat platelets for mature parenchymal hepatocytes in primary cultures." Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 83: 6489–6493.
107. Igawa, T., S. Kanda, H. Kanetake, Y. Saitoh, A. Ichihara, Y. Tomita and T. Nakamura (1991). "Hepatocyte growth factor is a potent mitogen for cultured rabbit renal tubular epithelial cells." Biochem Biophys Res Commun 174: 831–838.
108. Kan, M., G. H. Zhang, R. Zarnegar, G. Michalopoulos, Y. Myoken, W. L. McKeehan and J. I. Stevens (1991). "Hepatocyte growth factor/hepatopoietin A stimulates the growth of rat kidney proximal tubule epithelial cells (RPTE), rat nonparenchymal liver cells, human melanoma cells, mouse keratinocytes and stimulates anchorage-independent growth of SV-40 transformed RPTE." Biochem Biophys Res Commun 174: 331–337.
109. Montesano, R., K. Matsumoto, T. Nakamura and L. Orci (1991). "Identification of a fibroblast-derived epithelial morphogen as hepatocyte growth factor." Cell 67: 901–908.
110. Bussolino, F., M. F. Di Renzo, M. Ziche, E. Bocchietto, M. Olivero, L. Naldini, G. Gaudino, L. Tamagnone, A. Coffer and P. M. Comoglio (1992). "Hepatocyte growth factor is a potent angiogenic factor which stimulates endothelial cell motility and growth." J Cell Biol 119: 629–641.
111. Grant, D. S., H. K. Kleinman, I. D. Goldberg, M. M. Bhargava, B. J. Nickoloff, J. L. Kinsella, P. Polverini and E. M. Rosen (1993). "Scatter factor induces blood vessel formation in vivo." Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 90: 1937–1941.
112. Matsumoto, K. and T. Nakamura (1993). "Roles of HGF as a pleiotropic factor in organ regeneration." Exs 65: 225–249.

113. Rosen, E. M., D. S. Grant, H. K. Kleinman, I. D. Goldberg, M. M. Bhargava, B. J. Nickoloff, J. L. Kinsella and P. Polverini (1993). "Scatter factor (hepatocyte growth factor) is a potent angiogenesis factor in vivo." Symp Soc Exp Biol 47: 227–234.
114. Nusrat, A., C. A. Parkos, A. E. Bacarra, P. J. Godowski, C. Delp-Archer, E. M. Rosen and J. L. Madara (1994). "Hepatocyte growth factor/scatter factor effects on epithelia. Regulation of intercellular junctions in transformed and nontransformed cell lines, basolateral polarization of c-met receptor in transformed and natural intestinal epithelia, and induction of rapid wound repair in a transformed model epithelium." J Clin Invest 93: 2056–2065.
115. Bladt, F., D. Riethmacher, S. Isenmann, A. Aguzzi and C. Birchmeier (1995). "Essential role for the c-met receptor in the migration of myogenic precursor cells into the limb bud." Nature 376: 768–771.
116. Schmidt, C., F. Bladt, S. Goedecke, V. Brinkmann, W. Zschiesche, M. Sharpe, E. Gherardi and C. Birchmeier (1995). "Scatter factor/hepatocyte growth factor is essential for liver development." Nature 373: 699–702.
117. Uehara, Y., O. Minowa, C. Mori, K. Shiota, J. Kuno, T. Noda and N. Kitamura (1995). "Placental defect and embryonic lethality in mice lacking hepatocyte growth factor/scatter factor." Nature 373: 702–705.
118. Stoker, M., E. Gherardi, M. Perryman and J. Gray (1987). "Scatter factor is a fibroblast-derived modulator of epithelial cell mobility." Nature 327: 239–242.
119. Weidner, K. M., J. Behrens, J. Vandekerckhove and W. Birchmeier (1990). "Scatter factor: molecular characteristics and effect on the invasiveness of epithelial cells." J Cell Biol 111: 2097–2108.
120. Rong, S., S. Segal, M. Anver, J. H. Resau and G. F. Vande Woude (1994). "Invasiveness and metastasis of NIH 3T3 cells induced by Met-hepatocyte growth factor/scatter factor autocrine stimulation." Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 91: 4731–4735.
121. Giordano, S., Z. Zhen, E. Medico, G. Gaudino, F. Galimi and P. M. Comoglio (1993). "Transfer of motogenic and invasive response to scatter factor/hepatocyte growth factor by transfection of human MET protooncogene." Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 90: 649–653.
122. Jeffers, M., S. Rong and G. F. Vande Woude (1996). "Enhanced tumorigenicity and invasion-metastasis by hepatocyte growth factor/scatter factor-met signalling in human cells concomitant with induction of the urokinase proteolysis network." Mol Cell Biol 16: 1115–1125.
123. Yamashita, J., M. Ogawa, S. Yamashita, K. Nomura, M. Kuramoto, T. Saishoji and S. Shin (1994). "Immunoreactive hepatocyte growth factor is a strong and independent predictor of recurrence and survival in human breast cancer." Cancer Res 54: 1630–1633.
124. Yao, Y., L. Jin, A. Fuchs, A. Joseph, H. M. Hastings, I. D. Goldberg and E. M. Rosen (1996). "Scatter factor protein levels in human breast cancers: clinicopathological and biological correlations." Am J Pathol 149: 1707–1717.
125. Jin, L., A. Fuchs, S. J. Schnitt, Y. Yao, A. Joseph, K. Lamszus, M. Park, I. D. Goldberg and E. M. Rosen (1997). "Expression of scatter factor and c-met receptor in benign and malignant breast tissue." Cancer 79: 749–760.
126. Ponzetto, C., A. Bardelli, Z. Zhen, F. Maina, P. dalla Zonca, S. Giordano, A. Graziani, G. Panayotou and P. M. Comoglio (1994). "A multifunctional docking site mediates signaling and transformation by the hepatocyte growth factor/scatter factor receptor family." Cell 77: 261–271.
127. Humphrey, P. A., X. Zhu, R. Zarnegar, P. E. Swanson, T. L. Ratliff, R. T. Vollmer and M. L. Day (1995). "Hepatocyte growth factor and its receptor (c-MET) in prostatic carcinoma." Am J Pathol 147: 386–396.
128. Bellusci, S., G. Moens, G. Gaudino, P. Comoglio, T. Nakamura, J. P. Thiery and J. Jouanneau (1994). "Creation of an hepatocyte growth factor/scatter factor autocrine loop in carcinoma cells induces invasive properties associated with increased tumorigenicity." Oncogene 9: 1091–1099.
129. Itakura, Y., T. Yamamoto, K. Matsumoto and T. Nakamura (1994). "Autocrine stimulation of motility in SBC-5 human lung carcinoma cells by a two-kringle variant of HGF." Cancer Lett 83: 235–243.
130. Cortner, J., G. F. Vande Woude and S. Rong (1995). "The Met-HGF/SF autocrine signaling mechanism is involved in sarcomagenesis." Exs 74: 89–121.
131. Ferracini, R., M. F. Di Renzo, K. Scotlandi, N. Baldini, M. Olivero, P. Lollini, O. Cremona, M. Campanacci and P. M. Comoglio (1995). "The Met/HGF receptor is overexpressed in human osteosarcomas and is activated by either a paracrine or an autocrine circuit." Oncogene 10: 739–749.
132. Otsuka, T., H. Takayama, R. Sharp, G. Celli, W. J. LaRochelle, D. P. Bottaro, N. Ellmore, W. Vieira, J. W. Owens, M. Anver and G. Merlino (1998). "c-Met autocrine activation induces development of malignant melanoma and acquisition of the metastatic phenotype." Cancer Res 58: 5157–5167.
133. Xie, Q., K. D. Liu, M. Y. Hu and K. Zhou (2001). "SF/HGF-c-Met autocrine and paracrine promote metastasis of hepatocellular carcinoma." World J Gastroenterol 7: 816–820.
134. Schmidt, L., F. M. Duh, F. Chen, T. Kishida, G. Glenn, P. Choyke, S. W. Scherer, Z. Zhuang, I. Lubensky, M. Dean, R. Allikmets, A. Chidambaram, U. R. Bergerheim, J. T. Feltis, C. Casadevall, A. Zamarron, M. Bernues, S. Richard, C. J. Lips, M. M. Walther, L. C. Tsui, L. Geil, M. L. Orcutt, and T. Stackhouse, B. Zbar (1997). "Germline and somatic mutations in the tyrosine kinase domain of the MET proto-oncogene in papillary renal carcinomas." Nat Genet 16: 68–73.
135. Olivero, M., G. Valente, A. Bardelli, P. Longati, N. Ferrero, C. Cracco, C. Terrone, S. Rocca-Rossetti, P. M. Comoglio and M. F. Di Renzo (1999). "Novel mutation in the ATP-binding site of the MET oncogene tyrosine kinase in a HPRCC family." Int J Cancer 82: 640–643.
136. Park, W. S., S. M. Dong, S. Y. Kim, E. Y. Na, M. S. Shin, J. H. Pi, B. J. Kim, J. H. Bae, Y. K. Hong, K. S. Lee, S. H. Lee, N. J. Yoo, J. J. Jang, S. Pack, Z. Zhuang, L. Schmidt, B. Zbar and J. Y. Lee (1999). "Somatic mutations in the kinase domain of the Met/hepatocyte growth factor receptor gene in childhood hepatocellular carcinomas." Cancer Res 59: 307–310.

137. Schmidt, L., K. Junker, N. Nakaigawa, T. Kinjerski, G. Weirich, M. Miller, I. Lubensky, H. P. Neumann, H. Brauch, J. Decker, C. Vocke, J. A. Brown, R. Jenkins, S. Richard, U. Bergerheim, B. Gerrard, M. Dean, W. M. Linehan and B. Zbar (1999). "Novel mutations of the MET proto-oncogene in papillary renal carcinomas." Oncogene 18: 2343–2350.
138. Di Renzo, M. F., M. Olivero, T. Martone, A. Maffe, P. Maggiora, A. D. Stefani, G. Valente, S. Giordano, G. Cortesina and P. M. Comoglio (2000). "Somatic mutations of the MET oncogene are selected during metastatic spread of human HNSC carcinomas." Oncogene 19: 1547–1555.
139. Lorenzato, A., M. Olivero, S. Patane, E. Rosso, A. Oliaro, P. M. Comoglio and M. F. Di Renzo (2002). "Novel somatic mutations of the MET oncogene in human carcinoma metastases activating cell motility and invasion." Cancer Res 62: 7025–7030.
140. Abounader, R., S. Ranganathan, B. Lal, K. Fielding, A. Book, H. Dietz, P. Burger and J. Laterra (1999). "Reversion of human glioblastoma malignancy by U1 small nuclear RNA/ribozyme targeting of scatter factor/hepatocyte growth factor and c-met expression." J Natl Cancer Inst 91: 1548–1556.
141. Michieli, P., C. Basilico, S. Pennacchietti, A. Maffe, L. Tamagnone, S. Giordano, A. Bardelli and P. M. Comoglio (1999). "Mutant Met-mediated transformation is ligand-dependent and can be inhibited by HGF antagonists." Oncogene 18: 5221–5231.
142. Firon, M., M. Shaharabany, R. T. Altstock, J. Horev, A. Abramovici, J. H. Resau, G. F. Vande Woude and I. Tsarfaty (2000). "Dominant negative Met reduces tumorigenicity-metastasis and increases tubule formation in mammary cells." Oncogene 19: 2386–2397.
143. Herynk, M. H., O. Stoeltzing, N. Reinmuth, N. U. Parikh, R. Abounader, J. Laterra, R. Radinsky, L. M. Ellis and G. E. Gallick (2003). "Down-regulation of c-Met inhibits growth in the liver of human colorectal carcinoma cells." Cancer Res 63: 2990–2996.
144. Kim, S. J., M. Johnson, K. Koterba, M. H. Herynk, H. Uehara and G. E. Gallick (2003). "Reduced c-Met expression by an adenovirus expressing a c-Met ribozyme inhibits tumorigenic growth and lymph node metastases of PC3-LN4 prostate tumor cells in an orthotopic nude mouse model." Clin Cancer Res 9: 5161–5170.
145. Naldini, L., E. Vigna, R. Ferracini, P. Longati, L. Gandino, M. Prat and P. M. Comoglio (1991a). "The tyrosine kinase encoded by the MET proto-oncogene is activated by autophosphorylation." Mol Cell Biol 11: 1793–1803.
146. Naldini, L., E. Vigna, R. P. Narsimhan, G. Gaudino, R. Zarnegar, G. K. Michalopoulos and P. M. Comoglio (1991b). "Hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) stimulates the tyrosine kinase activity of the receptor encoded by the proto-oncogene c-MET." Oncogene 6: 501–504.
147. Ponzetto, C., Z. Zhen, E. Audero, F. Maina, A. Bardelli, M. L. Basile, S. Giordano, R. Narsimhan and P. Comoglio (1996). "Specific uncoupling of GRB2 from the Met receptor. Differential effects on transformation and motility." J Biol Chem 271: 14119–14123.
148. Faletto, D. L., D. R. Kaplan, D. O. Halverson, E. M. Rosen and G. F. Vande Woude (1993). "Signal transduction in c-met mediated motogenesis." Exs 65: 107–130.
149. Pelicci, G., S. Giordano, Z. Zhen, A. E. Salcini, L. Lanfrancone, A. Bardelli, G. Panayotou, M. D. Waterfield, C. Ponzetto, and P. G. Pelicci (1995a). "The motogenic and mitogenic responses to HGF are amplified by the Shc adaptor protein." Oncogene 10: 1631–1638.
150. Weidner, K. M., S. Di Cesare, M. Sachs, V. Brinkmann, J. Behrens and W. Birchmeier (1996). "Interaction between Gab1 and the c-Met receptor tyrosine kinase is responsible for epithelial morphogenesis." Nature 384: 173–176.
151. Boccaccio, C., M. Ando, L. Tamagnone, A. Bardelli, P. Michieli, C. Battistini and P. M. Comoglio (1998). "Induction of epithelial tubules by growth factor HGF depends on the STAT pathway." Nature 391: 285–288.
152. Rahimi, N., W. Hung, E. Tremblay, R. Saulnier and B. Elliott (1998). "c-Src kinase activity is required for hepatocyte growth factor-induced motility and anchorage-independent growth of mammary carcinoma cells." J Biol Chem 273: 33714–33721.
153. Fan, S., Y. X. Ma, J. A. Wang, R. Q. Yuan, Q. Meng, Y. Cao, J. J. Laterra, I. D. Goldberg and E. M. Rosen (2000). "The cytokine hepatocyte growth factor/scatter factor inhibits apoptosis and enhances DNA repair by a common mechanism involving signaling through phosphatidyl inositol 3-kinase." Oncogene 19: 2212–2223.
154. Maroun, C. R., M. A. Naujokas, M. Holgado-Madruga, A. J. Wong and M. Park (2000). "The tyrosine phosphatase SHP-2 is required for sustained activation of extracellular signal-regulated kinase and epithelial morphogenesis downstream from the met receptor tyrosine kinase." Mol Cell Biol 20: 8513–8525.
155. Schaeper, U., N. H. Gehring, K. P. Fuchs, M. Sachs, B. Kempkes and W. Birchmeier (2000). "Coupling of Gab1 to c-Met, Grb2, and Shp2 mediates biological responses." J Cell Biol 149: 1419–1432.
156. Xiao, G. H., M. Jeffers, A. Bellacosa, Y. Mitsuuchi, G. F. Vande Woude and J. R. Testa (2001). "Anti-apoptotic signaling by hepatocyte growth factor/Met via the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase/Akt and mitogen-activated protein kinase pathways." Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 98: 247–252.
157. Trusolino, L., A. Bertotti and P. M. Comoglio (2001). "A signaling adapter function for alpha6beta4 integrin in the control of HGF-dependent invasive growth." Cell 107: 643–654.
158. Maina, F., F. Casagranda, E. Audero, A. Simeone, P. M. Comoglio, R. Klein and C. Ponzetto (1996). "Uncoupling of Grb2 from the Met receptor in vivo reveals complex roles in muscle development." Cell 87: 531–542.
159. Atabey, N., Y. Gao, Z. J. Yao, D. Breckenridge, L. Soon, J. V. Soriano, T. R. Burke, Jr. and D. P. Bottaro (2001). "Potent blockade of hepatocyte growth factor-stimulated cell motility, matrix invasion and branching morphogenesis by antagonists of Grb2 Src homology 2 domain interactions." J Biol Chem 276: 14308–14314.
160. Curran, S. and G. I. Murray (2000). "Matrix metalloproteinases: molecular aspects of their roles in tumour invasion and metastasis." Eur J Cancer 36: 1621–1630.

161. Kermorgant, S., T. Aparicio, V. Dessirier, M. J. Lewin and T. Lehy (2001). "Hepatocyte growth factor induces colonic cancer cell invasiveness via enhanced motility and protease overproduction. Evidence for PI3 kinase and PKC involvement." Carcinogenesis 22: 1035–1042.
162. Hotary, K., Allen, E., Punturieri, A., Yana, I., Weiss, S. J. (2000). "Regulation of cell invasion and morphogenesis in a three-dimensional type I collagen matrix by membrane-type matrix metalloproteinases 1, 2, and 3." J Cell Biol 149: 1309–1323.
163. Nakanishi, K., J. Fujimoto, T. Ueki, K. Kishimoto, T. Hashimoto-Tamaoki, J. Furuyama, T. Itoh, Y. Sasaki and E. Okamoto (1999). "Hepatocyte growth factor promotes migration of human hepatocellular carcinoma via phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase." Clin Exp Metastasis 17: 507–514.
164. Bowers, D. C., S. Fan, K. A. Walter, R. Abounader, J. A. Williams, E. M. Rosen and J. Laterra (2000). "Scatter factor/hepatocyte growth factor protects against cytotoxic death in human glioblastoma via phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase- and AKT-dependent pathways." Cancer Res 60: 4277–4283.
165. Sattler, M., E. Pisick, P. T. Morrison and R. Salgia (2000). "Role of the cytoskeletal protein paxillin in oncogenesis." Crit Rev Oncog 11: 63–76.
166. Umanoff, H., W. Edelmann, A. Pellicer and R. Kucherlapati (1995). "The murine N-ras gene is not essential for growth and development." Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 92: 1709–1713.
167. Johnson, L., D. Greenbaum, K. Cichowski, K. Mercer, E. Murphy, E. Schmitt, R. T. Bronson, H. Umanoff, W. Edelmann, R. Kucherlapati and T. Jacks (1997). "K-ras is an essential gene in the mouse with partial functional overlap with N-ras." Genes Dev 11: 2468–2481.
168. Esteban, L. M., C. Vicario-Abejon, P. Fernandez-Salguero, A. Fernandez-Medarde, N. Swaminathan, K. Yienger, E. Lopez, M. Malumbres, R. McKay, J. M. Ward, A. Pellicer and E. Santos (2001). "Targeted genomic disruption of H-ras and N-ras, individually or in combination, reveals the dispensability of both loci for mouse growth and development." Mol Cell Biol 21: 1444–1452.
169. Wood, K. W., C. Sarnecki, T. M. Roberts and J. Blenis (1992). "Ras mediates nerve growth factor receptor modulation of three signal-transducing protein kinases: MAP kinase, Raf-1, and RSK." Cell 68: 1041–1050.
170. Williams, N. G., H. Paradis, S. Agarwal, D. L. Charest, S. L. Pelech and T. M. Roberts (1993). "Raf-1 and p21v-ras cooperate in the activation of mitogen-activated protein kinase." Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 90: 5772–5776.
171. Kikuchi, A., S. D. Demo, Z. H. Ye, Y. W. Chen and L. T. Williams (1994). "ralGDS family members interact with the effector loop of ras p21." Mol Cell Biol 14: 7483–7491.
172. Kodaki, T., R. Woscholski, B. Hallberg, P. Rodriguez-Viciana, J. Downward and P. J. Parker (1994). "The activation of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase by Ras." Curr Biol 4: 798–806.
173. Rodriguez-Viciana, P., B. M. Marte, P. H. Warne and J. Downward (1996). "Phosphatidylinositol 3' kinase: one of the effectors of Ras." Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci 351: 225–231; discussion 231–222.
174. Viola, M. V., F. Fromowitz, S. Oravez, S. Deb and J. Schlom (1985). "ras Oncogene p21 expression is increased in premalignant lesions and high grade bladder carcinoma." J Exp Med 161: 1213–1218.
175. Kerr, I. B., D. A. Spandidos, I. G. Finlay, F. D. Lee and C. S. McArdle (1986). "The relation of ras family oncogene expression to conventional staging criteria and clinical outcome in colorectal carcinoma." Br J Cancer 53: 231–235.
176. Tanaka, T., D. J. Slamon, H. Shimoda, C. Waki, Y. Kawaguchi, Y. Tanaka and N. Ida (1988). "Expression of Ha-ras oncogene products in human neuroblastomas and the significant correlation with a patient's prognosis." Cancer Res 48: 1030–1034.
177. Czerniak, B., F. Herz, W. Gorczyca and L. G. Koss (1989). "Expression of ras oncogene p21 protein in early gastric carcinoma and adjacent gastric epithelia." Cancer 64: 1467–1473.
178. Arvanitis, D., A. Malliri, D. Antoniou, S. Linardopoulos, J. K. Field and D. A. Spandidos (1991). "Ras p21 expression in brain tumors: elevated expression in malignant astrocytomas and glioblastomas multiforme." In Vivo 5: 317–321.
179. Dati, C., R. Muraca, O. Tazartes, S. Antoniotti, I. Perroteau, M. Giai, P. Cortese, P. Sismondi, G. Saglio and M. De Bortoli (1991). "c-erbB-2 and ras expression levels in breast cancer are correlated and show a co-operative association with unfavorable clinical outcome." Int J Cancer 47: 833–838.
180. Miyahara, M., T. Saito, K. Kaketani, K. Sato, A. Kuwahara, K. Shimoda and M. Kobayashi (1991). "Clinical significance of ras p21 overexpression for patients with an advanced colorectal cancer." Dis Colon Rectum 34: 1097–1102.
181. Miyamoto, H., M. Harada, H. Isobe, H. D. Akita, H. Haneda, E. Yamaguchi, N. Kuzumaki and Y. Kawakami (1991). "Prognostic value of nuclear DNA content and expression of the ras oncogene product in lung cancer." Cancer Res 51: 6346–6350.
182. Nishimura, R., K. Nagao, H. Miyayama, M. Matsuda, K. Baba, Y. Matsuoka, Y. Ueno, H. Yamashita, K. Nomura, and O. Ichiguchi (1991). Expression of ras oncogene p21 in relation to prognostic factors of human breast cancer. Gan To Kagaku Ryoho 18: 2271–2275.
183. Harada, M., H. Dosaka-Akita, H. Miyamoto, N. Kuzumaki and Y. Kawakami (1992). "Prognostic significance of the expression of ras oncogene product in non-small cell lung cancer." Cancer 69: 72–77.
184. Motojima, K., J. Furui, N. Kohara, K. Izawa, T. Kanematsu and H. Shiku (1994). "Expression of Kirsten-ras p21 in gastric cancer correlates with tumor progression and is prognostic." Diagn Mol Pathol 3: 184–191.
185. Yarbrough, W. G., C. Shores, D. L. Witsell, M. C. Weissler, M. E. Fidler and T. M. Gilmer (1994). "ras mutations and expression in head and neck squamous cell carcinomas." Laryngoscope 104: 1337–1347.
186. Kiaris, H., D. A. Spandidos, A. S. Jones, E. D. Vaughan and J. K. Field (1995). "Mutations, expression and genomic instability of the H-ras proto-oncogene in squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck." Br J Cancer 72: 123–128.

187. Vageli, D., H. Kiaris, D. Delakas, P. Anezinis, A. Cranidis and D. A. Spandidos (1996). "Transcriptional activation of H-ras, K-ras and N-ras proto-oncogenes in human bladder tumors." Cancer Lett 107: 241–247.
188. Hoa, M., S. L. Davis, S. J. Ames and R. A. Spanjaard (2002). "Amplification of wild-type K-ras promotes growth of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma." Cancer Res 62: 7154–7156.
189. Bos, J. L. (1989). "Ras oncogenes in human cancer: a review." Cancer Res 49: 4682–4689.
190. Hattori, S., M. Maekawa and S. Nakamura (1992). "Identification of neurofibromatosis type I gene product as an insoluble GTPase-activating protein toward ras p21." Oncogene 7: 481–485.
191. Andersen, L. B., J. W. Fountain, D. H. Gutmann, S. A. Tarle, T. W. Glover, N. C. Dracopoli, D. E. Housman and F. S. Collins (1993). "Mutations in the neurofibromatosis 1 gene in sporadic malignant melanoma cell lines." Nat Genet 3: 118–121.
192. Patton, S. E., M. L. Martin, L. L. Nelsen, X. Fang, G. B. Mills, R. C. Bast, Jr. and M. C. Ostrowski (1998). "Activation of the ras-mitogen-activated protein kinase pathway and phosphorylation of ets-2 at position threonine 72 in human ovarian cancer cell lines." Cancer Res 58: 2253–2259.
193. Yordy, J. S. and R. C. Muise-Helmericks (2000). "Signal transduction and the Ets family of transcription factors." Oncogene 19: 6503–6513.
194. Lovec, H., A. Sewing, F. C. Lucibello, R. Muller and T. Moroy (1994). "Oncogenic activity of cyclin D1 revealed through cooperation with Ha-ras: link between cell cycle control and malignant transformation." Oncogene 9: 323–326.
195. Aktas, H., H. Cai and G. M. Cooper (1997). "Ras links growth factor signaling to the cell cycle machinery via regulation of cyclin D1 and the Cdk inhibitor p27 KIP1." Mol Cell Biol 17: 3850–3857.
196. Balmanno, K. and S. J. Cook (1999). "Sustained MAP kinase activation is required for the expression of cyclin D1, p21Cip1 and a subset of AP-1 proteins in CCL39 cells." Oncogene 18: 3085–3097.
197. Behrens, P., M. Rothe, A. Wellmann, J. Krischler and N. Wernert (2001). "The Ets-1 transcription factor is upregulated together with MMP 1 and MMP 9 in the stroma of pre-invasive breast cancer." J Pathol 194: 43–50.
198. Gilliland, D. G. (2001). "The diverse role of the ETS family of transcription factors in cancer." Clin Cancer Res 7: 451–453.
199. Franke, T. F. and L. C. Cantley (1997). "Apoptosis. A Bad kinase makes good." Nature 390: 116–117.
200. Roche, S., M. Koegl and S. A. Courtneidge (1994). "The phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase alpha is required for DNA synthesis induced by some, but not all, growth factors." Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 91: 9185–9189.
201. Philpott, K. L., M. J. McCarthy, A. Klippel and L. L. Rubin (1997). "Activated phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase and Akt kinase promote survival of superior cervical neurons." J Cell Biol 139: 809–815.
202. Bachelder, R. E., M. A. Wendt, N. Fujita, T. Tsuruo and A. M. Mercurio (2001). "The cleavage of Akt/protein kinase B by death receptor signaling is an important event in detachment-induced apoptosis." J Biol Chem 276: 34702–34707.
203. Li, P., H. Lee, S. Guo, T. G. Unterman, G. Jenster and W. Bai (2003). "AKT-independent protection of prostate cancer cells from apoptosis mediated through complex formation between the androgen receptor and FKHR." Mol Cell Biol 23: 104–118.
204. Ozes, O. N., L. D. Mayo, J. A. Gustin, S. R. Pfeffer, L. M. Pfeffer and D. B. Donner (1999). "NF-kappaB activation by tumour necrosis factor requires the Akt serine-threonine kinase." Nature 401: 82–85.
205. Brunet, A., A. Bonni, M. J. Zigmond, M. Z. Lin, P. Juo, L. S. Hu, M. J. Anderson, K. C. Arden, J. Blenis and M. E. Greenberg (1999). "Akt promotes cell survival by phosphorylating and inhibiting a Forkhead transcription factor." Cell 96: 857–868.
206. Kane, L. P., V. S. Shapiro, D. Stokoe and A. Weiss (1999). "Induction of NF-kappaB by the Akt/PKB kinase." Curr Biol 9: 601–604.
207. Zheng, W. H., S. Kar and R. Quirion (2000). "Stimulation of protein kinase C modulates insulin-like growth factor-1-induced akt activation in PC12 cells." J Biol Chem 275: 13377–13385.
208. Chen, X., H. Thakkar, F. Tyan, S. Gim, H. Robinson, C. Lee, S. K. Pandey, C. Nwokorie, N. Onwudiwe and R. K. Srivastava (2001). "Constitutively active Akt is an important regulator of TRAIL sensitivity in prostate cancer." Oncogene 20: 6073–6083.
209. Yamaguchi, H. and H. G. Wang (2001). "The protein kinase PKB/Akt regulates cell survival and apoptosis by inhibiting Bax conformational change." Oncogene 20: 7779–7786.
210. Wang, Q., X. Wang, A. Hernandez, M. R. Hellmich, Z. Gatalica and B. M. Evers (2002). "Regulation of TRAIL expression by the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase/Akt/GSK-3 pathway in human colon cancer cells." J Biol Chem 277: 36602–36610.
211. Rous, P. (1911). "A sarcoma of the fowl transmissible by an agent separable from the tumor cell." J Exp Med 13: 397–411.
212. Frame, M. C. (2002). "Src in cancer: deregulation and consequences for cell behaviour." Biochim Biophys Acta 1602: 114–130.
213. Weiss, A. and J. Schlessinger (1998). "Switching signals on or off by receptor dimerization." Cell 94: 277–280.
214. Thomas, S. M. and J. S. Brugge (1997). "Cellular functions regulated by Src family kinases." Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol 13: 513–609.
215. Cartwright, C. A., M. P. Kamps, A. I. Meisler, J. M. Pipas and W. Eckhart (1989). "pp60c-src activation in human colon carcinoma." J Clin Invest 83: 2025–2033.
216. Ottenhoff-Kalff, A. E., G. Rijksen, E. A. van Beurden, A. Hennipman, A. A. Michels and G. E. Staal (1992). "Characterization of protein tyrosine kinases from human breast cancer: involvement of the c-src oncogene product." Cancer Res 52: 4773–4778.
217. Talamonti, M. S., M. S. Roh, S. A. Curley and G. E. Gallick (1993). "Increase in activity and level of pp60c-src in progressive stages of human colorectal cancer." J Clin Invest 91: 53–60.

218. Mayer, K. and W. G. Ballhausen (1996). "Expression of alternatively spliced lck transcripts from the proximal promoter in colorectal cancer derived cell lines." Anticancer Res 16: 1733–1737.
219. Verbeek, B. S., T. M. Vroom, S. S. Adriaansen-Slot, A. E. Ottenhoff-Kalff, J. G. Geertzema, A. Hennipman and G. Rijksen (1996). "c-Src protein expression is increased in human breast cancer. An immunohistochemical and biochemical analysis." J Pathol 180: 383–388.
220. Krystal, G. W., C. S. DeBerry, D. Linnekin and J. Litz (1998). "Lck associates with and is activated by Kit in a small cell lung cancer cell line: inhibition of SCF-mediated growth by the Src family kinase inhibitor PP1." Cancer Res 58: 4660–4666.
221. Irby, R. B. and T. J. Yeatman (2002). "Increased Src activity disrupts cadherin/catenin-mediated homotypic adhesion in human colon cancer and transformed rodent cells." Cancer Res 62: 2669–2674.
222. Klejman, A., S. J. Schreiner, M. Nieborowska-Skorska, A. Slupianek, M. Wilson, T. E. Smithgall and T. Skorski (2002). "The Src family kinase Hck couples BCR/ABL to STAT5 activation in myeloid leukemia cells." EMBO J 21: 5766–5774.
223. Ptasznik, A., E. Urbanowska, S. Chinta, M. A. Costa, B. A. Katz, M. A. Stanislaus, G. Demir, D. Linnekin, Z. K. Pan and A. M. Gewirtz (2002). "Crosstalk between BCR/ABL oncoprotein and CXCR4 signaling through a Src family kinase in human leukemia cells." J Exp Med 196: 667–678.
224. Bolen, J. B., A. Veillette, A. M. Schwartz, V. DeSeau and N. Rosen (1987). "Activation of pp60c-src protein kinase activity in human colon carcinoma." Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 84: 2251–2255.
225. Termuhlen, P. M., S. A. Curley, M. S. Talamonti, M. H. Saboorian and G. E. Gallick (1993). "Site-specific differences in pp60c-src activity in human colorectal metastases." J Surg Res 54: 293–298.
226. Liu, C., M. Park and M. S. Tsao (1992). "Overexpression of c-met proto-oncogene but not epidermal growth factor receptor or c-erbB-2 in primary human colorectal carcinomas." Oncogene 7: 181–185.
227. Hiscox, S. E., M. B. Hallett, M. C. Puntis, T. Nakamura and W. G. Jiang (1997). "Expression of the HGF/SF receptor, c-met, and its ligand in human colorectal cancers." Cancer Invest 15: 513–521.
228. Pelicci, G., L. Lanfrancone, A. E. Salcini, A. Romano, S. Mele, M. Grazia Borrello, O. Segatto, P. P. Di Fiore and P. G. Pelicci (1995b). "Constitutive phosphorylation of Shc proteins in human tumors." Oncogene 11: 899–907.
229. Mao, W., R. Irby, D. Coppola, L. Fu, M. Wloch, J. Turner, H. Yu, R. Garcia, R. Jove and T. J. Yeatman (1997). "Activation of c-Src by receptor tyrosine kinases in human colon cancer cells with high metastatic potential." Oncogene 15: 3083–3090.
230. Okada, M., S. Nada, Y. Yamanashi, T. Yamamoto and H. Nakagawa (1991). "CSK: a protein-tyrosine kinase involved in regulation of src family kinases." J Biol Chem 266: 24249–24252.
231. Nada, S., T. Yagi, H. Takeda, T. Tokunaga, H. Nakagawa, Y. Ikawa, M. Okada and S. Aizawa (1993). "Constitutive activation of Src family kinases in mouse embryos that lack Csk." Cell 73: 1125–1135.
232. Masaki, T., M. Okada, M. Tokuda, Y. Shiratori, O. Hatase, M. Shirai, M. Nishioka and M. Omata (1999). "Reduced C-terminal Src kinase (Csk) activities in hepatocellular carcinoma." Hepatology 29: 379–384.
233. Nakagawa, T., S. Tanaka, H. Suzuki, H. Takayanagi, T. Miyazaki, K. Nakamura and T. Tsuruo (2000). "Overexpression of the csk gene suppresses tumor metastasis in vivo." Int J Cancer 88: 384–391.
234. Somani, A. K., J. S. Bignon, G. B. Mills, K. A. Siminovitch and D. R. Branch (1997). "Src kinase activity is regulated by the SHP-1 protein-tyrosine phosphatase." J Biol Chem 272: 21113–21119.
235. Bjorge, J. D., A. Pang and D. J. Fujita (2000). "Identification of protein-tyrosine phosphatase 1B as the major tyrosine phosphatase activity capable of dephosphorylating and activating c-Src in several human breast cancer cell lines." J Biol Chem 275: 41439–41446.
236. Riley, D., N. O. Carragher, M. C. Frame and J. A. Wyke (2001). "The mechanism of cell cycle regulation by v-Src." Oncogene 20: 5941–5950.
237. Roche, S., M. Koegl, M. V. Barone, M. F. Roussel and S. A. Courtneidge (1995b). "DNA synthesis induced by some but not all growth factors requires Src family protein tyrosine kinases." Mol Cell Biol 15: 1102–1109.
238. Broome, M. A. and T. Hunter (1996). "Requirement for c-Src catalytic activity and the SH3 domain in platelet-derived growth factor BB and epidermal growth factor mitogenic signaling." J Biol Chem 271: 16798–16806.
239. Chackalaparampil, I. and D. Shalloway (1988). "Altered phosphorylation and activation of pp60c-src during fibroblast mitosis." Cell 52: 801–810.
240. Roche, S., S. Fumagalli and S. A. Courtneidge (1995a). "Requirement for Src family protein tyrosine kinases in G2 for fibroblast cell division." Science 269: 1567–1569.
241. Barone, M. V. and S. A. Courtneidge (1995). "Myc but not Fos rescue of PDGF signalling block caused by kinase-inactive Src." Nature 378: 509–512.
242. Xi, S., Q. Zhang, K. F. Dyer, E. C. Lerner, T. E. Smithgall, W. E. Gooding, J. Kamens and J. R. Grandis (2003). "Src kinases mediate STAT growth pathways in squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck." J Biol Chem.
243. DeMali, K. A. and A. Kazlauskas (1998). "Activation of Src family members is not required for the platelet-derived growth factor beta receptor to initiate mitogenesis." Mol Cell Biol 18: 2014–2022.
244. McCubrey, J. A., S. R. Smith, P. A. Algate, J. E. DeVente, M. K. White and L. S. Steelman (1993). "Retroviral infection can abrogate the factor-dependency of hematopoietic cells by autocrine and non-autocrine mechanisms depending on the presence of a functional viral oncogene." Oncogene 8: 2905–2915.
245. Johnson, D., M. Agochiya, K. Samejima, W. Earnshaw, M. Frame and J. Wyke (2000). "Regulation of both apoptosis and cell survival by the v-Src oncoprotein." Cell Death Differ 7: 685–696.
246. Cardone, M. H., N. Roy, H. R. Stennicke, G. S. Salvesen, T. F. Franke, E. Stanbridge, S. Frisch and J. C. Reed

(1998). "Regulation of cell death protease caspase-9 by phosphorylation." Science 282: 1318–1321.
247. Zha, J., H. Harada, E. Yang, J. Jockel and S. J. Korsmeyer (1996). "Serine phosphorylation of death agonist BAD in response to survival factor results in binding to 14-3-3 not BCL-X(L)." Cell 87: 619–628.
248. Eliceiri, B. P., R. Paul, P. L. Schwartzberg, J. D. Hood, J. Leng and D. A. Cheresh (1999). "Selective requirement for Src kinases during VEGF-induced angiogenesis and vascular permeability." Mol Cell 4: 915–924.
249. Laird, A. D., G. Li, K. G. Moss, R. A. Blake, M. A. Broome, J. M. Cherrington and D. B. Mendel (2003). "Src family kinase activity Is required for signal tranducer and activator of transcription 3 and focal adhesion kinase ahosphorylation and Vascular endothelial growth factor signaling in vivo and for anchorage-dependent and -independent growth of human tumor cells." Mol Cancer Ther 2: 461–469.
250. Fleming, R. Y., L. M. Ellis, N. U. Parikh, W. Liu, C. A. Staley and G. E. Gallick (1997). "Regulation of vascular endothelial growth factor expression in human colon carcinoma cells by activity of src kinase." Surgery 122: 501–507.
251. Fincham, V. J. and M. C. Frame (1998). "The catalytic activity of Src is dispensable for translocation to focal adhesions but controls the turnover of these structures during cell motility." EMBO J 17: 81–92.
252. Li, L., M. Okura and A. Imamoto (2002). "Focal adhesions require catalytic activity of Src family kinases to mediate integrin-matrix adhesion." Mol Cell Biol 22: 1203–1217.
253. Weiner, T. M., E. T. Liu, R. J. Craven and W. G. Cance (1993). "Expression of focal adhesion kinase gene and invasive cancer." Lancet 342: 1024–1025.
254. Allgayer, H., H. Wang, Y. Wang, M. M. Heiss, R. Bauer, O. Nyormoi and D. Boyd (1999). "Transactivation of the urokinase-type plasminogen activator receptor gene through a novel promoter motif bound with an activator protein-2 alpha-related factor." J Biol Chem 274: 4702–4714.
255. Owens, D. W., G. W. McLean, A. W. Wyke, C. Paraskeva, E. K. Parkinson, M. C. Frame and V. G. Brunton (2000). "The catalytic activity of the Src family kinases is required to disrupt cadherin-dependent cell-cell contacts." Mol Biol Cell 11: 51–64.
256. Windham, T. C., N. U. Parikh, D. R. Siwak, J. M. Summy, D. J. McConkey, A. J. Kraker, and G. E. Gallick (2002). "Src activation regulates anoikis in human colon tumor cell lines." Oncogene 21(51): 7797–7807.
257. Sheiness, D., L. Fanshier and J. M. Bishop (1978). "Identification of nucleotide sequences which may encode the oncogenic capacity of avian retrovirus MC29." J Virol 28: 600–610.
258. Bishop, J. M. (1982). "Retroviruses and cancer genes." Adv Cancer Res 37: 1–32.
259. Dalla-Favera, R., M. Bregni, J. Erikson, D. Patterson, R. C. Gallo and C. M. Croce (1982). "Human c-myc onc gene is located on the region of chromosome 8 that is translocated in Burkitt lymphoma cells." Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 79: 7824–7827.
260. Taub, R., I. Kirsch, C. Morton, G. Lenoir, D. Swan, S. Tronick, S. Aaronson and P. Leder (1982). "Translocation of the c-myc gene into the immunoglobulin heavy chain locus in human Burkitt lymphoma and murine plasmacytoma cells." Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 79: 7837–7841.
261. Little, C. D., M. M. Nau, D. N. Carney, A. F. Gazdar and J. D. Minna (1983). "Amplification and expression of the c-myc oncogene in human lung cancer cell lines." Nature 306: 194–196.
262. Kohl, N. E., C. E. Gee and F. W. Alt (1984). "Activated expression of the N-myc gene in human neuroblastomas and related tumors." Science 226: 1335–1337.
263. Schwab, M., J. Ellison, M. Busch, W. Rosenau, H. E. Varmus and J. M. Bishop (1984). "Enhanced expression of the human gene N-myc consequent to amplification of DNA may contribute to malignant progression of neuroblastoma." Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 81: 4940–4944.
264. Lee, W. H., A. L. Murphree and W. F. Benedict (1984). "Expression and amplification of the N-myc gene in primary retinoblastoma." Nature 309: 458–460.
265. Nau, M. M., B. J. Brooks, J. Battey, E. Sausville, A. F. Gazdar, I. R. Kirsch, O. W. McBride, V. Bertness, G. F. Hollis and J. D. Minna (1985). "L-myc, a new myc-related gene amplified and expressed in human small cell lung cancer." Nature 318: 69–73.
266. Evan, G. I., A. H. Wyllie, C. S. Gilbert, T. D. Littlewood, H. Land, M. Brooks, C. M. Waters, L. Z. Penn and D. C. Hancock (1992). "Induction of apoptosis in fibroblasts by c-myc protein." Cell 69: 119–128.
267. Milner, A. E., R. J. Grand, C. M. Waters and C. D. Gregory (1993). "Apoptosis in Burkitt lymphoma cells is driven by c-myc." Oncogene 8: 3385–3391.
268. Morgenbesser, S. D. and R. A. DePinho (1994). "Use of transgenic mice to study myc family gene function in normal mammalian development and in cancer." Semin Cancer Biol 5: 21–36.
269. Eisenman, R. N. (2001). "Deconstructing myc." Genes Dev 15: 2023–2030.
270. Prendergast, G. C., D. Lawe and E. B. Ziff (1991). "Association of Myn, the murine homolog of max, with c-Myc stimulates methylation-sensitive DNA binding and ras cotransformation." Cell 65: 395–407.
271. Amati, B., S. Dalton, M. W. Brooks, T. D. Littlewood, G. I. Evan and H. Land (1992). "Transcriptional activation by the human c-Myc oncoprotein in yeast requires interaction with Max." Nature 359: 423–426.
272. Blackwood, E. M., B. Luscher and R. N. Eisenman (1992). "Myc and Max associate in vivo." Genes Dev 6: 71–80.
273. Kato, G. J., W. M. Lee, L. L. Chen and C. V. Dang (1992). "Max: functional domains and interaction with c-Myc." Genes Dev 6: 81–92.
274. Amati, B., M. W. Brooks, N. Levy, T. D. Littlewood, G. I. Evan and H. Land (1993). "Oncogenic activity of the c-Myc protein requires dimerization with Max." Cell 72: 233–245.
275. Billaud, M., K. J. Isselbacher and R. Bernards (1993). "A dominant-negative mutant of Max that inhibits sequence-specific DNA binding by Myc proteins." Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 90: 2739–2743.

276. Davis, A. C., M. Wims, G. D. Spotts, S. R. Hann and A. Bradley (1993). "A null c-myc mutation causes lethality before 10.5 days of gestation in homozygotes and reduced fertility in heterozygous female mice." Genes Dev 7: 671–682.
277. Shen-Li, H., R. C. O'Hagan, H. Hou, Jr., J. W. Horner, 2nd, H. W. Lee and R. A. DePinho (2000). "Essential role for Max in early embryonic growth and development." Genes Dev 14: 17–22.
278. Berberich, S. J. and M. D. Cole (1992). "Casein kinase II inhibits the DNA-binding activity of Max homodimers but not Myc/Max heterodimers." Genes Dev 6: 166–176.
279. Sommer, A., K. Bousset, E. Kremmer, M. Austen and B. Luscher (1998). "Identification and characterization of specific DNA-binding complexes containing members of the Myc/Max/Mad network of transcriptional regulators." J Biol Chem 273: 6632–6642.
280. Ayer, D. E., L. Kretzner and R. N. Eisenman (1993). "Mad: a heterodimeric partner for Max that antagonizes Myc transcriptional activity." Cell 72: 211–222.
281. Grandori, C., S. M. Cowley, L. P. James and R. N. Eisenman (2000). "The Myc/Max/Mad network and the transcriptional control of cell behavior." Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol 16: 653–699.
282. Levens, D. L. (2003). "Reconstructing MYC." Genes Dev 17: 1071–1077.
283. Dalla-Favera, R., S. Martinotti, R. C. Gallo, J. Erikson and C. M. Croce (1983). "Translocation and rearrangements of the c-myc oncogene locus in human undifferentiated B-cell lymphomas." Science 219: 963–967.
284. Kozbor, D. and C. M. Croce (1984). "Amplification of the c-myc oncogene in one of five human breast carcinoma cell lines." Cancer Res 44: 438–441.
285. Erisman, M. D., P. G. Rothberg, R. E. Diehl, C. C. Morse, J. M. Spandorfer and S. M. Astrin (1985). "Deregulation of c-myc gene expression in human colon carcinoma is not accompanied by amplification or rearrangement of the gene." Mol Cell Biol 5: 1969–1976.
286. Escot, C., C. Theillet, R. Lidereau, F. Spyratos, M. H. Champeme, J. Gest and R. Callahan (1986). "Genetic alteration of the c-myc protooncogene (MYC) in human primary breast carcinomas." Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 83: 4834–4838.
287. Guerin, M., M. Barrois, M. J. Terrier, M. Spielmann and G. Riou (1988). "Overexpression of either c-myc or c-erbB-2/neu proto-oncogenes in human breast carcinomas: correlation with poor prognosis." Oncogene Res 3: 21–31.
288. Miyaki, M., M. Konishi, R. Kikuchi-Yanoshita, M. Enomoto, T. Igari, K. Tanaka, M. Muraoka, H. Takahashi, Y. Amada, and M. Fukayama (1994). "Characteristics of somatic mutation of the adenomatous polyposis coli gene in colorectal tumors." Cancer Res 54: 3011–3020.
289. Nakamura, Y. (1995). "The adenomatous polyposis coli gene and human cancers." J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 121: 529–534.
290. Rubinfeld, B., B. Souza, I. Albert, O. Muller, S. H. Chamberlain, F. R. Masiarz, S. Munemitsu and P. Polakis (1993). "Association of the APC gene product with beta-catenin." Science 262: 1731–1734.
291. Munemitsu, S., I. Albert, B. Souza, B. Rubinfeld and P. Polakis (1995). "Regulation of intracellular beta-catenin levels by the adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) tumor-suppressor protein." Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 92: 3046–3050.
292. Korinek, V., N. Barker, P. J. Morin, D. van Wichen, R. de Weger, K. W. Kinzler, B. Vogelstein and H. Clevers (1997). "Constitutive transcriptional activation by a beta-catenin-Tcf complex in APC–/– colon carcinoma." Science 275: 1784–1787.
293. He, T. C., A. B. Sparks, C. Rago, H. Hermeking, L. Zawel, L. T. da Costa, P. J. Morin, B. Vogelstein and K. W. Kinzler (1998). "Identification of c-MYC as a target of the APC pathway." Science 281: 1509–1512.
294. Shiina, H., M. Igawa, K. Shigeno, M. Terashima, M. Deguchi, M. Yamanaka, L. Ribeiro-Filho, C. J. Kane and R. Dahiya (2002). "Beta-catenin mutations correlate with over expression of C-myc and cyclin D1 genes in bladder cancer." J Urol 168: 2220–2226.
295. Zajac-Kaye, M., E. P. Gelmann and D. Levens (1988). "A point mutation in the c-myc locus of a Burkitt lymphoma abolishes binding of a nuclear protein." Science 240: 1776–1780.
296. Bhatia, K., K. Huppi, G. Spangler, D. Siwarski, R. Iyer and I. Magrath (1993). "Point mutations in the c-Myc transactivation domain are common in Burkitt's lymphoma and mouse plasmacytomas." Nat Genet 5: 56–61.
297. Chou, T. Y., G. W. Hart and C. V. Dang (1995). "c-Myc is glycosylated at threonine 58, a known phosphorylation site and a mutational hot spot in lymphomas." J Biol Chem 270: 18961–18965.
298. Smith-Sorensen, B., E. M. Hijmans, R. L. Beijersbergen and R. Bernards (1996). "Functional analysis of Burkitt's lymphoma mutant c-Myc proteins." J Biol Chem 271: 5513–5518.
299. Flinn, E. M., C. M. Busch and A. P. Wright (1998). "myc boxes, which are conserved in myc family proteins, are signals for protein degradation via the proteasome." Mol Cell Biol 18: 5961–5969.
300. Sherr, C. J. and J. M. Roberts (1999). "CDK inhibitors: positive and negative regulators of G1-phase progression." Genes Dev 13: 1501–1512.
301. Coller, H. A., C. Grandori, P. Tamayo, T. Colbert, E. S. Lander, R. N. Eisenman and T. R. Golub (2000). "Expression analysis with oligonucleotide microarrays reveals that MYC regulates genes involved in growth, cell cycle, signaling, and adhesion." Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 97: 3260–3265.
302. Schuldiner, O. and N. Benvenisty (2001). "A DNA microarray screen for genes involved in c-MYC and N-MYC oncogenesis in human tumors." Oncogene 20: 4984–4994.
303. Menssen, A. and H. Hermeking (2002). "Characterization of the c-MYC-regulated transcriptome by SAGE: identification and analysis of c-MYC target genes." Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 99: 6274–6279.
304. Sherr, C. J. (1996). "Cancer cell cycles." Science 274: 1672–1677.
305. Bouchard, C., O. Dittrich, A. Kiermaier, K. Dohmann, A. Menkel, M. Eilers and B. Luscher (2001). "Regulation of cyclin D2 gene expression by the Myc/Max/Mad

network: Myc-dependent TRRAP recruitment and histone acetylation at the cyclin D2 promoter." Genes Dev 15: 2042–2047.
306. Jansen-Durr, P., A. Meichle, P. Steiner, M. Pagano, K. Finke, J. Botz, J. Wessbecher, G. Draetta and M. Eilers (1993). "Differential modulation of cyclin gene expression by MYC." Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 90: 3685–3689.
307. Barrett, J. F., B. C. Lewis, A. T. Hoang, R. J. Alvarez, Jr. and C. V. Dang (1995). "Cyclin A links c-Myc to adhesion-independent cell proliferation." J Biol Chem 270: 15923–15925.
308. Steiner, P., A. Philipp, J. Lukas, D. Godden-Kent, M. Pagano, S. Mittnacht, J. Bartek and M. Eilers (1995). "Identification of a Myc-dependent step during the formation of active G1 cyclin-cdk complexes." EMBO J 14: 4814–4826.
309. Perez-Roger, I., D. L. Solomon, A. Sewing and H. Land (1997). "Myc activation of cyclin E/Cdk2 kinase involves induction of cyclin E gene transcription and inhibition of p27(Kip1) binding to newly formed complexes." Oncogene 14: 2373–2381.
310. Bouchard, C., K. Thieke, A. Maier, R. Saffrich, J. Hanley-Hyde, W. Ansorge, S. Reed, P. Sicinski, J. Bartek and M. Eilers (1999). "Direct induction of cyclin D2 by Myc contributes to cell cycle progression and sequestration of p27." EMBO J 18: 5321–5333.
311. Gartel, A. L., X. Ye, E. Goufman, P. Shianov, N. Hay, F. Najmabadi and A. L. Tyner (2001). "Myc represses the p21(WAF1/CIP1) promoter and interacts with Sp1/Sp3." Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 98: 4510–4515.
312. Yang, W., J. Shen, M. Wu, M. Arsura, M. FitzGerald, Z. Suldan, D. W. Kim, C. S. Hofmann, S. Pianetti, R. Romieu-Mourez, L. P. Freedman and G. E. Sonenshein (2001). "Repression of transcription of the p27(Kip1) cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor gene by c-Myc." Oncogene 20: 1688–1702.
313. Obaya, A. J., I. Kotenko, M. D. Cole and J. M. Sedivy (2002). "The proto-oncogene c-myc acts through the cyclin-dependent kinase (Cdk) inhibitor p27(Kip1) to facilitate the activation of Cdk4/6 and early G(1) phase progression." J Biol Chem 277: 31263–31269.
314. Bandara, L. R., J. P. Adamczewski, T. Hunt and N. B. La Thangue (1991). "Cyclin A and the retinoblastoma gene product complex with a common transcription factor." Nature 352: 249–251.
315. Kato, J., H. Matsushime, S. W. Hiebert, M. E. Ewen and C. J. Sherr (1993). "Direct binding of cyclin D to the retinoblastoma gene product (pRb) and pRb phosphorylation by the cyclin D-dependent kinase CDK4." Genes Dev 7: 331–342.
316. Bartek, J., J. Bartkova and J. Lukas (1997). "The retinoblastoma protein pathway in cell cycle control and cancer." Exp Cell Res 237: 1–6.
317. Connell-Crowley, L., J. W. Harper and D. W. Goodrich (1997). "Cyclin D1/Cdk4 regulates retinoblastoma protein-mediated cell cycle arrest by site-specific phosphorylation." Mol Biol Cell 8: 287–301.
318. Lasorella, A., M. Noseda, M. Beyna, Y. Yokota and A. Iavarone (2000). "Id2 is a retinoblastoma protein target and mediates signalling by Myc oncoproteins." Nature 407: 592–598.
319. Henriksson, M. and B. Luscher (1996). "Proteins of the Myc network: essential regulators of cell growth and differentiation." Adv Cancer Res 68: 109–182.
320. Elend, M. and M. Eilers (1999). "Cell growth: downstream of Myc – to grow or to cycle?" Curr Biol 9: R936–938.
321. Schuhmacher, M., F. Kohlhuber, M. Holzel, C. Kaiser, H. Burtscher, M. Jarsch, G. W. Bornkamm, G. Laux, A. Polack, U. H. Weidle and D. Eick (2001). "The transcriptional program of a human B cell line in response to Myc." Nucleic Acids Res 29: 397–406.
322. Schuhmacher, M., M. S. Staege, A. Pajic, A. Polack, U. H. Weidle, G. W. Bornkamm, D. Eick and F. Kohlhuber (1999). "Control of cell growth by c-Myc in the absence of cell division." Curr Biol 9: 1255–1258.
323. Beier, R., A. Burgin, A. Kiermaier, M. Fero, H. Karsunky, R. Saffrich, T. Moroy, W. Ansorge, J. Roberts and M. Eilers (2000). "Induction of cyclin E-cdk2 kinase activity, E2F-dependent transcription and cell growth by Myc are genetically separable events." EMBO J 19: 5813–5823.
324. Grumont, R. J., A. Strasser and S. Gerondakis (2002). "B cell growth is controlled by phosphatidylinosotol 3-kinase-dependent induction of Rel/NF-kappaB regulated c-myc transcription." Mol Cell 10: 1283–1294.

Chapter 3

Carcinogenic Effects of Ionising Radiation

Arthur C. Upton

Contents

A.C. Upton (✉)
University School of Medicine, NY, USA; University of Medicine and Dentistry of New Jersey, Robert Wood Johnson Medical School, New Brunswick, NJ, USA
e-mail: acupton@eohsi.rutgers.edu

3.1 Introduction

Within less than a decade after the discovery of the X-ray by Roentgen, in 1895, cancer was recognized to be a late complication of radiation injury. For decades thereafter, however, it was assumed that cancer would result only from doses large enough to cause severe damage and disorganization of tissue [1].

The possibility that there might be no threshold for carcinogenic effects of radiation was not widely considered until 1957, when the rates of leukaemia in A-bomb survivors, radiologists, and patients treated with radiation for ankylosing spondylitis were postulated by some observers to have increased as a linear, non-threshold function of the dose [2]. This hypothesis was greeted with scepticism at the time, however, and the precise shape of the dose-response curve for leukaemia has remained controversial ever since. Nevertheless, certain other forms of cancer have more recently been observed to exhibit dose–response relationships that are not inconsistent with linear, non-threshold functions [3]. Consequently, although the risks of carcinogenic effects from low-level irradiation are still uncertain, the threshold theory has come to be abandoned for purposes of radiation protection [4–7].

The evolution of our knowledge of radiation carcinogenesis – and, in turn, the development of principles to guide in formulating policies for purposes of radiation protection – provide lessons of strategic importance in assessing the health hazards of environmental agents in general.

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_3,

3.2 Historical Highlights

3.2.1 Early Radiologists

The first cancer attributed to radiation arose in a radiologist at the site of long-standing radiation injury on the skin of his hand [8]. It was soon followed by scores of similar cases, owing to the practice among pioneer radiologists of exposing their hands repeatedly in focusing their primitive fluoroscopic equipment. By 1910, 94 such cases of skin cancer had been reported among radiologists, X-ray technicians, and radium handlers in Europe and America [9]. The course of injury in such victims commonly began with reddening and blistering of the exposed skin, followed within a few weeks by epilation, and subsequently by atrophy of the epidermis, development of keratoses, and ultimately malignant growth. In many cases, the cancers were multiple and occurred on both hands. The tumours characteristically developed after a latent period of years or decades and were superimposed on progressive radiation dermatitis. Such cancers are no longer an occupational disease among radiologists, but they continue to occur among other workers who are exposed to radiation without adequate safeguards [10].

Leukaemia was another occupational malignancy noted in pioneer radiologists, the first cluster of cases being reported as early as 1911 [11]. The induction of the disease has since been confirmed in other irradiated populations, in which over 200 "radiation-induced" cases were reported between 1911 and 1959 [12]. Although the incidence of the disease was several times higher than normal in radiologists who entered practice in the U.S. during the first decades of the twentieth century [13], the excess has nearly disappeared in recent cohorts, owing to improved safety standards [14, 15].

3.2.2 Radium Dial Painters

As early as 1929, the frequency of osteosarcomas and carcinomas of the cranial sinuses was observed to be elevated in radium dial painters [16]. The induction of these cancers in dial painters resulted from their practice of pointing their fine-tipped brushes between their lips, resulting in their gradual ingestion of toxic quantities of radium and mesothorium [16, 17].

3.2.3 Underground Hard-Rock Miners

Cancer of the lung has been known for hundreds of years to be an occupational disability of pitchblende miners in Czechoslovakia, but not until the twentieth century was the disease linked to the inhalation of radon in the mines [1]. The incidence of the disease has since been found to be increased similarly in miners of uranium, fluorospar, and other radioactive ores, as a result of their occupational exposure to high concentrations of radon [17, 18].

3.2.4 Medically Irradiated Patients

Benign and malignant tumours of many, but not all, types have been reported to arise as late complications of radiation therapy [17]. Noteworthy examples include: (1) leukaemia and certain other cancers (e.g., bone, lung, pharynx, stomach, and pancreas) at irradiated sites in patients given X-ray therapy to the spine for ankylosing spondylitis [19]; (2) carcinoma of the breast in women given X-ray therapy to the breast for acute post-partum mastitis and other benign diseases [20]; (3) leukaemia and gastrointestinal cancer in women treated for menorrhagia by ovarian irradiation [21, 22]; (4) thyroid tumours, leukaemias, osteochondromas, salivary gland tumours, and other neoplasms at irradiated sites in patients given X-ray therapy to the mediastinum in infancy for enlargement of the thymus or other non-neoplastic conditions [23]; (5) solid tumors (chiefly sarcomas) arising at sites of previous irradiation in patients treated with X-rays for various lesions [24]; (6) skeletal tumours in patients treated with radium-224 for ankylosing spondylitis or tuberculous osteitis [25]; (7) tumours of the skin, thyroid, and brain in patients given X-ray therapy to the scalp in childhood for treatment of tinea capitis [26]; (8) leukemia in patients treated with phosphorus-32 for polycythemia vera [27]; (9) leukaemia in patients treated with iodine-131 for thyrotoxicosis [28]; (10) cancers of the urinary bladder, rectum, endometrium, ovary, small intestine, bone, and connective tissue in women treated with radiation for carcinoma of the cervix [29]; and (11) leukaemia and cancers of the thyroid, bone, connective tissue, and other sites in persons treated with radiation in childhood for Hodgkin's disease, Wilm's tumour, retinoblastoma, neuroblastoma, or other malignancies [30].

Exposure to radiation for diagnostic purposes also has been shown to cause cancers in some groups of patients; e.g., (1) breast cancers in women who had received repeated fluoroscopic examinations of the chest during the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis; (2) leukaemia in children who had been exposed prenatally in the radiographic examination of their mothers; (3) patients who had been injected with thorium oxide (thorotrast) for angiographic examination; and (4) patients who had been examined radiographically for various other conditions [7, 17, 31].

3.2.5 Marshall Islanders Exposed to Radioactive Fallout

Natives of the Marshall Islands who were exposed accidentally to radioactive fallout from a nuclear weapons test in 1954 have shown an increased incidence of thyroid cancer. In almost 80% of those who were heavily irradiated when less than 10 years of age, thyroid nodules appeared between 8 and 16 years after exposure. In several such persons, whose thyroid glands are estimated to have received 7–14 Gy from internally deposited radioiodine and 1.75 Gy from external γ-rays, the tumours were preceded by overt hypothyroidism [32].

3.2.6 Experimental Radiation Carcinogenesis

Within only a few years after the first radiation-induced cancers in humans were reported, tumors were induced by irradiation in laboratory animals [1, 33]. Since then, neoplasms of many types have been induced experimentally in animals of various species [31, 33, 34].

In view of the diversity of benign and malignant growths that have been observed to be increased in frequency in irradiated human and animal populations, ionising radiation has come to be regarded as a "universal" carcinogen. This inference should not be interpreted, however, to mean that radiation is capable of inducing every type of cancer or of increasing the incidence of every induced cancer equally by a given dose. On the contrary, from the wealth of data that are now available, it can be concluded that: (1) neoplasms of most, but not necessarily all, types can be induced by irradiation under appropriate conditions in animals of suitable susceptibility; (2) the relation between dose and incidence varies, depending on the type of tumour in question, the dose, dose rate and linear energy transfer (LET) of the radiation, the sex, age, genetic background, and physiological state of the exposed subjects, and other variables; (3) low-LET radiations, such as X-rays and γ-rays, are generally less tumorigenic for a given dose than high-LET radiations, such as alpha particles, and their tumorigenic effectiveness decreases with decreasing dose rate, in contrast to that of high-LET radiations, which tends to be relatively independent of the duration of exposure; (4) for no type of neoplasm do the existing data suffice to define the dose-response relationship unambiguously at doses in the range of only a few mSv; (5) irradiation acts to increase the incidence of neoplasms through a variety of mechanisms, some of which involve direct effects on the cells that undergo transformation, and others which are mediated through effects on neighboring cells ("bystander" effects) or effects on more remote organs and tissues; (6) the various effects in question include the activation of oncogenes, the inactivation or loss of tumour-suppressor genes, and alterations in hormone levels, other growth factors, immunological responses, and other homeostatic mechanisms; (7) the process of radiation-induced neoplasia characteristically evolves through a sequence of steps, including initiation, promotion, and progression, completion of which may occupy a considerable fraction of the normal life span; (8) the degree to which the risk of cancer may be increased by a given dose of radiation will depend on the extent to which the process is influenced by other factors before, during, or after irradiation [3, 33, 35].

3.3 Sources, and Levels of Ionising Radiation in the Environment

Ionising radiation exists in two forms: (1) electromagnetic waves of extremely short wavelength (e.g., X-rays and γ-rays) and (2) accelerated atomic particles (e.g., electrons, protons, neutrons, alpha particles). In both forms, ionising radiation causes its biological effects though energetic and disruptive interactions with atoms and molecules in its path, as noted below. A given dose of ionising radiation is therefore customarily expressed in terms of the amount of energy that is

Table 3.1 Quantities and dose units of ionising radiation

Quantity being measured	Definition	Dose unit[a]
Absorbed dose	Energy deposited in tissue	Gray (Gy)
Equivalent dose	Absorbed dose weighted for the ion density (potency) of the radiation	Sievert (Sv)
Effective dose	Equivalent dose weighted for the sensitivity of the exposed organ(s)	Sievert (Sv)
Collective effective dose	Effective dose applied to a population	Person-Sv
Committed effective dose	Cumulative dose to be received from a given intake of radioactivity	Sievert (Sv)
Radioactivity	One disintegration per second	Becquerel (Bq)

[a]The units listed are those of the International System [4] and have largely replaced the earlier units; namely, the rad (1 rad = 100 ergs/gm = 0.01 Gy), the rem (1 rem = 0.01 Sv), and the curie (1 Ci = 3.7×10^{10} disintegrations per second = 3.7×10^{10}Bq).

deposited in the cells or tissues in which it is absorbed (Table 3.1).

Human populations are exposed to ionising radiation from various natural and man-made sources. Sources of natural background radiation include: (1) cosmic rays, which impinge on the earth from outer space; (2) terrestrial radiations, which emanate from radium and other radioactive elements in the earth's crust; (3) internal radiations, which are emitted by potassium-40, carbon-14, and other radionuclides that are normally present in the body; and (4) radon and its daughter elements which are present in inhaled air (Table 3.2).

The dose that is received from cosmic rays can differ appreciably from the value tabulated, depending on one's elevation; i.e., it can be twice as high in mountainous regions as at sea level and up to two orders of magnitude higher at jet aircraft altitudes. Likewise, the dose from terrestrial radiation varies widely from one area to another, depending on local variations in the radioactivity of the soil. Larger than the dose from these and all other natural sources combined, however, is the dose that is typically received by the bronchial epithelium from the inhalation of radon and its daughter elements, the concentration of which in indoor air can vary by an order of magnitude or more [31, 36].

Table 3.2 Average doses of radiation received annually by a resident of the US[a]

Source	Dose[b](mSv)	(%)
Natural		
Radon[c]	2.0	55
Cosmic	0.27	8
Terrestrial	0.28	8
Internal	0.30	11
Total natural	2.94	82
Artificial		
X-ray diagnosis	0.39	11
Nuclear medicine	0.14	4
Consumer products	0.10	3
Occupational	<0.01	<0.03
Nuclear fuel cycle	<0.01	<0.03
Miscellaneous	<0.01	<0.03
Total artificial	0.63	18
Total natural and artificial	3.57	100

[a]Adapted from National Academy of Sciences [31]
[b]Average effective dose to soft tissues
[c]Average effective dose to bronchial epithelium alone

Of the diverse man-made sources of radiation to which the general population is commonly exposed (Table 3.2), the largest is the use of radiation in medical diagnosis. Much smaller contributions come from other sources, including radioactive minerals in phosphate fertilizers, building materials, and crushed rock, radioactive fallout from atomic weapons, nuclear power production, and radiation-emitting components of various consumer products (color TV sets, smoke detectors, luminescent clock dials, airport security baggage inspection systems, etc.).

In various occupations, workers receive additional doses of ionising radiation, depending on their job assignments and working conditions. The average annual effective dose received occupationally by monitored radiation workers in the U.S. is smaller than that received from natural background, and in any given year less than 1% of such workers receives a dose that approaches the maximum permissible yearly occupational exposure limit [50 mSv (5 rem)] [37].

3.4 Carcinogenic Effects on Specific Tissues

3.4.1 Skin

Cancer of the skin, which occurred as a late complication of radiation dermatitis in scores of pioneer radiation workers [1], as noted above, has since been observed to be induced by radiation in patients treated with X-rays to the scalp in childhood for tinea capitis [38], patients treated with X-rays to the chest in infancy for enlargement of the thymus [23], patients treated to various parts of the body for other conditions [39], Czechoslovakian uranium miners [40], and atomic bomb survivors [41]. In addition to basal cell carcinomas, which predominate at lower doses, the induced neoplasms include squamous cell carcinomas and smaller numbers of fibrosarcomas, melanomas, and sweat gland tumours [17,38]. The existing data do not suffice to define the dose-incidence precisely for any of these neoplasms, but it has become evident that cutaneous basal cell carcinomas can be induced with little or no antecedent clinical evidence of radiation damage [38].

In laboratory mice and rats, in which the induction of skin tumours has been studied extensively, the incidence of such tumours has been found to rise steeply in the dose range above 20 Sv [42]. At doses below 5 Sv, however, the incidence is too low to be investigated readily; in fact, 0.5 Gy of beta radiation delivered thrice weekly to the skin throughout life was found to induce no tumours in any of 50 exposed rats [43]. The *c-myc* oncogene has been observed to be amplified in the progression of radiation-induced skin tumours in the rat [44].

3.4.2 Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Tissues

All major forms of leukaemia except the chronic lymphatic form have been observed to be induced by irradiation of the whole body or a major part of the active bone marrow in humans. The radiation-induced excess appears within 2–5 years after irradiation, is dose-dependent, and persists for 15 years or longer, depending on the type of leukaemia and age at irradiation [7, 17].

In a-bomb survivors, patients treated with spinal irradiation for ankylosing spondylitis, and women treated with pelvic irradiation for menorrhagia, the combined excess of all forms of leukaemia (other than the chronic lymphatic form) averaged over the first 25 years after irradiation has approximated 1–2 cases per 10,000 persons per year per Sv to the bone marrow. Furthermore, the overall excess in the a-bomb survivors is consistent with a linear-quadratic dose–incidence relationship [3, 7, 45]; however, the different types of leukaemia appear to differ in their dose–incidence relationships and time distributions, and in none of the populations do the data suffice to define the shape of the dose-response curve precisely. Children who were exposed *in utero* during the radiographic examination of their mothers have shown a similarly increased frequency of leukaemia [46]; however, no such excess has been evident in Japanese children who were exposed prenatally to atomic-bomb radiation, possibly because of the limited numbers involved [47]. The earlier suggestion that the cluster of cases in children residing in the vicinity of the Sellafield nuclear plant may have resulted from the occupational irradiation of their fathers [48] has since been discounted on the basis of further evidence [7, 49].

For other types of hematologic malignancies, the data are variable. The risk of multiple myeloma

appeared until recently to have been increased by irradiation in some populations, but the additional evidence that is now available argues against this interpretation [7]. For Hodgkin's disease and non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, likewise, the data show no clear evidence of a causal association with radiation [7].

All species of laboratory animals studied to date appear to be susceptible in varying degrees to the induction of hematologic malignancies, but the effects of radiation on the frequency of a given neoplasm vary with the growth in question, the conditions of irradiation, host factors (species, strain, sex, age at exposure), and other variables [50]. In short, the experimental data indicate that: (1) many, but not all, types of hematologic growths can be induced by ionising radiation; (2) the dose-incidence curve for low-LET radiation typically rises less steeply at low dose rates than at high dose rates; (3) the dose-incidence curve for high-LET radiation typically rises more steeply than the curve for low-LET radiation and is less dependent on the dose rate; (4) at high dose rates, the dose-incidence curve typically passes through a maximum in the intermediate-to-high dose range, above which it declines with increasing dose; (5) the data do not suffice to define the shape of the dose-incidence curve in the mSv dose range; (6) the precise pathogenetic mechanisms of the various neoplasms remain to be elucidated, but specific chromosomal aberrations and mutations have been implicated in some instances [51, 52]; (7) uncertainties about the dose-incidence relationships and relevant causative mechanisms complicate extrapolation from the animal data to man [3, 50].

3.4.3 Thyroid Gland

Epidemiological data show the thyroid gland to be highly susceptible to radiation carcinogenesis during childhood. A dose-dependent excess of thyroid tumours has been observed in a-bomb survivors, patients given radiotherapy to the neck in infancy for thymic enlargement and other non-neoplastic conditions, patients treated with radiation to the scalp for tinea capitis in childhood, Marshall islanders exposed to radioactive fallout from a nuclear weapons test in 1954, persons exposed during childhood to radionuclides downwind from the Nevada test site, persons in eastern Europe exposed during childhood to radionuclides released from the Chernobyl accident, and others treated with external thyroid irradiation [7, 53–56].

The induced neoplasms are chiefly adenomas and adeno-carcinomas of the papillary type, many of which have exhibited distinct rearrangements of the *ret* oncogene [57]. The tumors are typically preceded by a latent period of 10 years or longer and carry a low risk of mortality. Susceptibility is 2–4 times higher in females than in males and is similarly higher in children than in adults [7, 56]. Susceptibility also appears to be increased in those of Jewish ethnicity [56].

In those exposed to X-rays during childhood, the excess of thyroid tumours has been observed after a dose as low as 65 mSv, and the dose-incidence data are consistent with a linear-nonthreshold relationship, corresponding to an excess of approximately 4 cancers per 10,000 person-yr-Sv [49, 55]. Little or no excess of tumours has been observed in persons treated with iodine-131 for hyperthyroidism, but the patients in question were treated mainly as adults, and the doses they received are large enough (60–100 Gy) to have caused substantial cell killing [7]. The data from Chernobyl [58, 59] suffice to indicate that exposure to radioiodine in childhood can cause thyroid cancer, but the magnitude of the risk per unit dose from radioiodine remains uncertain.

In laboratory animals, tumours of the thyroid gland have been induced by internal, as well as external, irradiation. With external irradiation, the dose-incidence curve rises with increasing dose up to about 15 Gy, above which it passes through a maximum and decreases with further increase in the dose, owing presumably to excessive damage to the follicular epithelium [50]. Protracted irradiation by internally deposited iodine-131 has appeared to be several times less tumorigenic to the thyroid than acute X-irradiation in some experiments but not in others [50]. The carcinogenic effects of a given dose of radiation can be enhanced by any drug, dietary factor, or condition that elicits hormone-induced hyperplasia of the follicular epithelium [3].

3.4.4 Other Endocrine Glands

Adenomas of the parathyroid glands have been reported to be increased in frequency in atomic-bomb survivors [60] and some other irradiated populations

[61]. Analysis of the dose-incidence relationship in these populations is complicated by the small numbers of cases that have been observed and the possibility that they may be confounded in some instances by the presence of the multiglandular endocrine neoplasia syndrome [17].

Adenomas and adenocarcinomas of the adrenal cortex, pancreatic islets, parathyroid gland, and anterior pituitary have also been observed to occur with increased frequency in irradiated mice and rats [34, 62].

3.4.5 Breast

The female breast has been found to be highly susceptible to radiation carcinogenesis, through studies of women: (1) exposed to atomic-bomb radiation [63], (2) treated with radiation to the breast for acute postpartum mastitis or other non-neoplastic diseases [20, 64], (3) subjected to repeated fluoroscopic examinations of the chest during treatment for pulmonary tuberculosis with artificial pneumothorax [20], and (4) employed as radium dial painters [65].

In the above groups, an increased frequency of breast cancer became evident within 5–20 years after irradiation, depending on the dose and age at exposure, and it has persisted for the duration of follow-up. The excess is larger in women irradiated during childhood or adolescence than in women irradiated at older ages, and susceptibility has been observed to decline markedly after the menopause. Although the excess became evident within 5–9 years after irradiation in the older age group, it did not appear until 15–20 years after irradiation in women exposed during adolescence or until 35 years later in those who were exposed at less than 10 years of age, implying that expression of the carcinogenic changes depends on promotion by age-related hormonal stimulation of breast tissue [66]. The risk of cancer appears typically to have increased linearly with the dose up to about 3–5 Gy, above which it has turned downward; however, no simple unified model adequately describes the excess in all groups. In women who were irradiated acutely or in fractionated high-dose-rate exposures, the dose-incidence curves are remarkably similar, implying that successive high-dose-rate exposures are highly additive in their carcinogenic effects on the breast. Conversely, in women who received protracted low-dose-rate exposures, in the treatment of cutaneous hemangiomas, the risks per unit dose have been several times lower [20], implying that the carcinogenic effects of successive doses on the breast are substantially less than fully additive if the radiation is absorbed gradually enough.

A high susceptibility of the mammary gland to radiation carcinogenesis is also evident in female laboratory animals of certain genetic backgrounds. In female rats and mice of some strains, the incidence of mammary gland tumours can be elevated detectably by doses as low as 100 mGy of X- or γ-radiation or 2.5 mGy of fast neutrons [3]. The shape of the dose-response curve varies, however, depending on the type of neoplasm in question, the dose rate and LET of the radiation, the age and genetic background of the exposed animals, and other variables [3]. The tumours evolve through a succession of stages (initiation, promotion, and progression), the completion of which is strongly dependent on appropriate hormonal stimulation [3]. Although the roles of specific oncogenes or tumour-suppressor genes remain to be elucidated, the frequency with which radiation initiates tumour formation greatly exceeds the rate with which radiation is known to induce mutations at any given genetic locus, implying that epigenetic factors may be involved [67]. That radiation-induced genomic instability is also likely to be involved in the process is suggested by the observation that neoplastic transformation, delayed chromatid instability, and delayed point mutations in the p53 tumor-suppressor gene are induced by irradiation at a far higher frequency in mammary cells from mice of the cancer-susceptible BALB/c strain than in mammary cells from mice of the cancer-resistant C57BL/6 strain [68].

3.4.6 Respiratory Tract

A dose-dependent increase in the incidence of lung cancer has been observed in a-bomb survivors [63], patients treated with spinal irradiation for ankylosing spondylitis [19], underground hardrock miners [18], and other irradiated populations [17]. The induced neoplasms include squamous-cell carcinomas, small-cell anaplastic carcinomas, and smaller numbers of cancers of other types [17].

The appearance of the tumours has typically been preceded by a latent period of 10 years or more,

depending on age at exposure. In a-bomb survivors, no excess of lung tumours was evident until after 10 years in those more than 50 years old at the time of irradiation, after 15 years in those 35–49 years old at exposure, and after 25 years in those 20–34 years old at exposure. Adjusted for age and duration of follow-up, the excess of lung cancer in a-bomb survivors, irradiated spondylitics, and underground miners approximates 2–3 cases per 10,000 persons per year per Sv, and although the data do not suffice to define the shape of the dose-response curve precisely, they are consistent with a linear-nonthreshold relationship [7, 18]. In underground miners, however, in whom the effects were due primarily to the high-LET radiations emitted by radon, the dose-incidence curve rises more steeply than in those populations that were exposed primarily to low-LET radiations [31, 69]. It is noteworthy, moreover, that the rates of lung cancer per unit dose in populations exposed to radon in indoor air appear to be comparable to the rates observed in underground miners [70]. Conversely, no significant excess of lung cancer has been evident in women who received repeated fluoroscopic examinations of the chest during the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis, suggesting that the carcinogenic effectiveness of low-LET radiation for the lung may be greatly reduced if the dose is accumulated sufficiently slowly [7].

In populations exposed primarily to high-LET radiation, the carcinogenic effects of cigarette smoking generally appear to have been multiplicative with those of radiation [7, 31, 69], whereas in populations exposed primarily to low-LET radiation, the effects of cigarette smoking generally appear to have been additive, or only slightly more than additive, with those of radiation [17, 31]. Noteworthy in this connection, is evidence that the mutations of the p53 gene in lung cancers induced by radon appear to differ significantly from those in lung cancers induced by tobacco smoke [71].

In laboratory animals of various species and strains, carcinogenic effects of radiation on the lung have been studied extensively [3, 72, 73]. The tumours have been observed to include benign and malignant growths arising at all levels of the respiratory tract, depending on the distribution of the radiation dose. Susceptibility to a given neoplasm varies among the different types of cells in the respiratory tract, as well as with the genetic background of the exposed animals, so that no one dose–response relationship fits all patterns of response. In general, high-LET radiation is appreciably more tumorigenic to the lung than is low-LET radiation, and its tumorigenic effectiveness varies relatively little with changes in the dose and dose rate, in contrast to the tumorigenic effectiveness of low-LET radiation, which tends to decrease with decreasing dose and dose rate [72]. After a given dose, irrespective of the LET of the radiation, the yield of tumours may be increased by the application of proliferative stimuli [74]. Although the relevant molecular mechanisms of tumorigenesis remain to be elucidated fully, evidence suggests that activation of the *ras* gene may be involved early in the induction of proliferative lesions by plutonium [73] but that neither the *rb* gene nor the *p53* gene play a major role in the induction of lung tumours. In dogs, moreover, the expression of the epidermal growth factor receptor gene has been found to be elevated in a significant percentage of plutonium-induced proliferative foci and lung tumours [75].

3.4.7 Gastrointestinal Tract

Cancers of the esophagus, stomach, colon, rectum, liver, pancreas, and salivary glands occur with increased frequency after irradiation, depending on the dose and conditions of exposure [7, 17]. Small increases in the frequency of tumours of the pharynx, hypopharynx, and larynx also have been observed in some irradiated populations, but such findings have been inconsistent, and no significant excess has been noted in a-bomb survivors or other populations exposed to doses in the range below 1 Sv [17, 31]; thus, the susceptibility of the latter tissues to the carcinogenic effects of radiation remains to be established.

Carcinoma of the *esophagus* has been observed to occur at twice the expected frequency in patients treated with spinal irradiation for ankylosing spondylitis [76], and to be increased in frequency for a time in a-bomb survivors as well [63]. Other irradiated populations, however, have not consistently shown a significant increase in the frequency of the disease [7, 17].

In rodents of several species, carcinomas of the *esophagus* and *forestomach* have been induced by experimental irradiation. In general, however, an excess of such tumours has been detected only after a relatively large dose (>5 Sv), and the yield per unit dose has been larger with fast neutrons than with X- or γ-rays [77].

G*astric carcinoma* has occurred with increased frequency in a-bomb survivors [63], in whom the data are consistent with a linear dose-response relationship, corresponding to a lifetime risk of 110 fatal cases per 10,000 persons per Sv [4]. Patients treated with radiation for cervical cancer also have shown an excess of the disease [28]. In other irradiated populations, however, elevated risks of the disease have been noted only inconsistently [7, 17].

Carcinoma of the *glandular stomach* also has been induced by irradiation in laboratory rodents [77]. In general, however, such tumors have been rare and have been detectable only after a relatively large dose, and the excess per unit dose has been larger with neutrons than with X- or γ-rays [77].

Carcinomas of the *colon* have occurred with increased frequency in a-bomb survivors, in whom the data are consistent with a linear dose-response relationship [63], corresponding to a lifetime risk of 8.5 fatal cases per 10,000 persons per Sv [4]. An elevated risk of the disease has been observed also in women treated with abdominal irradiation for benign pelvic disorders [17]. In other irradiated populations, however, it has been seen only inconstantly [7, 17].

In laboratory animals, intensive irradiation has been shown to induce adenocarcinomas of the *colon* [33]. The observed neoplasms include polypoid tumours of the large bowel in rats and dogs resulting from localized irradiation by neutron beams or by dietary polonium-210 or cerium-144 [78].

Cancer of the *rectum* has occurred with increased frequency in women treated with radiation for carcinoma of the cervix [29, 79]. No significant excess of the disease has been documented, however, in women of other irradiated populations, in whom the doses to the rectum have been much lower [17].

Primary cancers of the *liver* have occurred with increased frequency in a-bomb survivors [6] and in patients injected with thorotrast for angiographic examination [80–83]. In the a-bomb survivors the excess is statistically significant only at doses in the range of 1 Sv, and the magnitude of the risk at lower doses is uncertain. The types of liver cancer associated with thorotrast have typically been cholangiocarcinomas and smaller numbers of angiosarcomas and hepatocellular carcinomas, while those types associated with low-LET irradiation in the a-bomb survivors have been primarily hepatocellular carcinomas [7].

An excess of *liver* tumours has also been produced in laboratory animals by external irradiation and by the intravenous injection of colloidal radionuclides [77]. The induced tumours have occurred mainly at high dose levels and have included neoplasms of virtually all histologic types, depending on the exposure conditions, species, and strain in question.

Carcinomas of the *gall bladder* have occurred with increased frequency in patients injected with thorotrast for angiographic examination [80–84]. A significant excess of such tumors has not been observed consistently in other irradiated populations [17].

Tumours of the *salivary glands* have appeared with increased frequency in patients treated with radiation of the head and neck in childhood for various benign conditions; in such persons, the excess has corresponded to a risk of 0.6–2.5 cases of benign and malignant tumours per million exposed children per year per Gy [17, 85]. A dose-dependent increase has also been observed in a-bomb survivors [86], in whom the excess over a 20-year follow-up period has amounted to about 0.5–4 tumours per million persons per year per Gy [17].

Salivary gland tumours have rarely been observed in irradiated animal populations [87, 88], indicating that the susceptibility of these glands in the species investigated is relatively low.

Carcinoma of the *pancreas* has appeared to be increased in frequency in some irradiated population groups, but the excess has been of equivocal significance and has been noted only inconsistently [17, 49]. At present, therefore, there is no clear evidence of a causal association between pancreatic cancer and previous irradiation [17, 49].

3.4.8 Skeleton

An excess of benign and malignant bone tumours has been observed in radium dial painters [89–91], patients treated for ankylosing spondylitis by intravenous injection of radium-224 [25], patients injected with thorotrast for angiographic examination [78], and patients treated with therapeutic X-radiation for various conditions [7, 17]. The induced tumours have been evident only at doses above several Gy, however, with the result that no clear evidence of an excess has been observed in the a-bomb survivors or other populations exposed at lower dose levels [7, 17]. In patients

injected with radium-224, the data are consistent with a linear dose–response relationship over the range between 10 Gy and 100 Gy, but the shape of the dose-response curve at lower doses is highly uncertain [7].

In patients injected with radium-224 or treated with X-rays, in whom the radiation was received over a relatively brief period, the resulting excess of tumours was evident within 4 years, reached a maximum at 6–8 years, and declined thereafter [31]. In radium dial painters, however, who continue to accumulate dose from internally deposited radium-226 throughout life, osteosarcomas have appeared as late as 52 years after the onset of exposure [89, 97]. Susceptibility to the induction of osteosarcomas has been observed to be higher in children than in adults, and also to vary from one part of the skeleton to another, being highest at sites where spontaneous bone tumours arise most frequently (e.g., near the knee) and lowest in the vertebrae [92].

In laboratory animals, likewise, comparable carcinogenic effects of radiation on the *skeleton* have been observed. In mice, rats, and dogs, high-LET radiation from internally-deposited radium or plutonium has been found to be many times more tumorigenic to bone than low-LET radiation from internally-deposited strontium-90 or from external γ-radiation [93]. High-LET radiation has also proven to be more effective per unit dose at low dose rates than at high dose rates, whereas the opposite has been true of low-LET radiation [94]. Even with high-LET radiation, however, the average latent period for tumour induction has been observed to vary inversely with the dose rate and thus to exceed the mean life span for the species in question when the dose rate is sufficiently low [94]. In some instances, the tumours have exhibited the activation of certain oncogenes [95], the inactivation or loss of certain tumour-suppressor genes [95–96], or the presence of oncogenic viruses [97].

3.4.9 Genital Organs

A dose-dependent excess of carcinoma of the *ovary* has been observed in a-bomb survivors [63], but no clear excess has been evident in other irradiated populations [17]. On the basis of the existing data, the lifetime risk of the disease has been estimated to approximate10 fatal cases per 10,000 women per Sv [4].

In mice, tumours of the ovary are induced at high frequency by a dose that is large enough to sterilize both ovaries. The neoplasms include tumours of granulosa cells, lutein cells, theca cells, and other stromal elements, and their induction is attributable to the disturbance of hormonal regulation resulting from radiation-induced sterilization [50, 77]. In the mouse, susceptibility declines markedly with age at the time of irradiation [77].

Cancers of the uterus have not consistently been increased in frequency in irradiated women, and their induction by irradiation remains to be established [17, 31].

Cancers of the testis, penis, scrotum, and prostate . The existing epidemiological data reveal no clear evidence of a causal connection between radiation and cancers of the male genital organs [7, 17]. Interstitial tumors of the testis have been induced by intensive irradiation of the scrotum in rats of certain strains, an effect tentatively attributed by some observers to radiation-induced hormonal disturbances [77].

3.4.10 Kidney and Urinary Bladder

Cancers of the kidney and urinary bladder are increased in frequency in a-bomb survivors [63], patients treated with radiation for ankylosing spondylitis [19], uterine bleeding [21], or other diseases [29], and patients injected with thorotrast for retrograde pyelography [80]. The tumors are characteristically preceded by a latent period of 25–30 years, depending on the conditions of irradiation and age at exposure. The bladder appears to be more susceptible than the kidney [17], and the lifetime risk of bladder cancers for members of the general population is estimated to approximate 30 fatal cases per 10,000 persons per Sv [4].

In rats and mice, tumors of the kidney are readily induced by irradiation [77]. The tumors include benign and malignant growths, and their incidence for a given dose depends on physiological variables as well as on the conditions of irradiation [77]. Susceptibility is greatly increased in “Eker” rats, which are heterozygous for a mutated Tsc2 gene [98]. In these animals, the induction of renal tumors is postulated to constitute a 2-step process, the first step being the inheritance of the Tsc2 gene, and the second step being the loss or mutation of the remaining wild-type allele [98].

3.4.11 Central Nervous System

Brain tumors have been observed to be increased in frequency in patients given radiation therapy to the scalp in childhood for tinea capitis [26, 54], patients treated with radiation to the head and neck in childhood for tonsillitis, adenoiditis, and other non-neoplastic conditions [17], and children exposed to diagnostic X-radiation in utero [46]. Most of the onserved tumors have been benign, and of these, neurilemmomas aappear to be the type of neoplasm at highest risk. The data do not suffice, however, to define the dose–incidence relationship [7, 17].

Brain tumors have been induced in primates by intensive thermal neutron- or proton-irradiation [99].

3.4.12 Cancers, All Sites Combined

In a-bomb survivors, the total incidence of solid cancers during the first 50 years after irradiation appears to have increased as a linear-nonthreshold function of the dose over the range 0–2 Sv (Fig. 3.1). A significant elevation of the risk is detectable at doses below 0.1 Sv, and the upper confidence limit on any possible threshold has been computed to be 0.06 Sv [100]. As a consequence of the increased mortality from cancer and other diseases, the mean survival time of the population has been correspondingly reduced [101].

In laboratory animals, likewise, the oncogenic effects of whole-body irradiation on all organs combined cause the lifespan to be reduced by an amount that appears to increase linearly with the dose [3, 102].

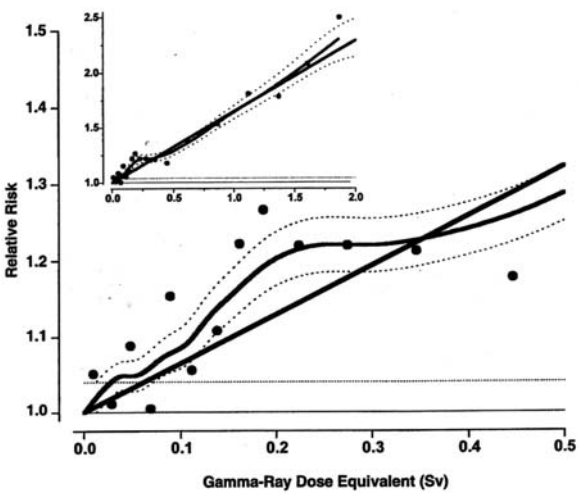


Fig. 3.1 Dose-response relationship for relative risk of cancer, all types combined, excluding leukemia, in a-bomb survivors, 1958–1994 (from 100). The data represent age-specific incidence rates in irradiated survivors relative to those in non-irradiated survivors, averaged over the follow-up period and over sex, and for exposure at age 30. The *straight line* represents the linear risk estimate computed over the 0–2 Sv dose range, and the *dashed curves* represent ±1 standard error for the *smoothed curve*

3.5 Mechanisms and Dose–Incidence Relationships

3.5.1 Effects of Radiation at the Cellular and Subcellular Levels

As ionising radiation penetrates living cells, it collides randomly with atoms and molecules in its path, giving rise to *ions* and *free radicals*, which break chemical bonds and cause other molecular alterations that may injure the cells. The spatial distribution of such events along the path of the radiation depends on the energy, mass, and charge of the radiation; e.g., X rays and gamma rays are sparsely ionising, in comparison with charged particles, which typically are more densely ionising; e.g., an alpha particle typically gives up all of its energy in traversing only a few cells [103]. The physico-chemical changes result almost instantaneously, but the evolution and expression of any ensuing biological effects may take minutes, days, or years, depending on the types of effects in question.

Any molecule in the cell may be altered by radiation, but *DNA* is the most critical biological target because of the limited redundancy of the genetic information it contains. DNA can be damaged directly by an impinging radiation, and it can also be damaged indirectly by radiation-induced effects on the surrounding cytoplasm or through the release of reactive oxygen species, cytokines, and other factors from neighboring cells (so-called “bystander” effects) [104]. A dose of radiation that is large enough to kill the average dividing cell {2 Sv (200 rem)} suffices to cause hundreds of lesions in its DNA molecules [105]. Most such lesions are reparable, but those produced by a densely ionising radiation (e.g., a proton or an alpha particle) are generally large scale in nature and less reparable than

those produced by a sparsely ionising radiation (e.g., an X-ray or a gamma ray) [3, 7, 103]. For this reason, densely ionising [high-linear energy transfer (LET)] radiations are typically more potent than are sparsely ionising (low-LET) radiations for most forms of injury [3, 4, 7].

Damage to DNA that remains unrepaired or is misrepaired may be expressed as a *mutation*. The frequency of mutations typically increases as a linear-nonthreshold function of the dose, approximating 10^{-5} to 10^{-6} per locus per Sv (100 rem), which is interpreted to indicate that that traversal of the DNA by a single ionising particle may suffice to cause a mutation [3, 7, 31]. With high-LET radiation, the curve rises more steeply than with low-LET radiation, and the yield of mutations per unit dose is relatively independent of the dose rate [3]. With low-LET radiation, in contrast, the yield of mutations per unit dose typically decreases with decreasing dose rate down to a minimum in the range of 0.1–1.0 cGy per minute, below which it rises again with further reduction of the dose rate [106]. The fact that the mutagenic effectiveness of low-LET radiation is reduced to a minimum at a dose rate in the range of 0.1–1.0 cGy per minute, is interpreted to signify that dose rates in this range are optimal for the error-free repair of DNA damage, and that the adaptive response needed for the purpose is elicited progressively less effectively as the dose rate is reduced below this level [106].

Pre-exposure to a small "conditioning" dose of low-LET radiation has been observed to reduce the yield of mutations produced by a larger "test" dose administered a short time later in some types of cells, owing to the induction of an adaptive repair system [107]. An appreciable dose appears to be required, however, to elicit such an adaptive response; hence the extent to which the response can be expected to protect humans against the mutagenic effects of low-level radiation remains to be determined [3, 107].

In view of the evidence that genomic instability is an important characteristic of cancer cells [35], it is noteworthy that the mutation rate in various experimental systems has been observed to remain elevated for many cell generations following irradiation, indicating the induction of transmissible genomic instability in surviving cells and their progeny [3, 10, 108, 109].

Radiation damage to the genetic apparatus may also cause the breakage of *chromosome*s. Although cells normally possess the ability to rejoin the severed ends of a broken chromosome, when two or more breaks occur close enough together in space and time, the broken ends from different break points may be joined together erroneously, giving rise to translocations, inversions, dicentrics, and other changes in chromosome number and structure [110]. The frequency of such "two-break" aberrations typically increases as a linear-quadratic function of the dose with low-LET radiation and as a steeper, linear function of the dose with high-LET radiation; the dose-response relationship has been characterized well enough so that the frequency of aberrations in blood lymphocytes can serve as a useful biological dosimeter [111, 112]. In human lymphocytes cultured soon after irradiation in vitro the frequency of dicentric and ring aberrations approximates 0.1 per cell per Sv [113], from which it may be inferred that the dose required to double the frequency of such aberrations is roughly 0.05 Sv, or about 50 times the dose ordinarily received each year from natural background radiation. Under certain experimental conditions, and in some but not all cells, prior exposure to a small "conditioning" dose of radiation has been observed to elicit an adaptive response that reduces the frequency of chromosome aberrations produced by a larger "test" dose administered a short time later [107]; however, as with protection against the induction of mutations, an appreciable dose appears to be required to elicit the response, so that the extent to which it can be expected to protect humans against the effects of low-level irradiation remains to be determined [3, 107].

Among the earliest reactions to irradiation is the inhibition of cell division, which appears promptly after exposure, varying both in degree and duration with the dose. Although the inhibition of mitosis is characteristically transitory, radiation damage to genes and chromosomes may be lethal to dividing cells, which are highly radiosensitive as a class [114]. Measured in terms of proliferative capacity, the survival of dividing cells tends to decrease exponentially with increasing dose, 1–2 Sv (100–200 rem) generally sufficing to reduce the surviving population by about 50%.

3.5.2 In Vitro Neoplastic Transformation

Clonogenic cells that survive irradiation in vitro exhibit a dose-dependent increase in the probability of *neoplastic transformation*. The dose-response curve for in vitro transformation is complex, however, and

it varies, depending on the dose rate and LET of the radiation, the genetic background of the exposed cells, the culture conditions, and other variables [3]. Human cells are relatively resistant to transformation unless previously immortalized [115, 116]; consequently the bulk of our data on in vitro transformation come from experiments with rodent cells. From the existing data, it appears that: (1) the percentage of cells transformed increases with the dose, often reaching a plateau in the range of 10^{-3} at doses of 3–5 Gy; (2) high-LET radiation has a greater transforming effectiveness than low-LET radiation; (3) the transforming effectives of low-LET radiation generally decreases with decreasing dose rate, in contrast to that of high-LET radiation, which tends to remain constant, or even to increase, with decreasing dose rate; (4) cells are most sensitive to radiation-induced transformation in the G_2/M stage of the division cycle; (5) depending on the cell system employed, transforming effects may be detectable at doses as low as 100 mGy of γ-rays, 10 mGy of neutrons, or after the passage of an average of only one alpha particle per cell nucleus; (6) transformation of a given cell may be enhanced by, or mediated through, radiation-induced effects on neighboring cells ("bystander effects"); (7) prior exposure to a small, "conditioning" dose of radiation may reduce the susceptibility of the cell to a second, larger, "test" dose administered a short time later; (8) transformation evolves through a multi-step process; (9) the initiating step in transformation typically occurs at a frequency far exceeding the rate of radiation-induced mutations at any given genetic locus in rodent cells, suggesting that epigenetic events may be involved; (10) the initiating step is characteristically followed by the progressive accumulation of genetic changes in subsequent cell generations, indicating that the induction of genomic instability is involved; (11) the rate of transformation by ionizing radiation may be modified by various other physical and chemical agents applied before or after irradiation [3].

3.5.3 Carcinogenesis In Vivo

As noted above, many but not all, types of neoplasms have been induced by irradiation in laboratory animals and human populations, with dose-response relationships that vary markedly, depending on the neoplasm in question. In laboratory animals, moreover, neoplasms of some types have actually decreased in frequency with increasing dose over the range of doses tested [3, 34].

For those types of neoplasms that exhibit a dose-dependent increase in frequency, the dose-response curves typically pass through a maximum at intermediate dose levels and decrease with further increase in the dose [3, 34, 50]. The decrease in their frequency at higher doses is attributed to cell killing or other forms of damage that interfere with the expression of the carcinogenic changes [34, 50]. Conversely, cell killing can play a key role in the induction of some other types of neoplasms – such as ovarian tumours and thymic lymphomas in the mouse, hair follicle tumours in the rat, and osteosarcomas in the dog – by eliciting growth stimuli that promote the formation of these neoplasms [50].

As yet, however, the relevant mechanisms of oncogenesis are not known in sufficient detail to explain the diversity of dose-incidence patterns that have been observed. In relatively few instances, moreover, has the dose–incidence relationship been characterized at doses below 0.5 Sv, or has the influence of the dose rate and quality (LET) of the radiation for tumorigenesis been defined in detail. Pending further information, therefore, the carcinogenic risks from low-level radiation must remain uncertain [3, 7]. Nevertheless, since the oncogenic effects of radiation are postulated to be initiated by the activation of oncogenes, inactivation of tumour-suppressor genes, or other appropriate genetic damage to the occasional cell [35], the dose-incidence relationships for low-level radiation carcinogenesis in vivo presumably resemble the corresponding dose–effect relationships for the induction of mutations and chromosome aberrations, mentioned above [3].

Given existing data on the molecular mechanisms of leukaemia and other neoplasms, therefore, it is noteworthy that the dose-response curves for leukaemia and for solid cancers (all types combined) in a-bomb survivors closely resemble the curves for chromosome aberrations and mutations, respectively [117]. Furthermore, the age-distribution of solid cancers (all types combined) in a-bomb survivors, coupled with the corresponding dose-response data, are consistent with the hypothesis that cancer results from the gradual accumulation of mutations in the body's stem cells throughout life, and that irradiation can add any one of the requisite mutations and thereby advance the process significantly in any given cell [118].

Influence of dose rate. In experimental animals, the dose-incidence curves for oncogenic effects of

low-LET radiation generally decrease in slope with decreasing dose rate, owing to repair of some of the incipient damage apace with its gradual accumulation [3]. As a result, the overall age-specific mortality from radiation-induced neoplasms – and the associated reduction in life-expectancy – are typically several times lower if a given dose of low-LET radiation is received gradually in small increments over a period of weeks than if it is absorbed in a single, brief exposure [3]. With high-LET radiation, on the other hand, the dose-response curve may rise even more steeply with prolongation of the exposure [3, 31, 119].

Age-related changes in susceptibility may also modify the dose-response relationship when the period of irradiation is greatly protracted. In the induction of ovarian tumours in the mouse, for example, the effect of aging and the effect of protraction both act to reduce the ultimate yield of tumours per unit dose when the period of irradiation is greatly prolonged [7].

Influence of host factors. Susceptibility to the induction of neoplasms of any given type also varies markedly among laboratory animals of different species and strains [35] and among humans of differing genetic constitutions [3, 7, 35, 120]. Susceptibility is heightened, for example in children with familial retinoblastoma and in those with the nevoid basal cell carcinoma syndrome, ataxia telangiectasia, or certain other inherited disorders [35, 120]. In children with familial retinoblastoma, the heightened susceptibility has been interpreted as evidence of a two-step mutational etiology of the induced cancers, the first mutation being inherited and the second caused by irradiation [120].

As noted above, age also influences susceptibility to radiation carcinogenesis, the effects of age varying with the type of neoplasm in question [33, 34]. For example, susceptibility to the induction of thyroid tumours and susceptibility to induction of tumours of the female breast both decline markedly with increasing age at exposure in human populations [7]. Conversely, however, the total incidence of cancer per unit dose tends to increase with age at exposure in adults, in parallel with the age-dependent increase in the underlying spontaneous baseline cancer incidence in the general population [118].

Another factor that may conceivably modify the dose–response relationship for radiation carcinogenesis at low dose levels is the potential influence of an adaptive response to radiation; i.e., under certain experimental conditions, as noted above, exposure to a small "conditioning" dose of radiation has been shown to stimulate DNA repair and to reduce the yield of mutations and/or chromosome aberrations that is induced by a subsequent "test" dose [49, 107]. As yet, however, it remains to be determined whether such an adaptive response can be elicited by low-level irradiation and, if so, the extent to which it might be expected to affect susceptibility to the carcinogenic effects of radiation [3, 107].

3.6 Modifying Effects of Other Physical and Chemical Agents

The carcinogenic effects of radiation may be enhanced or inhibited by various other physical and chemical agents. In endocrine glands and their target organs, for example, radiation carcinogenesis can be promoted by appropriate hormonal stimulation [3, 7]. Similarly, as noted above, the combined effects of radiation and cigarette smoking on the risks of lung cancer may be additive or more than additive, depending on the conditions of exposure [7]. Additional examples of interactions between the effects of radiation and those of other agents include: (1) the synergistic effects of ultraviolet radiation and X-radiation in the induction of squamous cell carcinomas of the skin in persons irradiated for tinea capitis in childhood [38]; (2) the synergistic effects of X-radiation and asbestos in the induction of mesotheliomas in rats [121]; and (3) the enhanced risks of second cancers in patients treated with combinations of radiation and various chemotherapeutic agents, as compared with radiation alone [7].

Depending on the conditions of exposure, additive, synergistic, or mutually antagonistic interactions have been observed among different agents in combination with radiation [7]. The existence of such variations is not unexpected in view of the multi-causal, multistage nature of carcinogenesis, the differences among diverse agents in their modes of action, and the different ways in which homeostatic processes may affect neoplasia.

3.7 Assessment of the Carcinogenic Risks of Low-Level Irradiation

Assessment of the carcinogenic risks of low-level irradiation in human populations is complicated by the

following factors: (1) the existing data on the quantitative relationship between irradiation and the risk of cancer come primarily from observations on the effects of relatively large doses, with the result that estimates of the risks at lower dose levels must be based on models, the reliability of which is uncertain; (2) contributing to the uncertainty of the models currently in use are questions about the extent to which they may fail to allow appropriately for the possibility that adaptive responses to radiation may modify the dose–incidence relationship at low dose levels; (3) the cancers induced by radiation do not appear until years or decades after exposure and are indistinguishable individually from those induced by other causes, so that their causal connection to irradiation can be inferred only on statistical grounds, based on an increase in their frequency above that expected; (4) the frequency of cancer at any one site is so low that few study populations have been large enough and/or exposed to high enough doses of radiation to yield highly quantitative dose-incidence data; (5) the average latent period between irradiation and the appearance of the induced cancer is so long that the follow-up of exposed persons and the evaluation of their doses is severely hampered; (6) none of the irradiated populations studied thus far has been followed long enough to disclose the total, cumulative lifetime effects of radiation on its cancer incidence; (7) many of the existing dose-incidence data have been derived from the study of patients treated with radiation for medical purposes, in whom the effects of radiation may be confounded by effects of other forms of treatment or of the underlying disease itself; (8) some of the existing data are based on effects of internally deposited radionuclides, interpretation of which is complicated by unknown variations of the radiation dose in space and time; and (9) the natural incidence of cancer varies so widely from one organ to another and under the influence of so many variables (e.g., genetic background, age, sex, geographic location, diet, socio-economic factors, etc.) that dose-incidence data derived from one population may not be strictly applicable to another [3, 7].

The above complications notwithstanding, the weight of existing epidemiological, experimental, and theoretical evidence suggests that lesions which are precursors to cancer (i.e., mutations and chromosome aberrations) and some forms of cancer themselves can be expected to increase in frequency as linear-nonthreshold functions of the radiation dose at low-to-intermediate levels of exposure [3]. Therefore, although the data do not exclude other dose–effect relationships, including those with thresholds, the linear-nonthreshold model, adjusted to allow for expected dose-rate- and LET-dependent differences in the tumorigenic effectiveness of radiation, is the model that is presently used in assessing the risks of radiation-induced cancer for purposes of radiation protection [3, 4, 6]. The linear-nonthreshold model has also come to be used as a basis for risk assessment in compensation cases involving the occurrence of cancers in previously irradiated persons [122, 123].

The use of this type of model has yielded a range of risk estimates for cancers of different sites (e.g., Table 3.3).

Table 3.3 Estimated lifetime risks of cancer attributable to 0.1 Sv low-dose-rate irradiation[a]

Type or site of cancer	Excess cancer deaths per 100,000 (No.)	(%)[b]
Colon	95	5
Lung	85	3
Bone marrow (leukaemia)	50	10
Stomach	50	8
Breast	45	2
Urinary bladder	25	4
Esophagus	10	3
Liver	15	3
Gonads	15	3
Thyroid	5	5
Bone	3	3
Skin	2	2
Remainder	100	2
Total	500	2

[a]Modified from [4, 124]

[b]Percentage by which the spontaneous, "background" risk would be increased

The estimates imply that less than 3% of all cancers in the general population can be attributed to natural background irradiation [7, 31]. Since a percentage that small would not be detectable with existing epidemiological methods, the estimate is not inconsistent with the fact that studies have thus far failed to find referable differences in cancer rates among populations residing in areas of widely differing natural background radiation levels [3, 7]. It is noteworthy, however, that although the percentage of all cancers attributable to natural background radiation is relatively small, the data imply that up to 20% of lung cancers may result from inhalation of the radon in indoor air [3, 18].

Furthermore, because the average radiation dose to the general population from medical sources in developed countries now exceeds that from all natural sources other than inhaled radon, growing attention is being given to limitation of the doses delivered in medical and dental practice [4, 6]. Methods used for the purpose include: (1) reduction of the number of radiographs per patient, with avoidance of unnecessary exposures; (2) reduction of the duration and intensity of exposure per radiograph; (3) use of other imaging techniques in preference to radiography and fluoroscopy whenever possible; (4) reduction of the field size to a minimum; (5) shielding of tissues outside the field to be examined, especially the gonads; (6) proper training and supervision of staff engaged in radiological examinations; (7) proper calibration and operation of radiological apparatus; (8) achievement of an appropriate balance between risk and benefit in the use of radiographic procedures for mass screening of asymptomatic populations, as in the development of guidelines for X-ray mammography in mass screening of women for the early detection of breast cancer [125].

References

1. Furth J and Lorenz E: Carcinogenesis by ionizing radiations. In: *Radiation Biology, Vol. I*, A Hollaender, ed, McGraw-Hill, New York, pp. 1145–1201, 1954
2. Lewis EB: Leukemia and ionizing radiation. *Science* 125: 965–975, 1957
3. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements (NCRP): *Evaluation of the Dose-Response Relationships for Genetic and Carcinogenic Effects of Low Doses of Radiation*, *NCRP Report No. 136*, Bethesda, MD, NCRP, 2001
4. International Commission on Radiological Protection (ICRP): 1990 Recommendations of the International Commission on Radiological Protection. ICRP Publication 60. *Ann ICRP* 21: No. 1–3, 1991
5. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements (NCRP): *Risk Estimates for Radiation. NCRP Report No.115*, Bethesda, MD, NCRP, 1993
6. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements (NCRP): *Limitation of Exposure to Ionizing Radiation. NCRP Report No.116*, Bethesda, MD, NCRP, 1993
7. United Nations Scientific Committee on the Effects of Atomic Radiation (UNSCEAR): *Sources and Effects of Ionizing Radiation. Report to the General Assembly, with Annexes*, New York, United Nations, 2000
8. Frieben A: Demonstration eines Cancroids des rechten Handrückens, das sich nach langdauernder Einwirkung von Röntgenstralen entwickelt hatte. *Fortschr Geb Röntgenstr* 6: 106, 1902
9. Brown P: *American Martyrs to Science Through the Roentgen Rays*. Charles C. Thomas, Springfield, 1936
10. Lorimore SA, Kadhim MA, Pocock DA, et al.: Chromosomal instability in the descendants of unirradiated cells surviving after alpha-particle irradiation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 95: 5730–5733, 1998
11. Von Jagie N, Schwarz G, and von Siebrock L: Blutbefunde bei Röntgenologen. *Berl Klin Wschr* 48: 1220–1222, 1911
12. Cronkite EP, Moloney W, and Bond VP: Radiation leukemogenesis and analysis of the problem. *Am J Med* 5: 673–682, 1960
13. March HC: Leukemia in radiologists. *Radiology* 4: 275–278, 1944
14. Cardis E, Gilbert ES, Carpenter L, et al.: Effects of low doses and low dose rates of external ionizing radiation: Cancer mortality among nuclear industry workers in three countries. *Radiat Res* 142: 117–132, 1995
15. Matanoski GM: Risk of cancer associated with occupational exposure in radiologists and other radiation workers. In: *Cancer: Achievements, Challenges and Prospects for the 1980s*, JH Burchenal and HF Oettgen, eds, Grune & Stratton, New York, pp. 241–254, 1981
16. Martland HS: The occurrence of malignancy in radioactive persons. *Am J Cancer* 15: 2435–2516, 1931
17. Mettler FA and Upton AC: *Medical Effects of Ionizing Radiation*. Saunders, Elsevier, Philadelphia, 2008
18. National Academy of Sciences/National Research Council: *Health Effects of Exposure to Radon*. National Academy Press, Washington, DC, 1998
19. Smith PG and Doll R: Mortality among patients with ankylosing spondylitis after a single treatment course with x-rays. *Br Med J* 284: 449–460, 1982
20. Preston DL, Mattsson A, Holmberg E, et al.: Radiation effects on breast cancer risk: A pooled analysis of eight cohorts. *Radiat Res* 158: 220–235, 2002
21. Darby SC, Reeves G, Key T, et al.: Mortality in a cohort of women given X-ray therapy for metropathia hemorrhagica. *Int J Cancer* 56: 793–801, 1994
22. Smith PG and Doll R: Later effects of x-irradiation in patients treated for metropathia hemorrhagica. *Br J Radiol* 49: 224–232, 1976

23. Hempelmann LH, Hall WJ, Phillips M, and Ames WR: Neoplasms in persons treated with x-rays in infancy: Fourth survey in 20 years. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 55: 519–530, 1975
24. Jones A: Irradiation sarcoma. *Br J Radiol* 26: 273–284, 1953
25. Nekolla EA, Kreisheimer M, Kellerer AM, et al.: Induction of malignant bone tumors in radium-224 patients: Risk estimates based on improved dosimetry. *Radiat Res* 153: 93–103, 2000
26. Shore RE, Albert RE, and Pasternack BS: Follow up study of patients treated by x-ray epilation for tinea capitis: Resurvey of post-treatment illness and mortality experience. *Arch Environ Health* 31: 17–28, 1976
27. Modan B and Liliefeld AM: Polycythemia vera and leukemia – the role of radiation treatment. *Medicine* 44: 305–344, 1965
28. Pochin EE: Leukemia following radioiodine treatment of thyrotoxicosis. *Br Med J* 11: 1545–1550, 1960
29. Boice JD Jr, Engholm G, Kleinerman RA, et al.: Radiation dose and second cancer risk in patients treated for cancer of the cervix. *Radiat Res* 116: 3–55, 1988
30. Tucker MA, Meadows AT, Boice JD, Jr, et al.: Cancer risk following treatment of childhood cancer. In: *Radiation Carcinogenesis: Epidemiology and Biological Significance*, JD Boice, Jr. and JF Fraumeni, eds, Raven Press, New York, pp. 211–224, 1984
31. National Academy of Sciences/National Research Council: *Health Risks from Exposure to Low Levels of Ionizing Radiation. Beir VII Phase 2*. National Academy Press, Washington, DC, 2006
32. Conard RA, Paglia DE, Larsen PR, et al.: *Review of Medical Findings in a Marshallese Population Twenty-Six Years after Accidental Exposure to Radioactive Fallout, BNL 51261*, Brookhaven National Laboratory, Upton, New York, 1980
33. Upton AC: Historical perspectives on radiation carcinogenesis. In: *Radiation Carcinogenesis*, AC Upton, RE Albert, FJ Burns, and RE Shore, eds, Elsevier, New York, pp. 1–10, 1986
34. United Nations Scientific Committee on the Effects of Atomic Radiation (UNSCEAR): *Sources and Effects of Ionizing Radiation. Report to the General Assembly with Annexes*, New York, United Nations, 1977
35. Little JB: Radiation carcinogenesis. *Carcinogenesis* 21: 397–404, 2000
36. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements (NCRP): *Ionizing Radiation Exposure of the Population of the United States. NCRP report 93*. Bethesda, MD, NCRP, 1987
37. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements (NCRP): *Exposure of the US Population from Occupational Radiation. NCRP report 101*, Bethesda, MD, NCRP, 1989
38. Shore RE, Moseson M, Xue X, et al.: Skin cancer after X-ray treatment for scalp ringworm. *Radiat Res* 157: 410–418, 2002
39. Albert RE and Shore RE: Carcinogenic effects of radiation on the human skin. In: *Radiation Caarcinogenesis*, AC Upton, RE Albert, FJ Burns, and RE Shore, eds, Elsevier, New York, pp. 335–345, 1986
40. Secova M, Sevc J, and Thomas J: Alpha irradiation of the skin and the possibility of late effects. *Health Phys* 35: 803–806, 1978
41. Ron E, Preston DL, Mabuchi K, et al.: Skin tumor risk among atomic bomb survivors in Japan. *Cancer Causes Control* 9: 393–401, 1998
42. Burns FJ and Albert RE: Radiation carcinogenesis in rat skin. In: *Radiation Carcinogenesis*, AC Upton, RE Albert, FJ Burns, and RE Shore, eds, Elsevier, New York, pp. 199–214, 1986
43. Ootsuyama A and Tanooka H: Zero tumor incidence in mice after repeated lifetime exposures to 0.5 Gy of beta radiation. *Radiat Res* 134: 244–246, 1993
44. Garte SJ, Burns FJ, Ashhkenazi-Kimmel T, et al.: Amplification of the c-myc oncogene during progression of radiation-induced rat skin tumors. *Cancer Res* 50: 3073–3077, 1990
45. Little MP and Muirhead CR: Curvature in the cancer mortality dose response in Japanese atomic bomb survivors: absence of evidence of threshold. *Int J Radiat Biol* 74: 471–480, 1998
46. Doll R and Wakeford R: Risk of childhood cancer from fetal irradiation. *Br J Radiol* 70: 130–139, 1997
47. Delongchamp RR, Mabuchi K, Yoshimoto Y, et al.: Mortality among atomic bomb survivors exposed *in utero* or as young children. *Radiat Res* 147: 385–395, 1997
48. Gardner MJ, Hall A, Snee MP, et al.: Results of case-control study of leukaemia and lymphoma among young people near Sellafield nuclear plant in West Cumbria. *Br Med J* 300: 423–429, 1990
49. United Nations Scientific Committee on the Effects of Atomic Radiation (UNSCEAR): *Sources and Effects of Ionizing Radiation. Report to the General Assembly, with Annexes*, New York, United Nations, 1994
50. United Nations Scientific Committee on the Effects of Atomic Radiation (UNSCEAR): *Genetic and Somatic Effects of Ionizing Radiation. Report to the General Assembly, with Annexes*, New York, United Nations, 1986
51. Bouffler S, Silver A, Papworth D, et al.: Chromosomal abnormalities in neutron-induced acute myeloid leukemias in CBA/H mice. *Radiat Res* 146: 349–352, 1986
52. Clark DJ, Meijne EIM, Bouffler SD, et al.: Microsatellite analysis of recurrent chromosome 2 deletions in acute myeloid leukemia induced by radiation in F1 hybrid mice. *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 16: 238–246, 1996
53. Kerber RA, Till JE, Simon SL, et al.: A cohort study of thyroid disease in relation to fallout from nuclear weapons testing. *JAMA* 270: 2076–2082, 1993
54. Robbins J and Adams W: Radiation effects in the Marshall Islands. In: *Radiation and the Thyroid*, S Nagataki, ed, Exerpta Medica, Tokyo, pp. 11–24, 1989
55. Ron E, Lubin JH, Shore RE, et al.: Thyroid cancer after exposure to external radiation: A pooled analysis of seven studies. *Radiat Res* 141: 259–277, 1995
56. Shore RE: Issues and epidemiological evidence regarding radiation-induced thyroid cancer. *Radiat Res* 131: 98–111, 1992

57. Nikiforov E, Rowland JM, Bove KE, et al.: Distinct patterns of *ret* oncogene rearrangement in morphological variants of radiation-induced and sporadic thyroid papillary carcinomas in children. *Cancer Res* 57: 1690–1694, 1997
58. Astakhova LN, Anspaugh LR, Beebe GW, et al.: Chernobyl-related thyroid cancer in children of Belarus: a case-control study. *Radiat Res* 150: 340–356, 1998
59. Heidenreich WF, Kenigsberg J, Jacob P, et al.: Time trends of thyroid cancer incidence in Belarus after the Chernobyl accident. *Radiat Res* 181: 617–625, 1999
60. Takeichi N, Dohi K, Ito H, et al.: Parathyroid tumors in atomic bomb survivors in Hiroshima: A review. *Radiat Res* 32 (Suppl.): 189–192, 1991
61. Holm LE, Hall P, Wiklund K, et al.: Cancer risk after iodine 131 therapy for hyperthyroidism. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 83: 1072–1077, 1991
62. Upton AC, Kimball AW, Furth J, et al.: Some delayed effects of a-bomb radiations in mice. *Cancer Res* 20: 1–62, 1960
63. Pierce DA, Shimizu Y, Preston DL, et al.: Studies of the mortality of atomic bomb survivors. Report 12, Part 1. Cancer: 1950–1990. *Radiat Res* 146: 1–27, 1996
64. Shore RE, Hildreth N, Woodward E, et al.: Breast cancer among women given X-ray therapy for acute postpartum mastitis. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 77: 689–696, 1997
65. Baverstock KF, Papworth D, and Vennart J: Risks of radiation at low dose rates. *Lancet* 1: 430–433, 1981
66. Tokunaga M, Land CE, Yamamoto T, et al.: Breast cancer among atomic bomb survivors. In: *Radiation Carcinogenesis: Epidemiology and Biological Significance*, JD Boice Jr and JF Fraumeni, eds, Raven Press, New York, pp. 45–56, 1984
67. Kamiya K, Yasukawa-Barnes J, Mitchen JM, et al.: Evidence that carcinogenesis involves an imbalance between epigenetic high-frequency initiation and suppression of promotion. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 92: 1332–1336, 1995
68. Ponnaiya B, Cornforth MN, and Ullrich RL: Radiation-induced chromosomal instability in BALB/c and C57BL/6 mice: The difference is as clear as black and white. *Radiat Res* 147: 121–125, 1997
69. Lubin JH, Boice JD Jr, Edling C, et al.: *Radon and Lung Cancer Risk: A Joint analysis of 11 Underground Miners Studies*. (NIH Publication No. 94-3644) National Insitutes of Health, Rockville, MD, 1994
70. Lubin JH, Tomasek L, Edling C, et al.: Estimating lung cancer mortality from residential radon using data for low exposures of miners. *Radiat Res* 147: 126–134, 1997
71. Vahakangas KH, Samet JM, Metcalf RA, et al.: Mutations of p53 and ras genes in radon-associated lung cancer from uranium miners. *Lancet* 339: 576–580, 1992
72. Bair WJ: Experimental carcinogenesis in the respiratory tract. In: *Radiation Carcinogenesis*, AC Upton, RE Albert, FJ Burns, and RE Shore, eds, Elsevier, New York, pp. 151–167, 1986
73. Masse R: Lung cancer in laboratory animals. *Radiat Environ Biophys* 30: 233–237, 1991
74. Little JB: Influence of noncarcinogenic secondary factors on radiation carcinogenesis. *Radiat Res* 87: 240–250, 1981
75. Gillett NA, Stegelmeier BL, Kelly G, et al.: Expression of epidermal growth factor receptor in plutonium-239-induced lung neoplasms in dogs. *Vet Pathol* 29: 46–52, 1992
76. Weiss HA, Darby SC, and Doll R: Cancer mortality following x-ray treatment for ankylosing spondylitis. *Int J Cancer* 59: 327–338, 1994
77. Watanabe H, Ito A, and Hirose F: Experimental carcinogenesis in the digestive and urinary tracts. In: *Radiation Carcinogenesis*, AC Upton, RE Albert, FJ Burns, and RE Shore, eds, Elsevier, New York, pp. 233–244, 1986
78. Lebedeva GA: Intestinal polyps arising under the influence of various kinds of ionizing radiations. *Vop Onkol* 19: 47–51, 1973 (in Russian).
79. Arai T, Nakano T, Fukuhisa K, et al.: Second cancers after radiation therapy for cancer of the uterine cervix. *Cancer* 67: 398–405, 1991
80. Andersson M and Storm HH: Cancer incidence among Danish Thorotrast-exposed patients. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 84: 1318–1325, 1992
81. Dos Santos Silva I, Jones M, Malveiro F, et al.: Mortality in the Portuguese Thorotrast study. *Radiat Res* 152: S88–S92, 1999
82. Nyberg U, Nilsson B, Travis LB, et al.: Cancer incidence among Swedish patients exposed to radioactive Thorotrast: A forty-year follow-up survey. *Radiat Res* 157: 419–425, 2002
83. Van Kaick G, Dalheimer A, Hornik S, et al.: The German Thorotrast study: recent results and assessment of risks. *Radiat Res* 152: S64–S71, 1999
84. Mori T, Fukutomi K, Kato Y, et al.: 1998 results of the first series of follow-up studies on Japanese Thorotrast patients and their relationship to an autopsy series. *Radiat Res* 152: S72–S80, 1999
85. Kaste S, Hedlund G, and Pratt C: Malignant parotid tumors in patients previously treated for childhood cancer. *Am J Radiol* 162: 655–659, 1994
86. Takeichi N, Hirone F, and Yamamoto H: Salivary gland tumors in atomic bomb survivors, Hiroshima, Japan. *Cancer* 52: 377–385, 1983
87. Glucksman A and Cherry CP: The induction of adenomas by the irradiation of salivary glands of rats. *Radiat Res* 17: 186–202, 1962
88. Takeichi N: Induction of salivary gland tumors following x-ray examination. II. Development of salivary gland tumors in long-term experiments. *Med J Hiroshima Univ* 23: 391–411, 1975 (in Japanese)
89. Carnes BA, Groer PG, and Kotek TJ: Radium dial workers: issues concerning dose response and modeling. *Radiat Res* 147: 707–714, 1997
90. Fry SA: Studies of US radium dial workers: an epidemiological classic. *Radiat Res* 150: S21–S29, 1998
91. Rowland RE: Dose-response relationships for female radium dial workers: a new look. In: *Health Effects of Internally Deposited Radionuclides: Emphasis on Radium and Thorium*, G van Kaick et al, eds, World Scientific, Singapore, pp. 135–143, 1995
92. Thurman GB, Mays CW, Taylor GN, et al.: Skeletal location of radiation-induced and naturally occurring osteosarcomas in man and dog. Cancer Res 33: 1604–1607, 1973.

93. Goldman M: Experimental carcinogenesis in the skeleton. In: *Radiation Carcinogenesis*, AC Upton, RE Albert, FJ Burns, and RE Shore, eds, Elsevier, New York, pp. 215–231, 1986
94. Raabe OO, Rosenblatt LS, and Schlenker RA: Interspecies scaling of risks for radiation-induced bone cancer. *Int J Radiat Biol* 57: 1047–1061, 1990
95. Strauss PG, Mitreiter K, Zitzelsberger H, et al.: Elevated p53 expression correlates with incomplete osteogenic differentiation of radiation-induced osteosarcomas. *Int J Cancer* 50: 252–258, 1992
96. Sturm SA, Strauss PG, Adolph S, et al.: Amplification and rearrangement of c-myc in radiation-induced murine osteosarcomas. *Cancer Res* 50: 4146–4153, 1990
97. Janowski M, Cox R, and Strauss G: The molecular biology of radiation-induced carcinogenesis: thymic lymphoma, myeloid leukaemia and osteosarcoma. *Int J Radiat Biol* 57: 677–691, 1990
98. Hino O, Klein-Szanto AJP, Freed JJ, et al.: Spontaneous and radiation-induced renal tumors in the Eker rat model of dominantly inherited cancer. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 90: 327–331, 1993
99. Haymaker W, Rubenstein L, and Miquel J: Brain tumors in irradiated monkeys. *Acta Neuropathol* 20: 267–277, 1972
100. Pierce DA and Preston DL: Radiation-related cancer risks at low doses among atomic bomb survivors. *Radiat Res* 154: 178–186, 2000
101. Cologne JB and Preston DL: Longevity of atomic bomb survivors. *Lancet* 356: 303–307, 2000
102. United Nations Scientific Committee on the Effects of Atomic Radiation (UNSCEAR): *Ionizing Radiation: Sources and Biological Effects. Report to the General Assembly with Annexes*, New York, United Nations, 1982
103. Goodhead DT: Spatial and temporal distribution of energy. *Health Phys* 55: 231–240, 1988
104. Mothersill C and Seymour C: Radiation-induced bystander effects: Past history and future directions. *Radiat Res* 155: 759–767, 2001
105. Ward JF: DNA damage produced by ionizing radiation in mammalian cells: identities, mechanisms of formation, and repairability. *Prog Nucleic Acid Res Mol Biol* 35: 96–128, 1988
106. Vilenchik MM and Knudson AG Jr.: Inverse radiation dose-rate effects on somatic and germ-line mutations and DNA damage rates. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 97: 5381–5386, 2000
107. Wojcik A: The current status of the adaptive response to ionizing radiation in mammalian cells. *Human Ecol Risk Assessment* 6: 281–300, 2000
108. Little JB: Radiation-induced genomic instability. *Int J Radiat Biol* 74: 663–671, 1998
109. Wright EG: Radiation-induced genomic instability in haemopoietic cells. *Int J Radiat Biol* 74: 681–687, 1998
110. Cornforth MN and Bedford JS: Ionizing radiation damage and its early development in chromosomes. *Adv Radiat Biol* 17: 423–496, 1993
111. Edwards AA: The use of chromosomal aberrations in human lymphocytes for biological dosimetry. *Radiat Res* 148: S39–S44, 1997
112. International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA): *Biological Dosimetry: Chromosomal Aberration Analysis for Dose Assessment. Technical Report.No. 260*, International Atomic Energy Agency, Vienna, 1986
113. Lloyd DC and Purrott RJ: Chromosome aberration analysis in radiological protection dosimetry. *Radiat Protect Dosim* 1: 19–28, 1981
114. Hall EJ: *Radiobiology for the Radiologist*, 4th edn, J.B. Lippincott, Philadelphia, 1994
115. Hei TK, Piao CK, Willey JC et al.: Malignant transformation of human bronchial epithelial cells by radon-simulated alpha particles. *Carcinogenesis* 15: 431–437, 1994
116. Mendonca MS, Howard K, Fasching CL, et al.: Loss of suppressor loci on chromosomes 11 and 14 may be required for radiation-induced neoplastitransformation of HeLa x skin fibroblast human cell hybrids. *Radiat Res* 149: 246–255, 1998
117. Mendelsohn ML: A simple reductionist model for cancer risk in atom bomb survivors. In: *Modeling of Biological Effects and Risks of Radiation Exposure*, J Inaba and S Kobayashi, eds, Japanese Institute of Radiological Sciences, Chiba, pp. 185–192, 1995
118. Pierce DA and Mendelsohn ML: A model for radiation-related cancer suggested by atomic bomb survivor data. *Radiat Res* 152: 642–654, 1999
119. Thomson JF, Williamson FS, Grahn D, and Ainsworth EJ: Life shortening in mice exposed to fission neutrons and γ rays. II. Duration-of-life and long-term fractionated exposures. *Radiat Res* 86: 573–579, 1981
120. International Commission on Radiological Protection (ICRP): Genetic Susceptibility to Cancer. ICRP Publication 79. *Ann ICRP* 28, No. 1–2, 1998
121. Warren S, Brown CE, Chute RN, and Federman M: Mesothelioma relative to asbestos, radiation, and methylcholanthrene. *Arch Path Lab Med* 105: 304–312, 1981
122. Rall JE, Beebe GW, Hoel DG, et al.: *Report of the National Institutes of Health Working Group to Develop Radioepidemiological Tables. NIH Publication No. 85–2748*, US Government. Printing Office, Washington, DC, 1985
123. Wakeford R, Antell BA, and Leigh WJ: A review of probability of causation and its use in a compensation scheme for nuclear industry workers in the United Kingdom. *Health Phys* 74: 1–9, 1998
124. Puskin JS and Nelson CB: Estimates of radiogenic cancer risks. *Health Phys* 69: 93–101, 1995
125. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements (NCRP): *Operational Radiation Safety Program. NCRP Report No. 127*, Bethesda, MD, NCRP, 1998

Chapter 4

Chemical Carcinogenesis Role of Chloroform – Further Studies

Elizabeth K. Weisburger

Contents

4.1 Introduction

Since the previous version of this chapter [1], there have been numerous studies on chloroform ($CHCl_3$ (CAS No. 67-66-3)) in order to explain the mechanism of its action. $CHCl_3$ had detrimental or beneficial effects in various animal studies, depending on the solvent, the species, and the sex of the animals, in addition to other factors. The presence of very small levels of $CHCl_3$ in chlorine-treated water remains a matter for much discussion among environmental groups, the US EPA and the community of toxicologists [2]. The International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) considers that there is inadequate evidence for the carcinogenicity of chlorinated drinking water in either animals or humans [3]. A report that weathering of organic matter leads to accumulation of halogenated organic compounds indicates that such occurrences should be considered in risk assessment [4]. However, risk from ordinary use of chlorinated water is extremely small, and the margin of safety is considerable [5]. The health benefits of chlorinated water, given with the small amount of $CHCl_3$ outweigh the risks from using untreated water.

E.K. Weisburger (✉)
Formerly with Division of Cancer Etiology, National Cancer Institute, Rockville, MD 20850, USA

4.2 Short-Term Studies

Various short-term trials have continued investigation of the species and sex associated effects of $CHC1_3$. Administration by gavage in corn oil had a more harmful effect than did giving the compound in the drinking water. Gavage in oil led to cytolethality and regenerative cell proliferation in the liver and kidneys. Mice were more susceptible than rats, but the final result depended on the dosing vehicle, length of treatment and the level of $CHCl_3$ [6–14]. The dosing vehicle has less influence on the toxicity in rats than it did in mice [15–17].

The results in animals were reinforced by microsomal or hepatocyte tests which confirmed that $CHCl_3$ was metabolized to a greater extent, presumably to toxic intermediates as phosgene, by susceptible animals [18–20]. Reduction in glutathione content and its related enzymes was also noted.

As a volatile liquid, the usual route of exposure to $CHCl_3$ is by inhalation; there is a Threshold Limit Value (TLV) of 10 ppm for this compound [21]. Thus inhalation studies would appear more relevant to human exposure. One such study at 90 ppm for 6 h/day for 4 consecutive days with F-344 rats and several strains of mice indicated clearly that rats were not affected [22, 23]. Although B6C3F1 and Sv/129 mice had severe hepatic and renal necrosis, CYP2E1 knockout mice or mice given a P-450 inhibitor did

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_4, © Springer Science+Business Media B.V. 2010

not have pathologic changes, indicating that CYP2E1 is involved in cytotoxic-related metabolic conversion [23]. Further investigation demonstrated that inhalation exposure of susceptible BDFl mice increased the labeling index, a measure of cell proliferation, in target tissues [13]. This index was used as a marker for determining inhalation toxicity of $CHCl_3$ in both rats [14, 24] and mice [9, 25] and to examine differences between susceptible and nonsusceptible rat strains [14]. The technique was also employed to estimate risk from continued exposure [25–27].

Results from a 13-week inhalation study at several levels of $CHCl_3$, led to a conclusion that 5 ppm was a no observed adverse effect level (NOAEL) for nephrotoxicity in male mice; the NOAEL for hepatic proliferation in female mice was 10 ppm [26, 24]. In male F344 rats the NOAEL and lowest observed adverse effect level (LOAEL) for liver toxicity were 0.25 mmol/kg and 0.5 mmol/kg, respectively, after administration of $CHCl_3$ in an aqueous emulsion [28]. However, compensatory cell proliferation and tissue damage may not be the only factors in toxicity and tumor induction. Intense cell regeneration was observed in organs where $CHCl_3$ did not induce tumors. Thus the purely epigenetic role ascribed to $CHCl_3$ may be under question [29].

4.3 Carcinogenicity Studies

In one long-term test, $CHCl_3$ was given in the drinking water at levels of 0, 200, 400, 900 and 1,800 mg/l for 2 years to male Osborne-Mendel rats and female B6C3F1 mice. In rats, the high dose levels led to renal tumors [30]. Re-examination of the tissue slides led to the conclusion that the two highest dose levels for 6 months or longer gave a 95–100% incidence of kidney tumors, but at the 400 mg, or lower level, no tumors were seen [31].

The key events were sustained cellular toxicity and chronic regenerative hyperplasia with resultant changes in the convoluted tubules. In contrast $CHCl_3$ in the drinking water did not increase the liver tumor incidence in female mice, even at the highest dosage, equivalent to 263 mg/kg for 104 weeks [30].

Another lifetime test in Wistar rats afforded a different picture. A dose level of 24 mmol $CHCl_3$ in drinking water led to increased hepatic adenofibrosis in both sexes, while females had a significant increase in neoplastic liver nodules. However, test females had no mammary tumors vs. a 49% incidence in controls [32].

An inhalation study with male and female F-344 rats exposed to $CHCl_3$ at 90 ppm, 5 days a week for 2 years, failed to induce cancer [23]. A follow-up study showed lack of a direct genotoxic activity, only marginal cell proliferation in the kidneys of male rats and lower tissue-specific susceptibility in female rats [24]. In contrast, male but not female BDFl mice developed kidney tumors in this inhalation study, while female mice had an increase in liver tumors [23]. Additional investigation demonstrated that male mice had histologic changes and regenerative cell proliferation, in the kidneys [26]. However, the need to investigate other mechanisms, such as glutathione conjugation and reductive metabolism, was also emphasized [33].

4.4 Mechanistic and Interactive Effects

It has been mentioned that CYP2E1 appeared to be involved in the metabolic activation of $CHCl_3$ [23]. On the other hand, deprivation of food, which also induces CYP2El, had little or no effect on blood levels or toxicity when rats were exposed by inhalation. Metabolism of $CHCl_3$ was increased threefold [34]. Oral administration caused more severe hepatic damage than did intraperitoneal injection. The result was attributed to the first pass metabolism unique to oral administration [34]. Mice exposed to $CHCl_3$ in a closed recirculating chamber had significant decreases in body temperature and enzyme activity. Blood/air and tissue/air partitions increased with falling temperatures. The data were used to determine a physiologically based pharmacokinetic model (PB-PK) for $CHCl_3$ metabolism [35]. However, PB-PK dose measures did not reconcile the rat and mouse kidney tumor response data, although it performed well for the liver tumor data [36]. Further study of the P450s involved in $CHCl_3$ activation was carried out in rats pretreated with inducers of CYP2E1 and CYP2B1/2. These treatments potentiated hepatic damage. Histologic, innnunoinhibition and immunoblot analyses led to the conclusion that both CYP2E1 and CYP2B1/2 contribute to the hepatic damage but they do so quite differently [37].

In contrast, other tests showed that in DBA/2N mice there was a decided increase in CYP2A5 expression in the liver, but no change or decrease in levels of CYPlA, 2B, 2C, 2E1 and 3A4. No explanation for these differences in enzyme induction has been suggested [38].

$CHCl_3$ interacts with or is affected by administration of various other compounds. Its hepatotoxicity and lethality were increased by concurrent administration of a series of alcohols, from methanol to decanol [39]. Most are P-450 enzyme inducers, but in some cases enzyme inducers had little or no effect [40]. Similar results were noted with methyl isobutyl ketone and some of its metabolites [41], or with 2-hexanone [42]. Such compounds induce CYP2E1 and CYP2B1 which increase metabolic activation [43] Combinations of $CHCl_3$, carbon tetrachloride or trichloroethylene had synergistic toxic actions, as indicated by plasma enzyme activities [44]. Various other compounds have inhibited the effects of $CHCl_3$, even, $CHCl_3$ itself. Giving it in drinking water, at levels from 120 to 1,800 ppm, to female B6C3F1 mice for a month protected them against hepatotoxicity and enhanced cell proliferation when they received $CHC1_3$ in corn oil [45]. Dimethyl sulfoxide, even when given 10 h after an oral dose of $CHC1_3$, protected male SD rats against hepatic injury and tubular necrosis of the kidney [46]. Methoxsalen, an inhibitor of P-450, prevented the toxic action of $CHC1_3$ in mice by decreasing metabolic activation [47], while pyrazole acted similarly for rats [48]. However, in Mongolian gerbils, pretreatment with the enzyme inducers phenobarbital, chlordecone, mirex or 3-methylcholanthrene decreased the toxicity of $CHCl_3$ [49].

Unexpectedly, $CHC1_3$ has emerged as an inhibitor of some other carcinogens. In male F-344 rats given standard doses of 1,2-dimethylhydrazine to induce colon tumors, $CHC1_3$ at 900 or 1,800 mg/l of drinking water, led to a significant decrease in tumors; 36% in controls vs 13% in $CHCl_3$ treated rats [50]. Likewise, $CHCl_3$ in drinking water reduced the incidence of liver tumors in mice given an initiating dose of ethylnitrosourea or diethylnitrosamine, indicating lack of a promoting effect [11]. Further, when male F-344 rats were initiated by partial hepatectomy and diethylnitrosamine, followed by phenobarbital and $CHCl_3$ in drinking water, the $CHCl_3$ treatment had a tumor-inhibiting action. In this case, $CHCl_3$ affected the activating enzymes [51].

4.5 Risk

In evaluating the risk from exposure to $CHCl_3$ in water, the greater toxicity of other trihalomethanes or other compounds formed during chlorination is often overlooked [3, 52]. Of special interest is MX or 3 chloro-4-(dichloromethy1)-5-hydroxy-2 (5H)-furanone which is a very potent mutagen [3]. The method used by the US EPA to estimate risk is often criticized because it is a linearized multistage model, whereas animal studies indicate a non-linear dose-response relationship [53, 54]. As an example, the EPA method yields a virtually safe dose (VSD) of 0.000008 ppm for inhaled $CHCl_3$, while animal data indicate 0.01 ppm is a VSD, even with an uncertainty or safety factor of 1,000 [26]. The use of a more realistic model would still allow for protection of public health without wasting resources to attain unrealistic goals [55].

Estimating the risks from $CHCl_3$ exposure appears to be a continuing activity within many groups [56, 57]. The result is that risk of cancer from the usual exposures to chlorinated water is quite small and would not lead to increases in liver cancer [5, 58]. Risk to health from not using chlorinated water would be greater.

4.6 Conclusion

Many studies have shown that metabolic activation of $CHCl_3$ with consequent cell injury and regeneration appears to be involved in its harmful effects. Route of administration, species, strain and sex influence the final outcome. The presence of tiny amounts of $CHCl_3$ in chlorinated drinking water remains a matter of controversy, even though other more harmful compounds are also formed. Animal studies at below 400 ppm of $CHCl_3$ in water showed no effect; this level is many times higher than levels in treated water. Risk analyses indicate the actual risk from $CHCl_3$ in water remains extremely small.

4.7 Addendum

Since the major portion of this chapter was written, additional studies on chloroform have been reported. Most have been directed at the processes involved in

the hepatic and renal toxicity of chloroform. One relatively long-term study of 26 weeks was done with mice carrying the rasH2 transgene [59]. Contrary to expectations, chloroform led to no significant increase in neoplastic lesions in these mice. This mouse model may not be suitable for detection of nongenotoxic carcinogens.

Short term in vivo or in vitro tests have led to further discoveries on the mechanistic aspects of the effects of chloroform. The known metabolite, phosgene, interacts with proteins, especially lysine residues and other cellular constitutents [60], but some evidence for involvement of a trichloromethyl radical has emerged also [61].

Chloroform toxicity, leading to cell death, involved glutathione depletion and oxidative stress with protein nitration [62, 63]. The extent and rapidity of tissue repair reduced the hepatotoxicity of chloroform [64, 65].

However, dietary restriction, even for 1 day, changed hepatic metabolism and increased the hepatoxicity of chloroform in rats [66].

The toxicity of chloroform in SW mice was diminished by an initial subchronic dose which then protected the mice from a subsequent lethal dose through increased exhalation and tissue regeneration [65, 67]. Administration of COX-2 inhibitors also decreased the hepatoxicity of chloroform [68].

However, combined exposure via inhalation and the drinking water increased the degree of renal carcinogenesis [69]. The renal toxicity of chloroform was not dependent on hepatic P450 enzymes, as shown in a mouse model null for P450 reductases, where chloroform induced renal lesions [70, 71]

In utero or lactational exposure of Wistar rats to chloroform via the drinking water of the dams did not lead to changes typical of type 2 diabetes. However, this treatment did cause impaired postnatal growth [72].

The risk of chloroform to humans has been reviewed [73] and considered by several groups, using pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic (PBPK/PD) parameters. Reference doses (RfDs) for liver and kidney, respectively, have been calculated as 0.4 mg/kg/day and 3 mg/kg/day [74, 75].

Since the usual levels of chloroform in drinking water are in the order of micrograms/liter, these RfDs are considerably higher than the exposures usually attained from drinking water.

References

1. ACGIH. 2007 TLVs® and BEIs®. Based on the Documentation of the Threshold Limit Values for Chemical Substances and Physical Agents & Biological Exposure Indices. ACGIH, Cincinnati, OH, 2007.
2. Hogue C. Chloroform and cancer. Chem Eng News 79(44) 11, 2001.
3. IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans. Vol. 52, Chlorinated Drinking Water; Chlorination By-Products; Some Other Halogenated Compounds; Cobalt and Cobalt Compounds, pp. 45–141, IARC, Lyon, 1991.
4. Myneni SCB. Formation of stable chlorinated hydrocarbons in weathering plant material. Science 295: 1039–1041, 2002.
5. Levesque B, Ayotti P, Tardif R, Ferron L, Gingras S, Schlouch E, Gingras G, Levallois P, Dewailly E. Cancer risk associated with household exposure to chloroform. J Toxicol Environ Health 65: 489–502, 2002.
6. Butterworth BE, Templin MV, Borghoff SJ, Conolly RB, Kedderis GL, Wolf DC. The role of regenerative cell proliferation in chloroform-induced cancer. Toxicol Lett 82/83: 23–26, 1995.
7. Larson JL, Wolf DC, Butterworth BE. Acute hepatotoxic and nephrotoxic effects of chloroform on male F-344 rats and female B6C3F1 mice. Fundam Appl Toxicol 20: 302–315, 1993.
8. Larson JL, Wolf DC, Butterworth BE. Induced cytotoxicity and cell proliferation in the hepatotoxicity of chloroform in female B6C3F1 mice: comparison of administration by gavage in corn oil vs ad libitum in drinking water. Fundam Appl Toxicol 22: 90–102, 1994.
9. Larson JL, Wolf DC, Butterworth BE. Induced cytolethality and regenerative cell proliferation in the livers and kidneys of male B6C3F1 mice given chloroform by gavage. Fundam Appl Toxicol 23: 537–543, 1994.
10. Larson JL, Wolf DC, Butterworth BE. Induced regenerative cell proliferation in livers and kidneys of male F-344 rats given chloroform in corn oil by gavage or ad libitum in drinking water. Toxicology 95: 73–86, 1995.
11. Pereira MA. Route of administration determines whether chloroform enhances or inhibits cell proliferation in the liver of B6C3F1 mice. Fundam Appl Toxicol 23: 87–92, 1994.
12. Templin MV, Constan AA, Wold DC, Wong BA, Butterworth BE. Patterns of chloroform-induced regenerative cell proliferation in BDF mice correlate with organ specificity and dose-response/tumor formation. Carcinogenesis 19: 187–193, 1998.
13. Templin MV, Jamison KC, Sprankle CS, Wolf DC, Wong BA, Butterworth BE. Chloroform-induced cytotoxicity and regenerative cell proliferation—in the kidneys and liver of BDFl mice. Cancer Lett 108: 225–231, 1996.
14. Templin MV, Jamison KC, Wolf DC, Morgan KT, Butterworth BE. Comparison of chloroform-induced toxicity in the kidneys, liver, and nasal passages of male Osborne-Mendel rats and F-344 rats. Cancer Lett 104: 71–78, 1996.

15. Bull RJ, Brown JM, Meierhenry EA, Jorgenson TA, Robinson M, Stober JA. Enhancement of the hepatotoxicity of chloroform by corn oil: Implications for chloroform carcinogenesis. Environ Health Perspect 69: 49–58, 1986.
16. Dix KJ, Kedderis GL, Borghoff SJ. Vehicle-dependent oral absorption and target tissue dosimetry of chloroform in male rats and female mice. Toxicol Lett 91: 197–209, 1997.
17. Raymond P, Plaa GL. Effect of dosing vehicle on the hepatotoxicity of CC14 and nephrotoxicity of $CHCl_3$ in rats. J Toxicol Environ Health 51: 463–476, 1997.
18. El-shenawy NS, Abdel-Rahman MS. The mechanism of chloroform toxicity in isolated rat hepatocytes. Toxicol Lett 69: 77–85, 1993.
19. Plaa GL. Chlorinated methanes and liver injury: Highlights of the past 50 years. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 40: 43–65, 2000.
20. Testai E, Gemma S, Vittozzi L. Bioactivation of chloroform in hepatic microsomes from rodent strains susceptible or resistant to $CHCl_3$ carcinogenesis. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 114: 197–203, 1992.
21. ACGIH. 2002 TLVs® and BE1s®, Threshold Limit Values for Chemical Substances and Physical Agents & Biological Exposure Indices. ACGIH, Cincinnati, OH, 2002.
22. Constan AA, Sprankle CS, Peters JM, Kedderis GL, Everitt JI, Wong BA, Gonzalez FL. Metabolism of chloroform by cytochrome P4502E1 is required for induction of toxicity in the liver, kidney and nose of male mice. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 160: 120–126, 1999.
23. Yamamoto S, Aiso S, Ikawa N, Matsushima T. Carcinogenesis studies of chloroform in F344 rats and BDFl mice. An inhalation study of chloroform. Initial report. Proceedings of the Fifty-Third Annual Meeting of the Japanese Cancer Association, 1994.
24. Templin MV, Larson JL, Butterworth BE, Jamison KC, Leininger JR, Mery S, Morgan KT, Wong BA, Wolf DC. A 90-day chloroform inhalation study in F-344 rats: Profile of toxicity and relevance to cancer studies. Fundam Appl Toxicol 32: 109–125, 1996.
25. Larson JL, Wolf DC, Morgan KT, Mery S, Butterworth BE. The toxicity of 1-week exposures to inhaled chloroform in female B6C3F1 mice and male F-344 rats. Fundam Appl Toxicol 22: 431–446, 1994.
26. Larson JL, Templin MV, Wolf DC, Jamison KC, Leininger JR, Mery S, Morgan KT, Wong BA, Conolly RB. A 90-day chloroform inhalation study in female and male B6C3F1 mice: Implications for cancer risk assessment. Fundam Appl Toxicol 30: 118–137, 1996.
27. Mery S, Larson JL, Butterworth BE, Wolf DC, Harden R, Morgan KT. Nasal toxicity in male F-344 rats and female B6C3F1 mice following a 1-week inhalation exposure. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 125: 214–227, 1994.
28. Keegan TE, Simmons JE, Pegram RA. NOAEL and LOAEL determination of acute hepatotoxicity for chloroform and bromodichloromethane delivered in an aqueous vehicle to F344 rats. J Toxicol Environ Health 55: 65–75, 1998.
29. Gemma S, Faccioli S, Chieco P, Sbraccia M, Testai E, Vittozzi L. In vivo $CHCl_3$ bioactivation, toxicokinetics, toxicity and induced compensatory cell proliferation in B6C3F1 male mice. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 141: 394–402, 1996.
30. Jorgenson TA, Meierhenry EF, Rushbrook CA. Cardinogenicity of chloroform in drinking water to male Osborne-Mendel rats and female B6C3F1 mice. Fundam Appl Toxicol 5: 760–769, 1985.
31. Hard GC, Boorman GA, Wolf DC. Re-evaluation of the 2-year chloroform drinking water carcinogenicity bioassay in Osborne-Mendel rats supports chronic renal tubule injury as the mode of action underlying the renal tumor response. Toxicol Sci 53: 237–244, 2000.
32. Tumasonis CF, McMartin DN, Bush B. Toxicity of chloroform and bromodichloromethane when administered over a lifetime in rats. J Environ Pathol Toxicol Oncol 7(4): 55–63, 1987.
33. Melnick RL, Kohn MC, Dunnick JK, Leininger JR. Regenerative hyperplasia is not required for liver tumor induction in female B6C3F1 mice exposed to trihalomethanes. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 148: 137–147, 1998.
34. Wang P-Y, Kaneko T, Sato A, Charboneau M, Plaa GL. Dose- and route-dependent alteration of metabolism and toxicity of chloroform in fed and fasting rats. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 135: 119–126, 1995.
35. Gearhart JM, Seckel C, Vinegar A. In vivo metabolism of chloroform in B6C3F1 mice determined by the method of gas exchange: The effects of body temperature on tissue partition coefficients and metabolism. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 119: 258–266, 1993.
36. Smith AE, Gray GM, Evans JS. The ability of predicted internal dose measures to reconcile tumor bioassay data for chloroform. Regul Toxicol Pharmacol 21: 339–351, 1995.
37. Nakajima T, Elovaara E, Okino T, Gelboin HV, Klockars M, Riihimaki V, Aoyama T, Vainio H. Different contributions of cytochrome P450 2E1 and P450 2B1/2 to chloroform hepatotoxicity in the rat. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 133: 215–222, 1995.
38. Camus-Randon AM, Raffalli F, Bereziat J-C, McGregor D, Konstandi M, Lang MA. Liver injury and expression of cytochromes P450: Evidence that regulation of CYP2A5 is different from that of other major xenobiotic metabolizing CYP enzymes. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 138: 140–148, 1996.
39. Ray SD, Mehendale HM. Potentiation of $CC1_4$ and $CHCl_3$ hepatotoxicity and lethality by various alcohols. Fundam Appl Toxicol 15: 429–440, 1990.
40. Plummer, de la M, Hall P, Ilsley AH, Jenner MA, Cousins MJ. Influence of enzyme induction and exposure profile on liver injury due to chlorinated hydrocarbon inhalation. Pharmacol Toxicol 67: 329–335, 1990.
41. Vezina M, Kobusch AB, De Souich P, Greselin E, Plaa, GL. Potentiation of chloroform-induced hepatotoxicity by methyl isobutyl ketone and two metabolites. Can J Physiol Pharmacol 68: 1055–1061, 1990.
42. Smith JH, Hewitt WR, Hook JB. Role of intrarenal biotransformation in chloroform induced nephrotoxicity in rats. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 79: 166–174, 1985.
43. Brady JF, Li D, Ishizaki H, Lee M, Ning SM, Xiao F, Yang CS. Induction of cytochromes P450IIE1 and P450IIB1 by secondary ketones and the role of P450IIE1 in chloroform

metabolism. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 100: 342–349, 1989.
44. Borzelleca JF, O'Hara TM, Gennings C, Granger RH, Sheppard MA, Condie LW. Interactions of water contaminants. I. Plasma enzyme activity and response surface methodology following gavage administration of $CC1_4$ and $CHCl_3$ or TCE singly and in combination in the rat. Fundam Appl Toxicol 14: 477–490, 1990.
45. Pereira MA, Grothaus M. Chloroform in drinking water prevents hepatic cell proliferation induced by chloroform administered by gavage in corn oil to mice. Fundam Appl Toxicol 37: 82–87, 1997.
46. Lind RC, Gandolfi AJ. Late dimethyl sulfoxide administration provides a protective action against chemically induced injury in both the liver and the kidney. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 142: 201–207, 1997.
47. Letteron P, Degott C, Labbe G, Larrey D, Descatoire V. Methoxsalen decreases the metabolic activation and prevents the hepatotoxicity and nephrotoxicity of chloroform in mice. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 91: 266–273, 1987.
48. Ebel RE. Pyrazole treatment of rats potentiates $CC1_4$ but not $CHCl_3$ hepatotoxicity. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 161: 615–618, 1989.
49. Ebel RE, Barlow RL, McGrath EA. Chloroform hepatotoxicity in the Mongolian gerbil. Fundam Appl Toxicol 8: 207–216, 1987.
50. Daniel FB, DeAngelo AB, Stober JA, Pereira MA, Olson GR. Chloroform inhibition of 1,2-dimethylhydrazine-induced gastrointestinal tract tumors in the Fisher 344 rat. Fundam Appl Toxicol 13: 40–45, 1989.
51. Reddy TV, Daniel FB, Lin EL. Chloroform inhibits the development of diethylnitrosamine-initiated, phenobarbital-promoted gamma-glutamyltranspeptidase and placental form glutathione-S-transferase positive foci in rat liver. Carcinogenesis 13: 1325–1330, 1992.
52. Lilly PD, Ross TM, Pegram RA. Trihalomethane comparative toxicity: Acute renal and hepatic toxicity of chloroform and bromodichloromethane following aqueous gavage. Fundam Appl Toxicol 40: 101–110, 1997.
53. Andersen ME, Meek ME, Boorman GE, Brusick DJ, Cohen SM, Dragan YP, Frederick CB, Goodman JI, Hard GC, O'Flaherty EJ, Robinson DE. Lessons learned in applying the US EPA proposed cancer guidelines to specific compounds. Toxicol Sci 53: 159–172, 2000.
54. Golden RJ, Holm SE, Robinson DE, Julkunen PH, Reese EA. Chloroform mode of action: Implications for cancer risk assessment. Regul Toxicol Pharmacol 26: 142–155, 1997.
55. Wolf DC, Butterworth BE. Risk assessment of inhaled chloroform based on its mode of action. Toxicol Pathol 25: 49–52, 1997.
56. Jo W-K, Weisel CP, Lioy PJ. Chloroform exposures and the health risk associated with multiple uses of chlorinated tap water. Risk Anal 10: 581–585, 1990.
57. Weisel CP, Jo W-K. Ingestion, inhalation, and dermal exposures to chloroform and trichloroethene from tap water. Environ Health Perspect 104: 48–51, 1996.
58. Yamamoto S, Kasai T, Matsumoto M, Nishigawa T, Arito H, Nagano K, Matsushima T. Carcinogenicity and chronic toxicity in rats and mice exposed to chloroform by inhalation. J Occup Health 44: 283–293, 2002.
59. Sehata S, Maejima T, Wantanabe M, Ogata S, Makino T, Tanaka K, Manabe S, Takaoka M. Twenty-six week carcinogenicity study of chloroform in CB6F1 rasH2-transgenic mice. Toxicol Pathol 30: 328–338, 2002.
60. Fabrizi L, Taylor GW, Canas B, Boobis AR, Edwards RJ. Adduction of the chloroform metabolite phosgene to lysine residues of human histone H2B. Chem Res Toxicol 16: 266–275, 2003.
61. Gemma S, Testai E, Chieco P, Vittozzi L. Bioactivation, toxicokinetics and acute effects of chloroform in Fisher 344 and Osborne Mendel male rats. J Appl Toxicol 24: 203–210, 2004.
62. Beddowes EJ, Faux SP, Chipman JK. Chloroform, carbon tetrachloride and glutathione depletion induce secondary genotoxicity in liver cells via oxidative stress. Toxicology 187: 101–115, 2003.
63. Burke AS, Redeker K, Kurten RC, James LP, Hinson JA. Mechanisms of chloroform-induced hepatotoxicity: oxidative stress and mitochondrial permeability transition in freshly isolated mouse hepatocytes. J Toxicol Environ Health A 70: 1936–1945, 2007.
64. Anand SS, Philip BK, Palkar PS, Mumtaz MM, Latendresse JR, Mehendale HM. Adaptive tolerance in mice upon subchronic exposure to chloroform: Increased exhalation and target tissue regeneration. Toxicol Appol Pharmacol 213: 267–281, 2006.
65. Anand SS, Soni MG, Vaidya VS, Murthy SN, Mumtaz MM, Mehendale HM. Extent and timeliness of tissue repair determines the dose-related hepatotoxicity of chloroform. Int J Toxicol 22: 25–33, 2003.
66. Qin LQ, Wang Y, Xu JY, Kaneko T, Sato A, Wang PY. One-day dietary restriction changes hepatic metabolism and potentiates the hepatotoxicity of carbon tetrachloride and chloroform in rats. Tohoku J Exp Med 212: 379–387, 2007.
67. Philip BK, Anand SS, Palkar PS, Mumtaz MM, Latendresse JR, Mehendale HM. Subchronic chloroform priming protects mice from a subsequently administered lethal dose of choloroform. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 216: 108–121, 2006.
68. Begay CK, Gandolfi AJ. Late administration of COX-2 inhibitors minimize hepatic necrosis in chloroform-induced liver injury. Toxicology 185: 79–87, 2003.
69. Nango K, Kano H, Arito H, Yamamoto S, Matshshima T. Enhancement of renal carcinogenicity by combined inhalation and oral exposures to chloroform in male rats. J Toxicol Environ Health A 69: 1827–1842, 2006.
70. Fang C, Behr M, Xie F, Lu S, Doret M, Luo H, Yang W, Aldous K, Ding X, Gu J. Mechanism of chloroform-induced renal toxicity: non-involvement of hepatic cytochrome P450-dependent metabolism. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 227: 48–55, 2008.
71. Gemma S, Vittozzi L, Testai E. Metabolism of chloroform in the human liver and identification of the competent P450s. Drug Metab Dispos 31: 266–274, 2003.
72. Lim GE, Stals SI, Petrik JJ, Foster WG, Holloway AC. The effects of in utero and lactational exposure to chloroform on postnatal growth and glucose tolerance in male Wistar rats. Endocrine 25: 223–228, 2004.

73. Meek ME, Beauchamp R, Long G, Moir D, Turner L, Walker M. Chloroform: exposure estimation, hazard characterization, and exposure-response analysis. J Toxicol Environ Health B Crit Rev 5: 283–334, 2006.
74. Liao KH, Tan YM, Conolly RB, Borghoff SJ, Gargas ML, Andersen ME, Clewell HJ 3rd. Bayesian estimation of pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic parameters in a mode-of-action-based cancer risk assessment of chloroform. Risk Anal 27: 1535–1551, 2007.
75. Tan YM, Liao KH, Conolly RB, Blount BC, Mason AM, Clewell HJ. Use of a physiologically based pharmacokinetic model to identify exposures consistent with human biomonitoring data for chloroform. J Toxicol Environ Health A 64: 1727–1756, 2006.

Chapter 5

Use of Organ Explant and Cell Culture in Cancer Research

Eric J. Kort, Christine R. Moore, Eric A. Hudson, Brandon Leeser, James H. Resau, G.M. Yerushalmi, R. Leibowitz-Amit, Galia Tsarfaty, Ilan Tsarfaty, and Sharon Moskovitz

Contents

5.1 Introduction to Tissue Culture and References

Cancer is a multi-factorial disease. The primary cause of cancer is genetic instability in the cellular fidelity of DNA replication. When DNA is not copied correctly, the resulting mutations may lead to cancer. The causes of these mutations can be single or multi-factorial. Many things are known to cause these mutations. The major factors or agents include: viruses (e.g. sv40, ebv, etc [1]), physical factors (e.g. asbestos, radiation, [2–3]), oncogene activation (e.g. ras, c-met, her2-neu, v-abl), as well as familial inherited mutations [4–8]. There is a delicate inter-relationship between the genetics and the environment that leads to cancer. Metabolic pathways (e.g. p450 system, debrisoquine pathways) are also critical in this interaction between genes and the environment [9–10]. The lesions that evolve may go through a series of steps or cascades (e.g. Vogelstein and Kinzler model [11–13]), or they may arise seemingly spontaneously. There can be inherited familial genetic syndromes [7–8], known or unknown environmental exposure to toxicants/carcinogens [14], or, most likely, combinations of these two mechanisms that cause or predispose individuals to cancer.

The fundamental defect, however, is within the DNA of cells. Errors in the copying of DNA that are propagated in dividing cells may induce damage and lead to a phenotypic lesion. These mutations, if they are in the DNA synthesis/repair system (e.g. p53), cell cycle control pathways (e.g. cdc7 and cdk genes), or growth factor ligand/receptor pathways (e.g. c-Met), can be significant in their carcinogenesis potential. Since cancer is a disease that starts in the DNA of a single cell or cloned cells, it is logical and appropriate that the study of cancer has developed through in vitro models. Isolated monolayer or suspension cells from carcinomas were among the first cells to be grown (reviewed in Chapter 9 of Chapter 15). Seemingly immortalized cells like those of the HeLa cell line have served researchers for generations [15]. Cells maintained as a cohesive group or as a tissue have been used to study metabolism and morphology, and whole organs have been maintained in vitro for organotypic culture. There are numerous review articles, textbooks, and chapters that define, explain, and document the use

E.J. Kort (✉)
Laboratory of Analytical, Cellular and Molecular Microscopy, Van Andel Institute, Grand Rapids, MI, USA
e-mail: korter@resident.grmerc.net

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_5,

Table 5.1 Tissue culture review references

References	Description
Modern Cell Biology, Alan R. Liss, Inc., New York, NY, 1989	Epithelial cell culture
Methods in Enzymology, Volume 58; Academic Press, Boston, MA, 1979	Methods for cell culture
Culture of Animal Cells. Alan R. Liss, Inc., New York, NY, 1983	Introduction and methods
Methods in Cell Biology, New York Academic Press, 1981	General methods

of cell, tissue, and organ culture in cancer research. The Table 5.1 lists many of the standard and complete references on the field and discipline of tissue culture. In the context of this review, "tissue culture" includes cell, monolayer, organ explant, and organotypic cell culture.

Our previous chapter [16] described advances in the field of in vitro cancer research, particularly the use of human tissues in vitro to study cancer. We also documented the relationship and comparison between animal models and human systems. Figure 5.1 from our earlier chapter summarizes the original work. The fundamental premise of the original chapter was that one could understand carcinogenesis in humans by studying cells, tissues, and organs in vitro. The original work described how one could take a well-characterized animal model of cancer and isolate the cells, tissues, or organs that developed into cancer in that animal, and maintain the cells in vitro. The genetics, phenotype, and metabolism of the animal could then be studied in vitro for similarities and differences. Human cells obtained through donation, autopsy, and surgery could be similarly studied. Human in vivo studies are not ethically possible. However, if there is a consistency between the whole animal and the animal cells or tissues, and the observations, measurements, and characterizations at the genetic and molecular level between the animal cells and human cells are equivalent, then one can draw the conclusion that the carcinogenic process under study would, in the human, be carcinogenic as well.

5.2 Standard Definitions and Uses of Tissue Culture

In the original chapter we concentrated on how one could study cancer in vitro from human cells, tissues, and organs. That concept and method of tissue culture is now well characterized and accepted in the field of cancer research. This edition of the chapter will focus instead on the quantification, imaging, and analysis of cancer. It will also explain how one can use in vitro models, not only to describe the carcinogenic process qualitatively, but also to concentrate on the important aspect of quantification. There is no need to rewrite the methods and techniques of cell, tissue and organ culture when so many excellent reviews and books already exist.

Cell culture is the growth of dispersed, disaggregated, single cells of a unique cell type, which do not necessarily retain the histologic structural relationships of the cells and tissues from which they were removed. It can be a monolayer, mixed population, and can be

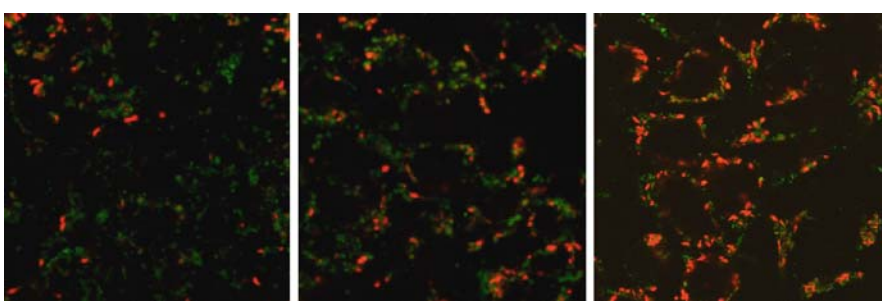


Fig. 5.1 Use of tissue culture to study human carcinogenesis. Cells and explants are cultured from tumor tissue to characterize their morphologic and biologic properties (e.g. metastatic potential, susceptibility to chemotherapeutic drugs). Normal cells and explants are cultured in protocols which expose these cells to carcinogens in order to induce transformation in vitro. The transformed tissues can then be assayed the same way as the tumor tissues are studied

in either a two or three-dimensional culture, depending on the substrate. Removal and isolation of the cells is achieved by enzymatic, chemical, mechanical, or physical separation of the cells. Such cells are initially isolated and identified as a primary cell culture. Later, in their in vitro life span, they may appear immortal, and are then called "cell lines" (human tumors have been shown to possess the ability to give rise to immortal cell lines [17]). Cell lines have proved to be an invaluable resource in the field of cancer research. *Organ culture* is the three-dimensional, multi-cellular, multi-tissue, in vitro growth of sections or pieces – explants – of organs that retain at least some of the histologic structural integrity of the tissue from which it was taken. Explant organ culture therefore contains the multiple cell types comprising the tissue from which the explants are resected. For the purposes of this chapter, both organ culture and cell culture, along with the in vitro studies of cellular and molecular pathophysiology will be referred to by the more general term of tissue culture. Table 5.2 lists some of the important review articles describing the methods of tissue culture. The important references in the field of imaging, including molecular imaging and cellular based imaging, are listed in Table 5.3.

Carcinoma cells possess specific morphologic criteria that enable them to be identified as malignant [18–19]. They are characterized by an angularity in the nuclear and cytoplasmic organelles and cytosol material, lack of uniformity in cellular characteristics and structures (e.g. lumens, nuclear membranes, membrane thickness), and accentuations of normal phenotypic features (e.g. clearing, amount of cytoplasm, clumping, size of cell). Tissue culture has provided several other criteria by which to distinguish such cells. Cancer tissues tend to have decreased adhesion between cells, and cells isolated from the tumors are often described as being anchorage independent [20]. Cancer cells do not exhibit contact inhibition restrictions, and tend to grow differently on the cultured

Table 5.2 Tissue culture methods references

References	Subject
Cancer Res 59(7 Suppl):1757–1763s; discussion 1763–1764s, 1999	Tissue culture, genome/environment/3D tissue structure interactions
Cancer Res 53(10 Suppl):2446–2448s, 1993	In vitro carcinogenesis methods
Cancer Res 53(10 Suppl):2455–2456s, 1993	Nutrition and carcinogenesis in vitro
Cancer Res 61(3):799–807, 2001	Nutrition and carcinogenesis in vitro
Cancer Res 35(10):2619–2630, 1975	Differential sensitivity of cells to anticancer agents
In vitro 19(4):317–325, 1983	Environment/tissue interactions
Cancer 48:1490–1496, 1981	Tissue culture methods for pancreatic cancer models
J Natl Cancer Inst 66:849–858, 1981	Environment/tissue interactions

Table 5.3 Imaging references

References	Subject
Laser Capture Microscopy. *In* Abelson JN, Simon MI (series Ed.) *Methods in Enzymology*, Academic Press, Boston, MA, 2002	Laser capture methods
Handbook of Fluorescent Probes and Research Products, Ninth Edition. Molecular Probes, Inc., Eugene, OR, 2002	Reagents, methods, probes for fluorescence
Methods in Cell Biology, Academic Press, Boston, MA, 1993	Confocal applications
Confocal Microscopy: Methods and Protocols. *In* Walker JM (series Ed.) *Methods in Molecular Biology*, Humana Press, Totawa, NJ, 1999	Confocal applications
Handbook of Biological Confocal Microscopy, Second Edition. Plenum Press, New York, NY, 1989	Confocal applications
Fluorescence Microscopy of Living Cells in Culture: Part A. and Part B. *In* Wilson L (series Ed.) *Methods in Cell Biology*, Academic Press, Boston, MA, 1989	Microscopy applications
Am J Physiol Cell Physiol 283:C905–C916, 2002	Multi-photon microscopy intra vital imaging
Genes and Devolopment 17:545–580, 2003	Molecular imaging
TRENDS in Cell Biology 13(2):101–106, 2003	Fluorescent imaging

vessels as plaques or clusters of raised colonies. Cancer cells or tissues grown in culture often release specific marker substances, such as mucins [21] or tumor angiogenesis factor (TAF) [22]. However, while such criteria aid in distinguishing cancer cells from healthy tissues, they do not provide an adequate basis for the classification of cancers. Thus far, cancer classification has been based primarily on morphology and empirical parameters, such as tumor histology and patient history, as well as the expression of the aforementioned markers, which are often unreliable. Such classifications are far from accurate, the major limitation being that many morphologically similar tumors exhibit dramatically different clinical outcomes and responses to treatment. The recent development of DNA microarray technology [23–26] and the subsequent development of gene-expression profiling [27–29] have provided many exciting possibilities for the future of cancer classification and prediction of patient survival [30–31].

5.3 Gene-Expression Profiling

Studies of leukaemia have demonstrated that gene-expression profiling can be used to determine tumor classification in the absence of any previous knowledge [32]. Other studies involving diffuse large-B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL) patients have indicated that gene-expression profiling can be applied to predict clinical outcome [33]. The use of gene-expression profiling to determine classification and projected clinical outcome has important implications for the future of cancer treatment. The more accurate classification afforded by such profiling allows for more specific treatments, and, as in the case of breast cancer, can be used to prevent unnecessary treatment with adjuvant therapy, which often is accompanied by severe toxic side effects. Currently, the determination of metastases or the likelihood of its occurrence (an essential parameter used in considering the administration of adjuvant treatment) is based, in breast cancer patients, upon the detection of lymph node metastases at the time of surgery [34]. Authors of a study on gene-expression profiling in breast cancer patients were able to determine a group of 70 differentially expressed genes in lymph-node-negative patients, which they termed a "poor prognosis signature," that closely corresponded with the disease outcome. Another significant finding was that this poor prognosis signature already exists in primary breast tumors at the time of surgery, and it has been demonstrated that gene-expression profiling is a far more accurate predictor of outcome for breast cancer than any other currently used criteria [35]. Studies of melanomas, medulloblastoma, and other cancers have further demonstrated gene-expression profiling to be a useful tool in developing a better understanding of the molecular processes resulting in cancer, as well as the identification of novel potential targets for therapy [30, 32, 33, 36–46].

5.4 Laser Capture Microdissection

When performing gene-expression profiling on biopsied tumors, the subpopulation of cells desiredfor analysis often constitutes only a microscopic 5% of the total tissue volume. Including any of the remaining 95% of the tissue in analysis can contaminate the whole sample and greatly skew results [47]. Previously, to avoid such contamination, the desired cells were harvested in culture. However, cultured cells often lose a number of desired inherent properties when removed and grown separately from the host tissue [47]. Today, these drawbacks of gene-expression profiling combined with cell culture can be avoided using laser capture microdissection (LCM).

LCM has quickly become known as "a fast and dependable method of capturing and reserving specific cells from tissue, under direct microscopic visualization" [47–79]. Cells are transferred from a fixed or frozen tissue sample to a thin polymer film, using a laser beam with a diameter of 7.5, 30, or 60 μm [50]. Genetic components extracted from these cells can then be used for gene-expression profiling of individual patients, microarrays, cDNA libraries, and other techniques of genetic mutational analysis [47, 51–56]. LCM has also been successfully applied in the removal of intact proteins from specific cell populations derived from tissue sections (fixed, stained, or frozen) on glass microscope slides, "under direct microscopic visualization" [47, 57, 58]. Proteins removed in such a manner have been employed in two-dimensional polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (2-D PAGE), a technique that has previously required an amount of protein analogous to millions of cells.

5.5 Molecular Imaging

Molecular imaging is a rapidly developing biomedical field that can be defined as the visual representation, characterization and quantification of biological processes at the cellular and sub-cellular levels within intact living cells and organisms. The extensive development of this field in recent years has been achieved largely as a result of the many recent advances in molecular and cellular biology.

New imaging technologies, initially studied on tissue cultures and organ explants, now provide researchers the ability to monitor in vivo tumor development, specific molecules, and the efficacy of treatment on individual, narrowly-defined populations of cells. Technologies previously used in clinical diagnostics of other ailments, such as magnetic resonance imaging [59–60] and x-ray computed tomography (CT), have found their way into the laboratory, providing valuable new insights and possibilities in the arena of cancer research.

Molecular imaging techniques can be divided into several fields; radionucleotide imaging (e.g. positron emission tomography–PET), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), computed imaging (CT), ultrasound (US) and optical imaging. These differ in several aspects, such as spatial and temporal resolution, depth of penetration, and the respective detection threshold of the specific probes used in each technology [61]. Optical imaging techniques now utilize specific molecular fluorescent probes, which can be used at different resolutions and depth penetration ranging from micrometers (intravital microscopy – IVM) to centimeters (fluorescent molecular tomography – FMT) [62]. A major obstacle of optical imaging is the auto-fluorescence obtained from the different tissues. The availability of certain treatments, such as Sudan Black quenching [63–64], together with the recent development of smart detectors combined with confocal and multi-photon microscopy enables the researchers to overcome the problem of auto-fluorescence of certain tissues and distinguish between their signal and the specific signal of the fluorescent probe used [65]. An important benefit of molecular imaging assays is their quantitative nature, as well as the ability to extract three-dimensional information regarding the spatial distribution of the tumor or phenomenon within a particular cell, organ, or throughout the entire body. Optical imaging is widely used in cancer research, both at the cellular as well as at the whole animal levels [66].

In recent years, fluorescent proteins such as Green Fluorescent Protein (GFP) have served as an important tool, both for tumor detection as well as the monitoring of tumor development. Tumor growth is monitored by following cells that over-express GFP [e.g. 67, 68–70]. In these studies, cancer cells expressing GFP were injected into mice, and tumor development was followed using the GFP signal. These studies employed different optical imaging techniques, and were carried out by either illumination with blue light [68] or intravital fluorescence microscopy [67, 69]. Chimeric fluorescent proteins were used to tag oncogenes and other proteins that are involved in cancer development and metastasis [71]. These tagged proteins have been used for both sub-cellular localization and molecular real-time interaction studies [10]. Optical molecular imaging of fluorescent-tagged proteins enables the study of the expression of these proteins with high spatial and temporal resolution. Protein interactions and activity are studied by using fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET) microscopy [72] using specifically designed combinations of fluorescent molecules that will pass the emission signal to an adjoining protein if close or co-localized and induce fluorescence (e.g. blue laser light will excite FITC to emit green light that will excite rhodamine to emit red light). These techniques enable the study of the effects of treatments in real time at the cellular and whole organ levels. Molecular imaging of living animals (intravital) in cancer research offers several advantages over cell and tissue culture studies. First, bio-distribution of molecular probes and related biological processes can be studied with high temporal and spatial resolution, in the context of the intact living object. This enables the visualization of the functions and interactions of particular proteins within the live animal. Additionally, it eliminates the need to euthanize the animals, permitting repetitive imaging of the same animal over time, and allows the use of different imaging strategies on the same animal. The basic problems associated with optical imaging of a living animal (e.g. low penetration, which limits the imaging of internal organs and high auto-fluorescent background) still remain the main obstacle in the use of optical imaging in the lab and in the clinic. Nevertheless, the constant improvement of instruments and probes used for optical molecular imaging is providing novel insights

into molecular mechanisms of tumorigenicity by real time mapping of the location and the interaction of key players in cancer development and metastasis.

5.5.1 In Vitro Mouse Models

Thus far, many of the groundbreaking advancements in imaging have been achieved in miniature on mouse and other animal models [73]. Transgenic and knock-out mice are now the standard for cancer research, and mice, as well as hamsters, are also a favorite for explant research [66, 74–75]. The high-resolution imaging of mice with scaled-down versions of equipment clinically-available for humans has provided us with invaluable insights into the physiological and molecular processes underlying cancer development and metastasis, and, consequently, new possibilities for treatment of the disease.

New imaging equipment in miniature has made possible the three-dimensional reconstruction of organs and tissues. With the advent of injectable "smart" reporter probes, scientists now have the capability to monitor tumors in vivo, thus providing valuable insights about host-tumor interactions, tumorigenesis, and therapy efficacy. In vivo imaging in mice allows the non-invasive visualization of primary metastatic tumors. Such imaging also provides the ability to monitor the physiological events of cancer. Ultimately, this non-invasive imaging of cancer in mice holds promise for translation to clinical application in humans, allowing earlier detection and phenotyping of tumors, and resulting in treatments custom-tailored to specific patients.

5.5.2 Magnetic Resonance Imaging

A wide array of imaging technologies is now available for cancer research. One of the most important of these technologies, high-resolution magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) provides information on the physico-chemical state of tissues, flow, diffusion, motion, and molecular targets [73]. Capable of producing detailed anatomical images, it is inarguably one of the most useful techniques available in the screening of transgenic mice for tumors and other anatomical abnormalities. MRI is used to visualize tumor size, location, metastatic burden, and phenotype, and can also be used to quantify vascular parameters such as capillary permeability, flow, and vascular volume, even deep within tumors [59, 76–82]. Due to these impressive capabilities, MRI is slowly replacing more invasive (and usually terminal) histological procedures that involve meticulous analysis of micro-vessel density. MRI is also used in the detection of the expression of receptors, transgene products, and tumor-specific markers [62]. Recently, magnetic nanosensors, which detect certain DNA or mRNA sequences, have been used in conjunction with MRI for the rapid analysis of non-purified tumor samples, as well as for the determination of tumor phenotype in vivo [83]. With this promising combination of technologies, specific populations of cells can be magnetically labelled and followed using MRI, and could thus be useful in stem-cell-based therapies requiring long-term in vivo tracking of specific cell populations. Magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MR) is used to image metabolic activity in tumors and detect the expression of specific molecules, proteins, and tumor-specific markers.

5.5.3 Fluorescence Imaging

Fluorescence imaging is one of the least expensive and most rapid methods of imaging a specific cell or molecule in mice, and is capable of monitoring both normal and carcinoma cells. Fluorescence reflectance imaging (FRI) detects molecular events in surface-based tumors, while fluorescence-mediated tomography (FMT) is used for the quantitative imaging of deep tumors. FMT requires the use of targeted, or "smart," fluorophore reporters; with this technology, a method of tomographic reconstruction for in vivo imaging of fluorescent probes has been developed [84]. In the lab, FMT is used to quantify protein expression or localization in vivo in the absence of radioactive labelling. This technique holds promise for translation to clinical use [85]; patients could be injected with fluorescently labelled affinity molecules, and tumor reactivity to these probes could then be used to identify breast, prostate, or colon cancers in their earliest forms. Fluorescence correlation spectroscopy (FCS) is used at the single molecule level to investigate molecular dynamics. The one significant drawback of fluorescence imaging is the need for tumor-bearing regions to be surgically exposed.

5.5.4 Intravital Microscopy

Perhaps the most important and useful of today's imaging options is that of intravital microscopy (IVM), through confocal or multiphoton imaging [61, 86–87]. Such intravital microscopy is useful for investigating tumor pathophysiology, and has provided many useful insights into the various aspects of tumor biology, including molecular, functional, genetic, and cellular, as well as host-tumor interactions and tumor response to therapy [88]. Confocal microscopes enable the visualization of organelles and cell processes, such as receptor-ligand interactions and co-localization of proteins with organelles. The great strides made in increasing depth capabilities and microscope miniaturization in multiphoton laser-scanning microscopy have resulted in the recent advances in the study of living, and even behaving, non-anaesthetized animals [89–90]. Nonlinear optical microscopy (NLOM) relies on the nonlinear interactions of laser light with specific molecules in a biological sample, resulting in the emission of fluorescent light. The most commonly used method is two-photon excitation (2PE) of fluorescence, utilized in two-photon-excited fluorescence microscopy (2PM), and involves the near-simultaneous absorption of two (usually near-infrared, or NRI) photons [91]. Other multiphoton processes receiving recent attention are three-photon excitation and second harmonic generation (SHG) [92]. The key advantage of multiphoton microscopy over single-photon is that multiphoton processes provide high-resolution images from deep within intact living tissue [93]. The use of fiber optics has enabled the miniaturization of two-photon microscopy, allowing for increased flexibility and mobility. Miniaturized optics, fiber delivery, and fiber-tip resonant scanning have made possible experiments on behaving animals [89]. Other technologies, such as stimulated-emission depletion (STED) utilize multiphoton processes. While it does not require multiphoton excitation, STED is made more effective by its use, and thus creates excellent resolution comparable to that of near-field microscopy, but with the advantages conferred by a far-field technology [94–95]. Multiphoton microscopy has proven to be particularly useful in in vivo tumor characterization, allowing the investigation of previously inaccessible internal regions of tumors.

While IVM is most commonly used in determining tumor size, architecture, and vasculature, it has recently been utilized to explore gene expression and function in tumors, as well as promoter and enzyme activity in vivo. Other findings have given new insights into the molecular origins of cancer, identified a number of genes involved in oncogenesis, and have emphasized the important influence of host-tumor interactions on angiogenesis, growth, and metastasis [96–97]. These, and other discoveries have resulted not only in a better understanding of the steps involved in cancer development and metastasis, but also in the creation of new methods of detection and treatment of cancer, including improvements in immunotherapy, stressing the importance of scheduling and optimal dosage to maximize efficacy of therapy.

Traditionally, tumor response to therapy (in animal models) has been evaluated in terms of tumor size (either a reduction or stabilization thereof) or survival time [88]. With the advent of IVM, it is possible to simultaneously monitor multiple parameters, allowing for a better understanding of tumor response to therapies, and even the physiological determinants of drug delivery to tumors [88]. IVM requires the use of an animal model, a molecular probe, a microscope equipped with a digital camera detection system, an image acquisition system, and computer analysis of data [88]. Using multiphoton laser-scanning microscopes (MPLSMs) and confocal laser-scanning microscopes (CLSM), the depth of imaging can be further increased [98, 99]. Any molecule that can be detected by optical microscopy can also be tracked by IVM in vivo [88], and, thus, combined with the ability to continuously and non-invasively monitor molecular and cellular processes, IVM provides a valuable method by which to monitor gene expression and regulation in living animals [88]. Ultimately, it is hoped that IVM will yield new options for the detection and treatment of cancer in humans, as well as provide valuable insights into the function and expression of genes in a live, intact host.

5.5.5 Other Imaging Methods

There are a number of useful imaging technologies available other than those described in the preceding sections, and these should not be neglected in the discussion of molecular imaging. This group of "others"

includes x-ray computed tomography (CT), ultrasound, optical imaging, and nuclear imaging. CT allows the researcher to obtain three-dimensional images, and is most useful in lung and bone-tumor imaging. Ultrasound, most often used in vascular and interventional imaging, generates images based on acoustic echoes and is useful in the rapid screening of pathologies. Optical imaging often includes the utilization of a charge-coupled device (CCD) camera for optical detection. A number of imaging technologies require the additional use of molecular probes which recognize tumor-specific markers and reporter probes that mark specific biological processes. The recent development of "smart probes" that are activated and detected only when they interact with the specific target has further improved the accuracy and capabilities of these technologies. Single photon emission tomography (SPECT) requires the use of reporter probes or contrast agents to image antibodies, peptides, and other probes. Through radio-labelling of DNA, SPECT allows the monitoring of therapeutic gene-delivery vectors and antisense oligonucleotides [100–101]. The efficacy of such gene-therapy vectors [102–103], as well as the expression of extra cellular receptors [104–105], can be further monitored through positron emission tomography (PET), which also requires reporter probes or contrast agents. Another available imaging method is that of bioluminescence imaging (BLI), which is used for monitoring gene expression and cell tracking (but which is unlikely to be useful in a clinical setting due to its inability to monitor cells other than those of transgenically modified tumors).

5.5.6 Met-HGF/SF: A System Studied Through Molecular Imaging

One system that was extensively studied in the field of cancer research, using molecular imaging methods, is the Met-HGF/SF system. Met is a proto-oncogene that belongs to the tyrosine kinase growth factor receptor family. It is expressed in a wide variety of tissues, but mostly on the surface of epithelial cells. The intracellular domain of Met contains the tyrosine kinase domain, and its extracellular domain binds its ligand, Hepatocyte Growth Factor/Scatter Factor (HGF/SF), which is normally produced by mesenchymal cells. Binding of HGF/SF to Met leads to autophosphorylation of several tyrosine residues in the tyrosine kinase domain of the receptor and at its docking site [106]. The multi-substrate docking site of Met recruits adapter signalling molecules such as Grb2, Shc, Gab1, Src and Crk/CRKL as well as signalling transducers such as phosphotidylinositol-3-OH kinase (PI3K), the signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (Stat3), phospholipase C-γ (PLC-γ) and Src [107]. These interactions occur either directly or indirectly via other adapter proteins and signal transducers [reviewed in 108]. It was shown that Met, and its activation, are important for Met-HGF/SF-mediated cell migration and transformation [109–110] as well as differentiation [111]. Recently, a protein was identified, that is up-regulated in cells upon Met activation, named Mimp (Met-induced mitochondrial protein). Mimp encodes a 33 kDa protein, and exhibits both sequence and a structural homology to the family of mitochondrial carrier proteins. It is expressed in a wide range of tissues with an expression pattern similar to that of Met [112]. Using a Mimp tagged to GFP,

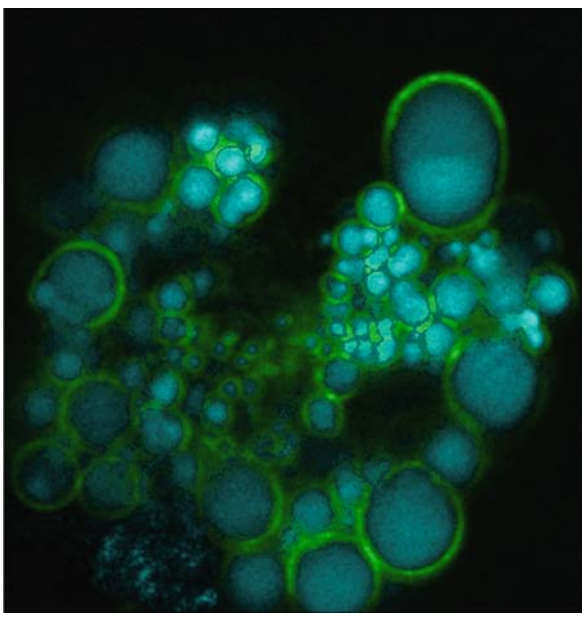


Fig. 5.2 CLSM analysis of 293-T cells transiently co-transfected with GFP-Mimp and ECFP-mitochondrial marker (BD Biosciences Clontech, CA). GFP-Mimp localizes to the mitochondrial membrane while ECFP-mitochondrial marker stains the mitochondrial lumen

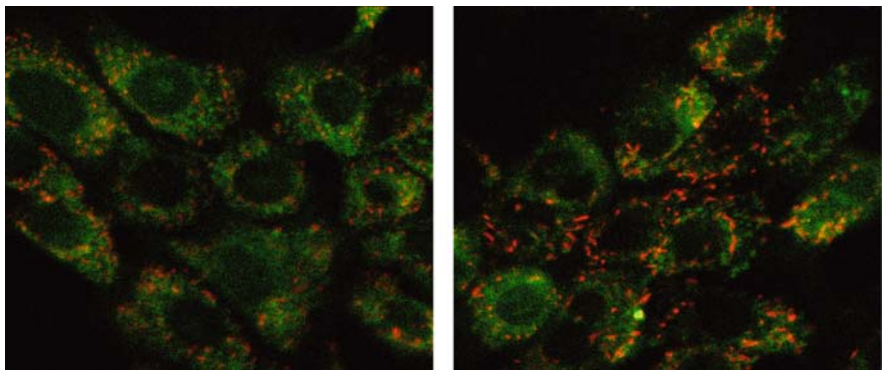


Fig. 5.3 CLSM analysis of cells expressing Mimp-GFP and stained with JC-1 dye. The ratio between the *green* and the *red* fluorescence of each stained cell indicate the mitochondrial membrane potential of the cell population

together with a mitochondrial marker localized Mimp to the mitochondria as can be seen in Fig. 5.2 [112].

The fluorescent dye JC-1, which is a reliable indicator of the mitochondrial membrane potential changes in live cells, was used in cells expressing Mimp-GFP. HGF/SF treatment led to a significant mitochondrial membrane depolarization (Fig. 5.3) [112].

The use of optical molecular imaging in the study of the Met-HGF/SF system has provided important answers to many questions concerning both the location and the interaction of key members in cancer development and metastasis.

5.6 Quantitative Analysis

As described in this text, pathologists and cell biologists have traditionally used microscopy to make histological assessments of tissue phenotype based on morphology and, more recently, protein expression with the aid of immunohistochemistry and immunofluorescence. The advantage of this methodology is that through training and experience, one can make highly sophisticated histological interpretations. The disadvantage is that this sophistication varies in an operator dependant fashion [113–114], and is not easily transferred or communicated. This is an impediment to clinical care as the selection and evaluation of treatments hinges on accurate and precise diagnosis. It is, likewise, an impediment to advances in research, since the study of factors influencing biological events requires precise measurement of those events.

5.6.1 Advantages of Quantitative Analysis

These challenges may be mitigated through quantitative analysis of digital images. The digital image is a quantitative data set comprised of the light intensity at each pixel expressed as a numeric value (typically on a scale of 0–255 or 0–1,024 as a result of technicalities related to binary data storage). This data set may be processed computationally in any number of ways, several of which are further described here. Such analysis provides several advantages over the subjective interpretation of pathologists:

1. Computational methods are reproducible. The same algorithm run on the same images should give exactly the same results time after time.
2. Computational methods are portable. Different operators in different locations can perform exactly the same analysis by running the same computational algorithm on their images. When run on different image sets, the results are directly comparable because they were derived in exactly the same way (although variation in tissue preparation and image acquisition may introduce persistent variability).
3. Computational methods provide data that is scaled continuously. Human interpretation of micrographic images has typically been at best semi-quantitative. For example, Her-2 expression may be reported as “strong”, “weak”, “+4” or “+2”. Computational methods can report results as continuous variables over any desired range, providing much finer granularity (e.g. resolving power) in the data.

However, these advantages of computational pathology are only beginning to be exploited. The computer must be given very specific instructions for performing image analysis, and we have just begun to translate the expertise of clinicians and scientists into a computational language. Indeed, this process itself is of benefit to the scientist, as it requires clear and detailed definitions of the terms to be quantified, such as "atypia", "budding", or "cytoplasmic clearing."

5.6.2 Methods of Quantitative Analysis

Fundamental methods of image analysis are well described in several texts [115–116]. Quantitative algorithms have been developed for a variety of computer vision applications in industry, agriculture, and science [117–120]. Quantification of imaged cells and tissues may include the following:

1. Measurement of protein expression level. Using immunofluorescence, protein expression may be measured as a function of fluorescent intensity within any given region of interest. Protein levels may be compared between different regions of a biopsy specimen, between different types of cells, or between different regions within a cell (such as nuclear vs. cytoplasmic protein levels). For example, we have shown that measures of the expression level of the protein Met, as quantified by immunofluorescence, correlate with prognosis in breast cancer particularly when expressed as the ratio of protein levels in normal tissue compared to tumor tissue within a given patient [121].
2. Quantification of morphological features. The shape and behaviour of cells may be quantified in various ways, including cell scattering and branching. The following steps must be taken to perform this type of analysis:

    a. Threshold intensity must be selected that distinguishes background regions from regions occupied by biological material of interest. For immunohistochemical or H&E stained samples, the background will be bright (white) and the tissue will be darker. The opposite is true of images of immunofluorescently labelled tissue. This process of selecting a threshold intensity separating tissue from background, often termed "segmentation", may be done empirically, or computationally utilizing methods described elsewhere (reviewed in [116]). As an example, one strategy involves selecting the midpoint of the intensity scale (say, 128 on a 0–255 scale) as a first estimate, and then calculating the mean intensities of all pixels above and below this initial estimate. The midpoint between the two means is then used as the next estimate, and the procedure is repeated until the estimate no longer changes [122]. In our analyses of immunofluorescence images, we found that the resulting threshold value was too low, so we modified this algorithm to use the mean of the pixels brighter than the final estimate as threshold.
    b. Structures of interest within the image must be localized by determining the inter-relationship of the bright pixels. The simplest method for doing this is the "blob" algorithm whereby contiguous bright pixels are grouped together. However, this approach is too simplistic for tissue and cell culture analysis, because biological material is highly heterogeneous and the various methods for staining this material usually does not produce a uniformly bright region suitable for detection in this matter. To account for this, we have introduced a modified blob algorithm that divides the image up into many small regions (a grid), and groups together contiguous bright regions based on their average intensity [123]. By varying the size of the grid squares and the cut off value for the number of bright pixels that must be contained by each square, tissue features of varying degrees of heterogeneity may be detected.
    c. Characteristics of identified structures must be quantified. For example, in quantifying cell scattering we used the grid-based blob algorithm described above to identify clusters of cells in cell culture images and then enumerated the number of cell clusters within each image as well as the size of those clusters both in terms of pixels and cells (see Fig. 5.4). These measures were shown to correlate with subjective scattering scores assigned by human interpreters of the images.

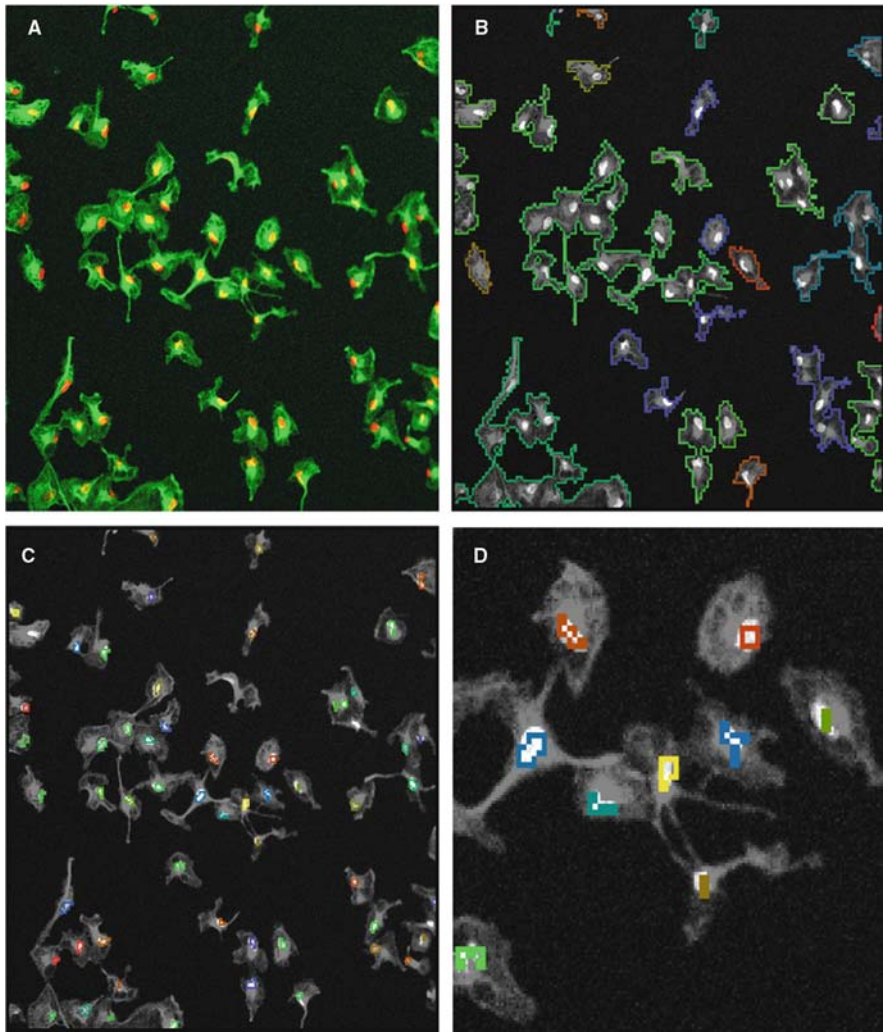


Fig. 5.4 Examples of quantitative scattering analysis. The grid based blob analysis was used to locate cells in the image and quantify the number of cell clusters as well as the size of each cluster in terms of pixels and cells. (**a)** Original image of cells growing in a culture flask. (**b**) The cells have been localized by applying the grid based blob analysis to the green image channel (cytoplasmic marker), and each cluster of cells annotated with a random pseudocolor for visualization purposes. (**c**) The same algorithm applied to the red image channel (nuclear marker) to localize nuclei. The nuclei were located to allow the computer to count the number of cells in each cluster. (**d**) Zoomed image showing the nuclear annotation

Likewise, cell branching may be quantified by relating the circumference of the cell to its area. A perfectly spherical cell has the lowest surface area: volume ratio (it is for this reason that lipid drops in aqueous solution form spherical droplets, since this arrangement minimizes hydrophobic interactions and thereby represents the free energy minimum.) Similarly, in two dimensions, a section through a spherical cell yields a circular structure with the smallest possible circumference: area ratio. As the cell becomes more branched, the resulting sections through the cell become more tortuous, and the circumference increases relative to the area. The ratio of circumference to area, then, may be used as a quantitative measure of cell branching. For convenience, our laboratory typically performs a mathematical transformation of this ratio based on the geometric relationship between area and circumference such that the minimum branching coefficient in 1 (the grid based blob algorithm leads to some rounding error such that coefficients slightly less than 1 may result). This approach to quantifying cell branching is illustrated schematically in Fig. 5.5a, b, and illustrative images from cell culture with corresponding computed quantitative data are shown in Fig. 5.5 c, d.

One nagging question may arise in the mind of the reader in light of this discussion: Do we envision a day when researchers and pathologists will be replaced by computers, at least within the context of the interpretation of histology? The answer is no. Computer algorithms can only apply the expertise of human operators in a rigorous fashion. Human expertise will always, in our view, be required to validate and advance

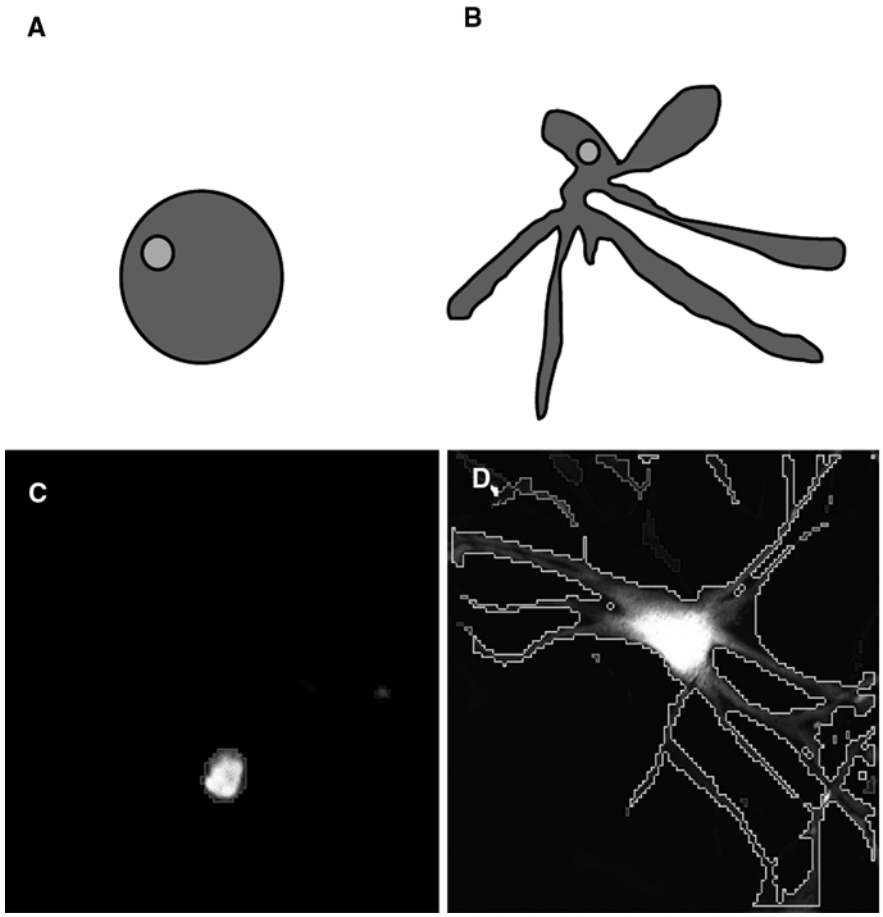


Fig. 5.5 (**a**) and (**b**) Schematic representation of basis of branching algorithm. Both "cells" have similar cytoplasmic area, but the cell in **a** (unbranched) has a much smaller circumference than the cell in **b** (branched). By relating the circumference to the area of the cell, a branching coefficient may be calculated. (**c**) and (**d**) The algorithm was applied to cells growing in culture. The computed branching coefficient for the cell in C was about 1, while that of the cell shown in **d** was 5.4

the work of computational pathology. Computers are well suited to rigorous and reproducible application of rules (something that humans are less well suited to), while humans are well suited to creativity, adaptation, and recognition of exceptions (something that computers are less well suited to). As such, the relationship is synergistic and not competitive, Deep Blue notwithstanding.[1]

[1] When the computer Deep Blue defeated chess Grand Master Gary Kasparov, it was touted in the popular press as a triumph of computer over human. But in reality, it was just the sort of synergy discussed here: the – designed and programmed computer.

5.7 Conclusion

Cancer is a multi-factorial disease, influenced by a combination of genetic and environmental factors. Imaging of the molecular, cellular and organism changes that document the sequence and steps in this process is one of the key reasons tissue culture has been so important in unraveling the process of carcinogenesis.

At the molecular level, cancer is characterized by multiple alterations in genes that play key regulatory roles in various cellular functions resulting in deregulated growth and metastatic spread of the cells that produce the late stage characteristic and specificphenotypic changes. The various disciplines within tissue culture have proven to be an invaluable resource for the in vitro study of carcinogenesis and its many dynamic causes. The developments of gene-expression profiling and laser capture microdissection have further aided

in this study and have provided a number of groundbreaking insights into the development and causation of cancer.

However, the in vitro study of cancer does have its restrictions, largely in its limited potential for translation to clinical use. The recent development of molecular imaging technologies in miniature, such as magnetic resonance imaging, x-ray computed tomography, fluorescent imaging, and, most importantly, intravital microscopy, has helped to overcome these limitations by presenting access to a whole new realm of study in vivo on mouse models. The benefit of such in vivo studies on mice is the ability to study therapy efficacy and molecular interactions in real time in the living animal. Advances in the quantitative analysis of imaging, combined with the development of new technologies hold great promise for not only a better understanding of the many factors underlying the disease, but also for the development of new technologies and therapies to be used in a clinical setting on humans. These technologies have been developed using in vitro models and are now ready to apply to in vivo studies. There still remains much to be learned about the causes of cancer and possibilities for its treatment. The various methods of in vitro study using cell culture have provided researchers with a solid foundation of knowledge, and, along with in vivo research, facilitates the continual building upon that foundation. As greater advances are made in the laboratory, it is hoped that even greater achievements will be made in the clinical application of data acquired through laboratory studies: new methods of detection and treatment, and even, perhaps one day, a cure.

References

1. Carbone M, Rizzo P, Pass H: Simian virus 40: the link with human malignant mesothelioma is well established. *Anticancer Res* 20:875–877, 2000
2. Doll R: Mortality from lung cancer in asbestos workers. *Br J Ind Med* 12:81–86, 1955
3. Wagner J, Sieggs C, Marchand P: Diffuse pleural mesothelioma and asbestos exposure in the North Western Cape Province. *Br J Ind Med* 17:260–271, 1960
4. Blume-Jensen P, Hunter T: Oncogenic kinase signaling. *Nature* 411:355–365, 2001
5. Hahn W, Weinberg R: Rules for making human tumor cells. *N Engl J Med* 347:1593–1603, 2002
6. Tsatsanis C, Spandidos D: The role of oncogenic kinases in human cancer (Review). *Int J Mol Med* 5:583–590, 2000
7. Fearon E: Human cancer syndromes: clues to the origin and nature of cancer. *Science* 278:1043–1050, 1997
8. Lichtenstein P, Holm N, Verkasalo P, Iliadou A, Kaprio J, Koskenvuo M, Pukkala E, Skytthe A, Hemminki K: Environmental and heritable factors in the causation of cancer. *N Engl J Med* 343:78–85, 2000
9. Hadjantonakis A, Dickinson M, Fraser S, Papaioannou V: Technicolour transgenics: Imaging tools for functional genomics in the mouse. *Nat Rev Genet* 4:613–625, 2003
10. Huang Q, Stoner G, Resau J, Nickols J, Mirvish S: Metabolism of N-Nitrosomethyl-n-amylamine by microsomes from human and rat esophagus. *Cancer Res* 52:3547–3551, 1992
11. Kinzler K, Vogelstein B: Lessons from hereditary colorectal cancer. *Cell* 87:159–170, 1996
12. Kinzler K, Vogelstein B: Landscaping the cancer terrain. *Science* 280:1036–1037, 1998
13. Wilbanks G: A selective review of experimental studies in cervical carcinoma. *Cancer Res* 33:1379–1381, 1973
14. Higginson J, Muir C: Détermination de l'importance des facteurs environnementaux dans le cancer humain: role de l'épidémiologie. *Bull Cancer* 64:365–384, 1977
15. Jakoby W, Pastan I: *Cell Culture*. Academic Press, Boston, MA, 1979
16. Resau J, Cottrell J: Mechanisms of carcinogenesis. In *Use of Organ Explant and Cell Culture in Cancer Research*, Weisburger E, Ed. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, Netherlands, 1989, pp. 157–159
17. Gey G, Coffman W, Kubicek M: Tissue culture studies of the proliferative capacity of cervical cancer and normal epithelium. *Cancer Res* 12:364–365, 1952
18. Frost J: *The Cell in Health and Disease*., Williams and Wilkins, Baltimore, MD, 1969
19. Patten S: *Diagnostic Cytology of the Uterine Cervix*. Williams and Wilkins, Baltimore, MD, 1969
20. Macpherson I, Montagnier: Agar suspesion culture for the selection assay of cells transformed by polyoma virus. *Virology* 23:291–294, 1964
21. Shamsuddin A, Trump B: Colon epithelium III. In vitro studies of colon carcinogenesis in Fisher 344 rats. N-methyl-N'-nitro-N-nitrosoguanidine-induced changes in colon epithelium in explant culture. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 66:403–411, 1981
22. Phillips P, Stewart J, Kumar S: Tumor angiogenesis factor (TAF) in human and animal tumors. *Int J Cancer* 17: 549–558, 1976
23. Schena M, Shalon D, Davis R, Brown P: Quantitative monitoring of gene expression patterns with a complementary DNA microarray. *Science* 270:467–470, 1995
24. Schulze A, Downward J: Navigating gene expression using microarrays – a technology review. *Nat Cell Biol* 3:E190–E195, 2001
25. Lockhart D, Dong H, Byrne M, Follettie M, Gallo M, Chee M, Mittmann M, Wang C, Kobayashi M, Horton H, Brown E: Expression monitoring by hybridization to high-density oligonucleotide arrays. *Nat Biotechnol* 14: 1675–1680, 1996

26. Guo Q: DNA microarray and cancer. *Curr Opin Oncol* 15:36–43, 2003
27. Ramaswamy S, Tamayo P, Rifkin R, Mukherjee S, Yeang C, Angelo M, Ladd C, Reich M, Latulippe E, Mesirov J, Poggio T, Gerald W, Loda M, Lander E, Golub T: Multiclass cancer diagnosis using tumor gene expression signatures. *PNAS* 98:15149–15154, 2001
28. Su A, Welsh J, Sapinoso L, Kern S, Dimitrov P, Lapp H, Schultz P, Powell S, Moskaluk C, Frierson HJ, Hampton G: Molecular classification of human carcinomas by use of gene expression signatures. *Cancer Res* 61:7388–7393, 2001
29. Zhang L, Zhou W, Velculescu V, Kern S, Hruban R, Hamilton S, Vogelstein B, Kinzler K: Gene expression profiles in normal and cancer cells. *Science* 276: 1268–1272, 1997
30. Sorlie T, Perou C, Tibshirani R, Aas T, Geisler S, Johnsen H, Hastie T, Eisen M, van de RM, Jeffrey S, Thorsen T, Quist H, Matese J, Brown P, Botstein D, Lonning P, Borresen-Dale A: Gene expression patterns of breast carcinomas distinguish tumor subclasses with clinical implications. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 98:10869–10874, 2001
31. Vastag B: Gene Chips inch toward the clinic. *JAMA* 289:155–163, 2003
32. Golub T, Slonim D, Tamayo P, Huard C, Gaasenbeek M, Mesirov J, Coller H, Loh ML, Downing J, Caligiuri M, Bloomfield C, Lander E: Molecular classification of cancer: class discovery and class prediction by gene expression monitoring. *Science* 286:531–537, 1999
33. Alizadeh A, Eisen M, Davis R, Ma C, Lossos I, Rosenwald A, Boldrick J, Sabet H, Tran T, Yu X, et al.: Distinct types of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma identified by gene expression profiling. *Nature* 403:503–511, 2000
34. Shek L, Godolphin W: Model for breast cancer survival: relative prognostic roles of axilliary nodal status, TNM stage, estrogen receptor concentration, and tumor necrosis. *Cancer Res* 48:5565–5569, 1988
35. van de Vijver M, Yudong D He, van't Veer L, Hongyue D, Hart A, Voskuil D, Schreiber G, Peterse J, Roberts C, Marton M, Parrish M, Atsma D, Witteveen A, Glas A, Delahaye L, van der Velde T, Bartelink H, Rodenhuis S, Rutgers E, Friend S, Bernards R: A gene-expression signature as a predictor of survival in breast cancer. *N Engl J Med* 347:1999–2009, 2002
36. Armstrong S, Staunton J, Silverman L, Pieters R, den Boer M, Minden M, Sallan S, Lander E, Golub T, Korsmeyer S: MLL translocations specify a distinct gene expression profile that distinguishes a unique leukemia. *Nat Genet* 30:41–47, 2002
37. Beer D, Kardia S, Huang C, Giordano T, Levin A, Misek D, Lin L, Chen G, Gharib T, Thomas D, Lizyness M, Kuick R, Hayasaka S, Taylor J, Iannettoni M, Orringer M, Hanash S: Gene-expression profiles predict survival of patients with lung adenocarcinoma. *Nat Med* 8:816–824, 2002
38. Bittner M, Meltzer P, Chen Y, Jiang Y, Seftor E, Hendrix M, Radmacher M, Simon R, Yakhini Z, Ben-Dor A, Sampas N, Dougherty E, Wang E, Marincola F, Gooden C, Lueders J, Glatfelter A, Pollock P, Carpten J, Gillanders E, Leja D, Dietrich K, Beaudry C, Berens M, Alberts D, Sondak V: Molecular classification of cutaneous malignant melanoma by gene expression profiling. *Nature* 406:536–540, 2000
39. Dhanasekaran S, Barrette T, Ghosh D, Shah R, Varambally S, Kurachi K, Pienta K, Rubin M, Chinnaiyan A: Delineation of prognostic biomarkers in prostate cancer. *Nature* 412:822–826, 2001
40. Hedenfalk I, Duggan D, Chen Y, Radmacher M, Bittner M, Simon R, Meltzer P, Gusterson B, Esteller M, Kallioniemi O, Wilfond B, Borg A, Trent J: Gene-expression profiles in hereditary breast cancer. *N Engl J Med* 344:539–548, 2001
41. Khan J, Jun S Wei, Ringner M, Saal L, Ladanyi M, Westermann F, Berthold F, Schwab M, Antonescu C, Peterson C, Meltzer P: Classification and diagnostic prediction of cancers using gene expression profiling and artificial neural networks. *Nat Med* 7:673–679, 2001
42. Pomeroy S, Tamayo P, Gaasenbeek M, Sturla L, Angelo M, McLaughlin M, Kim JY, Goumnerova L, Black P, Lau C, Allen J, Zagzag D, Olson J, Curran T, Wetmore C, Biegel J, Poggio T, Mukherjee S, Rifkin R, Califano A, Stolovitzky G, Louis D, Mesirov J, Landers E, Golub T: Prediction of central nervous system embryonal tumor outcome based on gene expression. *Nature* 415:436–442, 2002
43. Perou C, Sorlie T, Eisen M, van de RM, Jeffrey S, Rees C, Pollack J, Ross D, Johnsen H, Akslen L, Fluge O, Pergamenschikov A, Williams C, Zhu S, Lonning P, Borresen-Dale A, Brown P, Botstein D: Molecular portraits of human breast tumors. *Nature* 406:747–752, 2000
44. Schoch C, Kohlmann A, Schnittger S, Brors B, Dugas M, Mergenthaler S, Kern W, Hiddemann W, Eils R, Haferlach T: Acute myeloid leukemias with reciprocal rearrangements can be distinguished by specific gene expression profiles. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 99: 10008–10013, 2002
45. Ciro M, Bracken A, Helin K: Profiling cancer. *Curr Opin Cell Biol* 15:213–220, 2003
46. van't Veer L, Hongyue D, van de Vijver M, Yudong D, Hart A, Mao M, Peterse H, van der Kooy K, Marton M, Witteveen A, Schreiber G, Kerkhoven R, Roberts C, Linsley P, Bernards R, Friend S: Gene expression profiling predicts clinical outcome of breast cancer. *Nature* 415:530–536, 2002
47. Simone N, Paweletz C, Charboneau L, Petricoin EI, Liotta L: Laser capture microdissection: beyond functional genomics to proteomics. Mol Diagn 5:301–307, 2000
48. Simone N, Bonner R, Gillespie J: Laser capture microdissection: opening the microscopic frontier to molecular analysis. *Trends Genet* 14:272–276, 1998
49. Goldsworthy S, Stockton P, Trempus C: Effects of fixation on RNA extraction and amplification from laser capture microdissected tissue. *Mol Carcinog* 25:86–91, 1999
50. Keuker S, Kulig E: Analysis of PRL, PRL-R, TGFb1, and TGFb-RII gene expression in normal and neoplastic brast tissues after laser capture microdissection. *Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol* 7:193–200, 1999
51. Sgroi D, Teng S, Robinson G: In vivo gene expression proile analysis. *Cancer Res* 59:5656–5661, 1999

52. Banks R, Dunn M, Forbes M: The potential use of laser capture microdissection to selectively obtain distinct populations of cells for proteomic analysis. *Electrophoresis* 20:689–700, 1999
53. Reiss S: Laser capture microdissection provides key to gene behavior. *Biophotonic Int*, 1999
54. Luo L, Salunga R, Bittner A: Gene expression profiles of laser-captured adjacent neuronal subtypes. *Nat Med* 5:117–122, 1999
55. Emmert-Buck M, Strausberg R, Krizman D: Molecular profiling of clinical tissue specimens, feasibility and applications. *Am J Pathol* 156:1109–1115, 2000
56. Natkunum Y: Immunoblot analysis of CD34 expression in histologically diverse neoplasms. *Am J Pathol* 156:21–27, 2000
57. Emmert-Buck M, Gillespie J, Paweletz C: An approach to the proteomic analysis of human tumors. *Mol Carcinog* 27:158–165, 2000
58. Guengerich F: Roles of cytochrome P450 enzymes in chemical carcinogenesis and cancer chemotherapy. *Cancer Res* 48:2946–2954, 1988
59. Gillies R, Bhujwalla Z, Evelhoch J, Garwood M, Neeman M, Robinson S, Sotak C, Van Der SB: Applications of magnetic resonance in model systems: tumor biology and physiology. *Neoplasia* 2:139–151, 2000
60. Koutcher J, Zakian K, Hricak H: Magnetic resonance spectroscopic studies of the prostate. *Mol Urol* 4:143–152, 2000
61. Massoud T, Gambhir S: Molecular imaging in living subjects: seeing fundamental biological processes in a new light. *Genes Dev* 17:545–580, 2003
62. Weissleder R, Ntziachristos V: Shedding light onto live molecular targets. *Nat Med* 9:123–128, 2003
63. Schnell S, Staines W, Wessendorf M: Reduction of lipofuscin-like autofluorescence in fluorescently labeled tissue. *J Histochem Cytochem* 47:719–730, 1999
64. Romijn H, van Uum J, Breedijk I, Emmering J, Radu I, Pool C: Double immunolabeling of neuropeptides in the human hypothalamus as analyzed by confocal laser scanning fluorescence microscopy. *J Histochem Cytochem* 47:229–236, 1999
65. Doyle K, Simon R, Snyder A, Stenzel-Poore M: Working with GFP in the brain. *Biotechniques* 34:492–494, 2003
66. Resau J, Hudson E, Sathyanarayana B: Pathology of genetically engineered mice. In *Use of Confocal Microscopy Techniques in the Study of Transgenic and Knockout Mice*, Ward J, Maronpot R, Sundberg J, Frederickson R, Eds. Iowa State University Press, Ames, IA, 2000
67. Wack S, Hajri A, Heisel F, Sowinska M, Berger C, Whelan M, Marescaux J, Aprahamian M: Feasibility, sensitivity, and reliability of laser-induced fluorescence imaging of green fluorescent protein-expressing tumors in vivo. *Mol Ther* 7:765–773, 2003
68. Nakanishi H, Mochizuki Y, Kodera Y, Ito S, Yamamura Y, Ito K, Akiyama S, Nakao A, Tatematsu M: Chemosensitivity of peritoneal micrometastases as evaluated using a green fluorescence protein (GFP)-tagged human gastric cancer cell line. *Cancer Sci* 94:112–118, 2003
69. Steinbauer M, Guba M, Cernaianu G, Kohl G, Cetto M, Kunz-Schughart L, Geissler E, Falk W, Jauch K: GFP-transfected tumor cells are useful in examining early metastasis in vivo, but immune reaction precludes long-term tumor development studies in immunocomopetent mice. *Clin Exp Metastasis* 20:135–141, 2003
70. Mourad P, Farrell L, Stamps L, Santiago P, Fillmore H, Broaddus W, Silbergeld D: Quantitative assessment of glioblastoma invasion in vivo. *Cancer Lett* 192:97–107, 2003
71. Christiansen J, Rajasekaran S, Moy P, Butch A, Goodglick L, Gu Z, Reiter R, Bander N, Rajasekaran A: Polarity of prostate specific membrane antigen, prostate stem cell antigen, and prostate specific antigen in prostate tissue and in a cultured epithelial cell line. *Prostate* 55:9–19, 2003
72. Karpova T, Baumann C, He L, Wu X, Grammer A, Lipsky P, Hager G, McNally J: Fluorescence resonance energy transfer from cyan to yellow fluorescent protein detected by acceptor photobleaching using confocal microscopy and a single laser. *J Microsc* 209:56–70, 2003
73. Weissleder R: Scaling down imaging: molecular mapping of cancer in mice. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2:1–8, 2002
74. Resau J, Hudson E, Jones R: Organ explant culture of adult Syrian Golden hamster pancreas. *In vitro* 19: 317–325, 1983
75. Valerio M, Fineman E, Bowman R, Harris C, Stoner G, Autrup H, Trump B, McDowell E, Jones R: Longterm survival of normal human tissue as xenografts in congenitally athymic nude mice. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 66:849–858, 1981
76. Dennie J, Mandeville J, Boxerman J, Packard S, Rosen B, Weisskoff R: NMR imaging of changes in vascular morphology due to tumor angiogenesis. *Magn Reson Med* 40:793–799, 1998
77. Brasch R, Pham C, Shames D, Roberts T, van Dijke K, van Bruggen N, Mann J, Ostrowitzki S, Melnyk O: Assessing tumor angiogenesis using macromolecular MR imaging contrast media. *J Magn Reson Imaging* 7:68–74, 1997
78. Taylor J, Tofts P, Port R, Evelhoch J, Knopp M, Reddick W, Runge V, Mayr N: MR imaging of tumor microcirculation: promise for the new millennium. *J Magn Reson Imaging* 10:903–907, 1999
79. Lewin M, Bredow S, Sergeyev N, Marecos E, Bogdanov AJ, Weissleder R: In vivo assessment of vascular endothelial growth factor-induced angiogenesis. *Int J Cancer* 83:798–802, 1999
80. Mandeville J, Marota J, Kosofsky B, Keltner J, Weissleder R, Rosen B, Weisskoff R: Dynamic functional imaging of relative cerebral blood volume during rat forepaw stimulation. *Magn Reson Med* 39:615–624, 1998
81. Neeman M, Dafni H, Bukhari O, Braun R, Dewhirst M: In vivo BOLD contrast MRI mapping of subcutaneous vascular function and maturation: validation by intravital microscopy. *Magn Reson Med* 45:887–898, 2001
82. Weissleder R, Cheng H, Marecos E, Kwong K, Bogdanov A: Mapping of tumor vascular and interstitial volume fractions non-invasively in vivo. *Eur J Cancer* 34:1448–1454, 1998

83. Josephson L, Perez M, Weissleder R: Magnetic nanosensors for the detection of oligonucleotide sequences. *Angew Chem (Int Ed Engl)* 40:3204–3206, 2001
84. Ntziachristos V, Weissleder R: Experimental three-dimensional fluorescence reconstruction of diffuse media by use of a normalized born approximation. *Optics Lett* 26:893–395, 2001
85. Ntziachristos V, Yodh A, Schnall M, Chance B: Concurrent MRI and diffuse optical tomography of breast after indocyanine green enhancement. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 97:2767–2772, 2000
86. Dunn K, Sandoval R, Kelly K, Dagher P, Tanner G, Atkinson S, Bacallao R, Molitoris B: Functional studies of the kidney of living animals using multicolor two-photon microscopy. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol* 283:C905–C916, 2002
87. Helmchen F, Denk W: New developments in multiphoton microscopy. *Curr Opin Neurobiol* 12:593–601, 2002
88. Jain R, Munn L, Fukumura D: Dissecting tumor pathophysiology using intravital microscopy. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2:266–276, 2000
89. Helmchen F, Fee MS, Tank D, Denk W: A miniature head-mounted two-photon microscope: high-resolution brain imaging in freely moving animals. *Neuron* 31:903–912, 2001
90. Svoboda K, Denk W, Kleinfeld D, Tank D: In vivo dendritic calcium dynamics in neocortical pyramidal neurons. *Nature* 385:161–165, 1997
91. Mahmood U, Tung C, Bogdanov AJ, Weissleder R: Near-infrared optical imaging of protease activity for tumor detection. *Radiology* 213:866–870, 1999
92. Williams R, Zipfel W, Webb W: Multiphoton microscopy in biological research. *Curr Opin Chem Biol* 5:603–608, 2001
93. Denk W, Svoboda K: Photon upmanship: why multiphoton imaging is more than a gimmick. *Neuron* 18:351–357, 1997
94. Dyba M, Hell S: Focal spots of size l/23 open up far-field fluorescence microscopy at 33 nm axial resolution. *Phys Rev Lett* 88:163–901, 2002
95. Klar T, Jakobs S, Dyba M, Egner A, Hell S: Fluorescence microscopy with diffraction resolution barrier broken by stimulated emission. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 97: 8206–8210, 2000
96. Gullino P. In *Cancer*, Becker F, Ed. Plenum, New York, 1975
97. Padera T, Stoll B, So PT, Jain R: High-speed intravital multiphoton laser scanning microscopy of microvasculature, lymphatics, and leukocyte-endothelial interactions. *Mol Imaging* 1:9–15, 2002
98. Brown E, Campbell R, Tsuzuki Y, Xu L, Carmeliet P, Fukumura D, Jain R: In vivo measurement of gene expression, angiogenesis and physiological function in tumors using multiphoton laser scanning microscopy. *Nat Med* 7:864–868, 2001
99. Emmert-Buck M, Chuaqui R, Zhuang Z: Laser capture microdissection. *Science* 274:998–1001, 1996
100. Bogdanov A, Tung C, Kayne L, Hnatowich D, Weissleder R. In *Nasa-NCI Workshop on Sensors for Bio-Molecular Signatures*. Pasadena, CA, 1999
101. Hnatowich D, Winnard PJ, Virzi F, Fogarasi M, Sano T, Smith C, Cantor C, Rusckowski M: Technetium-99m labeling of DNA oligonucleotides. *J Nucl Med* 36: 2306–2314, 1995
102. Gambhir S, Barrio J, Phelps M, Iyer M, Namavari M, Satyamurthy N, Wu L, Green L, Bauer E, MacLaren D, Nguyen K, Berk A, Cherry S, Herschman H: Imaging adenoviral-directed reporter gene expression in living animals with positron emission tomography. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 96:2333–2338, 1999
103. Tjuvajev J, Finn R, Watanabe K, Joshi R, Oku T, Kennedy J, Beattie B, Koutcher J, Larson S, Blasberg R: Noninvasive imaging of herpes virus thymidine kinase gene transfer and expression: a potential method for monitoring clinical gene therapy. *Cancer Res* 56:4087–4095, 1996
104. MacLaren D, Gambhir S, Satyamurthy N, Barrio J, Sharfstein S, Toyokuni T, Wu L, Berk A, Cherry S, Phelps M, Herschman H: Repetitive, non-invasive imaging of the dopamine D2 receptor as a reporter gene in living animals. *Gene Ther* 6:785–791, 1999
105. Yang D, Li C, Kuang L, Price J, Buzdar A, Tansey W, Cherif A, Gretzer M, Kim EE, Wallace S: Imaging, biodistribution and therapeutic potential of halogenated tamoxifen analogues. *Life Sci* 55:53–67, 1994
106. Comoglio P: Pathway specificity for Met signaling. *Nat Cell Biol* 3:E161–E162, 2001
107. Furge K, Zhang Y, Vande Woude G: Met receptor tyrosine kinase: enhanced signaling through adapter proteins. *Oncogene* 19:5582–5589, 2000
108. Zhang Y, Vande WGF: HGF/SF-met signaling in the control of branching morphogenesis and invasion. *J Cell Biochem* 88:408–417, 2003
109. Rahimi N, Hung W, Tremblay E, Saulnier R, Elliott B: c-Src kinase activity is required for hepatocyte growth factor-induced motility and anchorage-independent growth of mammary carcinoma cells. *J Biol Chem* 273:33714–33721, 1998
110. Jeffers M, Rao M, Rulong S, Reddy J, Subbarao V, Hudson E, Vande WG, Resau J: Hepatocyte growth factor/scatter factor signaling induces the proliferation, migration and morphogenesis of pancreatic oval cells. *Cell Growth Dev* 7:1805–1813, 1996
111. Tsarfaty I, Rong S, Resau J, Shen R, da Silva, PP, Vande WG: Met signaling in mesenchymal to epithelial conversion. *Science* 263:98–101, 1994
112. Yerushalmi GM, Leibowitz-Amit R, Shaharabany M, Tsarfaty I: Met-HGF/SF signal transduction induces mimp, a novel mitochondrial carrier homologue, which leads to mitochondrial depolarization. *Neoplasia* 4: 510–522, 2002
113. Sloane J, Amendoeira I, Apostolikas N, Bellocq J, Bianchi S, Boecker W, Busso-lati G, Coleman D, Connolly C, Eusebi V, De-Miguel C, Dervan P, Drijkoningen R, Elston C, Faverly D, Gad A, Jacquemier J, Lacerda M, Martinez-Penuela J, Munt C, Peterse J, Rank F, Sylvan M, Tsakraklides V, Zafrani B: Consistency achieved by 23 European pathologists from 12 countries in diagnosing breast disease and reporting prognostic features of carcinomas. European Commission Working Group on

Breast Screening Pathology. *Virchows Arch* 434:3–10, 1999
114. Kronqvist P, Montironi R, Kuopio T, Collan Y: Subjective breast cancer grading: analyses of reproducibility after application of Bayesian belief networks. *Analyt Quant Cytol Histol* 19:423–429, 1997
115. Russ J: *The Image Processing Handbook*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1999
116. Seul M, O'Gorman L, Sammon M: *Practical Algorithms for Image Analysis: Descriptions, Examples, and Code*. Cambridge University Press Cambridge, 2000
117. Pla F, Ferri F: Feature extraction of spherical objects in image analysis: an application to robotic citrus harvesting. *Comput Electron Agric* 8:57–72, 1993
118. Thiel S, Wiltshire R, Davies L: Automated object recognition of blue-green algae for measuring water quality—a preliminary study. *Wat Res* 29:2398–2404, 1995
119. Cootes T, Page G, Jackson C, Taylor C: Statistical grey-level models for object location and identification. *Image Vision Comput* 14:533–540, 1996
120. Oberholzer M, Ostreicher M, Christen H, Bruhlmann M: Methods in quantitative image analysis. *Histochem Cell Biol* 105:333–355, 1996
121. Altstock R, Stein G, Resau J, Tsarfaty I: Algorithms for quantitation of protein expression variation in normal versus tumor tissue as a prognostic factor in cancer: Met oncogene expression, and breast cancer as a model. *Cytometry* 41:155–165, 2000
122. Ridler T, Calvard S: Picture thresholding using an iterative selection method. IEEE Trans Systems, Man, and Cybernetics. *SMC* 8:630–632, 1978
123. Kort E, Jones A, Dambach M, Hudson E, Buckner B, Resau J: Quantifying cell scattering: The blob algorithm revisited. *Cytometry* 51A:119–126, 2003

Chapter 6

Chromosomal Abnormalities in Selected Hematopoietic Malignancies Detected by Conventional and Molecular Cytogenetics: Diagnostic and Prognostic Significance

Hon Fong L. Mark, Susana C. Raimondi, and Robert Sokolic

Contents

H.F.L. Mark (✉)
Cytogenetics Laboratories, Boston University School of Medicine, Boston, MA, USA
Current Affiliations: KRAM Corporation; The Warren Alpert Medical School, Brown University, Providence, RI, USA
e-mail: HonFong_Mark@brown.edu

6.1 Introduction

Theodor Boveri first proposed the somatic mutation theory of cancer in 1914. He proposed that cancer develops from a single cell that acquires a genetic alteration. The hypothesis of the clonal origin of neoplasms, however, could neither be confirmed nor be refuted because the tools for testing his hypothesis were not yet available at the time. With advances in the techniques for obtaining analyzable metaphases over the ensuing years, supporting evidence accumulated. In 1960, Nowell and Hungerford reported the first recurrent chromosomal abnormality associated with a single cancer type, chronic myelocytic (or myeloid) leukemia, or CML [1]. The marker chromosome was named the Philadelphia (Ph) chromosome in honor of the city where it was discovered. Subsequently, through banding techniques, the marker was determined to be the derivative chromosome 22, resulting from the translocation, t(9;22)(q34;q11.2) [2]. Only with further advances in various banding techniques in the 1970s could many more specific chromosomal rearrangements be identified. Some of the technological advances that took place over the last 50 years are described below, as we present specific recurrent chromosomal abnormalities in selected hematopoietic malignancies that were delineated by advances in conventional and molecular cytogenetic technologies.

6.2 Technological Advances in Cancer Cytogenetics

Cancer cytogenetics is the study of chromosomes in cancer tissues. Chromosomal analysis can be performed on a variety of tissue types. For the

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_6,

evaluation of chromosomes in hematological disorders, bone marrow is usually utilized. Unlike other tissues, such as nerve and muscle, hematopoietic cells have the capacity for self-renewal. Cell division in the bone marrow is a physiological process which obviates the need for stimulation by mitogens. Mitogens, such as phytohemagglutinin (PHA), pokeweed mitogen, lipopolysaccharide and Epstein-Barr virus, may be needed to stimulate non-dividing cells in diseases with a low mitotic rate. It is known that the role of hematopoiesis in the fetal stage is initiated in the bone marrow. Many cells normally form in the bone marrow, including erythrocytes, basophils, neutrophils, eosinophils, monocytes and megakaryocytes. Replacement of blood cells entails mitotic cell divisions and maturation via differentiation. Bone marrow is the tissue of choice for the cytogenetic study of most hematologic conditions since it more accurately reflects what occurs in vivo. Blood can be used to study the cytogenetics of malignant conditions only if dividing leukemic blast cells are present.

Bone marrow can be subjected to a one- or a two-day unstimulated culture, as well as a direct preparation [3]. Certain chromosomal abnormalities are detected more readily under certain conditions. For example, the t(15;17) characteristic of acute promyelocytic leukemia (APL or AML-M3 subtype) is rarely seen in direct preparations while this abnormality is often revealed in short-term cultures [4, 5], although not all laboratories report the same experience.

6.2.1 Harvesting of Cells for Cancer Cytogenetics

Once cultured, the cells are harvested utilizing a modification of a peripheral blood technique first described by Moorhead et al. [6]. Mitotic arrest is usually achieved employing Colcemid to disrupt the mitotic spindle. A hypotonic solution is added to cause the swelling of the cells to spread the chromosomes. A fixative (usually a mixture of three parts of methanol plus one part of acetic acid) is added for cell fixation. Fixed cells are dropped onto cleaned slides and air-dried. While suspension cultures are harvested manually, in situ cultures can be harvested by automated systems (e.g., Tecan Miniprep^{TM} Harvestor, Tecan-US, or Genial Systems MultiPrep Genie^{TM}, Rainbow Scientific, Inc) [7, 8]. Slide preparation is best performed under controlled temperature and humidity conditions in an environmentally controlled chamber. Examples of commercially available chambers include The Thermotron^{TM} [9] and environmental control chambers designed by Percival Scientific, Inc. (Perry, Iowa). Once prepared, slides are then aged and subjected to the appropriate banding techniques.

6.2.2 Conventional Cytogenetic Banding Techniques in Cancer Cytogenetics

Karyotyping is the arrangement of the chromosomes in a defined systematic manner. Initially, karyotyping was accomplished by exploiting the differences in size and shape of the chromosomes in a cell that had been stained with a dye such as Giemsa. The first "banding" technique reported was Q-banding, using either quinacrine mustard or quinacrine dihydrochloride [10]. However, this technique suffered from an inability of the fluorescent slides to become part of the permanent record due to the effect of fluorescence quenching. Subsequently, G-banding pattern was achieved by using trypsin which allowed the chromosomes to be visualized under a brightfield microscope as a continuous series of light and dark bands. Other staining techniques such as C, R, NOR, etc. are rarely, if ever, used for bone marrow cytogenetics and further discussion will not be pursued.

6.2.3 Molecular Cytogenetic Techniques in Cancer Cytogenetics

Conventional cytogenetic analysis is performed primarily using G-banding. With the advent of molecular technology, molecular cytogenetic techniques have increasingly been used to enhance the information obtained by conventional G-banded methods. Fluorescence or fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH) can be performed on many sample types using a variety of probes that include: centromere-specific alpha-satellite probes to assess chromosome copy number; subtelomere probes to detect deletion or subtle translocations of the telomeric regions of chromosomes; chromosome painting probes utilizing a

mixture of probes (probe cocktails) to delineate chromosomal structural rearrangements such as translocations; locus-specific or unique sequence probes to focus on specific loci/regions of interest on chromosomes. A combination of molecular probes is often used in cases where a complex chromosomal rearrangement is encountered. The utility of FISH is especially evident when the mitotic index is low and the quality of G-banding is suboptimal. Other specific clinical applications of FISH include the following:

- Rapid FISH for detecting aneuploidies, especially in interphase cells for suspected constitutional as well as acquired monosomies or trisomies in cancer
- The detection of single-cell trisomies for determinating clonality or mosaicism
- Clinical applications in sex-mismatched bone marrow transplants
- The detection of minimal residual disease
- Rapid analysis of bone marrow smears for specific chromosomal abnormalities such as trisomies or suspected unique genetic lesions
- Marker chromosome identification
- Microdeletion evaluations
- Extraction of information in suboptimal specimens with low mitotic index, suboptimal banding, and terminally differentiated cells
- Assessment of chromosome copy number in archival formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded pathology specimens (e.g., Amplification study of genes such as HER-2/neu in breast cancer, or NMYC in neuroblastomas)
- Sequential flow cytometry and FISH for the study of formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded cancer tissues
- Assessment of chromosome/gene copy number in interphase cells found in cytological specimens, such as buccal smears, cervical smears, semen smears, and extracellular fluids
- Evaluation of bladder cancer recurrence using bladder washes
- Evaluation of lung and prostate cancer using FISH probe kits
- FISH as an adjunct to G-banding to characterize cell lines derived from primary tumors
- FISH for localizing DNA sequences onto metaphase chromosomes and mapping viral integration sites
- FISH as an indispensable tool used in the Human Genome Project

The principles and applications of FISH have been discussed extensively elsewhere [11–29].

Although both in situ hybridization (ISH) and FISH have been performed manually for many years, automated instrumentation is now available which can improve laboratory throughput (e.g., Vysis HYBrite^{TM} and the Vysis VP2000^{TM}) [30].

The use of other FISH-based techniques, such as spectral karyotyping (SKY), chromosome comparative genomic hybridization (CGH) and microarray CGH enhance significantly the utility of cancer cytogenetics. Further detailed elaboration of these newer, still evolving, molecular cytogenetic techniques, however, is beyond the scope of this discussion.

6.3 Numerical and Structural Chromosomal Abnormalities

Cytogenetic abnormalities may be numerical or structural. Numerical chromosomal abnormalities include gains or losses of individual chromosomes (e.g., trisomies and monosomies), or gains and losses of entire sets of chromosomes (e.g., triploidy and haploidy). Structural chromosomal abnormalities include chromosome translocations, paracentric and pericentric inversions, direct (tandem) and reverse duplications, terminal and interstitial deletions, isochromosomes, ring chromosomes and marker or unknown chromosomes. Various chromosomal abnormalities have been summarized by An International System for Human Cytogenetic Nomenclature [31, 32]. In addition, an abnormality is considered clonal if two or more cells are found with a gain of a chromosome, or with a structural chromosomal abnormality; or if three or more cells are found with a loss of a chromosome [33]. Although a loss of a chromosome in one cell is usually considered random due to technical factors (such as over-spreading), each nonclonal abnormality should be carefully evaluated to rule out the presence of a small, but bonafide, clone [14, 19, 20]. Examples of nonclonal abnormalities which should be noted are the presence of the Philadelphia translocation in a cell of a patient with CML [1, 2] and the presence of a t(15;17) in a cell of a patient with APL [34, 35]. The identification of one cell with a normal karyotype is considered sufficient evidence to support the presence of a normal cell line in an abnormal case. Interpretation by an

American Board of Medical Genetics (ABMG) board-certified clinical cytogeneticist is, thus, as important for hematopoietic malignancies as in other areas of cytogenetic diagnosis. Furthermore, it is a College of American Pathologists (CAP) requirement for a CLIA-accredited clinical laboratory.

6.4 The Classification of Hematopoietic Malignancies

The above-mentioned technological advances made possible continuing improvement in the cytogenetic analyses of hematopoietic malignancies. A brief discussion on the classification of hematopoietic malignancies will be presented in order to describe the chromosomal abnormalities associated with some of these diseases.

Hematologic malignancies are cancers of the hematopoietic system. Leukemia is cancer of the white blood cells. Depending on the clinical course, leukemia may be classified as chronic or acute, and may be defined by the source of the leukemic cell population, as either myelocytic (myeloid) or lymphocytic (lymphoid) leukemia. Among the chronic leukemias are chronic myelocytic leukemia (CML) and chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL). Among the acute leukemias are acute myelocytic leukemia (AML) and acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL).

In the past, the acute leukemias have been classified by the French-American-British (FAB) Cooperative Group [36, 37, 5]. The FAB classification has relied on morphological, cytochemical and immunological characteristics and most subsets are characterized by specified chromosomal rearrangements which frequently correlate with other clinical features and outcomes. Eight subgroups (M0 to M7) are defined for AML and three for ALL. This classification also includes the myelodysplastic syndromes (MDS) and the myeloproliferative diseases (MPD) [38]. However, the earlier FAB system is being replaced by a newer World Health Organization (WHO) classification of hematologic malignancies which has been developed to address the changing needs of the field.

The European Association of Pathologists and the Society for Hematopathology have been developing a new WHO classification of hematologic malignancies since 1995 [39]. This classification, based on the work of 10 committees of pathologists and a Clinical Advisory Committee of international hematologists and oncologists, includes myeloid, lymphoid, histiocytic, and mast cell neoplasms.

The newer WHO system modifies and incorporates the Revised European-American Lymphoma (REAL) classification [40] and extends the principles underlying that schema to the classification of myeloid diseases. Like the REAL system, the WHO system attempts to classify neoplastic lymphohematopoietic diseases into discrete entities based on their unique histopathological and genetic features.

According to the new WHO system, the lymphohematopoietic neoplasms are divided into clinically relevant and biologically discrete entities, including morphology, immunophenotype, clinical history and cytogenetic abnormalities [21]. With respect to cytogenetics, within the category of acute myeloid leukemias, for example, four main groups are recognized: (1) AML with recurrent cytogenetic abnormalities, such as t(8;21), t(15;17), inv(16), and 11q23 abnormalities; (2) AML with myelodysplasia-related features; (3) therapy-related AML and MDS, and (4) AML not otherwise categorized, including FAB subtypes M0 and M7 [41, 42, 21]. The delineation of specific cytogenetic diseases found in numerous studies showed that cytogenetics could successfully predict response to therapy [43–47] and therefore could be used to make tailored treatment decisions [43, 48].

The successful establishment of the WHO classification should facilitate and ultimately lead to progress in the understanding and treatment of hematologic malignancies. Details of the WHO classification can best be obtained by consulting Harris et al. [39, 41] and Jaffe et al. [42]

6.5 Cytogenetic Abnormalities in Selected Hematopoietic Malignancies

6.5.1 The Philadelphia Chromosome in Chronic Myelocytic Leukemia

The t(9;22)(q34;q11.2) is found mostly in CML, but is also reported in ALL and rarely in AML. The chromosomal rearrangement alters the order of the genetic loci

on these two target chromosomes; it fuses the Abelson (ABL) oncogene on 9q34 to the breakpoint cluster region (BCR) locus on chromosome 22, and results in a hybrid gene. The chimeric BCR/ABL gene encodes a constitutively activated protein tyrosine kinase, which leads to the activation of multiple signaling pathways with profound effects on cell cycle, adhesion, apoptosis and eventual myeloid cell transformation. Huntly et al. [49] noted that in murine transgenic and retroviral transduction models, expression of BCR/ABL has been shown to be both sufficient for initiation and necessary for maintenance of a leukemic phenotype. Figure 6.1 depicts the Philadelphia translocation in CML.

Besides its utility in diagnosis, another utility of cytogenetic analysis is that it can provide insight into clinical course and subsequently treatment. For example, the finding of the Philadelphia chromosome as the sole abnormality in the chronic phase of the disease is associated with a good prognosis. However, changes in the karyotype such as additional chromosomal abnormalities or the emergence of a new subclone (usually +8, +19, i(17q), or an extra Ph chromosome) during the course of the disease signifies disease progression into the acute phase and is considered a poor prognostic sign. Figure 6.2 is an example of such a change.

The t(9;22) has been found to be present in approximately 3% of pediatric and 25% of adult patients with ALL . In children, the Philadelphia chromosome confers an unfavorable prognosis, especially when it is associated with either a high leukocyte count, slow early response to initial therapy, or certain secondary chromosomal aberrations [50–51].

Until recently, treatments for CML consisted of either allogeneic stem cell transplantation or an alpha-interferon-based regimen. However, both options are associated with considerable drawbacks. Although potentially curative, stem cell transplantation is associated with considerable morbidity and mortality, while alpha-interferon-based regimens adequately control chronic-phase disease but result in few long-term survivors. Recently, treatment with the protein tyrosine kinase inhibitor imatinib mesylate (Gleevec/Glivec, formerly known as STI571; Novartis, Basel, Switzerland) has resulted in excellent hematologic and cytogenetic responses in all phases of CML [21]. A comparison with historical controls shows improved survival in the later stages of the disease for patients treated with imatinib, and it is hoped that the excellent response rates obtained in chronic-phase patients will also translate into improved survival.

In the era of kinase inhibition, the cytogenetic and molecular analysis of genetic abnormalities in CML takes on increasing importance, in part because the treatment itself now relies on the presence of the

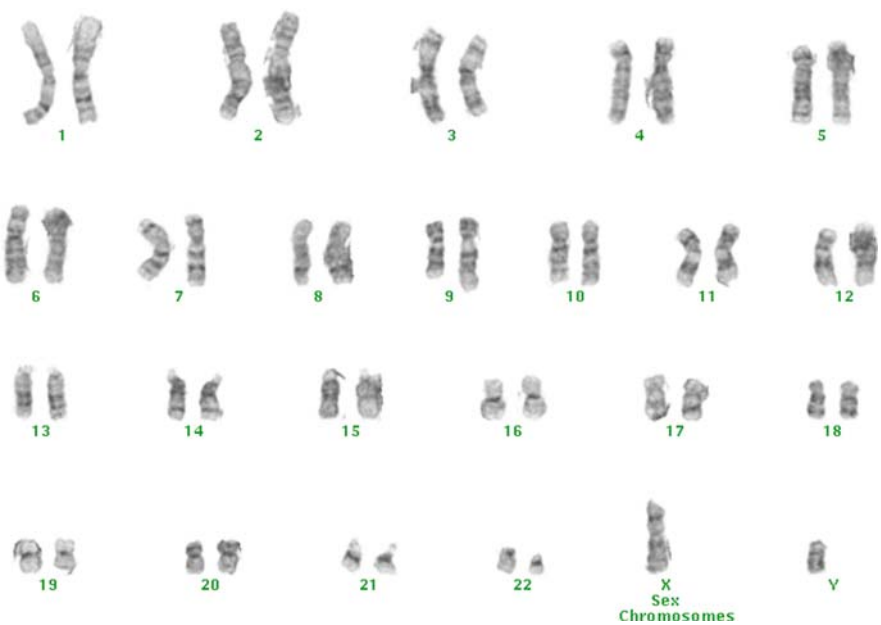


Fig. 6.1 A G-banded karyogram showing the Philadelphia translocation, t(9;22)(q34;q11.2), from a patient with CML

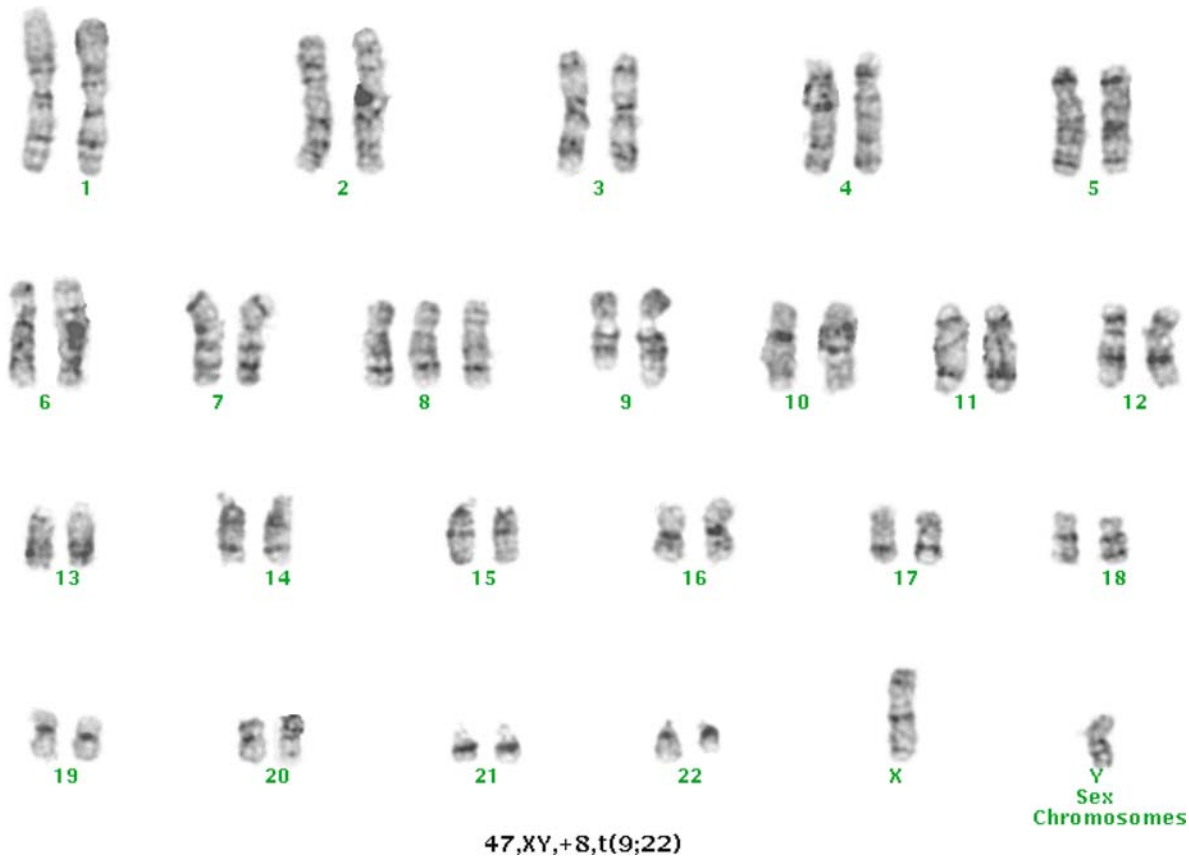


Fig. 6.2 A G-banded karyogram showing the presence of trisomy 8 (+8) in addition to the Philadelphia translocation, t(9;22)(q34;q11.2)

constitutively active BCR-ABL fusion gene. Prior to the use of imatinib, a major cytogenetic response – less than or equal to 35% of cells analyzed expressing the BCR-ABL translocation – was a therapeutic goal, because patients attaining a major cytogenetic response with interferon alpha treatment were known to have increased survival [52]. Patients deemed to be at high risk for transplant-related mortality, by virtue of age, co-morbidity or lack of an HLA matched related donor, were maintained on interferon as long as a response was maintained [53]. Nevertheless, because interferon is rarely curative, patients at lower risk for transplant-related morbidity or mortality were offered allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation if at all possible [54, 53]. Contrariwise, patients who had received transplantation were expected to attain a complete cytogenetic response [55]. Patients failing to do so, or patients who lost a complete response after having attained one, were again considered for further therapy [56].

The relevance of a major cytogenetic response to imatinib has not been demonstrated in a prospective trial. Rather, the focus of treatment has been on molecular responses determined by quantitative polymerase chain reaction (PCR). A major molecular response has been defined as a three-$\log_{10}$ decrease in the ratio of BCR-ABL mRNA transcripts to some control transcript, often the normal BCR transcript [57]. In any case, the appropriate therapeutic maneuver to consider if a major molecular response is not obtained has not been determined in prospective randomized controlled trials. Options are to use a second-generation kinase inhibitor [58, 59] or to offer hematopoietic cell transplantation [60]. While the place of cytogenetic monitoring using the latter modality is clear, the role of either cytogenetic or molecular

monitoring after use of a second-generation kinase inhibitor has not been established. Presumably, though, either molecular response, cytogenetic response or both will be important in this challenging clinical setting.

Even if imatinib treatment is successful, it appears that it will be necessary to continue cytogenetic monitoring. Various molecular responses to long-term imatinib treatment have now been described, including, mutation of the BCR-ABL kinase domain and additional molecular or cytogenetic abnormalities [61]. These molecular and cytogenetic abnormalities have often [62], although not always [63], been associated with progression of disease or transformation to a more aggressive lymphohematopoietic neoplasm. Cytogenetic monitoring may detect these events in an early stage, and may therefore impact on the treatment decision or on the outcome of treatment, although these suppositions must be verified in adequate prospective studies. In any case, additional molecular and/or cytogenetic changes can certainly be used to follow the course of evolving disease.

6.5.2 Chromosomal Abnormalities in Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia (CLL)

Chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) is the most common adult leukemia found in the United States and Europe. The disease occurs almost exclusively in middle-aged and elderly patients. An overwhelming majority of CLL cases are of B-cell origin, with T-cell CLL accounting for only about 5% of all cases [38].

In CLL, the neoplastic cells do not usually proliferate readily in vitro and require stimulation by the appropriate mitogens to achieve a sufficient number of mitoses or dividing cells for analysis. The mitogens of choice are phytohemagglutinin (PHA), concanavalin A (Con-A), T-cell growth factor (TGF), and pokeweed mitogen (PWM) in T-cell malignancies. For B-cell malignancies, mitogens often employed in cytogenetic laboratories include Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), lipopolysaccharide (LPS), which is derived from E. coli, dextran sulfate (DXS) and pokeweed mitogen (PWM). EBV and LPS are especially favored in terms of efficacy in retrieving mitoses with chromosomal abnormalities. An alternative is to perform interphase cytogenetics.

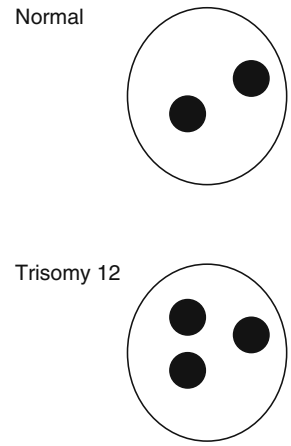


Fig. 6.3 FISH enumeration of chromosome 12 copy number using a CEP 12 SpectrumOrange probe. Two orange/red signals are seen in a normal interphase nucleus. Three orange/red signals are seen in a trisomic 12 (+12) cell

One of the most frequently found chromosomal abnormality in CLL is trisomy 12 (Fig. 6.3), occurring in ~20% of all patients and associated with a poor prognosis [64]. This numerical chromosomal abnormality is especially amenable to molecular cytogenetic analysis. FISH can be performed on routinely prepared as well as previously Wright-stained peripheral blood smears [65].

Other chromosomes frequently involved in abnormalities include chromosome 11, chromosome 13, chromosome 14, chromosome 1, chromosome 3, chromosome 6 and chromosome 17. It has been hypothesized that trisomy 12 may be the primary or earliest karyotypic change in most patients and that other chromosomal changes in addition to trisomy 12 later arise as a result of clonal evolution, dedifferentiation, or treatment.

While risk-adapted therapy of CLL based on cytogenetics is not yet a standard of care, recent data has shown differential survival in various cytogenetic subgroups [66]. In this analysis, del(13q) as a sole abnormality had a better prognosis than normal cytogenetics, as reflected by a delayed time until initiation of therapy. On the other hand, deletions of 17p13 and 11q22–23 were associated with decreased survival. Deletion of chromosome 17p13

is associated with mutated p53, which itself is associated with poor survival after purine analog based therapy [67]. Given the data that 17p13 deletion is associated with poorer survival, and that p53 mutations are associated with both 17p13 deletion and poorer survival after treatment with purine analogues, Byrd and colleagues, in a recent analysis based on CALGB protocol 9,712, examined the relationship of chromosomal abnormalities and survival after modern purine analogue based immunochemotherapy [68]. This paper examined outcomes from a randomized phase II trial of concurrent or sequential treatment of previously untreated CLL with fludarabine and rituximab. A major finding was that both progression-free and overall survival were decreased in patients with poor risk cytogenetics by Döhner's criteria (17p- or 11q-). Interestingly, patients with del(11)(q22.3) had high complete response rates using NCI working group criteria, whereas the CR rate of patients with del(17p) was 0%. Based on these data, it might be reasonable to not use fludarabine-rituximab immunochemotherapy in patients with poor risk cytogenetics, particularly those with del(17p). Alternative treatments to be considered could be alemtuzumab-based therapy or, in appropriately selected patients, allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation after either a myeloablative or non-myeloablative preparative regimen. As yet, no peer-reviewed full reports of these strategies are available. Therefore, such treatment should ideally be conducted at the setting of an investigational protocol.

6.5.3 T(8;14) in Burkitt Lymphoma/Leukemia

Burkitt lymphoma is a form of diffuse lymphoblastic non-Hodgkin lymphoma which is endemic in Africa and the West Indies; it is found only sporadically outside of those areas. The tumor shows a close relationship with the Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) in endemic areas. The t(8;14)(q24;q32), or its variant translocations in a minority of cases, t(2;8)(p12;q24) and t(8;22)(q24;q11), is observed in Burkitt lymphoma or its leukemic presentation. Through this translocation, the MYC oncogene (which maps to 8q24) is juxtaposed to the immunoglobulin (Ig) heavy-chain locus

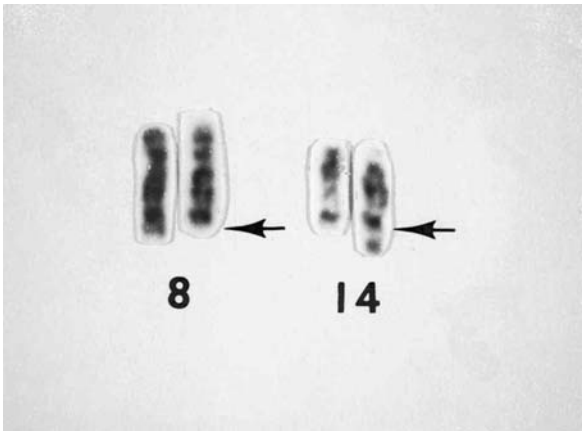


Fig. 6.4 T(8;14)(q24;q32) in Burkitt lymphoma and in ALL

(which maps to 14q32) and consequently becomes deregulated in B cells. Prior to the development of more refined cytogenetic techniques, the "marker' often seen in African Burkitt lymphoma was only identified as a "14q+" structural chromosomal abnormality. It was identified later as a recurring translocation, t(8;14)(q24;q32), as shown in Fig. 6.4.

In African cases this translocation is usually the sole abnormality. In non-endemic areas, however, additional chromosomal abnormalities are usually present.

FISH with either IgH or dual fusion IgH-CMYC fish probes is a good confirmatory test when the subtle t(8;14) is not readily visible , or when a 14q+ is present and the translocation partner has not been visualized. Also the involvement in the bone marrow may be limited and FISH can screen a large number of interphase nuclei. A general discussion of the cytogenetics of lymploid neoplasias can be found in Raimondi [69].

Identification of Burkitt lymphoma/leukemia is usually made on routine histology, where the tissue has a characteristic "starry sky" pattern. In doubtful cases, however, the diagnosis is important to make. Burkitt lymphoma, in either the lympadenopathic or leukemic form, is one of the most rapidly growing tumors of the lymphohematopoietic system, with a doubling time close to 1 day [70]. Unique chemotherapeutic regimens based on high dose methotrexate without prolonged maintenance treatment have been found to be effective [71]. Missing the diagnosis both exposes patients to non-beneficial chemotherapy and deprives them of a chance for cure with the first chemotherapeutic regimen.

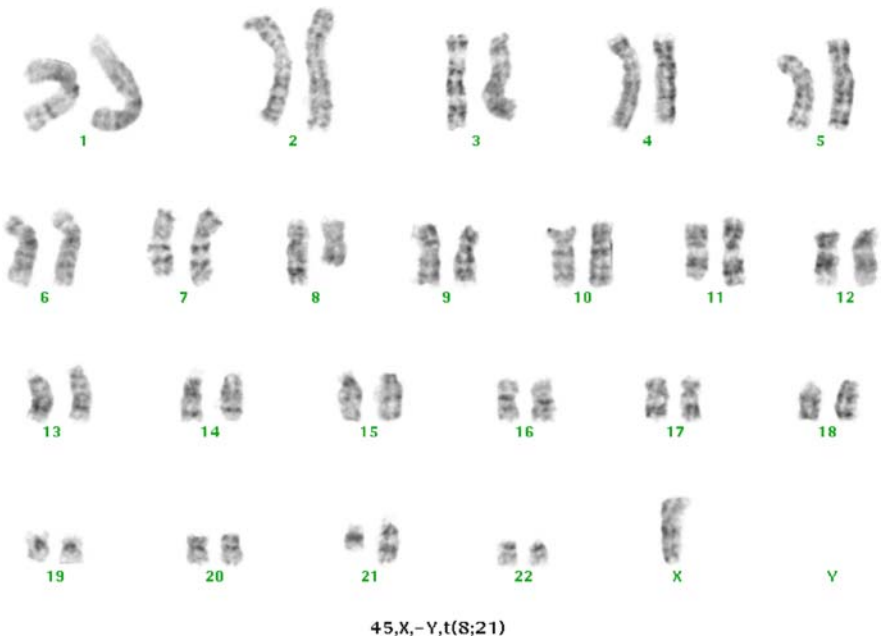


Fig. 6.5 A G-banded karyogram showing the 8;21 translocation. This karyogram is also missing a Y chromosome

6.5.4 Recurrent Cytogenetic Abnormalities in Acute Myeloid Leukemia (AML)

Recurring chromosomal abnormalities in acute myeloid leukemia (AML) include t(8;21)(q22;q22), t(15;17)(q22;q21), inv(16)(p13.3q22), and 11q23 rearrangements. A brief discussion of each ensues.

6.5.4.1 AML with t(8;21)(q22;q22)

The t(8;21) is a recurrent structural chromosomal rearrangement mostly found in AML M2 subtype of the French-American-British (FAB) classification but also in other AML subtypes. The t(8;21) juxtaposes the Acute Myeloid Leukemia 1 (AML1, also called RUNX 1) gene locus on 21q22 with the Eight Twenty One (ETO) gene locus on 8q22. The 8q22 breakpoint clusters are within the putative zinc finger DNA binding gene ETO. The breakpoints in 21q22 are clustered within the AML1 gene. The t(8;21) event produces a fusion of the two genes on the derivative 8 chromosome that results in the novel chimeric gene AML1/ETO. Probes are now available for the detection of the AML1/ETO fusion which is a good complement to conventional cytogenetics as submicroscopic rearrangements are occasionally present. Figure 6.5 shows a G-banded karyogram of the 8;21 translocation. This male patient is also missing a Y chromosome in this metaphase cell.

The clinical utility in the diagnosis of Core Binding Factor (CBF) leukemias [t(8;21), inv(16) and t(16;16)] is sufficient that these diseases have been separated out as a unique pathophysiological entity in the WHO system [39]. Traditionally, these cytogenetic abnormalities have been associated with "good risk" AML. In the MRC 10 trial, good risk cytogenetics had a ~65% overall survival, as opposed to 41% and 14% for intermediate risk and poor risk cytogenetics respectively [72]. This has been interpreted in practice as being a relative contraindication to high dose chemotherapy with allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation while in first remission from CBF+ AML (119). CBF+ AMLs are particularly sensitive to high dose cytarabine-based regimens [73].

6.5.4.2 AML with t(15;17)(q22;q12) and Variants

This translocation involves the PML gene on 15q and the Retinoic Acid Receptor Alpha (RARA) gene on 17q resulting in the formation of the PML/RARA fusion gene. The PML/RARA fusion

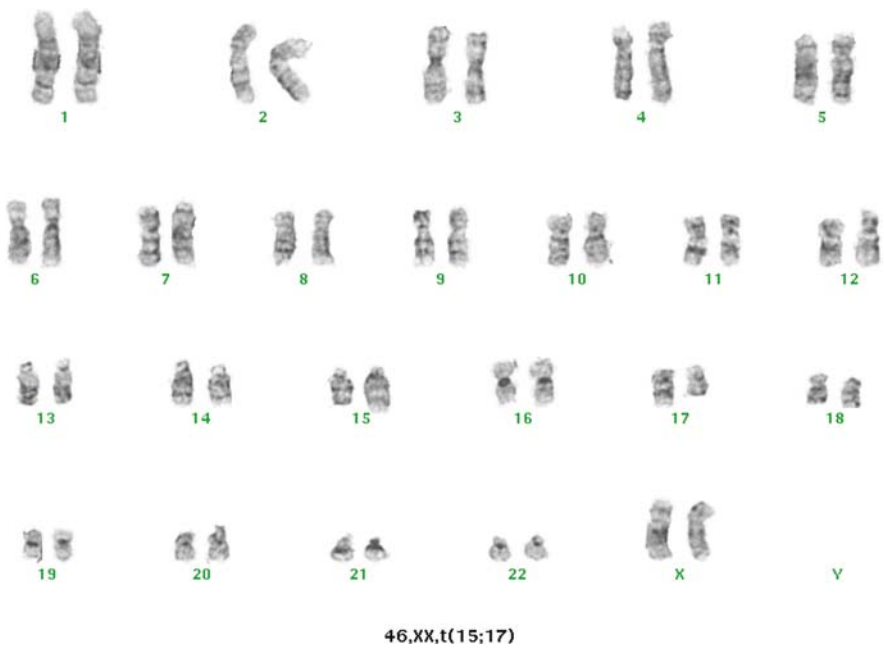


Fig. 6.6 A G-banded karyogram showing the 15;17 translocation

disrupts the retinoic acid receptor resulting in deregulated retinoid signaling. Current treatments include high-dose retinoic acid (all-trans-retinoic acid or ATRA) in combination with chemotherapy.

The translocation is detectable by conventional cytogenetics, RT-PCR and FISH. Detection of the fusion is one of the most sensitive predictor of relapse. It was one of the first examples of targeted therapy in hematopoietic diseases. Figure 6.6 shows a G-banded karyogram of the 15;17 translocation.

As with CML, APL has a unique treatment whose effectiveness is based on the cytogenetic lesion. While APL previously had a very poor outcome with standard anthracycline-cytarabine based therapy, it is now the AML subtype with the best prognosis, thanks to treatment with all-trans retinoic acid (ATRA, tretinoin). Standard treatment for M3 AML now consists of ATRA and anthracycline chemotherapy [74], and the role of any cytotoxic chemotherapy continues to be questioned as efforts are made to reduce or eliminate this component of the regimen [75]. As opposed to cytotoxic chemotherapy, ATRA appears to work as a differentiation agent [76]. In fact, the so-called "ATRA syndrome" or leukocytosis, shortness of breath, and peripheral and pulmonary edema has more recently been termed the "APL differentiation syndrome", as it has been seen with other differentiation-inducing agents used for this disease [77]. Also of considerable practical and theoretic interest is the fact that APL with certain variant translocations, wherein PML is fused to a gene other than RARA, such as PLZF, treatment with tretinoin may be ineffective [78].

6.5.4.3 AML with inv(16)(p13.1q22) or t(16;16)(p13.1;q22)

The inv(16) or t(16;16), are strongly associated with AML $M4_{eo}$ subtype. The inv(16)/t(16;16) has been shown to fuse the CBFB gene on 16q22 with the MYH11 gene on 16p13.1 giving rise to a chimeric protein. FISH is an important tool for the confirmation of these abnormalities as they are subtle and difficult to visualize by conventional cytogenetics, especially when the chromosome preparation is not optimal. Figure 6.7 shows a representative karyogram of a metaphase cell with t(16;16).

6.5.4.4 AML with 11q23 (MLL) Abnormalities

As alluded to earlier, this group of rearrangements involving the disruption of the *MLL* gene is one of the most common cytogenetic abnormalities observed in hematopoietic malignancies. In AML, numerous variant translocations have been reported involving

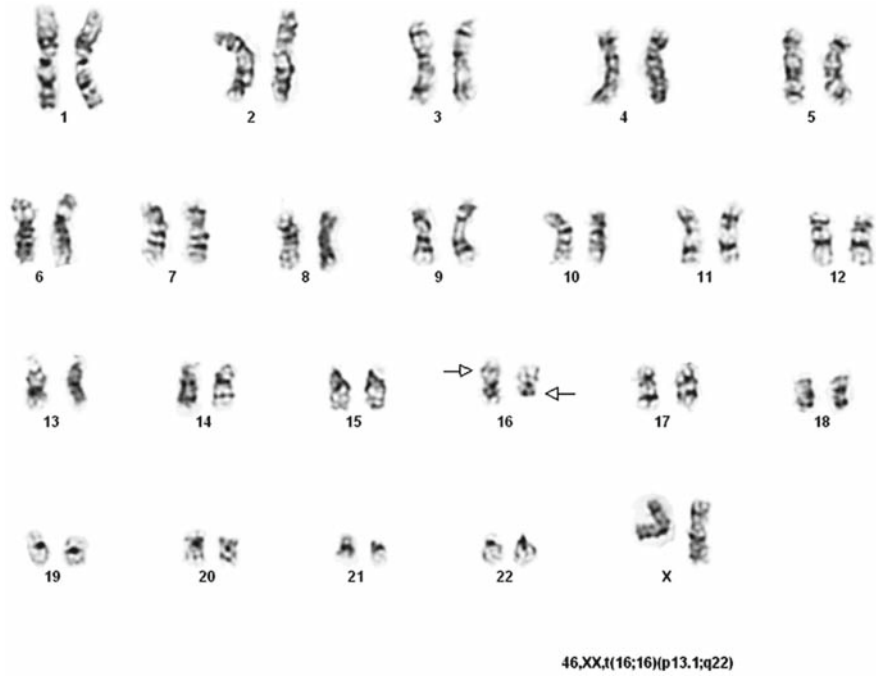


Fig. 6.7 A G-banded karyogram showing t(16;16)(p13.1;q22)

MLL, with the most common being, t(9;11)(p22;q23), t(10;11) and t(11;19)(q23;p13.1), and usually predict a poor outcome. Thus, patients with an unfavorable cytogenetic feature such as 11q23 are often assigned to the most intensive treatment arm.

The detection of recurrent 11q23 chromosomal abnormalities using conventional and molecular cytogenetic techniques is discussed below in the ALL section and in a recent review [21].

6.5.5 Recurrent Cytogenetic Abnormalities in Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia (ALL)

The most frequent genetic subtypes of B-precursor ALL in children include: hyperdiploidy (~30%), t(12;21)(p13;q22)/TEL-AML1 (25%), t(1;19)(q23;p13.3)/E2A-PBX1 (6%), t(9;22)(q34;q11.2) (4%), 11q23/MLL rearrangements (5% of all B-precursor and ~90% of infant ALL) (Table 6.1). In addition, B-cell leukemia/lymphoma represents 5% of all B lineage ALL. Most of these genetic subtypes of ALL are also found in adults, but they are rare, with the possible exception of t(9;22) which is identified in 25% of all cases.

Table 6.1 Main recurrent cytogenetic/genetic lesions with clinical impact on outcome in ALL

Prognosis	Cytogenetic subtype	Children (%)	Adult (%)
Favorable	Hyperdiploid (mn 51+) +4, +10, +17 or DNA Index > 1.16	25	9
	t(12;21)	25	3
Unfavorable	t(9;22)	4	25
	11q23 (Infants ~90%)	5	8
	Hypodiploid (mn < 44) or DNA Index <0.80	1	1
	t(1;19)[a]	6	4

Abbreviations: mn = modal number of chromosomes.
[a]The outcome has improved with intensive chemotherapy.

6.5.6 Structural Changes in ALL

6.5.6.1 t(12;21)(p13.3;q22)

The most frequent cytogenetic lesion found in 25% of children with B-lineage ALL is the cryptic t(12;21) which is not observed by conventional cytogenetics banding methods, but easily detected by FISH or

RT-PCR methods. The t(12;21)(p13.3;q22) results in the fusion of *ETV6* to *AML1* (renamed *RUNX1* and *CBFA2*), the most common fusion partner of *ETV6* [79–81]. However, *ETV6-CBFA2* is rarely observed in infants with ALL, in pediatric patients with hyperdiploid leukemic cells, or in pediatric patients with T-cell ALL. This genetic abnormality is observed mainly in children 3–5 years of age and occurs in only 1.5–4.4% of adult patients with ALL.

Patients with the *ETV6-CBFA2* fusion have an excellent outcome [79, 81]. There is controversy whether ultimate event-free survival (EFS) is actually superior to that of other patients with B-precursor ALL, or whether the EFS is similar but the timing of relapse is significantly later for patients with the *ETV6-CBFA2* fusion compared to other patients with B-precursor ALL [82–83]. Recent evidence indicates that in a few cases the *ETV6-CBFA2* rearrangement may be acquired in utero, but ALL does not develop until years later. Thus, an additional cooperating mutation(s) may be required for leukemogenesis [84].

ETV6 is rearranged in half of the patients with 12p13 translocations and either lymphoid or myeloid leukemia [85]. *ETV6* has multiple fusion partners: ~40 chromosome bands are involved in translocations with *ETV6*, and ~20 partner genes have been cloned. Likewise, *CBFA2* is also involved resulting in >40 different chromosomal aberrations associated with hematologic disorders. Figure 6.8 illustrates the detection of the TEL/AML1 gene fusion as a result of t(12;21).

6.5.6.2 CBFA2 (AML1/RUNX1) Amplification

In addition to detecting the t(12;21) and determining variation patterns in the signals of both genes, FISH using the *ETV6-CBFA2* probe can confirm *CBFA2* amplification, which occurs in approximately 1–2% of older pediatric patients or adolescents with B-lineage and a low leukocyte count, t(12;21)-negative ALL [86–87]. Patients with amplification of *CBFA2* have been associated with an unfavorable outcome in a small number of patients [88]. Future international collaborations and larger collections of such cases will enable us to refine the clinical and survival associations.

The intrachromosomal amplification of chromosome 21 includes *CBFA2* gene (iAMP21) and are characterized by complex genomic alterations with a common region of amplification (CRA) and a common region of deletion (CRD) in 100% and 70% of iAMP patients, respectively [89].

6.5.6.3 11q23/MLL Gene Rearrangement and t(4;11) in ALL

The q23 region of chromosome 11 is a relatively common site of structural rearrangements in pediatric patients with hematologic neoplasms. In infants with ALL, the incidence of 11q23 abnormalities ranges from 70 to 90%, whereas in children with ALL is from 4.5 to 5.7% [90–91]. Children who have ALL with 11q23 abnormalities are usually young and have high leukocyte counts, organomegaly, and central nervous system (CNS) involvement. The leukemic cells have an early pre-B immunophenotype, CD10 –negative,

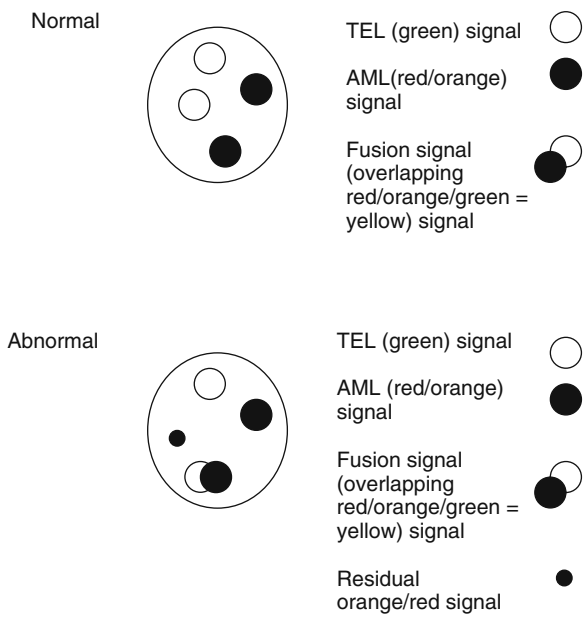


Fig. 6.8 Detection of the TEL/AML1 gene fusion that occurs as a result of a t(12;21)(p13;q22) using the Vysis LSI TEL/AML ES Dual Color Translocation Probe. In a normal interphase nucleus lacking the TEL/AML1 fusion gene, two green (TEL) and two orange/red (AML1) signals can be seen. In an abnormal cell containing the TEL/AML1 fusion, the expected signal pattern is one green (native TEL), one large orange/red (native AML1), one smaller orange/red signal (residual AML1), and one fused orange/red/green (yellow) signal

with myeloid-related antigens. ALL with 11q23 abnormalities, except deletions or inversions, is associated with a poor prognosis [92]. In a large international collaborative study, infants with ALL and 11q23 fared substantially worse than patients with 11q23 who were 1 year or older [93]. Furthermore, a recent study on infants with ALL also showed that the individual *MLL* rearrangements (69% of cases) t(4;11) (30%), t(11;19) (17%), t(9;11) (8%) and other 11q23 (13%) did not have different effects on prognosis [94].

Some *MLL* gene rearrangements can not be detected by conventional cytogenetic methods. The commercially available dual-color *MLL* probe allows FISH evaluation of derivatives of a translocation involving *MLL* in metaphase chromosomes and the splitting of signals in interphase nuclei (Fig. 6.9) [95]. In rare instances, FISH based on this probe detects not only the reciprocal translocation but also a deletion of at least 190 kb from the 3' region of *MLL* gene [96].

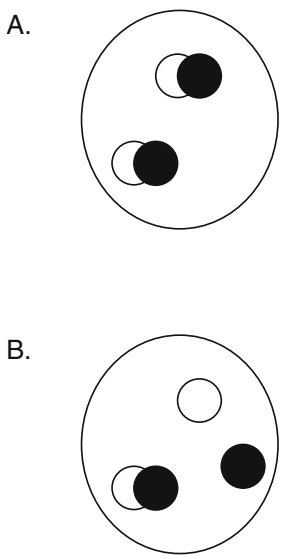


Fig. 6.9 Schematic representation of the Vysis LSI MLL Dual Color, Break Apart Rearrangement Probe for the detection of 11q23 structural chromosomal abnormalities. This probe consists of a centromeric (proximal) portion labeled in green and a telomeric (distal) portion labeled in orange/red. The signal pattern observed in a cell lacking the MLL rearrangement is expected to show a two orange/red/green (yellow) fusion signal pattern. In a cell possessing a MLL translocation, the expected pattern is one orange/red/green (yellow) fusion signal, one orange/red signal, and one green signal. (**a**) Normal cell with no MLL rearrangement, showing two orange/red/green (yellow) fusion signals (*top*). (**b**) Abnormal cell with a MLL rearrangement, showing one orange/red, one green and one orange/red/green (yellow) fusion signal (*bottom*)

About 80 alternative partner chromosome sites have been identified (some only in a small number of patients), and about 50 novel genes involved in the translocations have been cloned [97–98]. Like the t(4;11)(q21;q23), other recurrent 11q23 translocations, such as t(9;11)(p22;q23), t(6;11)(q27;q23), t(10;11)(p variable;q23), and t(11;19)(q23;p13.1), are typically found in acute myelomonocytic and monocytic leukemias. However, the t(9;11)(p22;q23) and t(10;11) can also be found in rare cases of ALL. Figure 6.10 shows an ideogram (Fig. 6.10a) and a representative karyogram (Fig. 6.10b) with the 4;11 translocation (reprinted with permission from Experimental and Molecular Pathology).

The gene on 11q23 that is most often rearranged in acute leukemias is *MLL* (myeloid/lymphoid leukemia or mixed lineage leukemia; also called *ALL1*, *HRX*, and *HTRX*) [99–100]. *MLL* is a homolog of the Drosophila *trithorax* gene, whose function is required for proper expression of homeotic genes and regulation of chromatin structure. Nearly all 11q23 translocations produce a fusion protein possessing the NH_2-terminus of MLL fused to the COOH-terminus of the fusion partner [101].

Studies of gene expression profiles in leukemic cells have shown the receptor tyrosine kinase FLT3 to be highly expressed in *MLL*-rearranged ALL as compared with other leukemias [102]. Further assessment showed that approximately 20% of *MLL*-rearranged ALL samples has activating mutations of FLT3 in the activation loop region [103]. Thus, the presence of FLT3 mutations in *MLL*-rearranged ALL supports activation of FLT3 or other kinases as cooperating events in this disease. Clinical trials designed to assess the efficacy of FLT3 inhibitors in *MLL*-rearranged ALL are in development [104].

6.5.6.4 T(1;19)(q23;p13.3)

In childhood ALL, the t(1;19) is the most frequent translocation detected by conventional cytogenetic methods. This translocation, with a primarily postnatal origin, is found in 6% of all cases of childhood ALL and in approximately 25% of cases of pre-B cytoplasmic immunoglobulin–positive (cIg^+) ALL [105–106]. It occurs in either a balanced form (25% of cases) or an unbalanced form (75% of cases) as der(19)t(1;19)(q23;p13.3). The t(1;19) was initially

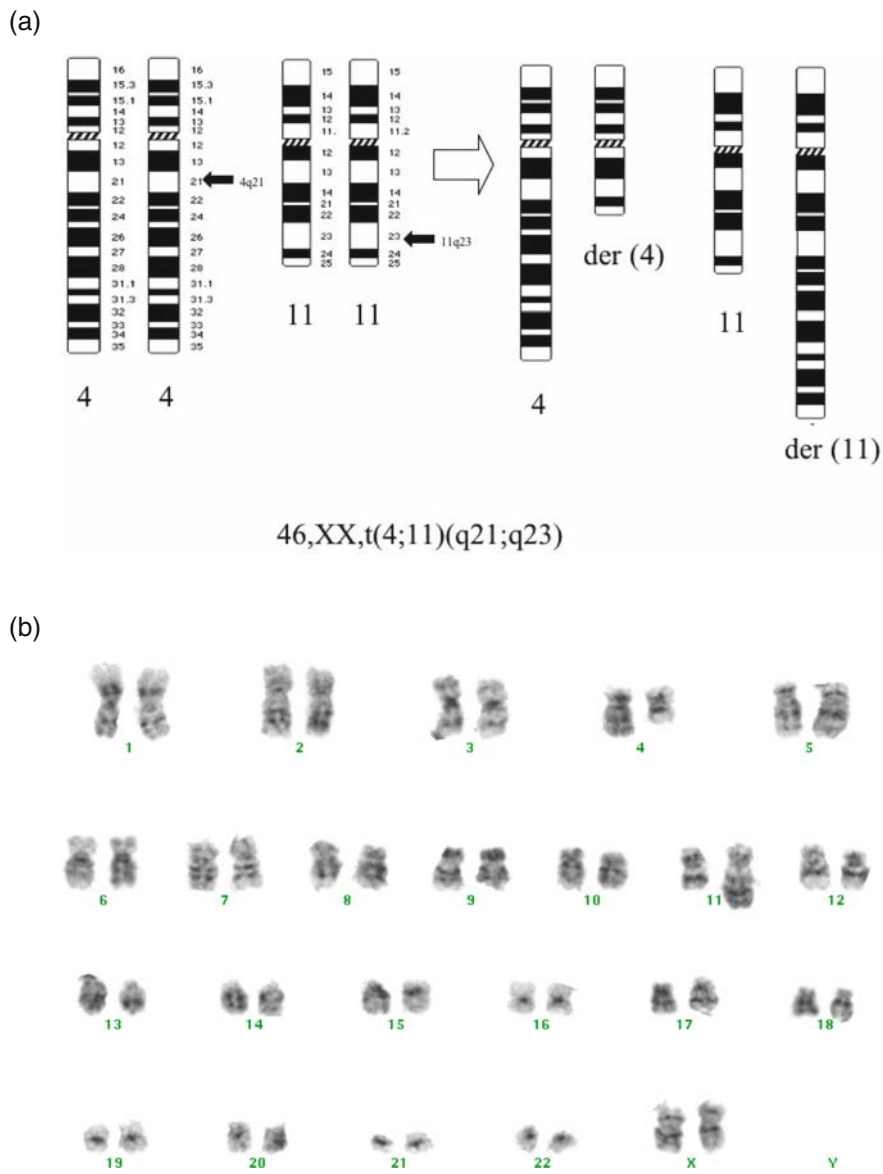


Fig. 6.10 (**a**) is an ideogram showing the breakpoints of the 4;11 translocation; (**b**) shows a representative karyogram with a 4;11 translocation. Reprinted from Hayne et al. [169], with permission from Experimental and Molecular Pathology

associated with inferior outcome in the context of antimetabolite-based therapy but subsequent studies have shown that the poorer prognosis can be largely overcome by more intensive chemotherapy [107]. The t(1;19) leads to the fusion of *TCF3* (*E2A)*, which is on chromosome 19 and encodes a helix-loop-helix (HLH) protein, with *PBX1*, a homeobox-containing gene on chromosome 1 [108–109]. The resulting hybrid gene, *TCF3-PBX1*, is a potent oncogene and can be detected by RT-PCR and/or FISH [110–112]. In about 5–10% the t(1;19) detected by conventional cytogenetics does not involve *TCF3* or *PBX1* but involves other genes [113–115].

6.5.6.5 t(17;19)(q22;p13.3) and inv(19)(p13.3q13.4)

Other rare, nonrandom chromosomal translocations affecting 19p13.3 also involve the *TCF3* gene. The t(17;19)(q22;p13.3) is found in approximately 1% of patients with B-lineage leukemia, most of whom do not respond to therapy [116]. The majority of t(17;19) generate a fusion gene consisting of *TCF3* and the hepatic leukemia factor gene (*HLF*) on chromosome 17 [117]. In a few cases in which the t(17;19)(q22;p13.3) is present, neither *TCF3* nor *HLF* rearrangements have been noted. Thus, this translocation, like the t(1;19),

may be heterogeneous at the molecular level [118]. In addition, a rare cryptic inversion of chromosome 19, inv(19)(p13.3q13.4), fuses *TCF3* to the *FB1* gene on 19q13.4 [119].

6.5.7 Numerical Chromosomal Abnormalities in ALL

ALL can be classified into subtypes based on the modal number (MN) of chromosomes. Recognition of ploidy as a distinctive cytogenetic feature in ALL has improved the ability to predict clinical outcome and devise risk-specific therapy.

6.5.7.1 Near-Tetraploidy and Near-Triploidy in ALL

Near-tetraploidy (MN range, ≥82) occurs in less than 1% of reported cases of childhood ALL. Near-triploidy (MN range, 69–81) is extremely rare (0.3%) in childhood ALL. A strong association of near-triploidy and near-tetraploidy and the cryptic t(12;21) has been noted [120].

6.5.7.2 Hyperdiploidy (>50 Chromosomes)

High-hyperdiploidy (with a MN range of 51–68, or DNA index >1.16) occurs in 25% of pediatric ALL. Favorable presenting features commonly associated with this subgroup include an early pre-B immunophenotype, low leukocyte counts, and age between 2 and 10 years. The patients whose blast cells have trisomy of chromosomes 4, 10, and 17 among the extra chromosomes have a superior prognosis [121–122] and are presently used for favorable low-risk group stratification. Sometimes only normal metaphase chromosomes are found by conventional cytogenetics and flow cytometry indicates a higher-than-normal DNA index (i.e., hyperdiploidy). This discrepancy suggests that dividing hyperdiploid blast cells have a short life-span which may be explained by stringent survival requirements and a marked propensity to undergo apoptosis of these blasts [123].

Recent studies have shown that hyperdiploidy resulting from nondisjunction of chromosomes in childhood B-cell precursor ALL occurs early during leukemogenesis and probably arises prenatally, although ALL was not diagnosed clinically until 2–3 years after birth [124]. This result extends earlier observations on the origins of specific chromosomal translocations in children with ALL suggesting that a genetic lesion is necessary, but not sufficient, in the leukemogenic process, and that additional genetic or epigenetic aberrations are needed for overt leukemia [125].

Recent studies have shown a distinct expression signature for each of the known genetic subtypes of childhood ALL using the Affymetrix microarray system [126–127]. These studies showed the majority of the class-discriminating genes for high hyperdiploid ALL were on chromosomes X and 21, which are tri- or tetrasomic more often. Also, the gene dosage effect for trisomic chromosomes had an average increase of 2-fold. Such systems are currently being validated by international collaborations and may have an impact on the future classification of leukemias.

6.5.7.3 Hyperdiploidy (47–50 Chromosomes)

Low-hyperdiploidy, defined as 47–50 chromosomes, occurs in 10–5% of cases of childhood ALL and was initially recognized because it confers a prognosis that is intermediate to those assigned by other ploidy groups. Gains of almost every chromosome have been observed in leukemic cells with this ploidy designation. The analysis of 86 cases revealed that +21 was the most common numeric abnormality (39%); less common were +X (21%), +8 (9%), and +10 (8%) [128]. The chromosomal arms most often affected by structural abnormalities were 1q (15%), 6q (14%), 12p (21%), and 19p (10%). Non-Down patients with trisomy 21 have a good prognosis, which may account for a strong association between +21 and the cryptic t(12;21)(p13.3;q22) [129].

6.5.7.4 Hypodiploidy and Near-Haploidy

Hypodiploidy (≤45 chromosomes), representing a heterogeneous subgroup of patients, is found in ~8% of cases of childhood ALL. Hypodiploidy has been further divided as near-haploid (23–29 chromosomes),

low hypodiploidy (33–39 chromosomes) and high hypodiploidy (42–45 chromosomes) [130]. There is a significant trend for progressively worse outcome with decreasing chromosome number; near haploidy have the worst outcome.

Most hypodiploid cases (80%) have an MN of 45, and the chromosomal deficiency arises from an unbalanced translocation, the loss of a whole chromosome (predominantly –X), or the formation of dicentric chromosomes [131]. Approximately 50% ALL cases with high hypodiploidy contain the *ETV6-CBFA2* fusion gene, which may explain in part its association with a more favorable outcome when compared to cases with less than 44 chromosomes [131].

Low hypodiploidy is extremely rare (approximately 0.8% of patients with ALL) and is associated with poor prognosis [130, 132, 131] (see Table 6.1). The overall incidence of near-haploidy is low, about 0.5% of all ALL cases and is associated with a poor prognosis (median survival, 10 months from the time of diagnosis), despite the presence of relatively favorable presenting features [132, 131]. The near haploid and low hypodiploid groups are also characterized by the presence of a doubled hyperdiploid population and if undetected by conventional cytogenetics may be misinterpreted as a hyperdiploid clone. In these rare cases, DNA index analysis may aid proper risk assignment [130–131].

6.5.8 Selected Recurrent Cytogenetic Abnormalities in Myelodysplastic Syndrome (MDS)

Myelodysplastic syndrome (MDS) is a heterogeneous group of neoplastic disorders arising from clonal hematopoietic progenitor cells whose degree of differentiation varies [133–134]. MDS include primary idiopathic MDS and secondary or therapy-related MDS (t-MDS) that develop after prior exposure to chemotherapy or radiation. Primary MDS arises largely in older individuals, and the incidence increases with age. The deaths of patients with MDS usually result from cytopenia and transformation to acute leukemia which occurs in 10–15% of cases. Unlike MDS in adults, with the exception of refractory anemia (RA) and MDS with Down syndrome, MDS in children runs an aggressive clinical course with a short survival period and a higher rate of progression to acute myeloid leukemia (AML). Cytogenetic analysis, in combination with evaluation of clinical features, provides information about the predicted median survival estimate and the likelihood of progression to AML [135]. An abnormal clone is found in 50–60% of patients at the time of MDS diagnosis; additional chromosome abnormalities may appear during the course of the disease and are associated with clinical progression and early death [135, 136]. These abnormalities may appear alone or in complex rearrangements, and most are distinct from abnormalities seen in patients with AML. In contrast, cytogenetic abnormalities are observed in as many as 90% of cases with t-MDS [137].

6.5.8.1 Cytogenetic Features and Classification Criteria

An international prognostic scoring system (IPSS) for primary MDS was developed after multivariate analysis of 816 patients with primary MDS who primarily received supportive care [138]. The most significant independent variables identified for determining survival and AML evolution were the percentage of marrow blast cells, number of cytopenias, and subgroups based on particular cytogenetic features. Patients with a del(5q), a del(20q), or a –Y and patients with a normal marrow karyotype had a relatively good prognosis; approximately 70% of adult patients with MDS meet this criteria. The 16% of patients with complex abnormalities (i.e., at least three aberrations) or chromosome 7 anomalies (i.e., –7 or del(7q)) had a relatively poor prognosis. The remaining patients (14%) with other abnormalities had an intermediate prognosis. The median length of survival after diagnosis was 5.7 years for patients with a good prognosis, 1.2–3.5 years for those with an intermediate prognosis, and 4.0 months for those with a poor prognosis [138].

In several series, the survival times correlated well with the prognostic subgroups for adult patients with MDS; the strong correlation confirmed the validity of the IPSS, which was partly based on cytogenetic features [139, 135]. However, other investigators did not show the IPSS to be superior to existing prognostic systems. In the retrospective analysis of children by Sasaki et al. (141), the cytogenetic pattern was the only prognostic variable in the IPSS that was found useful

for predicting outcome of children with MDS. The 4-year survival probability was 83.8% for children with a good prognosis, 48.9% for those with an intermediate prognosis, and 6.5% for those with a poor prognosis [140].

Recently, the WHO classification system has established 8 histopathologic variants [refractory anemia (RA), RA with ringed sideroblasts, RA with multilineage dysplasia, RA with multilineage dysplasia and ringed sideroblasts, RA with excess blasts: Type 1 (5–9% blasts in the bone marrow and < 5% blasts in the blood), RA with excess blasts: Type 2 (10–19% blasts in the bone marrow and 5–19% blasts in the blood), MDS with isolated del(5q), and MDS unclassified] [141].

Classification criteria for childhood MDS have been adapted from classification systems tailored for MDS in adults [142]. Most pediatric series have included patients with MDS and predisposing constitutional disorders, patients with a mild form of the disease (RA), and patients with more aggressive forms juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia (JMML), refractory anemia with excess blast cells (RAEB), and refractory anemia with excess blast cells in transformation (RAEBT). Two other pediatric conditions were included in the recent WHO classification of myelodysplastic/myeloproliferative disorder (MDS/MPD) [42]. One type is transient myeloproliferative disorder (TMD) or transient abnormal myelopoiesis (TAM), which is seen in neonates with Down syndrome. The other type is characterized by rare but recurrent cytogenetic abnormalities involving 8p11 and 5q31–33 (aberrations of tyrosine kinase genes). In few pediatric and adolescent patients with the diagnosis of MDS, the bone marrow at initial examination have cytogenetic features typical of leukemic cells in patients with primary AML {e.g., t(8;21), inv(16), and t(9;11)}. These patients have better responses to AML-directed therapy and they should be treated as AML regardless of the blast count.

It is recognized that MDS is notable for a predominance of chromosomal deletions, whereas AML is characterized by balanced translocations. The monosomy 5 (–5) or del(5q) has a variable prognosis according the subtype of MDS and the presence or absence of other chromosomal abnormalities. Two critical minimal regions of deletion on 5q are at q31 and q33 [143]. Likewise, two critical minimal regions of deletion on 7q are at q22 or q32–33 [144]. Other critical regions have been identified at 17p [145] and at 20q12 [146]. The large deletions detectable by conventional cytogenetics are likely due to late developments in the pathogenesis of MDS. Despite numerous multidisciplinary studies of these commonly deleted regions, the molecular mechanisms of transformation and the critical genes involved remain elusive.

6.5.8.2 Chromosome 5 Abnormality

A del(5q) is present in 15–25% of adult patients with primary MDS and in as many as 50% of adult patients with t-MDS, especially those patients previously exposed to alkylating agents. The del(5q) may be found as a sole abnormality or as part of a complex karyotype. In adults with RA, a del(5q) as the sole abnormality is the hallmark of the 5q– syndrome usually observed in older female patients with low blast counts, normal or elevated platelet count, who has an indolent course and long survival [147–148]. Monosomy 5 has been considered less likely to be a primary karyotypic abnormality and is not of pathogenic significance in MDS. In pediatric patients with MDS, a –5/del(5q) is rarely seen and they do not have the same clinical features at initial examination as do adults [149].

Recently, studies have shown that lenalidomide, a thalidomide analogue, has a significant therapeutic benefit in patients with MDS who would otherwise not benefit from growth-factor therapy; the benefits of lenalidomide were noted particularly in patients with RA with isolated erythroid abnormalities, MDS with isolated del(5)(q31.1), and patients with a low or more favorable IPSS score [150–151]. Based on these findings, lenalidomide was recently approved by FDA to treat patients with a 5q deletion (December 2005).

6.5.8.3 Chromosome 7 Abnormality

A –7 or del(7q) are associated with primary MDS and AML and with t-MDS and t-AML that occurs in children and adults exposed to mutagenic agents or treated earlier with alkylating agents. Abnormalities of chromosome 7 are the most frequent chromosomal changes in malignant cells of pediatric patients with MDS found in 40–50% of the cases [142, 149]. Monosomy 7 is common in younger children with JMML or constitutional disorders, such as Fanconi anemia, congenital neutropenia, or neurofibromatosis,

all of which increase the risk for a malignant myeloid disorder [152]. Children with –7 and MDS have an outcome similar to that of similar-aged patients with MDS without monosomy 7. However, in pediatric patients with –7 and AML (when compared to those without –7) have a lower response rate to chemotherapy and a higher relapse rate [153].

6.5.8.4 Therapy-Related MDS (t-MDS)

The development of t-MDS or t-AML is one of the most serious late consequences of patients with cytopenia 3–7 years after receiving alkylating agents and/or radiotherapy to treat a primary cancer. As mentioned above, the chromosomal abnormalities most frequently observed in t-MDS include –5/del(5q) and/or –7/del(7q), and complex karyotypes with frequent deletion of 12p, 17p, and 20q; the patients have a dismal outcome [154]. Patients treated with topoisomerase II inhibitors also are at increased risk of developing secondary myeloid malignancies, but with a fewer cases developing t-MDS as the majority progress to AML. Most of these latter cases have translocations involving 11q23 deregulating the *MLL* gene or, less often, the *CBFA2* gene at 21q22 [155–156].

In adult hematology, cytogenetics has been important in MDS as well. As in AML, cytogenetics in MDS carry prognostic importance, and certain abnormalities are known to carry a particularly grim prognosis. Treatment related MDS, or t-MDS, is a side effect of cytotoxic chemotherapy given for other tumors. Most typically, aneuploidies such as –5, –7 and +8 arise 3–4 years after treatment with an alkylating agent. In contrast, balanced translocations, especially of 11q23 and also of 3q26 and 21q22, are seen about 2–3 years after treatment with an agent active against topoisomerase II, such as the epipodophyllotoxins or anthracyclines. All t-MDS carries a poor prognosis, and it is unclear if the chromosomal abnormalities mentioned above are the cause of this or simply reflect the underlying aggressive disease.

Notwithstanding the above, there is one bright spot in the cytogenetics of MDS, which has recently gotten slightly brighter still. The so-called "5q- syndrome" consists of a triad of normal to high peripheral blood platelet numbers, a high mean corpuscular volume and small unilobular megakaryocytes on bone marrow examination in addition to an isolated 5q- karyotype [157]. The deleted area may span the chromosomal region from 5q13 to 5q33, but almost always included 5q31.1. Although the diagnosis of the 5q- syndrome requires 5q- to be the only chromosomal abnormality, the presence of 5q- with or without other abnormalities now carries therapeutic importance in that the immunomodulating agent lenalidomide is now approved for treating transfusion dependent patients with MDS with low or intermediate-1 International Prognostic Scoring system (IPSS) scores and with 5q- with or without other abnormalities. This narrow indication is based on a multi-institutional study [158] that showed a reduced transfusion requirement in 112/148 such patients (76%), with transfusion independence being achieved in 99 patients (67%).

Finally, the IPSS itself is based partly on the importance of cytogenetics in MDS. The IPSS assigns points to a patient's MDS based on peripheral blood cytopenias, marrow blasts and cytogenetics. The sum of the points indicates a score associated with a better or worse prognosis [138]. In this system, good risk cytogenetics include normal, -Y, 5q- and 20q-. Poor risk includes complex cytogenetics ($\geq$ 3 abnormalities), and abnormalities of chromosome 7, whether or not they are isolated. Anything else is intermediate risk. Although the IPSS has been validated on a separate data set from that upon which it was built, it has not been prospectively validated as of yet, and its usefulness in addition to or instead of the WHO classification, for either prognosis or therapeutic decision making, is still not formally proven.

6.5.9 Myeloproliferative Diseases

The WHO classification of myeloproliferative diseases (MPD) includes CML, polycythemia vera (PV), essential thrombocythemia (ET), chronic idiopathic myelofibrosis (CIMF) and the related disorders: chronic eosinophilic leukemia (CEL) and idiopathic hypereosinophilic syndrome (HES) [141]. CML has been discussed in a prior section. Other MPDs are discussed below.

6.5.9.1 MPDs Other than CML

Most cytogenetic studies of patients with PV are normal, with 20–30% of cases having a 20q–, +8 or +9.

Patients with ET also have normal cytogenetic studies. The clonal cytogenetic findings seen in 30–40% patients with CIMF include 13q–, 20q– and 1q+ [159].

At initial examination, a small number of patients, mostly adults, have clinical and hematologic features that suggest the presence of CML, but the Philadelphia (Ph) chromosome is absent. Therefore, the disease is classified as atypical CML/MDS/MPD. A number of translocations or cryptic genetic lesions are found in a small proportion of these patients; it is important to identify the chromosomal alterations, because the formed fusion proteins are potential targets for selected signal transduction therapy [160–161].

Although many translocations, each with many variant partners, disrupting tyrosine kinase genes have been described in reports of single cases, there are two key breakpoint clusters at 5q33 (*PDGFRB*) and 8p11 (*FGFR1*) and an occasional disruption of 4q12 (*PDGFRA*). Rearrangements of the *PDGFRB* transmembrane tyrosine kinase receptor gene may respond well to treatment with imatinib mesylate (Gleevec; Novartis, Basel, Switzerland) [161]. The patients with the 8p11 syndrome or EMS (8p11 myeloproliferative syndrome) have chromosomal abnormalities affecting the p11–12 region of chromosome 8, involving the FGFR1 tyrosine kinase gene [162]. Specific therapy has not yet been identified in patients with the 8p11 syndrome; apparently, imatinib mesylate is inactive against *FGFR1* and therefore may not benefit these patients [163]. The most recently recognized *FIP1L1-PDGFRA* fusion gene in cases of hypereosinophilic syndrome encodes an activated tyrosine kinase that is inhibited by imatinib [164–165]. As in CML, mutations in the *FIP1L1-PDGFRA* kinase domain is known to give rise to resistance to imatinib mesylate and other inhibitors appear to be effective to treat these patients [166].

The recently discovered V617F mutation of tyrosine kinase JAK2 (*JAK2*-V617F), specific to MPD except CML, is present in most patients with PV and in more than half of patients suffering from IMF or ET. Furthermore, this mutation has been identified and in other subsets of patients suffering from AML, other MPDs and MDSs [167–168]. The consequence of this mutation on normal hematopoiesis and the involvement in such a diversity of diseases is being evaluated presently with the prospect of targeted therapies to inhibit the mutation.

Therefore, the success seen in the treatment of *BCR-ABL*$^+$ CML with kinase inhibitors may be extended to patients with translocations that disrupt genes encoding other tyrosine kinases. Although these translocations/genetic lesions are found in a small proportion of patients their identification is important because the formed fusion proteins are potential targets for selected signal transduction therapy. Numerous additional genetic lesions have been recognized in MPD and MDS but the molecular pathogenesis of diseases are beyond the scope of this chapter.

6.6 Conclusion

Cancer cytogenetics has become established as a routine component in the management of patients with hematopoietic malignancies. The detection of specific recurring chromosomal abnormalities is important not only for diagnosis, but also for prognosis and treatment. After the initial diagnosis, usually via G-banding, continuous monitoring of the patient through treatment, remission, relapse and bone marrow transplant is often achieved using a combination of conventional and molecular techniques such as FISH and PCR, in addition to conventional cytogenetics

The historical delineation of the Philadelphia translocation is important not only because it was the first consistent recurring chromosomal abnormality found in a cancer subtype, but also because it serves as a paradigm for the later utilization of cytogenetic information in hematology and oncology. Past experience in the cytogenetic study of leukemias has led to important clinical correlations and insights. For example, when an inversion of chromosome 16 in AML M4 subtype is found, the clinician can reasonably conclude that the prognosis will most likely be good whereas when a rearrangement is found involving the 11q23 breakpoint, the associated prognosis will most likely be poor, although this is more controversial. The detection of cytogenetic rearrangements and accurate characterization of breakpoints in these abnormal clones is thus used to determine subsequent therapeutic options and to predict success in treatment outcome. In addition, the knowledge gained through cytogenetic studies of the structural chromosomal abnormalities may eventually lead to the cloning of additional genes involved in the development and progression of cancer

and may one day shed light on the molecular mechanisms of leukemogenesis in the particular hematopoietic malignancy. Only with a thorough understanding can therapeutic agents be rationally designed so that the growth of malignant cells can be specifically inhibited. Despite certain predictions to the contrary, the advent of molecular biology did not diminish the importance of conventional cytogenetics. Instead, the increased availability of molecular probes has continued to propel the field of cytogenetics into the twenty-first century with powerful adjunct techniques such as FISH and FISH-based techniques such as CGH and SKY. Also, concurrent with these cytogenetic advances, other factors continue to converge to offer significant advances in focused diagnostics and comprehensive care for patients with hematologic malignancies [169]. As more is known about molecular and cytogenetic abnormalities in hematopoietic malignancy, close collaboration between cytogeneticists, specialists in immunophenotyping, molecular pathologists and treating clinicians will be necessary in order to select optimal therapeutic and follow-up regimens for our patients. This close collaboration in the use of advanced diagnostic and prognostic methods has already yielded important insights into optimal treatment strategies for several hematologic malignancies, and has led to rationally designed therapeutics as important investigational agents or as standards of care. We anticipate improved treatment outcomes as this field is advanced and the knowledge gained is further applied to patient care.

Acknowledgments The authors thank Dr. Roger Mark for reviewing the manuscript; Dr. Fernando Chaves and Dr. Yvonne Mark for assisting with the preparation of the figures. We thank Dr. Nicole Lamanna for helpful suggestions and discussion. Contributions of our laboratories for illustrative figures are acknowledged. The supports of Dr. Hans Kaiser, Ms. Turid Knutsen and Dr. JacquelineWhang-Peng are also acknowledged. This work was partly supported by the intramural research programs of the National Cancer Institute and the National Human Genome Research Institute. The opinions expressed herein are those of the authors and do not necessarily reflect official policy of the National Institutes of Health or of any other component of the government of the United States of America.

References

1. Nowell PC, Hungerford DA. A minute chromosome in human chronic myelocytic leukemia (CML). Science 132: 1497, 1960
2. Rowley JD. A new consistent chromosomal abnormality in chronic myelogenous leukemia identified by quinacrine fluorescence and Giemsa staining. Nature 234: 290–293, 1973
3. Tjio JH, Whang-Peng J. Chromosomal preparation of bone marrow cells without prior in vitro culture or in vivo colchicine administration. Stain Technol 37: 17, 1962
4. Mark HFL: Bone marrow cytogenetics and hematologic malignancies. In the Cytogenetic Symposia, Kaplan BJ, Dale KS, Eds. Association of Cytogenetic Technologists, Burbank, CA, 1994a
5. Mark HFL: Cytogenetic aberrations in hematologic malignancies. In the Cytogenetic Symposia, Second Edition. Dunn B, Mouchrani P and Keagle M, Eds. Association of Genetic Technologists, Burbank, CA, 2005
6. Moorhead PS, Nowell PC, Mellman WJ, et al. Chromosome preparations of leukocytes cultured from human peripheral blood. Exp Cell Res 20: 613–616, 1960
7. Rainbow Scientific, Inc., http://www.rainbowscientific.com
8. Tecan-US online product information: http://www.tecan-us.com
9. Thermotron online product information: http://www.thermotron.com
10. Caspersson T, Zech L, Johansson C, Modest EJ. Identification of human chromosomes by DNA-binding fluorescent agents. Chromosoma 30: 215–227, 1970
11. Blancato JK, Haddad BR: Fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH): Principles and methodology. In Medical Cytogenetics, Mark HFL, Ed. Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 141–164, 2000
12. Chang S, Mark HFL. Emerging molecular cytogenetic technologies. Cytobios 90: 7–22, 1997
13. Mark HFL, Chow B. Localization of the gene encoding the secretin receptor on human chromosone 2q by fluorescent in situ hybridization and chromosome morphometry. Genomics 29: 817–818, 1995
14. Mark HFL, Gray Y, Khorsand J, Mark Y, Sikov W. A multimodal approach in diagnosing patients with hematopoietic disorders. Cancer Genet Cytogenet 109: 14–20, 1999a
15. Mark HFL, Gray Y, Sotomayor E, Joseph P: Trisomy 9 in secondary AML detected by fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH). Pathobiology 67: 111–114, 1999b
16. Mark HFL, Jenkins R, Miller W. Current applications of molecular cytogenetic technologies. Ann Clin Lab Sci 27: 47–56, 1996
17. Mark HFL, Mark Y, Sotomayor E, Sambandam S. A patient with myelodysplastic syndrome studied by GTG-banding and fluorescent in situ hybridization. Cytobios 94: 121–128, 1998a
18. Mark HFL, Pryzgoda J, Sikov W. Fluorescent in situ hybridization for identifying cytogenetic abnormalities in inadequate and suboptimal specimens. Pathobiology 66: 216–220, 1998b
19. Mark HFL, Rehan J, Mark S, Santoro K, Zolnierz K: FISH analysis of single-cell trisomies for determination of clonality. Cancer Genet Cytogenet 102: 1–5, 1998c
20. Mark HFL, Sikov W, Safran H, King TC, Griffith RC: Fluorescent in situ hybridization for assessing the proportion of cells with trisomy 4 in a patient with acute

non-lymphoblastic leukemia. Ann Clin Lab Sci 25: 330–335, 1995
21. Mark HFL, Sokolic RA, Mark Y: Acute Myeloid Leukemia (AML)—Cytogenetic detection of selected recurrent chromosomal abnormalities. Encyclopedia of Diagnostic Genomics and Proteomics. Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 17–24, 2005
22. Mark HFL: FISH analysis of biomarkers in cancer. Exp Mol Pathol 67: 131–134, 1999
23. Mark HFL: FISH as an adjunct to conventional cytogenetics: Analysis of metaphase and interphase cells. In Advances in Structural Biology, Malhotra S, Ed. Stamford, CT, Jai Press, Inc., 6: 1–39, 2000a
24. Mark HFL: Fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH): Applications for clinical cytogenetics laboratories. In Medical Cytogenetics, Mark HFL, Ed. Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 553–578, 2000b
25. Mark HFL: Fluorescent in situ hybridization as an adjunct to conventional cytogenetics. Ann Clin Lab Sci 24: 153–163, 1994b
26. Mark HFL. Medical Cytogenetics. Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 2000c
27. Miranda RN, Mark HFL, Medeiros LJ. Fluorescent in situ hybridization in routinely processed bone marrow aspirate clot and core biopsy sections. Am J Path 145: 1–6, 1994
28. Sokolic R, Ferguson W, Mark HFL. Discordant detection of monosomy 7 by GTG-banding and FISH in a patient with Shwachman-Diamond syndrome. Cancer Genet Cytogenet 115: 106–113, 1999
29. Young C, DiBenedetto J, Glasser L, Mark HFL. A Philadelphia chromosome positive CML patient with a unique translocation studied via GTG-banding and fluorescent in situ hybridization. Cancer Genet Cytogenet 89:157–162, 1996
30. Vysis Inc. online product information: http://www.vysis.com
31. Mitelman F. An International System for Human Cytogenetic Nomenclature (1995). S. Karger, Basel, 1995
32. Shaffer LG, Tommerup N. An International System for Human Cytogenetic Nomenclature (2005). S. Karger, Basel, 2005
33. Fourth International Workshop on Chromosomes in Leukemia. Cancer Genet Cytogenet 11: 249–360, 1984
34. Kaneko Y, Sakuri M: 15/17 translocation in acute promyelocytic leukemia. Lancet i: 961, 1977
35. Okada M, Miyazaki T, Kumota K: 15/17 translocation in acute promyelocytic leukemia. Lancet i: 961, 1977
36. Bennett JM, Catovsky D, Daniel MT, et al. Criteria for the diagnosis of acute leukemia of megakaryocytic lineage (M7). Ann Intern Med 103: 460–462, 1985a
37. Bennett JM, Catovsky D, Daniel MT, et al. Proposed revised criteria for the classification of acute myeloid leukemia: A report of the French-American-British Cooperative Group. Ann Intern Med 103: 626–629, 1985b
38. Heim S, Mitelman F: Cancer Cytogenetics, Second Edition. Wiley-Liss, New York, 1995
39. Harris NL, Jaffe ES, Diebold J, et al. The World Health Organization classification of neoplastic diseases of the hematopoietic and lymphoid tissues: Report of the Clinical Advisory Committee Meeting, Airlie House, Virginia, November 1997. Ann Oncol 10: 1419–1432, 1999a
40. Harris NH, Jaffe ES, Stein H, et al. A revised European-American classification of lymphoid neoplasms: A proposal from the International Lymphoma Study Group. Blood 84: 1361–1392, 1994
41. Harris NL, Jaffe ES, Diebold J, et al. World Health Organization classification of neoplastic diseases of the hematopoietic and lymphoid tissues: Report of the Clinical Advisory Committee Meeting, Airlie House, Virginia, November 1997. J Clin Oncol 17: 3835–3849, 1999b
42. Jaffe ES, Harris NL, Stein H, Vardiman JW. World Health Organization Classification of Tumours: Pathology and Genetics of Tumors of Haematopoietic and Lymphoid tissues. IARC Press, Lyon, 2001
43. Byrd JC, Dodge RK, Carroll A, et al: Patients with t(8;21)(q22;q22) and acute myeloid leukemia have superior failure-free and overall survival when repetitive cycles of high-dose cytarabine are administered. J Clin Oncol 17: 3767–3775, 1999
44. Ferrant A, Labopin M, Frassoni F, et al. On behalf of the Acute Leukemia Working Party of the European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT): Karyotype in acute myeloblastic leukemia: Prognostic significance for bone marrow transplantation in first remission: An European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation study. Blood 90: 2391–2938, 1997
45. Hiddemann W, Kern W, Schoch C, et al. Management of acute myeloid leukemia in elderly patients. J Clin Oncol 17: 3569–3576, 1999
46. Leith CP, Kopecky KJ, Godwin J, et al. Acute myeloid leukemia in the elderly: Assessment of multidrug resistance (MDR1) and cytogenetics distinguishes biologic subgroups with remarkably distinct responses to standard chemotherapy: A Southwest Oncology Group study. Blood 89: 3323–3329, 1997
47. Mrózek K, Heinonen K, Lawrence D, et al. Adult patients with de novo acute myelogenous leukemia and t(9;11)(p22;q23) have a superior outcome to patients with other translocations involving band 11q23: A Cancer and Leukemia Group B study. Blood 90: 4532–4538, 1997
48. List AF, Kopecky KJ, Willman CL, et al. Benefit of cyclosporine modulation of drug resistance in patients with poor-risk acute myeloid leukemia: A Southwest Oncology Study Group study. Blood 98: 3212–3220, 2001
49. Huntly BJP, Bench A, Green AR. Double jeopardy from a single translocation: Deletions of the derivative chromosome 9 in chronic myeloid leukemia. Blood 102: 1160–1168, 2003
50. Arico M, Valsecchi MG, Camitta B, et al. Outcome of treatment in children with Philadelphia chromosome-positive acute lymphoblastic leukemia. N Engl J Med 342: 998–1006, 2000
51. Heerema NA, Harbott J, Galimberti S, et al. Secondary cytogenetic aberrations in childhood Philadelphia chromosome positive acute lymphoblastic leukemia are nonrandom and may be associated with outcome. Leukemia 18: 693–702, 2004
52. Allan NC, Shepherd PCS, Richards SM. UK Medical Research Council randomised, multicentre trial of interferon-αn1 for chronic myeloid leukaemia: Improved survival irrespective of cytogenetic response. The Lancet 345(8962): 1392–1397, 1995

53. Sawyers CL. Chronic myeloid leukemia. N Engl J Med 340: 1330–1340, 1999
54. Lee SJ, Kuntz KM, Horowitz MM, et al. Unrelated donor bone marrow transplantation for chronic myelogenous leukemia: A decision analysis. Ann Intern Med 127: 1080–1088, 1997
55. van Rhee F Szydlo RM, Hermans J, et al. Long-term results after allogeneic bone marrow transplantation for chronic myelogenous leukemia in chronic phase: A report from the Chronic Leukemia Working Party of the European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant 20: 553–560, 1997
56. Gilleece MH, Dazzi F. Donor lymphocyte infusions for patients who relapse after allogeneic stem cell transplantation for chronic myeloid leukaemia. Leuk Lymphoma. 44: 23–28, 2003
57. Hughes TP, Kaeda J, Branford S, et al. Frequency of Major Molecular Responses to imatinib or interferon alfa plus cytarabine in newly diagnosed chronic myeloid leukemia. N Engl J Med 349: 1423–1432, 2003
58. Kantarjian H, Giles F, Wunderle L. Nilotinib in Imatinib-Resistant CML and Philadelphia Chromosome–Positive ALL. N Engl J Med 354: 2542–2551, 2006
59. Talpaz M, Shah NP, Kantarjian H, et al. Dasatinib in imatinib-resistant philadelphia chromosome–positive leukemias. N Engl J Med 354: 2531–2541, 2006
60. Perz, JP, Khorashad JS, Marin D, et al. Imatinib preceding allogeneic stem cell transplantation in chronic myeloid leukemia. Haematologica 91: 1145–1146, 2006
61. Hochhaus A, Hughes T. Clinical resistance to imatinib: mechanisms and implications. Hematol/Oncol Clin North Am 18: 641–656, 2004.
62. Marktel S, Marin D, Foot N, et al. Chronic Myeloid Leukemia in chronic phase responding to imatinib: The occurrence of additional cytogenetic abnormalities predicts disease progression. Haematologica 8: 206–267, 2003.
63. Cortes JE. Talpaz M, Giles F, et al. Prognostic significance of cytogenetic clonal evolution in patients with chronic myelogenous leukemia on imatinib mesylate therapy. Blood 101: 3794–3800, 2003
64. Fegan CD, Davis FE. Karyotypic and molecular abnormalities in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Clin Mol Pathol 49: M185–M191, 1996
65. Anastasi J, Le Beau MM, Vardiman JW, et al. Detection of trisomy 12 in chronic lymphocytic leukemia by fluorescence in situ hybridization to interphase cells: A simple and sensitive method. Blood 79: 1796–1801, 1992
66. Döhner H, Stilgenbauer S, Benner A, et al. Genomic Aberrations and Survival in Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia. N Engl J Med 343:1910–1916, 2000
67. Döhner H, Fischer K, Bentz M, et al. p53 gene deletion predicts for poor survival and non-response to therapy with purine analogs in chronic B-cell leukemias. Blood 85: 1580–1589, 1995
68. Byrd JC, Gribben JG, Peterson BL, Grever MR, Lozanski G, Lucas DM, Lampson B, Larson RA, Caligiuri MA, Heerema NA. Select high-risk genetic features predict earlier progression following chemoimmunotherapy with fludarabine and rituximab in chronic lymphocytic leukemia: Justification for risk-adapted therapy. Journal of Clinical Oncology 24(3):437–443, 2006.
69. Raimondi S: Cytogenetics of lymphoid neoplasias. In Medical Cytogenetics, Mark, HFL, Ed. Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 2000
70. Blum KA, Lozanski G, Byrd JC. Adult Burkitt leukemia and lymphoma. Blood: 104:3009–3020, 2004.
71. Magrath I, Adde M, Shad A, et al. Adults and children with small non-cleaved-cell lymphoma have a similar excellent outcome when treated with the same chemotherapy regimen. J Clin Oncol 14: 925–934, 1996.
72. Grimwade D, Walker H, Oliver F, et al. The importance of diagnostic cytogenetics on outcome in AML: Analysis of 1,612 patients entered into the MRC AML 10 trial. Blood 92: 2322–2333, 1998
73. Bloomfield CD, Lawrence D, Byrd JC, et al. Frequency of prolonged remission duration after high-dose cytarabine intensification in acute myeloid leukemia varies by cytogenetic subtype. Cancer Res 58: 4173–4179, 1998
74. O'Donnell MR, Appelbaum FR, Baer MR, et al. NCCN Clinical Practice Guidelines in Oncology Acute Myeloid LeukemiaV.1.2006. Accessed online at http://www.nccn.org on 12-3-06.
75. Estey E, Garcia-Manero G, Ferrajoli A. Use of all-*trans* retinoic acid plus arsenic trioxide as an alternative to chemotherapy in untreated acute promyelocytic leukemia. Blood 107: 3469–3473, 2006
76. Degos L Dombret H, Chomienne C, et al. All-trans-retinoic acid as a differentiating agent in the treatment of acute promyelocytic leukemia. Blood 85: 2643–2653, 1995
77. Douer D, Tallman M. Arsenic trioxide: New clinical experience with an old medication in hematologic malignancies. J Clin Oncol 23: 2396–2410, 2005
78. Licht JD, Chomienne C, Goy A, et al. Clinical and molecular characterization of a rare syndrome of acute promyelocytic leukemia associated with translocation (11; 17). Blood 85: 1083–1094, 1995
79. Golub TR, Barker GF, Bohlander SK, et al. Fusion of the TEL gene on 12p13 to the AML gene on 21q22 in acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 92: 4917–4921, 1995
80. Romana SP, Mauchauffe M, Le Coniat M, et al. The t(12;21) of acute lymphoblastic leukemia results in a TEL-AML gene fusion. Blood 85: 3662–3670, 1995
81. Shurtleff SA, Buijs A, Behm FG, et al. *TEL/AML1* fusion resulting from a cryptic t(12;21) is the most common genetic lesion in pediatric ALL and defines a subgroup of patients with an excellent prognosis. Leukemia 9: 1985–1989, 1995
82. Harbott J, Viehmann S, Borkhardt A, Henze G, Lampert F. Incidence of TEL-AML1 fusion gene analyzed consecutively in children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia in relapse. Blood 90: 4933–4937, 1997
83. Loh ML, Goldwasser MA, Silverman LB, et al. Prospective analysis of TEL/AML1-positive patients treated on Dana-Farber Cancer Institute Consortium Protocol 95-01. Blood 107: 4508–4513, 2006
84. Wiemels JL, Ford AM, Van Wering ER, Postma A, Greaves M. Protracted and variable latency of acute lymphoblastic leukemia after TEL-AML1 gene fusion in utero. Blood 94: 1057–1062, 1999
85. Bohlander SK. ETV6: A versatile player in leukemogenesis. Semin Cancer Biol 15: 162–174, 2005

86. Harewood L, Robinson H, Harris R, et al. Amplification of AML1 on a duplicated chromosome 21 in acute lymphoblastic leukemia: A study of 20 cases. Leukemia 17: 547–553, 2003
87. Soulier J, Trakhtenbrot L, Najfeld V, et al. Amplification of band q22 of chromosome 21, including AML1, in older children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia: An emerging molecular cytogenetic subgroup. Leukemia 17: 1679–1682, 2003
88. Robinson HM, Broadfield ZJ, Cheung KL, et al. Amplification of AML1 in acute lymphoblastic leukemia is associated with a poor outcome. Leukemia 17: 2249–2250, 2003
89. Strefford JC, van Delft FW, Robinson HM, et al. Complex genomic alterations and gene expression in acute lymphoblastic leukemia with intrachromosomal amplification of chromosome 21. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103: 8167–8172, 2006
90. Behm FG, Raimondi SC, Frestedt JL, et al. Rearrangement of the *MLL* gene confers a poor prognosis in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia, regardless of presenting age. Blood 87: 2870–2877, 1996
91. Chen C-S, Sorensen PHB, Domer PH, et al. Molecular rearrangements on chromosome 11q23 predominate in infant acute lymphoblastic leukemia and are associated with specific biological variables and poor outcome. Blood 81: 2386–2393, 1993
92. Raimondi SC, Frestedt JL, Pui CH, et al. Acute lymphoblastic leukemias with deletion of 11q23 or a novel inversion (11)(p13q23) lack MLL gene rearrangements and have favorable clinical features. Blood 86: 1881–1886, 1995
93. Pui CH, Gaynon PS, Boyett JM, et al. Outcome of treatment in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukaemia with rearrangements of the 11q23 chromosomal region. Lancet 359: 1909–1915, 2002
94. Hilden JM, Dinndorf PA, Meerbaum SO, et al. Analysis of prognostic factors of acute lymphoblastic leukemia in infants: Report on CCG 1953 from the Children's Oncology Group. Blood 108: 441–451, 2006
95. Mathew S, Behm F, Dalton J, Raimondi S. Comparison of cytogenetics, Southern blotting, and fluorescence in situ hybridization as methods for detecting MLL gene rearrangements in children with acute leukemia and with 11q23 abnormalities. Leukemia 13: 1713–1720, 1999
96. Kolomietz E, Al Maghrabi J, Brennan S, et al. Primary chromosomal rearrangements of leukemia are frequently accompanied by extensive submicroscopic deletions and may lead to altered prognosis. Blood 97: 3581–3588, 2001
97. Harrison CJ, Cuneo A, Clark R et al. Ten novel 11q23 chromosomal partner sites. European 11q23 Workshop participants. Leukemia 12: 811–822, 1998
98. Huret JL, Dessen P, Bernheim A. An atlas of chromosomes in hematological malignancies. Example: 11q23 and MLL partners. Leukemia 15: 987–989, 2001
99. Cimino G, Moir DT, Canaani O, et al. Cloning of ALL-1, the locus involved in leukemias with the t(4;11)(q21;q23), t(9;11)(p22;q23), and t(11;19)(q23;p13) chromosome translocations. Cancer Res 51: 6712–6714, 1991
100. Zieman-van der Poel S, McCabe NR, Gill HJ et al. Identification of a gene, *MLL*, that spans the breakpoint in 11q23 translocations associated with human leukemias. Proc Natl Acad Sci 88: 10735–10739, 1991
101. Ayton PM, Cleary ML. Molecular mechanisms of leukemogenesis mediated by MLL fusion proteins. Oncogene 20: 5695–5707, 2001
102. Armstrong SA, Staunton JE, Silverman LB, et al. MLL translocations specify a distinct gene expression profile that distinguishes a unique leukemia. Nat Genet: 30: 41–47, 2002
103. Armstrong SA, Kung AL, Mabon ME, et al. Inhibition of FLT3 in MLL. Validation of a therapeutic target identified by gene expression based classification. Cancer Cell 3: 173–183, 2003
104. Brown P, Levis M, Shurtleff S, et al. FLT3 inhibition selectively kills childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia cells with high levels of FLT3 expression. Blood 105: 812–820, 2005
105. Carroll AJ, Crist WM, Parmley RT, et al. Pre-B cell leukemia associated with chromosome translocation 1;19. Blood 63: 721–724, 1984
106. Wiemels JL, Leonard BC, Wang Y, et al. Site-specific translocation and evidence of postnatal origin of the t(1;19) E2A-PBX1 fusion in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 99: 15101–15106, 2002
107. Raimondi SC, Behm FG, Roberson PK, et al. Cytogenetics of pre-B-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia with emphasis on prognostic implications of the t(1;19). J Clin Oncol 8: 1380–1388, 1990
108. Kamps MP, Murre C, Sun XH, Baltimore D. A new homeobox gene contributes the DNA binding domain of the t(1;19) translocation protein in pre-B ALL. Cell 60: 547–555, 1990
109. Mellentin JD, Murre C, Donlon TA, et al. The gene for enhancer binding proteins E12/E47 lies at the t(1;19) breakpoint in acute leukemias. Science 246: 379–382, 1989
110. Privitera E, Luciano A, Ronchetti D, et al. Molecular variants of the 1;19 chromosomal translocation in pediatric acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL). Leukemia 8: 554–559, 1994
111. Shearer BM, Flynn HC, Knudson RA, Ketterling RP. Interphase FISH to detect PBX1/E2A fusion resulting from the der(19)t(1;19)(q23;p13.3) or t(1;19)(q23;p13.3) in paediatric patients with acute lymphoblastic leukaemia. Br J Haematol 129: 45–52, 2005
112. van der Burg M, Poulsen TS, Hunger SP, et al. Split-signal FISH for detection of chromosome aberrations in acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Leukemia 18: 895–908, 2004
113. Prima V, Gore L, Caires A, et al. Cloning and functional characterization of MEF2D/DAZAP1 and DAZAP1/MEF2D fusion proteins created by a variant t(1;19)(q23;p13.3) in acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Leukemia 19: 806–813, 2005
114. Privitera E, Kamps MP, Hayashi Y, et al. Different molecular consequences of the 1;19 chromosomal translocation in childhood B-cell precursor acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Blood 79: 1781–1788, 1992
115. Yuki Y, Imoto I, Imaizumi M, et al. Identification of a novel fusion gene in a pre-B acute lymphoblastic leukemia with t(1;19)(q23;p13). Cancer Sci 95: 503–507, 2004

116. Raimondi SC, Privitera E, Williams DL, et al. New recurring chromosomal translocations in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Blood 77: 2016–2022, 1991
117. Inaba T, Roberts WM, Shapiro LH, et al. Fusion of the leucine zipper gene HLF to the E2A gene in human acute B- lineage leukemia. Science 257: 531–534, 1992
118. Inukai T, Inaba T, Ikushima S, Look AT. The AD1 and AD2 transactivation domains of E2A are essential for the antiapoptotic activity of the chimeric oncoprotein E2A-HLF. Mol Cell Biol 18: 6035–6043, 1998
119. Brambillasca F, Mosna G, Colombo M, et al. Identification of a novel molecular partner of the E2A gene in childhood leukemia. Leukemia 13: 369–375, 1999
120. Raimondi SC, Zhou Y, Shurtleff SA, et al. Near-triploidy and near-tetraploidy in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia: Association with B-lineage blast cells carrying the ETV6-RUNX1 fusion, T-lineage immunophenotype, and favorable outcome. Cancer Genet Cytogenet 169: 50–57, 2006
121. Heerema NA, Sather HN, Sensel MG, et al. Prognostic impact of trisomies of chromosomes 10, 17, and 5 among children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia and high hyperdiploidy (> 50 chromosomes). J Clin Oncol 18: 1876–1887, 2000
122. Sutcliffe MJ, Shuster JJ, Sather HN, et al. High concordance from independent studies by the Children's Cancer Group (CCG) and Pediatric Oncology Group (POG) associating favorable prognosis with combined trisomies 4, 10, and 17 in children with NCI standard-risk B-precursor acute lymphoblastic leukemia: A Children's Oncology Group (COG) initiative. Leukemia 19: 734–740, 2005
123. Ito C, Kumagai M, Manabe A, et al. Hyperdiploid acute lymphoblastic leukemia with 51 to 65 chromosomes: A distinct biological entity with a marked propensity to undergo apoptosis. Blood 93: 315–320, 1999
124. Maia AT, Tussiwand R, Cazzaniga G, et al. Identification of preleukemic precursors of hyperdiploid acute lymphoblastic leukemia in cord blood. Genes Chromosom Cancer 40: 38–43, 2004
125. Greaves MF, Wiemels J. Origins of chromosome translocations in childhood leukaemia. Nat Rev Cancer 3: 639–649, 2003
126. Gruszka-Westwood AM, Horsley SW, Martinez-Ramirez A, et al. Comparative expressed sequence hybridization studies of high-hyperdiploid childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Genes Chromosom Cancer 41: 191–202, 2004
127. Yeoh EJ, Ross ME, Shurtleff SA, et al. Classification, subtype discovery, and prediction of outcome in pediatric acute lymphoblastic leukemia by gene expression profiling. Cancer Cell 1: 133–143, 2002
128. Raimondi SC, Roberson PK, Pui CH, Behm FG, Rivera GK. Hyperdiploid (47–50) acute lymphoblastic leukemia in children. Blood 79: 3245–3252, 1992
129. Raynaud SD, Dastugue N, Zoccola D, et al. Cytogenetic abnormalities associated with the t(12;21): A collaborative study of 169 children with t(12;21)-positive acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Leukemia 13: 1325–1330, 1999
130. Harrison CJ, Moorman AV, Broadfield ZJ, et al. Three distinct subgroups of hypodiploidy in acute lymphoblastic leukaemia. Br J Haematol 125: 552–559, 2004
131. Raimondi SC, Zhou Y, Mathew S, et al. Reassessment of the prognostic significance of hypodiploidy in pediatric patients with acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Cancer 98: 2715–2722, 2003
132. Heerema NA, Nachman JB, Sather HN, et al. Hypodiploidy with less than 45 chromosomes confers adverse risk in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia: A report from the children's cancer group. Blood 94: 4036–4045, 1999
133. Cazzola M, Malcovati L. Myelodysplastic syndromes–coping with ineffective hematopoiesis. N Engl J Med 352: 536–538, 2005
134. Steensma DP, Tefferi A. The myelodysplastic syndrome(s): A perspective and review highlighting current controversies. Leuk Res 27: 95–120, 2003
135. Sole F, Luno E, Sanzo C, et al. Identification of novel cytogenetic markers with prognostic significance in a series of 968 patients with primary myelodysplastic syndromes. Haematologica 90: 1168–1178, 2005
136. Fenaux P. Chromosome and molecular abnormalities in myelodysplastic syndromes. Int J Hematol 73: 429–437, 2001
137. Rubin CM, Arthur DC, Woods WG, et al. Therapy-related myelodysplastic syndrome and acute myeloid leukemia in children: Correlation between chromosomal abnormalities and prior therapy. Blood 78: 2982–2988, 1991
138. Greenberg P, Cox C, LeBeau M, et al. International scoring system for evaluating prognosis in myelodysplastic syndromes. Blood 89: 2079–2088, 1997
139. Pfeilstocker M, Reisner R, Nosslinger T, et al. Cross-validation of prognostic scores in myelodysplastic syndromes on 386 patients from a single institution confirms importance of cytogenetics. Br J Haematol 106: 455–463, 1999
140. Sasaki H, Manabe A, Kojima S, et al. Myelodysplastic syndrome in childhood: A retrospective study of 189 patients in Japan. Leukemia 15: 1713–1720, 2001
141. Vardiman JW, Harris NL, Brunning RD. The World Health Organization (WHO) classification of the myeloid neoplasms. Blood 100: 2292–2302, 2002
142. Hasle H, Niemeyer CM, Chessells JM, et al. A pediatric approach to the WHO classification of myelodysplastic and myeloproliferative diseases. Leukemia 17: 277–282, 2003
143. Boultwood J, Fidler C, Strickson AJ, et al. Narrowing and genomic annotation of the commonly deleted region of the 5q- syndrome. Blood 99: 4638–4641, 2002
144. Le Beau MM, Espinosa R, Davis EM, et al. Cytogenetic and molecular delineation of a region of chromosome 7 commonly deleted in malignant myeloid diseases. Blood 88: 1930–1935, 1996
145. Adamson DJ, Dawson AA, Bennett B, King DJ, Haites NE. p53 mutation in the myelodysplastic syndromes. Br J Haematol 89: 61–66, 1995
146. Bench AJ, Nacheva EP, Hood TL, et al. Chromosome 20 deletions in myeloid malignancies: Reduction of the common deleted region, generation of a PAC/BAC contig and identification of candidate genes. UK Cancer Cytogenetics Group (UKCCG). Oncogene 19: 3902–3913, 2000

147. Nimer SD. Clinical management of myelodysplastic syndromes with interstitial deletion of chromosome 5q. J Clin Oncol 24: 2576–2582, 2006
148. Van den Berghe H, Michaux L. 5q-, twenty-five years later: A synopsis. Cancer Genet Cytogenet 94: 1–7, 1997
149. Passmore SJ, Hann IM, Stiller CA, et al. Pediatric myelodysplasia: A study of 68 children and a new prognostic scoring system. Blood 85: 1742–1750, 1995
150. Giagounidis AA, Germing U, Aul C. Biological and prognostic significance of chromosome 5q deletions in myeloid malignancies. Clin Cancer Res 12: 5–10, 2006
151. List A, Kurtin S, Roe DJ, et al. Efficacy of lenalidomide in myelodysplastic syndromes. N Engl J Med 352: 549–557, 2005
152. Luna-Fineman S, Shannon KM, Atwater SK, et al. Myelodysplastic and myeloproliferative disorders of childhood: A study of 167 patients. Blood 93: 459–466, 1999
153. Hasle H, Arico M, Basso G, et al. Myelodysplastic syndrome, juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia, and acute myeloid leukemia associated with complete or partial monosomy 7. European Working Group on MDS in Childhood (EWOG-MDS). Leukemia 13: 376–385, 1999
154. Smith SM, Le Beau MM, Huo D, et al. Clinical-cytogenetic associations in 306 patients with therapy-related myelodysplasia and myeloid leukemia: The University of Chicago series. Blood 102: 43–52, 2003
155. Bloomfield CD, Archer KJ, Mrozek K, et al. 11q23 balanced chromosome aberrations in treatment-related myelodysplastic syndromes and acute leukemia: Report from an international workshop. Genes Chromosom Cancer 33: 362–378, 2002
156. Harada H, Harada Y, Tanaka H, Kimura A, Inaba T. Implications of somatic mutations in the AML1 gene in radiation-associated and therapy-related myelodysplastic syndrome/acute myeloid leukemia. Blood 101: 673–680, 2003
157. Giagounidis AAN Germing U, Waincoat JS. Hematological malignancies: The 5q- syndrome. Hematology 9: 271–277, 2004
158. List A, Dewald G, Bennet J. Lenalidomide in the Myelodysplastic Syndrome with Chromosome 5q Deletion. N Engl J Med 355:1456–1465, 2006
159. Van Etten RA, Shannon KM. Focus on myeloproliferative diseases and myelodysplastic syndromes. Cancer Cell 6: 547–552, 2004
160. Anastasiadou E, Schwaller J. Role of constitutively activated protein tyrosine kinases in malignant myeloproliferative disorders: An update. Curr Opin Hematol 10: 40–48, 2003
161. Baxter EJ, Kulkarni S, Vizmanos JL, et al. Novel translocations that disrupt the platelet-derived growth factor receptor beta (PDGFRB) gene in BCR-ABL-negative chronic myeloproliferative disorders. Br J Haematol 120: 251–256, 2003
162. Macdonald D, Reiter A, Cross NC. The 8p11 myeloproliferative syndrome: A distinct clinical entity caused by constitutive activation of FGFR1. Acta Haematol 107: 101–107, 2002
163. Demiroglu A, Steer EJ, Heath C, et al. The t(8;22) in chronic myeloid leukemia fuses BCR to FGFR1: Transforming activity and specific inhibition of FGFR1 fusion proteins. Blood 98: 3778–3783, 2001
164. Cools J, DeAngelo DJ, Gotlib J, et al. A tyrosine kinase created by fusion of the PDGFRA and FIP1L1 genes as a therapeutic target of imatinib in idiopathic hypereosinophilic syndrome. N Engl J Med 348: 1201–1214, 2003
165. Martinelli G, Malagola M, Ottaviani E, et al. Imatinib mesylate can induce complete molecular remission in FIP1L1-PDGFR-a positive idiopathic hypereosinophilic syndrome. Haematologica 89: 236–237, 2004
166. von Bubnoff N, Gorantla SP, Thone S, Peschel C, Duyster J. The FIP1L1-PDGFRA T674I mutation can be inhibited by the tyrosine kinase inhibitor AMN107 (nilotinib). Blood 107: 4970–4971, 2006
167. Boissinot M, Garand R, Hamidou M, Hermouet S. The JAK2-V617F mutation and essential thrombocythemia features in a subset of patients with refractory anemia with ring sideroblasts (RARS). Blood 108: 1781–1782, 2006
168. James C, Ugo V, Le Couedic JP, et al. A unique clonal JAK2 mutation leading to constitutive signaling causes polycythaemia vera. Nature 434: 1144–1148, 2005
169. Hayne C, Winer E, Williams T, et al. Acute lymphoblastic leukemia with a 4;11 translocation analyzed by a combined strategy of conventional cytogenetics, FISH, morphology and cytometry, and an up-to-date review of the literature. Exp Mol Pathol 81: 62–71, 2006

Chapter 7

Mechanisms of Cancer Growth and Progression in Lymphoma

Mojdeh Naghashpour and Lynn C. Moscinski

Contents

M. Naghashpour (✉)
Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, University of South Florida College of Medicine, Tampa, FL, USA
e-mail: Mojdeh.Naghashpour@moffitt.org

7.1 Introduction

Lymphomas are a group of biologically diverse and clinically distinct malignant tumors of hematopoietic origin. They arise from lymphocytes (T-cells or B-cells), that appear to be arrested at different stages of maturation. Lymphomas are typically initiated by acquired alterations such as chromosomal translocations, deletions and mutations that occur in the genome of the lymphoid cell (or their progenitors), rather than inherited DNA-sequence variations. The transforming events in lymphomagenesis represent a multi-step process involving the progressive accumulation of genetic lesions that ultimately result in the clonal expansion of malignant T- or B-lymphocytes. Current classification of lymphomas, adopted by the World Health Organization [1], includes B-cell neoplasms, T/NK-cell tumors, and Hodgkin lymphoma. About 95% of lymphomas are of B-cell origin; the remainder are T-cell malignancies. Within the category of B-cell derived lymphomas, mature B-cell neoplasms comprise over 90% of non-Hodgkin lymphomas worldwide [2, 3, 1], and will be the focus of this review.

During the past two decades, extensive progress has been made to elucidate the cellular origin of B-cell lymphomas by various approaches including histology, immunophenotyping and molecular techniques. Advances in technology have made possible the study of normal and malignant lymphocytes and identification of major transforming events, including the role of chromosomal translocations, antigen activation of B-cell receptor, and the cellular microenvironment in lymphoma pathogenesis.

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_7,

7.2 B Cell Development

Lymphocyte precursors (progenitors) originate in the bone marrow and undergo antigen-independent lineage commitment. Maturation and selection of T-cells occur predominantly in the thymus [4]. B-cell maturation occurs in steps, first in the bone marrow from hematopoietic precursors to immature/transitional B cells, then in the periphery from transitional to fully mature B cells [5, 6].

7.2.1 Early B Cell Maturation: Production of B Cell Receptor (BCR)

The initial stage of B cell differentiation begins in the bone marrow where precursor lymphoblasts undergo antigen independent rearrangement of the immunoglobulin heavy and light chain genes, through the process of V(D)J recombination, leading to the generation of B-cell receptor (BCR) (Fig. 7.1). Proliferation and terminal differentiation of B-cells are regulated by antigen triggering, T-cell interaction, macrophages and local factors, that occur predominantly in secondary lymphoid tissue, including lymph nodes, and spleen [7]. There are many different V, D and J segments in the germ line, and therefore each B-cell generates a distinct pair of genes for its heavy chain variable region and another pair for its light-chain variable region. These encode a distinct antigen receptor with unique specificity, thus generating the repertoire diversity of BCR [8]. BCR is composed of two identical heavy- and two identical light-chain immunoglobulin (Ig) polypeptides that are covalently linked by disulfide bridges. Other components of the BCR are the CD79a and CD79b molecules that contain immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motifs. These motifs interact with intracellular signaling molecules after BCR cross-linking/antigen binding, and relay signals that lead to proliferation and/or further differentiation of the activated B-cell [9].

The expression of BCR is critically important for the development and survival of B cells. In the bone marrow, B-cell precursors that fail to express a functional BCR undergo apoptosis [9]. The BCR-dependant survival of B-cells is further emphasized by studies that show that in vivo ablation of surface immunoglobulin on mature B-cells by inducible gene targeting results in rapid cell death [10]. Furthermore, receptor specificity is critical for B-cells throughout their life. In bone marrow, B-cell precursors expressing autoreactive receptors either "edit" their receptors by means of secondary V(D)J rearrangements or undergo apoptosis. Following the process of receptor editing, non-autoreactive B-cells expressing a functional surface antigen receptor leave the bone marrow to become mature, naïve (not yet been exposed to antigen) B-cells [11].

7.2.2 Late B Cell Maturation: Production of High Affinity Immunoglobulin

In the peripheral lymphoid organs, the immature/transitional B-cells that have recently emerged from the bone marrow may follow one of two pathways that are either T-cell dependent or T-cell independent, respectively. These two functionally distinct developmental pathways take place in anatomically distinct regions of the secondary lymphoid organs. In the germinal centers of the secondary lymphoid tissue, Ig genes are modified by somatic hypermutation and class-switch recombination. First, in a T-cell-dependent manner, antigen-driven somatic hypermutation of the immunoglobulin variable (IgV) region leads to introduction of point mutations, deletions or duplications in the IgV gene, resulting in generation of a high-affinity B cell response to cognate antigens. Class switching results in the replacement of the originally expressed heavy-chain constant region gene (initially mu constant region for IgM, and the delta constant region for IgD) by that of another downstream constant-region gene, allowing the expression of IgG, IgA or IgE. Consequently, the process of class-switch recombination results in the expression of an antibody with a different effector function but the same antigen-binding specificity. Therefore, the germinal center is the source of memory B-cells and plasma cells that produce high-affinity antibodies necessary to protect against invading microorganisms. Alternatively, B cell development along a marginal zone T-cell independent pathway provides a first line of "innate-like" defense against specific pathogens [12, 13, 5].

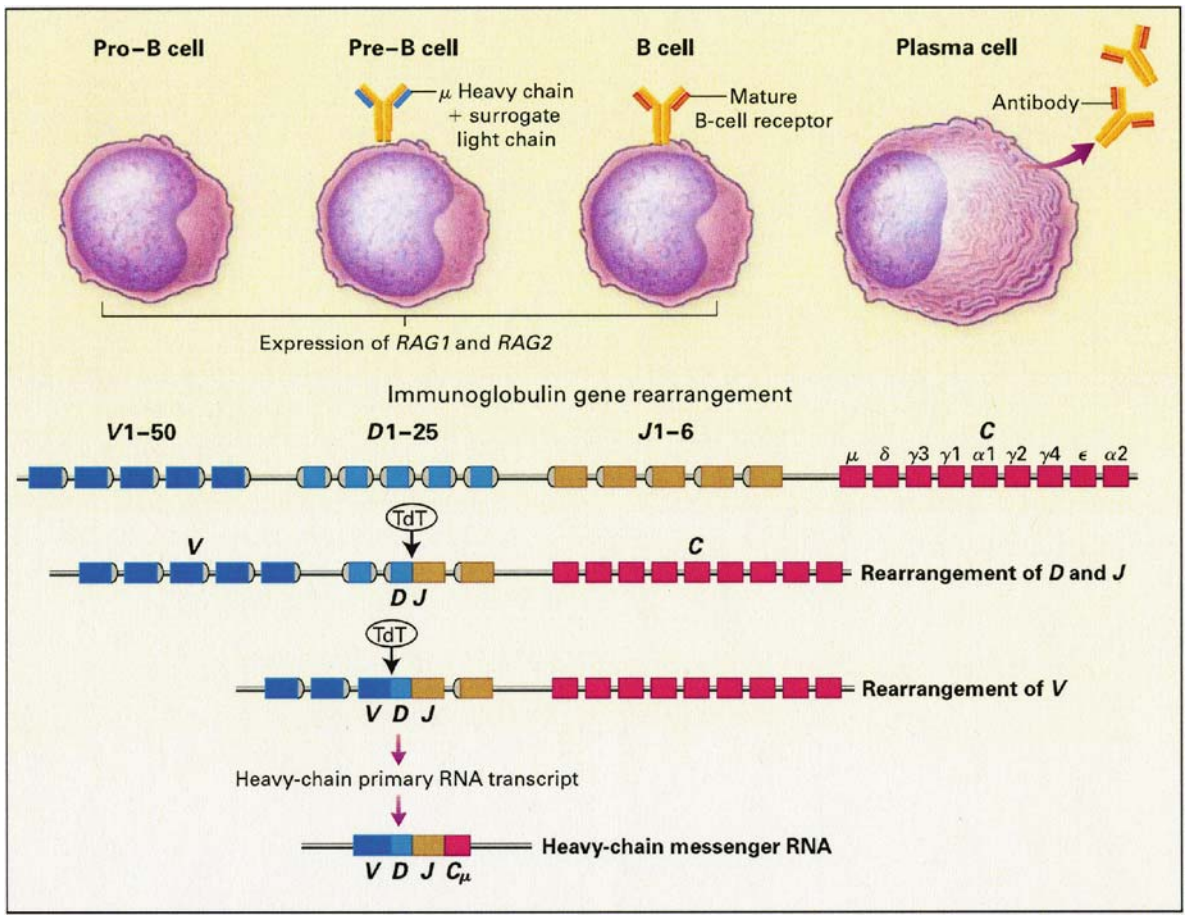


Fig. 7.1 Diversity of antigen receptors. The enormously diverse specificities of the antigen receptors are produced by gene rearrangements during the early developmental stages of the lymphocyte. The events involved in generating a coding sequence for the immunoglobulin heavy chain are shown. Early in B-cell development, pro-B cells mature into pre-B cells, at which stages they express the recombination-activating genes *RAG1* and *RAG2*. The recombinases encoded by these genes mediate the random rearrangement of 1 of 25 diversity (*D*) gene segments next to any 1 of 6 joining (*J*) gene segments. This is followed by the rearrangement of any 1 of 50 variable (*V*) gene segments next to the already rearranged *DJ* segment. Different B cells will rearrange a different segment in each pool, thereby creating one level of diversity. Further diversity is brought about by splicing inaccuracies and by the incorporation of nucleotides mediated by the enzyme terminal deoxyribonucleotidyltransferase (TdT). The heavy-chain primary RNA transcript is processed into messenger RNA (mRNA), with splicing of the rearranged *VDJ* segment next to the constant (*C*) region gene. This mRNA will encode a heavy chain that appears on the surface of the pre-B cell together with the surrogate light chain, which is encoded by genes that do not undergo rearrangement. As the pre-B cell continues to mature, the immunoglobulin light-chain genes undergo rearrangement; the resulting light chain replaces the surrogate light chain, and thereby produces a mature IgM B-cell receptor on the cell surface. The B-cell receptors at this stage also usually include IgD antibodies with the same specificity as the IgM molecule, produced by alternative splicing of the rearranged *VDJ* to either the C_μ or the C_δ gene. The expression of *RAG1* and *RAG2* is then switched off. After encountering an antigen, and in the presence of costimulatory signals, the B cell further differentiates into a plasma cell, which secretes high levels of the specific antibody (or into a memory B cell). The same general principles regarding the rearrangement process apply to the generation of α/ß and γ/δ T-cell receptors. The gene segments in the figure are not drawn to scale (From: Delves and Roitt [74])

7.3 Cellular Origin of B Cell Lymphomas

B-cell neoplasms appear to mimic stages of normal B-cell development, allowing classification based on similarities to their proposed normal B-cell counterpart when assessing a combination of morphology, histology and immunophenotype (Table 7.1). However, some B-cell neoplasms (i.e. hairy cell leukemia) do not

Table 7.1 Characteristics of some matures B-cell lymphomas. Somatic hypermutation (SHM), Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL), Germinal Center (GC), Marginal-zone associated lymphoid tissue (MALT). Adapted from "Table 1" in Shaffer et al. [75], and "Table 2" in Kuppers [63]

Lymphoma	SHM	Ongoing SHM	Chromosomal translocations	Viruses	Putative cell of origin
Mantle cell lymphoma	No (except for a small subset)	No	bcl1-IgH {t(11;14)}	–	Pre-GC B-cell
Follicular lymphoma	Yes	Yes	bcl2-IgH {t(14;18)}	–	GC B-cell
Burkitt lymphoma	Yes	No	myc-IgH {t(8;14)} or myc-IgL {t(2;8) or t(8;22)}	EBV (endemic 95%, sporadic 30%)	GC B-cell
Splenic Marginal zone lymphoma	Yes (in most)			–	GC or post-GC B-cell
MALT lymphoma	Yes	Yes	API-MALT1 bcl10-IgH MALT1-IgH FOXP1-IgH	Indirect roll of H. pylori in gastric MALT lymphoma	GC or post-GC B-cell
Chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL)	Yes and no	No	–	–	Antigen-experienced B-cell (pre- or post-GC)
GC B-cell-like DLBCL	Yes	Yes	bcl6-various bcl2-IgH myc-IgH or myc-IgL	–	GC-B-cell
Activated B-cell-like DLBCL	Yes	No	bcl6-various bcl2-IgH myc-IgH or myc-IgL	–	GC-B-cell subset or extra-GC mutated B-cell

obviously correspond to a normal B-cell differentiation stage, while others (i.e. chronic lymphocytic leukemia) appear to be of heterogeneous origin [14].

Distinct stages of B-cell development are characterized by the particular structure of the BCR and expression of surface differentiation markers. Distinct maturation stages often take place in specific histologic structures. A substantial proportion of peripheral blood B-cells (up to 90%) are IgM+ IgD+ CD5+ B-cells that have unmutated IgV, and thus can be assigned to a pre-germinal center stage of development (i.e. naïve B-cells). The memory B-cell compartment generated in the germinal center reaction consists of somatically hypermutated IgV, class-switched B-cells that express surface IgM [15].

Germinal centers of the secondary lymphoid tissues (lymph nodes, spleen and mucosa associated lymphoid tissue) are the main sites where somatic hypermutation of IgV occurs. The GC is surrounded by a mantle zone of naïve B-cells, most of which express CD5. The marginal zone is a B-cell rich zone located between B-cell follicles and the T-cell area in spleen and mucosa associated lymphoid tissue (i.e. Peyer's patches and tonsils) (Fig. 7.2).

7.3.1 Naïve (Circulating) B Cells

At practically every B-cell developmental stage, there is a subtype of lymphoid neoplasm with malignant lymphocytes arrested at a particular stage of maturation (Fig. 7.3). Naïve B-cells are often CD5+ and express surface immunoglobulins IgM and IgD. These small resting lymphocytes circulate in the blood and also occupy primary lymphoid follicles and follicle mantle zones (so-called recirculating B-cells). Among lymphomas derived from mature B-cells, unmutated IgV genes have been found only in mantle cell lymphoma and some chronic lymphocytic leukemias, both of which are CD5+ neoplasms [16, 17]. Most mantle cell lymphomas are thought to be derived from CD5+ (naïve) B-cells of the mantle zone; although, 20–30% carry mutated IgV region genes, indicating that they have passed through the germinal center [18, 19]. Many cases of chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) are believed to correspond to the recirculating CD5+ naïve B-cells, expressing IgM and IgD, with germline configuration of IgV, that are found in peripheral blood, primary follicle, and follicle mantle zones. CLL cases that show IgV gene mutations may correspond to a subset of peripheral blood CD5+ memory B-cells that express surface IgM [20]. Tumors of naïve B-cells are usually histologically low-grade, clinically indolent and often widespread and leukemic, consistent with the recirculating behavior of normal naïve B-cells [14].

7.3.2 Germinal Center B Cells

Upon encountering antigen, naïve B-cells undergo blast transformation, migrate into primary lymphoid follicle and fill the follicular dendritic cell (FDC) meshwork, forming a germinal center (GC), where they ultimately mature into memory B-cells and immunoglobulin-secreting plasma cells (Fig. 7.4). Germinal center blast cells, called centroblasts, switch off expression of BCL2, an anti-apoptotic protein; thus they are susceptible to death by apoptosis [21]. Centroblasts express BCL6 protein, a POZ/zinc-finger transcriptional repressor, as well as the membrane metalloendopeptidase CD10; these markers are not expressed by naïve or memory B-cells, mantle cells or plasma cells, and serve as "markers" for germinal center B-cells [22, 23]. In the germinal center, somatic mutations occur in the immunoglobulin variable (IgV) region gene resulting in altered affinity for antigen and marked intraclonal diversity in a population of cells derived from only a few precursors [24]. In addition, some cells switch from IgM to IgG or IgA, by way of the process of Ig class-switch. Through these mechanisms, the "germinal center reaction" will give rise to the production of high-affinity IgG and IgA antibodies of the late primary or secondary immune response [25]. The BCL6 gene also undergoes somatic mutation in the germinal center [26]. Both IgV gene mutations and BCL6 gene mutations serve as markers of cells that have been through the germinal center. The detection of somatically mutated IgV genes in a lymphoma is an indication that the neoplastic clone originated from GC or post-GC (i.e. memory) B-cells, and the pattern of somatic hypermutation may allow these two possibilities to be distinguished [15]. For example, in follicular lymphoma there is ongoing somatic hypermutation within the tumor clone [27]. Additionally, follicular lymphomas have growth patterns that resemble those

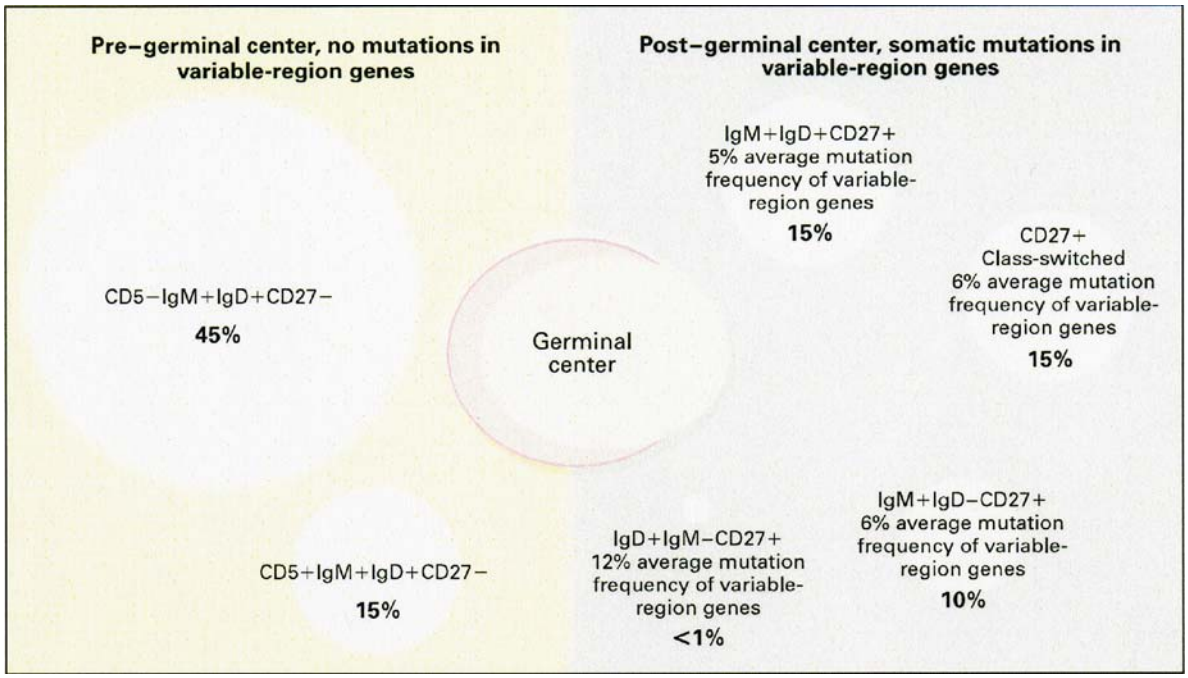


Fig. 7.2 Cellular composition of the peripheral-blood B-cell repertoire in humans. Shown are the phenotypically defined subgroups of B cells, the average frequency of mutations of the heavy-chain variable-region genes, and the percentages of the respective subgroups among all peripheral-blood B cells. Cells with only IgD are not discussed, because they comprise only a very small subgroup in the peripheral blood of some people. Somatically mutated B-cells in the peripheral blood are descendants of pre-germinal-center (naive) B cells that have passed through the germinal center in lymphoid organs where they acquired somatic mutations (From: Kuppers et al. [33])

of the normal germinal center B cells, infiltrated by follicular dendritic cells (FDC) and T cells. Furthermore, the tumor cells express the membrane metalloendopeptidase CD10, which is a hallmark of GC B-cells [23]. Taken together, follicular lymphoma is thus identified as a germinal center B-cell tumor. Burkitt lymphoma cells are BCL6+, express the germinal center surface marker CD10 and have mutated IgV genes, and are thus thought to correspond to a germinal center blast cell [28].

7.3.3 Memory B Cells (Post-germinal Center Cells)

Memory B-cells typically reside in the follicle marginal zones, characteristically lack CD5 and CD10, express surface IgM but not IgD, and have mutated IgV region genes. These post-germinal B-cells retain the ability to selectively traffic back to the tissue in which they undergo antigen stimulation. For example, B-cells that arise in mucosa associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) tend to return there, and those that arise in lymph nodes will home to nodal sites, via integrin homing receptors [29]. Nodal marginal zone lymphoma, extra-nodal marginal zone lymphoma and splenic marginal zone lymphoma are three entities that are thought to drive from post-germinal center marginal zone B-cells [30].

7.3.4 Molecular Profiling Supports Differentiation Stages for Neoplastic B Cells

The relationship between B-cell lymphomas to normal stages of B cell maturation has been further clarified using genomic-scale gene-expression profiling of B cell lymphomas and normal B cell subsets. A unique gene-expression signature distinguishes GC B-cells

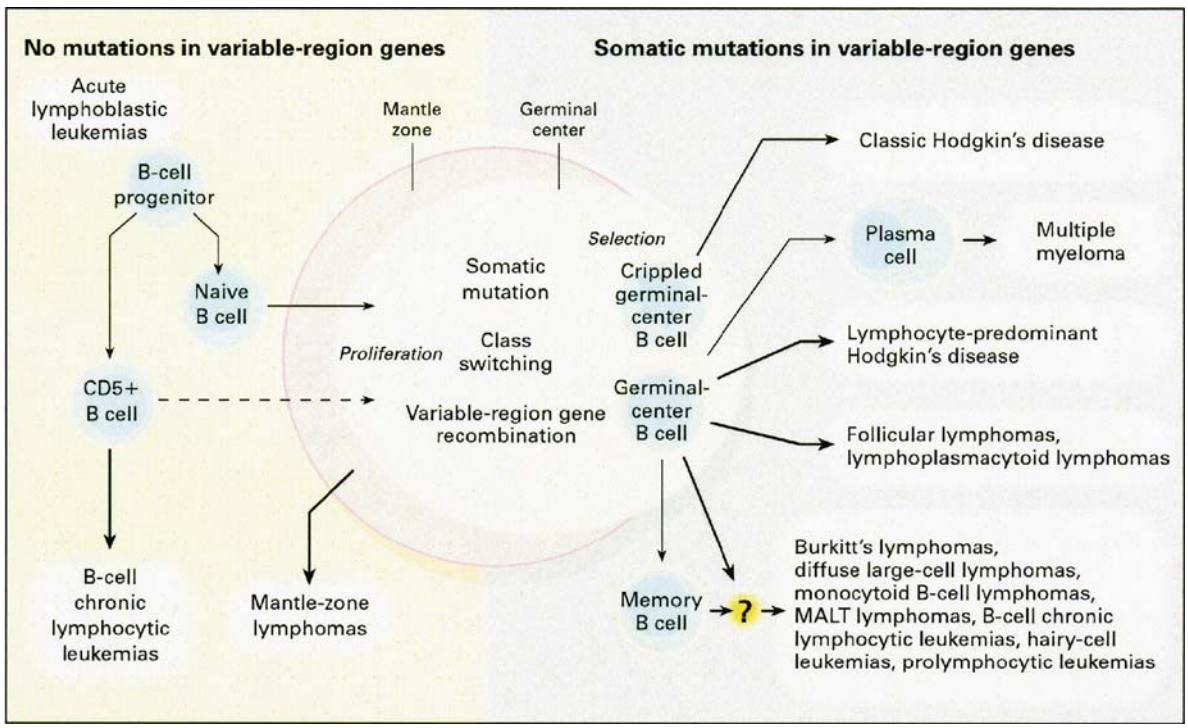


Fig. 7.3 Assignment of human B-Cell lymphomas to their normal B-Cell counterparts. Naive B cells that recognize antigen with their antigen receptors establish germinal centers. In these structures the cells vigorously proliferate. The genomic DNA of these cells may then be subjected to somatic hypermutation, class switching, and perhaps variable-region gene recombination. The extent of variable-region gene recombination is unknown. Acute lymphoblastic leukemia represents a cancer of B-cell progenitors. Germinal-center B cells that acquire affinity-increasing mutations are positively selected and differentiate into memory B cells or plasma cells. The diffuse large-cell lymphomas include centroblastic lymphomas, immunoblastic lymphomas, T-cell-rich B-cell lymphomas, mediastinal sclerosing lymphomas, and large-cell anaplastic lymphomas of B type. Diffuse large-cell lymphomas may represent primary diseases or transformations from low-grade lymphomas. Lymphomas in which intraclonal variable-region gene diversity is absent or is only occasionally present (except in the case of classic Hodgkin's disease) may be derived from progenitors in the germinal center or from post-germinal-center (memory) B cells. Nevertheless, as outlined in the text, important steps in the transformation process take place in the germinal center in lymphomas in which the tumor B cells resemble post-germinal-center B cells. MALT denotes mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (From: Kuppers et al. [33])

from other stages of B-cell differentiation, including resting naïve and memory B cells, and mitogenically activated peripheral blood B-cells [31]. These studies identified a GC-B cell gene-expression signature that is associated with follicular lymphoma, Burkitt lymphoma and a subset of diffuse large B cell lymphoma (DLBCL). Two molecularly distinct forms of diffuse large B cell lymphoma (DLBCL) with gene expression patterns indicative of different stages of B-cell differentiation were identified. One type expressed genes characteristic of germinal centre B cells (germinal centre B-like DLBCL); the second type expressed genes normally induced during in vitro activation of peripheral blood B cells (activated B-like DLBCL) [31].

7.4 Transforming Events in Lymphomagenesis

7.4.1 Genomic DNA Modification: Point Mutations and Translocations

The fundamental processes that are crucial for B-cell differentiation and survival are found to be involved in the malignant transformation of most B-cell lymphomas. A vast majority of B-cell lymphomas appear to derive from GC or post CG B-cells, suggesting that malignant transformation often occurs, or is initiated in, GC B-cells [32]. The germinal center B-cells

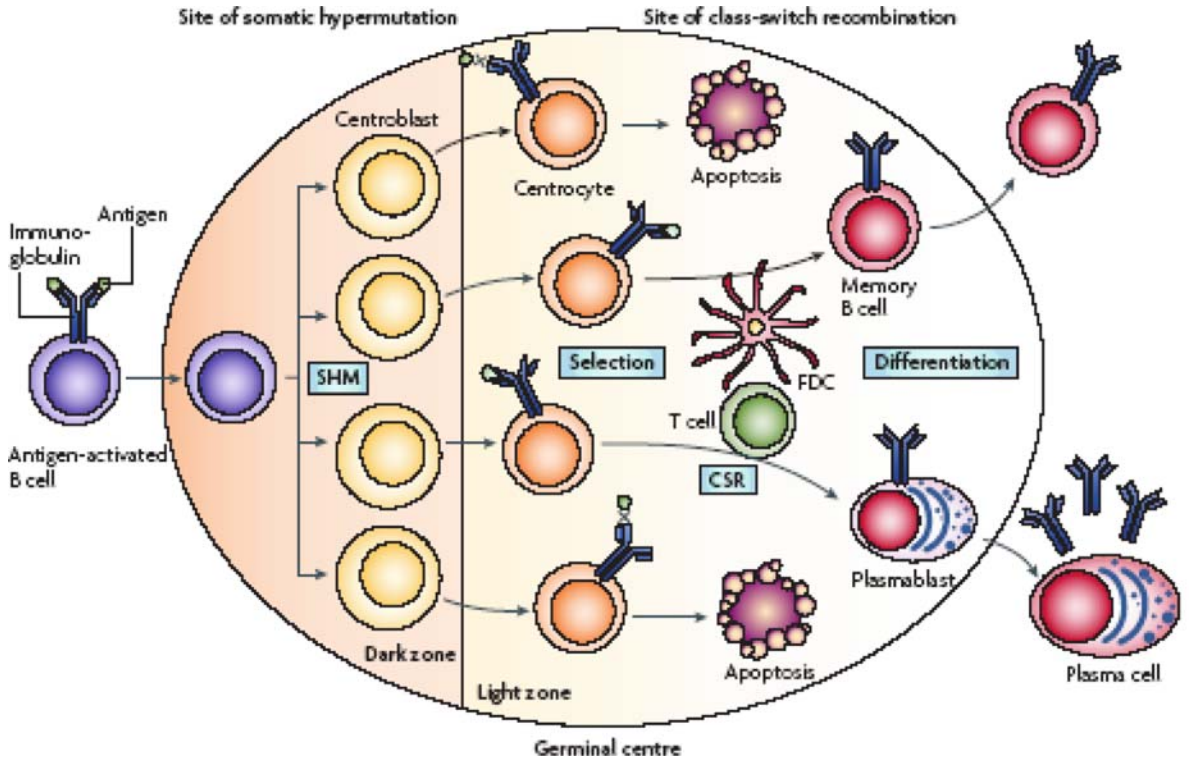


Fig. 7.4 The germinal centre microenvironment. Antigen-activated B cells differentiate into centroblasts that undergo clonal expansion in the dark zone of the germinal centre. During proliferation, the process of somatic hypermutation (SHM) introduces base-pair changes into the V(D)J region of the rearranged genes encoding the immunoglobulin variable region (IgV) of the heavy chain and light chain; some of these base-pair mutations lead to a change in the amino-acid sequence. Centroblasts then differentiate into centrocytes and move to the light zone, where the modified antigen receptor, with help from immune helper cells including T cells and follicular dendritic cells (FDCs), is selected for improved binding to the immunizing antigen. Newly generated centrocytes that produce an unfavourable antibody undergo apoptosis and are removed. A subset of centrocytes undergoes immunoglobulin class-switch recombination (CSR). Cycling of centroblasts and centrocytes between dark and light zones seems to be mediated by a chemokine gradient, presumably established by stromal cells in the respective zones (not shown). Antigen-selected centrocytes eventually differentiate into memory B cells or plasma cells (From: Klein and Dalla-Favera [21])

are programmed to vigorously proliferate and expand, which may by itself increase the risk of acquisition of DNA damage. Also, these GC B-cells undergo molecular processes that modify the genomic DNA (gene rearrangements to produce immunoglobulin diversity, somatic hypermutation, variable region gene recombination and class-switch). Therefore there is abundant opportunity for malignant transformation in the germinal center reaction. [33]. Occasionally, aberrant activity of these processes may result in chromosomal translocations involving the Ig loci and a proto-oncogene. In fact, balanced chromosomal translocations, mostly involving the immunoglobulin (Ig) genes and a variety of partner genes, are a hallmark of many mature B-cell lymphomas [34]. Well-known examples include bcl2/Ig translocation in follicular lymphoma, bcl-1/Ig translocation in mantle cell lymphoma, c-myc/Ig translocation in Burkitt lymphoma, and bcl-6 translocations in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma.

In most instances the translocated partner gene (a proto-oncogene) becomes transcriptionally deregulated and constitutively active, as the oncogene is brought under the control of an active immunoglobulin locus [35]. Some translocations, such as the bcl2/IgH translocation associated with follicular lymphoma, bcl-1 translocations in mantle cell lymphoma, and c-myc translocations in endemic Burkitt lymphoma, have chromosomal breakpoints in the Ig locus that are located at the 5' end of the J (or sometime D) heavy chain gene segments. These translocations

therefore likely happen during V(D)J recombination, a process that takes place predominantly in early B-cell development in the bone marrow (and also occasionally in germinal center B-cells) [36, 37]. V(D)J recombination is a process catalysed by the B-cell specific V(D)J recombinase activating enzymes RAG-1/2 that are expressed in both pre-B-cells and GC B-cells [38].

In other translocations, the breakpoints are found within or adjacent to rearranged V(D)J genes, and these V-region genes are always somatically hypermutated. Indeed, translocations of the c-myc gene into a rearranged Ig gene in a subgroup of Burkitt lymphoma (sporatic Burkitt lymphoma and HIV-associated Burkitt lymphoma) is thought to happen as a by-product of somatic hypermutation [39]. Somatic hypermutation may also occasionally target genes other than IgV region genes and introduce point mutations in oncogenes and/or tumor suppressor genes that are thought to play a role in lymphomagenesis. The genes encoding BCL-6 and FAS (also known as CD95) were found to contain mutations in a considerable fraction of normal GC and memory B-cells (but not naïve B-cells), indicating that these genes are often physiological targets of the somatic hypermutation machinery in normal B-cells [40, 26]. Such mutations may promote lymphomagenesis in certain instances. In deed, point mutations of bcl-6 have been described in a significant fraction of diffuse large B-cell lymphomas and a majority of follicular lymphomas, occurring independently of chromosomal translocations [41, 26]. Also, inactivating mutations of FAS are found in about 20% of post GC lymphomas and could protect lymphoma cells from death induced by FAS-ligand-expressing cells [42]. Thus, the somatic hypermutation process may also promote lymphomagenesis by targeting regulatory and coding sequences of the bcl-6 proto-oncogene and FAS tumor suppressor gene, resulting in either dysregulated expression (BCL-6) or loss of function (FAS) [35].

Finally, translocations characterized by breakpoints in the IgH switch region include c-myc/Ig in sporadic Burkitt lymphoma [43, 44], bcl-3 {t(14;19)} in B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia [45], bcl-6 {t(3;14)} in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma [46], and Pax-5 {t(9;14)} in lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma [47]. These chromosomal translocations are probably caused by errors occurring during class-switch recombination in germinal center B-cells.

7.4.2 Transforming Viruses

Certain viruses are capable of promoting the development of lymphoma by transforming the infected cells. A well-known example is Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), a member of the herpes-virus family, that mainly targets B-cells, but can also infect other cells such as epithelial and T-cells. EBV is implicated in the pathogenesis of several types of tumors, including certain hematologic (Burkitt lymphoma, subsets of Hodgkin and T-cell lymphomas, post-transplant lymphomas), epithelial (undifferentiated nasopharyngeal carcinoma, a subset of gastric adenocarcinomas) and mesenchymal (EBV-associated smooth muscle tumor, inflammatory pseudotumor-like follicular dendritic cell tumor) neoplasms [48]. EBV DNA is found in nearly all cases of endemic Burkitt lymphoma, 40% of cases of classic Hodgkin lymphoma, and in the vast majority of post-transplant and primary effusion lymphomas. These lymphomas are usually derived from GC B-cells, pointing to the importance of this microenvironment in the development of EBV-associated B-cell malignancies [49]. Interestingly however, various types of EBV-associated B-cell lymphomas differ markedly, not only in their pathogenesis, but also in the presumed role of EBV in this process. For example, a defining feature of Burkitt lymphoma is the reciprocal translocation between myc and one of the three Ig loci [50, 51]. The role of EBV might be to retain myc-driven proliferation and to evade its apoptotic effects, thereby supporting unrestricted clonal expansion of B-cells that harbor a myc/Ig translocation [52]. Another member of the herpes-virus family, human herpes virus 8 (HHV-8) is associated with all cases of primary effusion lymphoma (PEL) and some other AIDS-related lymphoproliferative disorders [53]. PEL is a rare B-cell lymphoma that develops as serous effusions in pleural, pericardial and peritoneal cavities, without any solid localization [54]. PEL is almost exclusively observed in the context of HIV infection with a particular incidence in men. HHV-8 infected B-lymphocytes in PEL have constitutive nuclear factor (NF)-kappaB activity that is essential for their survival. It has been reported that viral FADD-like interleukin-1-beta-converting enzyme {FLICE/caspase 8}-inhibitory protein (FLIP) activates NF-kappaB more potently than cellular FLIP in B cells, and that it is largely responsible for NF-kappaB

activation in latently infected PEL cells [55]. The lymphoma cells are post-germinal center B-cells, all carry HHV-8 genome, and most carry both HHV-8 and EBV genomes [56].

7.5 Role of Antigen Receptor, Microenvironment and Antigenic Stimulation in B-Cell Lymphomas

Tumor cells in most B-cell (non-Hodgkin) lymphomas express surface Ig. The mutation pattern indicates that the precursors of the tumor clones have been rigorously positively selected for expression of a functional antigen receptor [15]. The notion that BCR supplies important survival signals to B-cell lymphoma cells is supported by the observation that despite frequent oncogenic translocations involving the Ig loci, the vast majority are targeted to nonfunctional alleles [57]. These observations indicate that expression of a functional BCR is essential for survival of the transformed B-cell [10].

7.5.1 Chronic Infection and Lymphoma

Some types of lymphomas are associated with specific microbial infections. Certain infectious agents initiate and/or promote lymphomagenesis by direct lymphocyte transformation. Examples include lymphotrophic oncogenic viruses such as EBV, HHV-8 and HTLV-1 that directly infect a subset of lymphocytes and express viral oncogenes in those cells. Alternatively, chronic antigenic stimulation by pathogens that do not directly infect or transform lymphoid cells and/or autoantigens may trigger a sustained lymphoid proliferation that provides fertile ground for the transformation process [58]. The best characterized example of infection-associated indirect transformation of lymphocytes is gastric mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) lymphoma, in which nearly all cases are associated with chronic infection of gastric mucosa by the bacterium H. pylori [59]. Importantly, it is the CD4+ T-helper cells that recognize the bacterium and provide contact-dependent help to promote the survival and proliferation of lymphoma cells [60]. Antigen-driven lymphoproliferation is thought to result from integration of two signals: (1) A prolonged T-cell independent response, generating autoreactive marginal zone B-cells with acquired alterations that confer a clonal advantage to antigen-specific B-cells, ultimately leading to transformation, and (2) A prolonged T-cell dependent response, generating a sustained pool of H. pylori-specific T-cells [12]. The fact that H. pylori eradication by antibiotic treatment often leads to regression of lymphoma highlights the important role of microenvironment in lymphoma progression [59]. Although early transformed B-cells rely on antigenic stimulation for their proliferation and survival, this dependence is not permanent. In fact, constitutive activation of the NF-kappaB pathway by oncogenic activity resulting from recurrent chromosomal translocations {i.e. t(11;18), t(1;14) and t(14;18)} bypasses the requirement for antigen signaling through BCR [58].

7.5.2 Lymphoma and Immunologic Disorders

Certain lymphomas, in particular those arising in the extranodal sites, show distinctive clinicopathologic features that may include association with an underlying immunodeficiency syndrome, autoimmune disease, infection, or other immunologic disorders [61]. In addition to pathogen-derived antigens that cause chronic and sustained stimulation of the immune system, certain auto antigens are also known to stimulate reactive B-cells. In fact, patients with certain autoimmune disorders (i.e. rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus, Sjögren's syndrome, and autoimmune thyroid disease) have an increased risk of developing lymphoid malignancies [62]. The presence of autoantibodies is the hallmark of systemic autoimmune diseases. In these patients, the immune responses to certain autoantigens promote an inflammatory reaction, mediated by both the innate and the adaptive immune systems. The adaptive response is mediated by CD4+ T-cells that recognize antigenic peptides (driven from autoantigens and/or exogeneous antigens), which are bound to HLA class II molecules on antigen-presenting cells. This interaction leads to the production of cytokines by activated T-cells that damage tissue as well as cause activation and proliferation of antibody-producing B-cells. It has been suggested that in some cases, antigen-activation contributes to lymphomagenesis by driving the proliferation of specific B cells and by increasing the frequency of their transformation [63, 64].

7.6 Functional Consequences of Genetic Lesions in Lymphomagenesis

The various genetic lesions that occur in B-cell lymphomas contribute to lymphomagensis by dysregulation of normal B-cell proliferation, survival, differentiation and/or maturation. These oncogenic events (chromosomal translocations, gene amplifications, deletions, point mutations) disrupt B-cell homeostasis by driving the cells through the cell cycle, by preventing apoptosis and by blocking terminal differentiation. These concepts are elaborated on, within the paragraphs to follow. Within the germinal centers, the differentiation of an antigen-activated B-cell into a centroblast is accompanied by dramatic simultaneous upregulation of pro-proliferative and pro-apoptotic genes. Centroblasts up-regulate the expression of genes associated with proliferation, as well as several pro-apoptotic molecules, and lack the expression of anti-apoptotic factors such as BCL-2 [24]. This includes genes involved in proliferation, which are transcriptional targets of c-*myc* [65]. MYC also targets genes involved in apoptosis [66]. Centroblasts undergo clonal expansion and somatic hypermutation, and then differentiate into centrocytes. Few centrocytes that generate an antibody with increased affinity for antigen are positively selected for, and they then re-express BCL-2 protein. Centrocytes that form an unfavorable antibody undergo apoptosis and are removed [24]. BCL-6 is a transcriptional repressor that is specifically expressed by GC B-cells and is essential for germinal center formation [67]. Although BCL-6 is a main effector of a centroblast phenotype, it must be down-regulated for cells to arrest growth, to interact with other cells, and to differentiate into centrocytes and eventually plasma cells and memory B-cells [21].

7.6.1 Blocking Apoptosis

Follicular lymphomas are believed to be tumors of the GC B-cells (centrocytes and centroblasts) in which centrocytes constitutively express BCL-2 protein as a result of the chromosomal translocation t(14;18), and thus fail to undergo apoptosis [14]. The tumor is composed predominantly of centrocytes, which are resting cells, and thus tends to be indolent [14]. Translocations of the bcl-2 gene also occur in 20–30% of cases of diffuse large B-cell lymphomas [68]. Marginal zone lymphomas of the mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) harbor the translocation t(11;18), in approximately 50% of cytogenetically abnormal cases, that gives rise to the fusion of an apoptosis inhibitor gene, API2, to a gene on 18q21 named MLT. Hence, the over-expression of the anti-apoptotic protein API2 and a survival advantage for the lymphoma cells results [69].

7.6.2 Enhancing Cell Growth and Proliferation

MYC overexpression, misexpression, and deregulation, caused by translocations and/or mutations are seen in many GC-derived B-cell lymphomas. Burkitt lymphomas [70], as well as some diffuse large B-cell lymphomas [71], harbor translocations of c-myc to one of the Ig loci. This deregulation of MYC plays a critical role in lymphomagenesis by promoting cellular growth and proliferation [66]. Both Burkitt and diffuse large B cell lymphomas are composed of proliferating cells and tend to be clinically aggressive [14]. Although these aggressive lymphomas usually arise de novo, they may occur as a result of transformation of low-grade (indolent) lymphomas. For example, the risk of follicular lymphoma (FL) progression and transformation to a high-grade lymphoma has been reported as being approximately 20% at 8 years. Transformation to DLBCL is observed most frequently (usually centroblastic subtype); rare cases transform to Burkitt or Burkitt-like lymphoma. Acquisition of additional genetic alterations, including c-myc translocations, p53 mutation, deletions of the tumor suppressor genes p15 and p16, and chromosomal 6q23–26 and 17q aberrations, are implicated in progression and transformation to an aggressive lymphoma [72].

7.6.3 Blocking Differentiation

Mutations and translocations of BCL-6 are common genetic lesions in many lymphomas. BCL-6 is a key upstream regulator of terminal B-cell differentiation. Dysregulation of BCL-6 entraps B-cells at the GC stage, thus leading to malignant transformation by simultaneous inhibition of differentiation and enhanced proliferation [73].

7.7 Conclusion

Our current understanding of B-cell lymphoma pathogenesis indicates that tumor initiation and progression is multi-factorial. The transformation process depends on a series of acquired genetic alterations (such as chromosomal translocations), expression of a functional BCR and interaction with the microenvironment (thus the ability to obtain growth and survival signals). The very processes that have a central role in normal B-cell differentiation and maturation, namely the need for intense cellular proliferation within the germinal centers, V(D)J recombination, somatic hypermutation, and IgH class switch recombination, may aberrantly lead to oncogenic alterations, affecting B-cell differentiation, proliferation and apoptosis, and loss of hematopoietic homeostasis.

References

1. Jaffe EH, Harris NL Stein, H, Vardiman, JW. Pathology and Genetics of Tumours of the Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Tissue. IARC Press, Lyon, 2001.
2. Armitage JO, Weisenburger DD. New approach to classifying non-Hodgkin's lymphomas: clinical features of the major histologic subtypes. Non-Hodgkin's Lymphoma Classification Project. J Clin Oncol 1998;16(8);2780–95.
3. A clinical evaluation of the International Lymphoma Study Group classification of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. The Non-Hodgkin's Lymphoma Classification Project. Blood 1997;89(11);3909–18.
4. Denning SM, Haynes BF. Differentiation of human T cells. Clin Lab Med 1988;8(1);1–14.
5. Carsetti R, Rosado MM, Wardmann H. Peripheral development of B cells in mouse and man. Immunol Rev 2004;197:179–91.
6. Bertoli LF, Kubagawa H, Borzillo GV, Burrows PD, Schreeder MT, Carroll AJ, et al. Bone marrow origin of a B-cell lymphoma. Blood 1988;72(1);94–101.
7. Cooper MD. Current concepts. B lymphocytes. Normal development and function. N Engl J Med 1987;317(23); 1452–6.
8. Tonegawa S. Somatic generation of antibody diversity. Nature 1983;302(5909);575–81.
9. Rajewsky K. Clonal selection and learning in the antibody system. Nature 1996;381(6585);751–8.
10. Lam KP, Kuhn R, Rajewsky K. In vivo ablation of surface immunoglobulin on mature B cells by inducible gene targeting results in rapid cell death. Cell 1997;90(6); 1073–83.
11. Nussenzweig MC. Immune receptor editing: revise and select. Cell 1998;95(7);875–8.
12. Roulland S, Suarez F, Hermine O, Nadel B. Pathophysiological aspects of memory B-cell development. Trends Immunol 2008;29(1);25–33.
13. Berek C, Berger A, Apel M. Maturation of the immune response in germinal centers. Cell 1991;67(6);1121–9.
14. Harris N. Tumours of Haematopoietic and Lymphoild Tissues; 2001.
15. Klein U, Goossens T, Fischer M, Kanzler H, Braeuninger A, Rajewsky K, et al. Somatic hypermutation in normal and transformed human B cells. Immunol Rev 1998;162: 261–80.
16. Hummel M, Tamaru J, Kalvelage B, Stein H. Mantle cell (previously centrocytic) lymphomas express VH genes with no or very little somatic mutations like the physiologic cells of the follicle mantle. Blood 1994;84(2);403–7.
17. Fais F, Ghiotto F, Hashimoto S, Sellars B, Valetto A, Allen SL, et al. Chronic lymphocytic leukemia B cells express restricted sets of mutated and unmutated antigen receptors. J Clin Invest 1998;102(8);1515–25.
18. Du MQ, Diss TC, Xu CF, Wotherspoon AC, Isaacson PG, Pan LX. Ongoing immunoglobulin gene mutations in mantle cell lymphomas. Br J Haematol 1997;96(1);124–31.
19. Pittaluga S, Tierens A, Pinyol M, Campo E, Delabie J, De Wolf-Peeters C. Blastic variant of mantle cell lymphoma shows a heterogenous pattern of somatic mutations of the rearranged immunoglobulin heavy chain variable genes. Br J Haematol 1998;102(5);1301–6.
20. Klein U, Rajewsky K, Kuppers R. Human immunoglobulin (Ig)M+IgD+ peripheral blood B cells expressing the CD27 cell surface antigen carry somatically mutated variable region genes: CD27 as a general marker for somatically mutated (memory) B cells. J Exp Med 1998;188(9); 1679–89.
21. Klein U, Dalla-Favera R. Germinal centres: role in B-cell physiology and malignancy. Nat Rev Immunol 2008;8(1);22–33.
22. Cattoretti G, Chang CC, Cechova K, Zhang J, Ye BH, Falini B, et al. BCL-6 protein is expressed in germinal-center B cells. Blood 1995;86(1);45–53.
23. Harris NL, Nadler LM, Bhan AK. Immunohistologic characterization of two malignant lymphomas of germinal center type (centroblastic/centrocytic and centrocytic) with monoclonal antibodies. Follicular and diffuse lymphomas of small-cleaved-cell type are related but distinct entities. Am J Pathol 1984;117(2);262–72.
24. MacLennan IC. Germinal centers. Annu Rev Immunol 1994;12:117–39.
25. MacLennan IC, Liu YJ, Oldfield S, Zhang J, Lane PJ. The evolution of B-cell clones. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 1990;159:37–63.
26. Pasqualucci L, Migliazza A, Fracchiolla N, William C, Neri A, Baldini L, et al. BCL-6 mutations in normal germinal center B cells: evidence of somatic hypermutation acting outside Ig loci. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1998;95(20);11816–21.
27. Bahler DW, Levy R. Clonal evolution of a follicular lymphoma: evidence for antigen selection. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1992;89(15);6770–4.
28. Klein U, Klein G, Ehlin-Henriksson B, Rajewsky K, Kuppers R. Burkitt's lymphoma is a malignancy of mature B cells expressing somatically mutated V region genes. Mol Med 1995;1(5);495–505.
29. Butcher EC. Warner-Lambert/Parke-Davis Award lecture. Cellular and molecular mechanisms that direct leukocyte traffic. Am J Pathol 1990;136(1);3–11.

30. Harris NL, Jaffe ES, Stein H, Banks PM, Chan JK, Cleary ML, et al. A revised European-American classification of lymphoid neoplasms: a proposal from the International Lymphoma Study Group. Blood 1994;84(5);1361–92.
31. Alizadeh AA, Eisen MB, Davis RE, Ma C, Lossos IS, Rosenwald A, et al. Distinct types of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma identified by gene expression profiling. Nature 2000;403(6769);503–11.
32. Stevenson FK, Sahota SS, Ottensmeier CH, Zhu D, Forconi F, Hamblin TJ. The occurrence and significance of V gene mutations in B cell-derived human malignancy. Adv Cancer Res 2001;83:81–116.
33. Kuppers R, Klein U, Hansmann ML, Rajewsky K. Cellular origin of human B-cell lymphomas. N Engl J Med 1999;341(20);1520–9.
34. Willis TG, Dyer MJ. The role of immunoglobulin translocations in the pathogenesis of B-cell malignancies. Blood 2000;96(3);808–22.
35. Kuppers R, Dalla-Favera R. Mechanisms of chromosomal translocations in B cell lymphomas. Oncogene 2001;20(40);5580–94.
36. Meffre E, Papavasiliou F, Cohen P, de Bouteiller O, Bell D, Karasuyama H, et al. Antigen receptor engagement turns off the V(D)J recombination machinery in human tonsil B cells. J Exp Med 1998;188(4);765–72.
37. Han S, Dillon SR, Zheng B, Shimoda M, Schlissel MS, Kelsoe G. V(D)J recombinase activity in a subset of germinal center B lymphocytes. Science 1997;278(5336); 301–5.
38. Han S, Zheng B, Schatz DG, Spanopoulou E, Kelsoe G. Neoteny in lymphocytes: Rag1 and Rag2 expression in germinal center B cells. Science 1996;274(5295);2094–7.
39. Goossens T, Klein U, Kuppers R. Frequent occurrence of deletions and duplications during somatic hypermutation: implications for oncogene translocations and heavy chain disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1998;95(5);2463–8.
40. Muschen M, Re D, Jungnickel B, Diehl V, Rajewsky K, Kuppers R. Somatic mutation of the CD95 gene in human B cells as a side-effect of the germinal center reaction. J Exp Med 2000;192(12);1833–40.
41. Migliazza A, Martinotti S, Chen W, Fusco C, Ye BH, Knowles DM, et al. Frequent somatic hypermutation of the 5' noncoding region of the BCL6 gene in B-cell lymphoma. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1995;92(26);12520–4.
42. Gronbaek K, Straten PT, Ralfkiaer E, Ahrenkiel V, Andersen MK, Hansen NE, et al. Somatic Fas mutations in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: association with extranodal disease and autoimmunity. Blood 1998;92(9);3018–24.
43. Gelmann EP, Clanton DJ, Jariwalla RJ, Rosenthal LJ. Characterization and location of myc homologous sequences in human cytomegalovirus DNA. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1983;80(16);5107–11.
44. Dalla-Favera R, Westin E, Gelmann EP, Martinotti S, Bregni M, Wong-Staal F, et al. The human onc gene c-myc: structure, expression, and amplification in the human promyelocytic leukemia cell line HL-60. Haematol Blood Transfus 1983;28:247–54.
45. McKeithan TW, Takimoto GS, Ohno H, Bjorling VS, Morgan R, Hecht BK, et al. BCL3 rearrangements and t(14;19) in chronic lymphocytic leukemia and other B-cell malignancies: a molecular and cytogenetic study. Genes Chromosomes Cancer 1997;20(1);64–72.
46. Baron BW, Nucifora G, McCabe N, Espinosa R, 3rd, Le Beau MM, McKeithan TW. Identification of the gene associated with the recurring chromosomal translocations t(3;14)(q27;q32) and t(3;22)(q27;q11) in B-cell lymphomas. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1993;90(11); 5262–6.
47. Iida S, Rao PH, Nallasivam P, Hibshoosh H, Butler M, Louie DC, et al. The t(9;14)(p13;q32) chromosomal translocation associated with lymphoplasmacytoid lymphoma involves the PAX-5 gene. Blood 1996;88(11); 4110–7.
48. Deyrup AT. Epstein-Barr virus-associated epithelial and mesenchymal neoplasms. Hum Pathol 2008;39(4);473–83.
49. Kuppers R. B cells under influence: transformation of B cells by Epstein-Barr virus. Nat Rev Immunol 2003;3(10); 801–12.
50. Magrath I. The pathogenesis of Burkitt's lymphoma. Adv Cancer Res 1990;55:133–270.
51. Brady G, MacArthur GJ, Farrell PJ. Epstein-Barr virus and Burkitt lymphoma. J Clin Pathol 2007;60(12);1397–402.
52. Hemann MT, Bric A, Teruya-Feldstein J, Herbst A, Nilsson JA, Cordon-Cardo C, et al. Evasion of the p53 tumour surveillance network by tumour-derived MYC mutants. Nature 2005;436(7052);807–11.
53. Laurent C, Meggetto F, Brousset P. Human herpesvirus 8 infections in patients with immunodeficiencies. Hum Pathol 2008;39(7);983–93.
54. Raphael M. World Health Organization Classification of Tumors Pathology and genetics of Tumours of the Haematopoietic and Lymphoid Tisuue; 2001, IARC, Lyon.
55. Guasparri I, Keller SA, Cesarman E. KSHV vFLIP is essential for the survival of infected lymphoma cells. J Exp Med 2004;199(7);993–1003.
56. Nador RG, Cesarman E, Chadburn A, Dawson DB, Ansari MQ, Sald J, et al. Primary effusion lymphoma: a distinct clinicopathologic entity associated with the Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpes virus. Blood 1996;88(2); 645–56.
57. Vaandrager JW, Schuuring E, Kluin-Nelemans HC, Dyer MJ, Raap AK, Kluin PM. DNA fiber fluorescence in situ hybridization analysis of immunoglobulin class switching in B-cell neoplasia: aberrant CH gene rearrangements in follicle center-cell lymphoma. Blood 1998;92(8); 2871–8.
58. Suarez F, Lortholary O, Hermine O, Lecuit M. Infection-associated lymphomas derived from marginal zone B cells: a model of antigen-driven lymphoproliferation. Blood 2006;107(8);3034–44.
59. Wotherspoon AC, Ortiz-Hidalgo C, Falzon MR, Isaacson PG. Helicobacter pylori-associated gastritis and primary B-cell gastric lymphoma. Lancet 1991;338(8776);1175–6.
60. Hussell T, Isaacson PG, Crabtree JE, Spencer J. Helicobacter pylori-specific tumour-infiltrating T cells provide contact dependent help for the growth of malignant B cells in low-grade gastric lymphoma of mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue. J Pathol 1996;178(2);122–7.
61. Ferry JA. Extranodal lymphoma. Arch Pathol Lab Med 2008;132(4);565–78.
62. Ehrenfeld M, Abu-Shakra M, Buskila D, Shoenfeld Y. The dual association between lymphoma and autoimmunity. Blood Cells Mol Dis 2001;27(4);750–6.

63. Kuppers R. Mechanisms of B-cell lymphoma pathogenesis. Nat Rev Cancer 2005;5(4);251–62.
64. Voulgarelis M, Moutsopoulos HM. Malignant lymphoma in primary Sjogren's syndrome. Isr Med Assoc J 2001;3(10);761–6.
65. Shaffer AL, Rosenwald A, Hurt EM, Giltnane JM, Lam LT, Pickeral OK, et al. Signatures of the immune response. Immunity 2001;15(3);375–85.
66. Levens D. Disentangling the MYC web. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2002;99(9);5757–9.
67. Ye BH, Cattoretti G, Shen Q, Zhang J, Hawe N, de Waard R, et al. The BCL-6 proto-oncogene controls germinal-centre formation and Th2-type inflammation. Nat Genet 1997;16(2);161–70.
68. Weiss LM, Warnke RA, Sklar J, Cleary ML. Molecular analysis of the t(14;18) chromosomal translocation in malignant lymphomas. N Engl J Med 1987;317(19);1185–9.
69. Dierlamm J, Baens M, Wlodarska I, Stefanova-Ouzounova M, Hernandez JM, Hossfeld DK, et al. The apoptosis inhibitor gene API2 and a novel 18q gene, MLT, are recurrently rearranged in the t(11;18)(q21;q21) associated with mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphomas. Blood 1999;93(11);3601–9.
70. Dalla-Favera R, Martinotti S, Gallo RC, Erikson J, Croce CM. Translocation and rearrangements of the c-myc oncogene locus in human undifferentiated B-cell lymphomas. Science 1983;219(4587);963–7.
71. Akasaka T, Akasaka H, Ueda C, Yonetani N, Maesako Y, Shimizu A, et al. Molecular and clinical features of non-Burkitt's, diffuse large-cell lymphoma of B-cell type associated with the c-MYC/immunoglobulin heavy-chain fusion gene. J Clin Oncol 2000;18(3);510–18.
72. Maeshima AM, Omatsu M, Nomoto J, Maruyama D, Kim SW, Watanabe T, et al. Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma after transformation from low-grade follicular lymphoma: morphological, immunohistochemical, and FISH analyses. Cancer Sci 2008;99(9);1760–8.
73. Shaffer AL, Yu X, He Y, Boldrick J, Chan EP, Staudt LM. BCL-6 represses genes that function in lymphocyte differentiation, inflammation, and cell cycle control. Immunity 2000;13(2);199–212.
74. Delves PJ, Roitt IM. The immune system: first of two parts. N Engl J Med, July 6, 2000;343(1);37–49.
75. Shaffer AL, Rosenwald A, Staudt LM. Lymphoid malignancies: the dark side of B-cell differentiation. Nat Rev Immunol 2002;2(12);920–32.

Chapter 8

Pediatric Cancer Mechanisms of Cancer Growth and Progression

Enid Gilbert-Barness and Pawini Khanna

Contents

E. Gilbert-Barness (✉)
University of South Florida College of Medicine, at Tampa General Hospital, Tampa, FL, USA
e-mail: egilbert@tgh.org

8.1 Introduction

The multiplication of all cells in normal tissue is limited. The genetic propensity for growth is such that a certain size, once reached, is maintained without further increase. If mutations change the genetic potentialities, or if the environment is altered, such limitation may be lost and a malignant tumor produced. No tumor of the adult grows as rapidly as the normal embryo. Especially in the early stages of development, normal embryonic cells may have some of the characteristics of neoplastic cells.

It is often only from knowledge of the postnatal course of a tumor that proof can be obtained of its malignancy. Neuroblastomas are usually considered malignant, but many are observed in which neuroblasts differentiated postnatally into mature ganglion cells and did not behave as those of a malignant tumor. Neuroblastomatous tissue has been found widely distributed throughout the liver and abdominal cavity at birth and has sometimes been considered to be of metastatic origin. However, since neuroblasts are normally present in the liver and other parts of the embryo, it is more probable that these cells are subject to the same stimulus responsible for the more massive proliferation considered as the primary tumor, but are of local origin rather than disseminated from the principal tumor.

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_8,

Neoplasms in the fetus and infant are not entirely the same as those in the adult; the types, incidence, clinical features, behavior, and response to treatment are different [1–13].

8.2 Teratomas

Teratomas arise from foci of plastic pluripotential embryonic tissue that has escaped from the influence of the primary organizer during early embryonic development, this escape being in some way related to disturbances emanating from the invaginating organizing tissues of the primitive streak and so affecting median or paramedian parts in close relationship to these tissues [9]. As it grows, the affected primordium shows no effect of a primary organizer but differentiates in accordance with its own labile determinations, producing a variety of tissues foreign to the part from which they grow. Willis believed that most well-studied teratoid tumors can be distinguished easily as teratomas or abortive fetuses, but he admitted that in rare cases differentiation may be very difficult [9].

8.3 Malignant Tumors

Continued growth without maturation of certain cells that are normally present during embryonic development, but that usually mature after birth, is responsible for many malignant congenital tumors. Wilms tumors are derived from the metanephric blastema that has lost its propensity for differentiation but not for growth. Neuroblastomas of the adrenal gland come from cells that arise in the neural crest and wander into the gland early in embryonic life. Normally these cells differentiate into chromaffin tissue, but occasionally the transformation fails to take place, and a proliferation without differentiation produces a neuroblastoma.

Other tumors that occur predominantly in the first year of life and have certain features of embryonic growth include embryonic sarcomas, yolk sac tumors of the testis, hepatoblastomas, and medulloblastomas of the brain. Some teratomas of the sacrococcygeal and retroperitoneal regions can be included with those having an overgrowth of embryonic components that fail to mature. The cells of many sarcomas resemble immature fibroblasts and are also a result of failure of maturation coupled with an excessive stimulus for growth.

8.4 Incidence

The most common malignancies noted at birth are, in order, neuroblastoma, leukemia, sarcomas, and brain tumors [1, 11, 13–15]. Leukemia-lymphoma, brain tumors, neuroblastoma, and soft tissue sarcomas, in decreasing order of occurrence, are the more common neoplasms noted in older children and adolescents under 15 years of age [16].

8.5 Etiology

Several etiologies have been suggested: viral infections in-utero, maternal drugs and irradiation, congenital malformations, chromosomal defects, and cancer-causing genes [17]. This problem lies at the molecular level in the gene [18–20].

8.6 Environmental Factors

Some drugs associated with congenital malignancies; for example, hydantoin and alcohol are prenatal carcinogens. Neuroblastoma has been described in association with both the fetal hydantoin and fetal alcohol syndromes [21]. Diethylstilbestrol (DES) exposure in-utero may result in vaginal clear cell adenocarcinoma. Some studies [22] suggest a possible increased risk of malignant tumors after in-utero exposure to certain viral agents such as varicella, influenza, rubella, cytomegalovirus, and human immunodeficiency virus. Exposure to therapeutic agents like chemotherapy and ionizing radiation, elevates the risk of a second malignancy especially CNS tumors [23]. The cumulative incidence of secondary brain tumors after irradiation to craniospinal axis as a treatment for ALL is reported to be approximately 20 times greater than that seen in non-cancer control

populations [24–26]. A diagnosis of a genetic disorder also increases the risk of malignancy.

8.7 Mechanisms in Carcinogenesis

Cancer is an uncontrolled growth of cells resulting from an alteration in their DNA That produces a deregulation of their normal growth [18]. The altered cell changes to a malignant cell, becomes independent of normal regulatory control, and multiplies, producing a clone of cancer cells that subsequently develops into a neoplasm. There are several mechanisms, occurring as single or multiple events, by which the DNA of a normal cell becomes transformed into a cancer cell; this process is termed carcinogenesis. The known mechanisms include point mutations in DNA (the replacement of a single correct DNA sequence within a gene by an incorrect one), gene deletions (loss of a large amount of DNA resulting in loss of all or part of the gene), and chromosomal translocations with gene rearrangements (the broken ends of the DNA from two different chromosomes may be joined incorrectly, resulting in parts of each chromosome being exchanged) [18].

8.8 Chromosme Translocations

Lejeune's recognition of trisomy 21 in Down syndrome, predicted the many steps at which altered gene expression can produce abnormal tissue growth (neoplasia) or development (congenital anomalies). The similarities between molecular embryology and molecular oncology are strengthened by anomaly patterns (syndromes) that include cancer predisposition [e.g., Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome (BWS), neurofibromatosis-1], the dual roles of many proto-oncogene/tumor suppressor genes as developmental genes (e.g., PAX/C-KIT genes in Waardenburg syndrome/Piebald trait), and the stepwise progression from primary mutation, environmental factor, epigenetic change to multifactorial (e.g., HOX genes in human leukemias and limb defects).

The number of chromosomal rearrangements and gene mutations associated with tumors is now so great that almost every cancer patient undergoes some sort of molecular or cytogenetic testing. The same progression from chromosome anomaly to causative breakpoint to cancer/tumor suppressor gene can now be followed for most developmental anomalies, and epigenesis is a central factor in both neoplasia and development [27, 28].

About one-half of the 6,422 Mendelian and multifactorial disorders in the literature involve altered morphogenesis, including over 800 with neoplasia.

Molecular diagnosis of birth defects is as powerful as that for neoplasia. Fluorescent karyotyping and gene expression profiling of single cells [29] is a reality for both fields.

Chromosome analysis is now merging with DNA chips to provide telomere or array analyses, capable of defining subtle deletion/duplication of any chromosome segment by its altered fluorescent pattern of chip representation.

Alveolar rhabdomyosarcoma (RMS) is associated with a recurring chromosomal translocation, t(2;13) in about 50% of cases. This chromosomal rearrangement results in the fusion of a developmentally regulated gene, PAX3, with a member of the fork head family of genes now termed FKHR. The resultant PAX3/FKHR gene is associated in all cases with alveolar RMS, has not been described in any other malignancy, and thus appears to be diagnostic of this tumor. Variations such as t(1;13) may also be found in alveolar RMS when PAX3 located on chromosome 2 is replaced by a related gene, PAX7 on chromosome 1. Both types of gene fusion are etiologic and specific for alveolar RMS [30].

Translocation t(11;22)(q24;q12) is found in at least 85% of cases of Ewing/PNET group of neuroectodermal tumors [31]. This group includes Ewing sarcoma of bone and soft tissue, Askin tumor of the chest wall, peripheral neuroepithelioma, primitive neuroectodermal tumor (PNET), and esthesioneuroblastoma (olfactory neuroblastoma). The translocation results in the fusion of an RNA-binding gene, termed EWS,5' to a known oncogene, FLI-1 (for Friend erythroleukemia virus integration site). A variant t(21;22) occurs when FLI-1 replaces 3' of EWS by ERG, from chromosome 21. Over 95% of Ewing/PNET tumors have demonstrable fusion of EWS with an ETS family oncogene, and this Ewing/PNET and its family are not defined by a single molecular genetic defect.

The intraabdominal desmoplastic small round cell tumor has a t(11;22) but distinct from the Ewing/PNET t(11;22) as 22q12 is fused with 11p13 [32].

8.9 Genomic Imprinting

Genomic imprinting occurs in embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma [33]. There appears to be dysregulated gene expression in the chromosomal region 11p15.5. Both maternal and paternal alleles of the same gene are inappropriately expressed. In Wilms tumor and Wiedemann-Beckwith syndrome, both display abnormal expression of growth-associated growth factor IGF2, secondary to "de-imprinting" or possibly loss of normal allelic suppression secondary to loss of genomic imprinting. P53 mutations appear only in anaplastic Wilms with a known poorer prognosis [34]. The details of genomic imprinting and loss of imprinting are discussed later in this chapter.

8.10 Proto-oncogenes and Oncogenes

Proto-oncogenes encode a variety of cellular proteins involved in a normal cell growth, proliferation and differentiation. These include growth factors, growth factor receptors, intracellular transducers and nuclear transcription factors. They have distinctive spatial and temporal expression patterns in developing organs, and this supports the view that they have important functions in organogenesis. The role of mutations in these genes in the development of many neoplasms is now well recognized. Oncogenes impart to the tumor cell certain properties such as growth advantage, rapid proliferation, and the ability to metastasize [19, 35, 36]. One example is the N-myc oncogene, which is normally expressed in developing organs and tissues and in certain tumor systems (e.g., neuroblastoma, retinoblastoma). The product of the N-myc gene is a nuclear protein, which is produced in increased amounts (or amplified) in dividing embryonic cells and in some tumor cells. The presence of amplification of an oncogene product, e.g., in a neuroblastoma specimen, is used as an indicator of a poor prognosis, since N-myc amplification is associated with an advanced stage of disease and an unfavorable outcome in neuroblastoma patients [35].

8.11 Anti-oncogenes

Anti-oncogenes, which suppress the formation of malignant tumors, have been identified [18, 37] (Table 8.1). One example of an antioncogene is the retinoblastoma gene (Rb). Individuals with the loss of one or both of these two protective genes have an increased susceptibility to retinoblastoma. An important relationship exists between the integrity (homozygosity) of the 13q14 Rb gene and the development of certain childhood cancers [35, 36]. The findings indicate that both copies of the 13q14 Rb gene must be

Table 8.1 Tumor suppressor genes involved in human neoplasms (From: Isaacs [41])

Gene	Chromosomal location	Neoplasms associated with somatic mutations	Neoplasms associated with inherited (germ-line) mutations
WT-1	11p13	Wilms tumor	Wilms tumor
p53	17p13.1	Most human cancers	Li-Fraumeni syndrome: carcinomas of breast and adrenal cortex; sarcomas; leukemias; brain tumors
APC	5q21	Carcinomas of colon, stomach and pancreas	Familial adenomatous polyposis coli; carcinomas of colon
DCC	18q21	Carcinomas colon and stomach	Unknown
VHL	3p25	Renal cell carcinoma	von Hippel-Lindau disease: retinal and cerebellar hemangioblastomas; renal cell carcinomas; angiomas and cysts of many visceral organs
NF-1	17q11	Schwannomas	Neurofibromatosis type 1; neural tumors
NF-2	22q12	Schwannomas and meningiomas	Neurofibromatosis type 2; central (acoustic) schwannomas; meningiomas
Rb	13q14	Retinoblastoma; osteosarcoma; carcinomas of breast, bladder, prostate, and lung	Retinoblastoma; osteosarcoma

altered in some way (by loss, inactivation, mutation, or deletion) before a tumor can develop. If the individual acquires a defective 13q14 gene from either parent, he or she is heterozygous for the altered gene and is a carrier for the gene. However before tumorigenesis results, a second event (or "hit") must occur, i.e., both retinoblastoma genes must be altered [38]. Furthermore, inheritance of a faulty copy of one allele at the 13q14 locus makes the individual susceptible to cancer. When the second allele becomes altered, deleted, or inactivated at the 13q14 locus, tumorigenesis occurs with the development of retinoblastoma at an early age. Second malignancies such as osteosarcoma appear later [36, 39].

An important relationship exits between certain congenital malformations and syndromes and the development of neoplasms [3, 17, 40–42] (Tables 8.2, 8.3, and 8.4). An example is the increased occurrence of neoplasms associated with gonadal dysgenesis in patients having a Y chromosome where gonadoblastoma and germinoma arise in the dysgenetic gonads [2, 17, 43]. Wilms tumor, hepatoblastoma and adrenocortical tumors in patients with hemihypertrophy and Wiedemann-Beckwith syndrome are other examples. Aniridia and malformations of the genitourinary tract have been found in infants and children with Wilms tumor [3, 44]. The list of inherited syndromes and conditions associated with an increased risk of tumors expands considerably each year [45].

Several hereditary syndromes characterized by DNA repair defects have been described [17, 18]. These include ataxia telangiectasia (lymphomas), Bloom syndrome (leukemia), Fanconi anemia (leukemia), and xeroderma pigmentosum (skin carcinomas) [17, 18, 20]. Except for ataxia telangiectasia (X-linked), these are autosomal recessive conditions.

Hereditary conditions such as tuberous sclerosis and forms of neurofibromatosis, which are autosomal dominant, predispose the individual to the development of gliomas and malignant schwannoma [1, 17].

8.12 Controlling Gene Expression

Increasing gene expression occurs by increasing the number of DNA copies of that gene (gene amplification). Human folate resistant cell cultures are seen in aggressive neuroblastomas that amplify NMYC. The new controlling mechanisms offer novel means for understanding and manipulating developmental gene regulation. The relevance of new, non-classical pathways which control gene expression is reinforced by progressive DNA expansions/contractions and myriad gene rearrangements characteristic of most cancers.

Table 8.2 Some syndromes and congenital malformations associated with childhood tumors (From: Isaacs [41])

Malformation or syndrome	Neoplasm
Wiedemann-Beckwith syndrome hemihypertrophy	Wilms tumor
	Adrenocortical adenoma
	Adrenocortical carcinoma
	Hepatoblastoma
	Pancreatoblastoma
Aniridia	Wilms tumor
Genitourinary system anomalies and	Nephroblastomatosis
Perlman syndrome	Wilms tumor
Hirschsprung disease	Neuroblastoma
Poland syndrome	Leukemia
Drash syndrome	Wilms tumor
Tuberous sclerosis	Cardiac rhabdyomyoma
	Angiomyolipoma
	Astrocytoma
Multiple endocrine neoplasia	Thyroid medullary carcinoma
(MEN 2)	Pheochromocytoma
	Submucosal neuromas
Nevoid basal cell carcinoma (Gorlin) syndrome	Basal cell carcinoma
	Medulloblastoma
	Ovarian fibroma
Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome	Lymphoma
Bloom syndrome	Leukemia

Table 8.3 Examples of chromosomal abnormalities associated with childhood tumors (From: Isaacs [42])

Chromosomal defect	Childhood tumor
1p del, 1p32-p36 del, double minutes	Neuroblastoma
11p13 del , trisomy 18	Wilms tumor
13q14 del	Retinoblastoma
	Osteosarcoma
Trisomy 21 (Down syndrome)	Leukemia
Monosomy 7	Leukemia and myelodysplasia syndrome
t(11q23), t(1;22), t(9;11)	Leukemia
t(1:22) (p13;q13)	Leukemia
Gonadal dysgenesis (46,XY; 45X/46,XY)	Gonadoblastoma Germinoma
Klinefelter syndrome (XXY)	Teratoma
t(11;22)(q24;q12) t(21;22)	Ewing sarcoma/ PNET
t(11;22) (p13;q12)	Intra-abdominal desmoplastic small round cell tumor
t(2;13)	Alveolar rhabdomyosarcoma
del 1p	Astrocytoma

Table 8.4 Some syndromes that predispose to solid tumors (From: Isaacs [41])

Syndromes	Chromosomal locus	Gene	Tumor
Neurofibromatosis type 1	17q11	NF1	Rhabdomyosarcoma
Wiedemann-Beckwith	11p15.5	Unknown	Wilms tumor Hepatoblastoma
WAGR Denys-Drash	11p13	WT1	Wilms tumor
Adenomatous polyposis coli	5q21	APC	Hepatoblastoma
Hereditary retinoblastoma	13q14	RB1	Retinoblastoma Osteosarcoma
Li-Fraumeni	unknown	p53	Osteosarcoma Rhabdomyosarcoma

WAGR – Wilms tumor, aniridia, genitourinary defects, retardation

8.13 DNA Methylation

Methylation of DNA contributes to cell differentiation, since the changes in DNA structure and expression will be transmitted to all the daughter cells of a progenitor cell. Methylation of promoters probably plays a major role in cellular differentiation during embryogenesis: cells eliminate the transcription of unwanted genes by methylating their promoters.

Methylation inhibits (and occasionally activates) a very large number of genes, including some proto-oncogenes [46]. In cancers, there is often a decreased expression of DNA methyltransferase which leads to a nonspecific demethylation of 5-methylcytosine. It appears that this demethylation can reactivate the expression of proto-oncogenes which thus act as unregulated growth-promoting agents (e.g., oncogenes, telomerases, etc.) and of genes involved in cell migration, leading to the emergence of progressively more aggressive clones (clonal evolution). Abnormal methylation (hence inactivation) of anti-oncogenes similarly plays a major role in cancer.

8.14 Zinc-Fingers

Transcription factors are those with a zinc-finger motif: zinc molecules cause these proteins to have a tertiary structure resembling fingers. The "fingers" bind the promoters of the genes under their control, so as to activate or inhibit them. Zinc finger proteins illustrate the multiple domains that can exist within transcription factors, allowing them to coordinate multiple different expression pathways. WT-1 (the Wilms tumor-1 gene product), the fly developmental gene hunchback, certain hormone and retinoic acid receptors belong to the zinc-finger class of transcription factors.

8.15 Proteomics

As with DNA chip profiling of gene sequences or transcripts, a particular protein population (proteome) can be profiled by shotgun sequencing techniques, microcapillary or two-dimensional electrophoresis, laser technologies, microarrays and mass spectroscopy [47–49]. This field of study is called proteomics.

The use of proteomic technology links the enormous variability in protein populations and structures to the nucleic acid language of genome and RNA. The laborious work of isolating enzymes and the more modern dilemma of predicting protein function from identified genes can now be simplified by characterizing protein groups: proteins defined by housekeeping, signal-response, cell cycle phase, compartment, or differentiation state can be sequenced en masse, then correlated with their gene structure and expression. Protein–protein interactions can be predicted by looking for encoding sequences within cDNAs that predict shared protein motifs; two-hybrid and multiassay methods for determining all protein interactions in yeast or *Drosophila* have been developed [50].

8.16 Differentiation (Epigenetic Control of Gene Expression)

With exceptions of selective rearrangements in certain genes (e.g., T-cell receptor genes), all cells of an organism have the same genetic formation. Differentiation is characterized by the activation of certain genes, and the inactivation of other genes to address specific developmental needs of cells and tissues (e.g., to specify whether ectoblastic cells will become brain, neural crest or epidermis) [51–53]. HOX genes play a major role in cellular differentiation: their proteins bind promoters of developmental genes and activate or inhibit their transcription; this effect is generally irreversible, but in cancer, a loss of inhibition of transcription of these genes can cause cells to de-differentiate [46]. Differentiation and mitotic activity tend to be inversely proportional (the greater the differentiation of a cell population, the lower its proliferation rate); this is also true in cancer. Oncogenesis can be thought of as a deregulation of basic embrylogic mechanisms, which explains the similarities between molecular embryology and molecular oncology.

The master switch or selector genes control fundamental aspects of development; they do so by activating or repressing batteries of subordinate genes. In humans, the actions of master switch genes are illustrated by the MYOD1/MYF5 genes. Subdivision of embryonic domains by homeotic proteins (PAX, HOX) defines which primitive cells will become a certain tissue (e.g., skeletal muscle). When the gene "Myoblast Differentiation-1" (MYOD1) is expressed in primitive mesenchymal cells, it causes them to differentiate into skeletal myocytes. MYOD1 (the gene product) is a transcription factor that binds multiple promoters specific to skeletal muscular differentiation. Thus, a single gene is sufficient to activate and inactive a whole cascade of subordinate genes. Furthermore, MYOD1 recognizes its own promoter, and therefore activates its own transcription in a positive feedback loop fashion. Once a cell activates the transcription of MYOD1, auto-activation causes this cell and its descendants to express MYOD1 forever. From then on, these cells can take no other differentiation path than that of a myocyte. A second gene is available (called MYF5) that performs similar functions to those of MYOD1.

In oncologic states cellular differentiation inhibits mitotic activity. This is also true for the embryo: MYOD1 expression is inversely proportional to myocyte proliferation. Fibroblast growth factor (FGF) acts as a growth factor (proto-oncogene) in myoblasts; FGF down-regulates differentiation (without inhibiting it totally), by down-regulating the transcription of MYOD1 and MYF5, thus partially inhibiting the stimulation of their downstream cascades.

8.17 Loss of Imprinting and Cancer

Genomic imprinting was discovered in the 1980s, and is now recognized to be very important clinically [54–56]. Imprinting is characterized by the differential activation of alleles according to their parental origin, associated with different patterns of DNA methylation. Mammals are diploid organisms, meaning that all somatic cells possess two copies of the genome. Each autosomal gene is therefore represented by two copies, or alleles, with one copy inherited from each parent at fertilization. For the vast majority of autosomal genes, expression may occur from either allele. However, a small proportion (<1%) of genes are imprinted, meaning that expression occurs from only one allele. Imprinting, therefore, is defined as the parental allele-specific expression of a very limited set of genes. This is an epigenetic phenomenon whereby the DNA of the two alleles of a gene is differentially modified so that only one parental allele, parent-specific for each gene, is normally expressed [57]. The expressed allele is dependent upon its parental origin. For example, the gene encoding insulin-like growth factor II (IGF2) is only expressed from the allele inherited from the father. Similarly, human triploidy with two paternal genomes also produces placental tissue (hydatidiform mole), while triploidy with two maternal genomes biases toward fetal tissues (e.g., ovarian teratomas). This regulation depends upon an epigenetic marking of parental alleles during gametogenesis. Monoallelic expression ensures that the levels of the proteins encoded by imprinted genes, such as important factors of embryonic growth, placental growth or adult metabolism, are assured [58]. Mis-regulation of imprinted gene expression or loss of imprinting (LOI) refers to loss of monoallelic gene regulation and concomitant biallelic expression. LOI can cause activation of the normally silent copy of a growth promoting gene such as IGF2, or silencing of the normally active copy of a growth inhibitory gene such as $p57^{KIP2}$ [59].

If one cell of the morula loses one of its extra chromosomes (i.e., reverts from a trisomic to a disomic state), it will generate mosaic embryos with two cell lines, one with a 1/3 chance that both chromosomes of a pair are derived from one parent (uniparental disomy). If one considers an abnormal allele or deletion on one of the parental chromosomes, then two types of uniparental disomy may be considered; disomy for the same parental chromosome (uniparental isodisomy) or disomy where both parental chromosomes are represented (uniparental heterodisomy).

In BWS, partial moles, complete moles, and many cancers, this equilibrium is altered, leading to LOI and IGF2 over-expression. This has been documented in Wilms tumor, Ewing sarcoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, adrenocortical tumors, hepatoblastoma and hepatocellular carcinoma, and pheochromocytoma; note that the incidence of these tumors is greatly increased in BWS, and that placentas of BWS fetuses can show mole-like changes. IGF2 is also overexpressed in partial and complete moles, choriocarcinoma, leukemias, germ cell tumors, as well as bladder, breast, cervical, esophageal, gastric, colorectal, pulmonary, ovarian, prostatic, renal cell and other carcinomas and tumors.

8.18 Cell Proliferation: Proto-oncogenes and Anti-oncogenes

Proto-oncogenes (growth factor) and anti-oncogenes (tumor suppressors), along with their receptors and signaling molecules, interact to exert a physiologic control of cell proliferation in embryonal and adult tissues [2, 9, 60, 61]. Activation and inactivation of these genes is normally very tightly controlled so as to initiate and arrest cell proliferation at appropriate times and locations. During the 4 weeks following fertilization, the number of embryonic cells double every 2–4 days under the control of these proto-/anti-oncogenes. Regional differences in embryonic growth are secondary to differences in oncogenes expression/repression. Mutations in these genes can result in embryonic defects or neoplasia (i.e., as in Fig. 8.1), but few tumors achieve growth rates of the embryonic cells. Well-illustrated explanations of oncogene/tumor suppressor action and regulation are available in pathology texts [62].

8.19 Intercellular Signaling in Development: Sonic Hedgehog (SHH)

Embryonic cellular signaling pathways can be extremely complex, with core molecules that influence

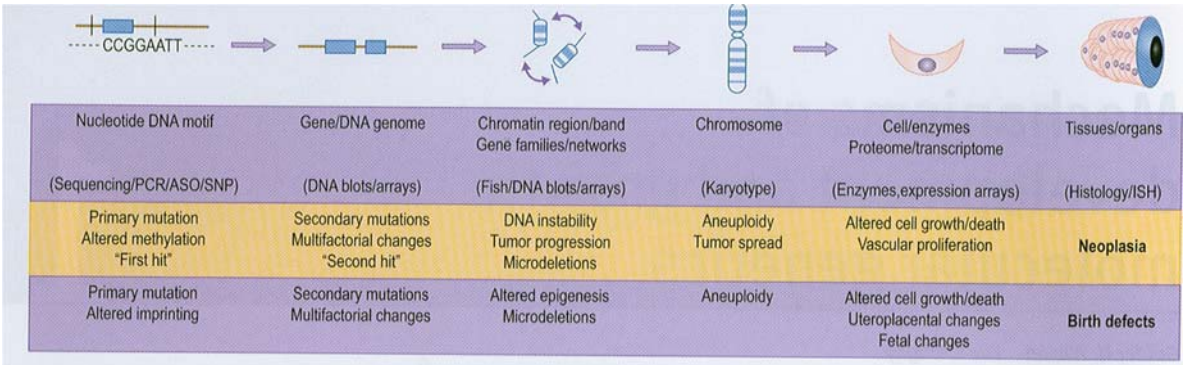


Fig. 8.1 Molecular characterization in development and neoplasia. A developmental pathway from DNA sequence to complex structure is envisioned, with parallel regulatory steps contributing to neoplasia (*middle panel*) or birth defects (From: Wilson and Oligny [133])

the development of multiple organs. A prototype of the SHH pathway (SHH is a member of the hedgehog gene family and is named as a pun from a video game). In the absence of SHH protein, the Patch (PTCH) plasma membrane protein inhibits smoothened (SMO) protein. Binding of SHH with PTCH lifts this inhibition, allowing SMO to activate the SHH cascade, including GL12, GL13, CBP, and SUFU molecules [63, 64]. Mutations involving this cascade can result in a wide range of diseases, including tremors, holoprosencephaly, Greig cephalopolysyndactyly, Pallister-Hall syndrome, Rubinstein-Taybi syndrome, the nevoid basal cell carcinoma syndrome, basal carcinoma, (syndromic and sporadic forms), medulloblastoma, meningiomas, primitive neuroectodermal tumors, breast adenocarcinomas, trichoepitheliomas, squamous cell carcinomas, esophageal carcinomas, fetal rhabdomyomas, and rhabdomosarcomas [63].

8.20 Examples: Sequential Gene Expression in Growth and Neoplasia

Molecular analysis has defined many growth-related molecules through their alteration in tumors [63, 65–71]. The definition of molecular changes that fulfill Knudson's two-hit or two-stage hypothesis has also been reviewed [72]. While Knudson's explanation involved one abnormal RB1 allele from the germline (predisposition or first hit), followed by somatic RB1 gene mutations in susceptible tissue (second hit in retina), epigenetic changes can also be placed on this pathway to neoplasia. This is reflected in the fact that most germline RB1 mutations originate on the paternal chromosome, implying a role for genomic imprinting/DNA methylation. Characterization of the RB1 gene as a cell cycle regulatory element places it within cell proliferation/cell death pathways.

8.20.1 Wilms Tumor

Wilms tumor is a malignant embryonal neoplasm derived from nephrogenic blastemal cells. Several lines of differentiation are commonly seen and often replicate the histology of developing kidneys. Approximately 10% of patients with Wilms tumor have also congenital abnormalities and malformation syndromes. The most common malformations are hemihypertrophy and genitourinary anomalies. The common syndromes associated with Wilms tumor include Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome, WAGR syndrome (Wilms tumor, aniridia, genitourinary abnormalities and mental retardation) and Denys-Drash syndrome (mesangial sclerosis, pseudohermaphroditism and nephroblastoma) [73–77]. Abnormalities involving Wilms tumor locus, 11p13, are consistently found in the tumors of patients with WAGR and Denys-Drash syndrome. The 11p13 Wilms tumor locus encodes two coordinately regulated zinc-fingered transcripts, WT-1 and WIT-1. These genes are highly expressed in the developing urogenital system [78–80]. The WT-1 Protein binds to several sites on promoters of an

insulin-like growth factor (IGF2) gene as well as to a promoter of the platelet-derived growth factor A (PDGF-A) chain gene [81, 82]. The gene controls mesenchymal-epithelial transition during renal development. Furthermore, WT-1 Expression induces transcription of one of the seven proapoptotic genes, *Bak*, and blocks cellular proliferation and DNA synthesis [83]. Interference with these normal regulatory influences of WT-1 may be an important factor in the genesis of nephroblastoma, which expresses high levels of IGF2 [84] and may also overproduce PDGF [85]. The expression patters of WT-1 and Pax-2 in the metanephros overlap to a considerable extent, however, expression of WT1 peaks as that of Pax-2 is decreasing. It is, therefore, possible that WT-1 represses Pax-2, and Pax-2 expression fails to down regulate in the epithelial component of Wilms tumor and in nephroblastomatosis, the putative precursor of nephroblastoma [86]. Despite the strong association of WT1 mutations with Wilms tumor predisposition, WT-1 is mutated in only a minority of sporadic Wilms tumors [87]. This low prevalence of WT-1 abnormalities in sporadic Wilms tumor led to the recognition of genes other than WT-1 in its pathogenesis. Evidence supporting this is provided by the linkage of familial Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome to a locus at chromosome 11p15, designated WT-2 [88, 89]. The preferential loss of maternal allele at this locus in cases of sporadic nephroblastoma suggest that genomic imprinting is involved in the pathogenesis of some of these tumors [90]. Approximately 1% of the patients with Wilms tumor have positive family history for the same neoplasm. Most of the pedigrees suggest autosomal dominant transmission with variable penetrance and expressivity. This suggests that genetic loci other than WT-1 and WT-2 are responsible for the pathogenesis of many familial as well as sporadic Wilms tumors [91, 92].

8.20.2 Beckwith-Wiedemann Syndrome

Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome (BWS) and its related tumors are an excellent example of loss of imprinting. BWS is a clinically heterogeneous disorder, first described four decades ago as a disorder of growth regulation manifesting as somatic overgrowth, congenital malformations and tumor predisposition. The majority of cases are sporadic, however, a small number of pedigrees with autosomal dominant inheritance demonstrated linkage to 11p15.5 [93, 94]. Genomic imprinting in the phenotype was suggested by the preferential loss of maternal alleles in BWS and related tumors [95]. BWS is associated with abnormal transcription and regulation of genes associated with cell cycle and growth control in the imprinted domain on chromosome 11p15.5. The imprinted cluster of genes on chromosome 11p15.5 contains at least 12 imprinted genes. The chromosome 11p15.5 region has been divided into two distinct domains that are thought to be regulated by two imprinting centers separated by a non-imprinted region [96–101]. Domain 1 is telomeric and contains the imprinted genes H19 and IGF2, which are controlled by imprinting center called DMR1 (differentially methylated region 1). DMR1 is normally methylated on the paternal allele and unmethylated on the maternal allele. Regulation of transcription is accomplished by binding of the zinc-finger insulator protein CTCF to its consensus sequence within DMR1. CTCF only binds to unmethylated sequence (maternal allele) and interferes with downstream enhancers interacting with the IGF2 promoters [56]. Domain 2 is centromeric and contains the imprinted genes CDKN1C, KCNQ1, and KCNQ1OT1. Regulation of this domain is controlled by an imprinting center, DMR2 [102] (Fig. 8.2). A brief description of the major imprinted genes associated with BWS is given in the following section.

Imprinted genes associated with BWS.

8.20.2.1 IGF2

This is a potent embryonic growth factor. It is a paternally expressed imprinted gene. In mammals, it controls cell number [103]. Ablation of IGF2 results in newborn animals of approximately 60% of normal weight, while upregulation of IGF2 by twofold yields animals with 131% of wild-type values [104, 105]. Disruption of IGF2 imprinting resulting in biallelic expression and its upregulation can result in overproliferation defects, including BWS [106], expansion of colonic crypts and nephrogenic rests in kidney, as well as in multiple tumors, including Wilms tumor [107–109].

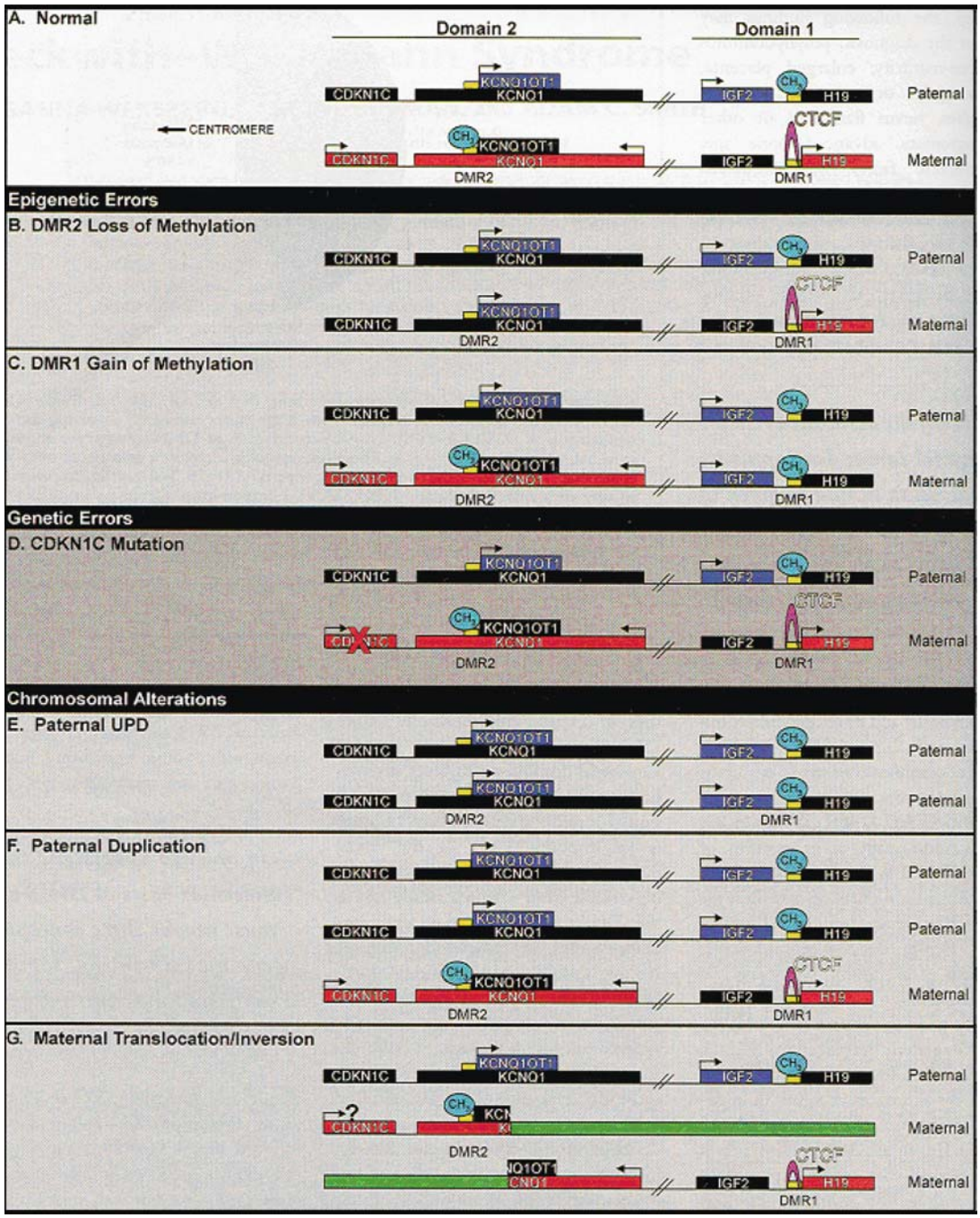


Fig. 8.2 (**a**) Imprinted gene cluster on chromosome 11p15 illustrating selected genes. *Red boxes* represent maternally expressed alleles and *blue boxes* represent paternally expressed alleles. *Arrows* represent the direction of transcription. *Black boxes* denote imprinted alleles that are not expressed. *Yellow boxes* denote the location of differentially methylated imprinting centers 1 and 2 (DMR1 and DMR2). *Light blue circles* with CH_3 represent DNA methylation. Two *diagonal lines* represent an interval of genetic distance not shown. Insulator protein CTCF is shown in *purple*. (**b**) Loss of methylation at DMR2 of BWS patients result in two copies of paternal epigenotype for domain 2. (**c**) Gain of methylation at DMR1 results in H-19 dependent IGF2 biallelic expression with loss of H-19 expression, i.e., two copies of paternal genotype for domain 1. (**d**) Shows mutations in CDKN1C. (**e**) Shows paternal UPD. Patients have two copies of the paternal epigenotypeDomains for 1 and 2. (**f**) Rare paternal duplications (<1%) carry two copies of the paternal genotype and one copy of the maternal genotype. (**g**) Translocations/inversions (<1%) of maternal origin seen in BWS. The epigenotypes are not yet well characterized (From: Weksberg et al. [102])

8.20.2.2 H19

This maternally expressed gene encodes a biologically active non-translated mRNA that may function as a tumor suppressor [110]. Changes in H19 expression or methylation have been reported in cases of BWS [111].

8.20.2.3 CDKN1C

This is a member of the cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor family, which acts to negatively regulate cell proliferation. This gene is both a tumor suppressor gene and a potential negative regulator of fetal growth. Mutation in this gene have been reported in approximately 5–10% of BWS cases. CDKN1C mutations are found more frequently in cases with omphalocele, cleft palate, and positive family history. However, not all cases of vertical transmission of BWS can currently be ascribed to mutations in CDKN1C [112–114] .

8.20.2.4 KCNQ1

The KCNQ1 gene product forms part of a potassium channel and has also been implicated in at least two cardiac arrhythmia syndromes, Romano-Ward syndrome and Jervell and Lange-Nielsen syndrome. This gene is maternally expressed in most tissues (excluding the heart) and has four alternatively spliced transcripts, two of which are untranslated.

8.20.2.5 KCNQ1OT1

This is an anti-sense transcript which originates intron 10 of KvLQT1. Loss of imprinting occurs in the 5' differentially methylated region (KvDMR) of KCNQ1OT1 in 50–60% of individuals with BWS [115, 116].

8.20.2.6 Other Imprinted Genes

PHLDA2 (also known as IPL, HLDA2, or BWR1C) and SLC22A18 (also known as TSSC5, BWR1A, or ITM) are two identified imprinted genes in the 11p15 region [117, 118]. Both genes show preferential maternal expression in the fetus and are located centromeric to CDKN1C. While neither gene has been directly implicated in BWS, both are hypothesized to have negative growth regulatory functions. PHLDA2 has sequence similarity to PHLDA1 (TDAG51), a gene involved in mediating apoptosis [117], and SLC22A18 mutations have been identified in breast cancer and rhabdomyosarcoma cell lines [119].

8.21 Defects of Differentiation and CNS Tumor Syndromes

Defects of cellular and tissue differentiation may arise at any time in the life of the fetus and infant after initial morphogenesis. Since morphogenesis involves fields, i.e. morphogenetic units consisting of several types of tissues or their precursors, and occur 10–14 days before tissue differentiation, most malformations are histologically normal and few defects disrupt morphogenesis. Teratomas are an important exception. Although genetic factors account for only a minority of childhood CNS tumors, the incidences of particular type of CNS tumors are greatly increased in some tumor syndromes. All of these CNS tumor syndromes share autosomal dominant inheritance.

8.21.1 Neurofibromatosis Type 1 (NF1)

NF1 has an incidence of 1:4,000. The responsible gene is located on chromosome 17q12 [120]. NF1 is frequently associated with optic pathway gliomas in children [121]. Histologically vast majority of these tumors are pilocytic astrocytomas, although diffuse astrocytoma and glioblastomas are also described.

8.21.2 Neurofibromatosis Type 2 (NF2)

This is more commonly associated with adult CNS tumors than with pediatric CNS malignancies. The responsible gene is located on chromosome 22q12.2, encoding a product known as merlin or schwannomin that functions as a tumor suppressor gene. Several types of mutations occur in the gene that lead to the formation of a truncated product. A study by Evans

et al. [122], showed that 18% of patients with NF2 (61/334) presented in the pediatric (0–15 years) age group. Of these, 26 presented with features of vestibular schwannoma, 19 with meningioma and 7 with spinal tumors.

8.21.3 Tuberous Sclerosis (TS)

This disorder complex is characterized by hamartomas and benign neoplastic lesions in the CNS and other organs. There is locus heterogeneity in TS with disease determining genes on chromosomes 9 and 16. The mutant genes occur in small regions of telomeric chromosome bands at 9q34.3, designated as TSC1 (encodes for protein hamartin) and that on chromosome 16 at 16p13.3, designated as TSC2 (encodes for protein tuberin) [123, 124]. Hamartin complexes with tuberin to negatively regulate the cell cycle. Tuberin participates in normal brain development and cardiomyocyte terminal differentiation [125]. The commonest CNS neoplasm in TS is the subependymal giant cell astrocytoma arising from the wall of the lateral ventricles. Other tumors associated with TS include facial angiofibromas, cardiac rhabdomyoma, retinal nodular hamartomas, lymphangiomyomatosis, renal angiomyolipoma, hamartomatous rectal polyps etc.

8.21.4 Von Hippel-Lindau Disease (VHL)

This disease is caused by the mutation of the gene VHL. It is characterized by angiomatosis retinae and hemangioblastomas of the CNS and retina. Hemangioblastomas may also involve the face, adrenals, lungs and liver. Other pathological lesion are renal cell carcinoma, phaeochromocytoma and visceral cysts [6].

8.21.5 Turcot Syndrome

This a heterogenous group of disorder. Both autosomal dominant and recessive inheritance has been described. This syndrome is characterized by the coexistence of colorectal neoplasms with either medulloblastoma (predominantly) or glioblastoma. Some cases are variants of familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP) syndrome, while others are variants of the hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal carcinoma (HNCC) syndrome [126]. At least two defined clinical groupings can be seen within Turcot syndrome. In the first, medulloblastoma is associated with FAP. In these cases, there is mutation in the APC gene, found on chromosome 5q21. The gene encodes a 300 kDa protein that is ubiquitously expressed and modifies the interaction between the beta catenin protein and E-cadherin cell adhesion molecule. In the second clinical group, glioblastoma is seen in patients without FAP, some of whom have HNCC and mutations in DNA mismatch repair genes.

8.21.6 Gorlin Syndrome (Nevoid Basal Cell Carcinoma Syndrome – NBCC)

This is characterized by nevoid basal cell carcinomas and jaw keratocysts, palmar and plantar pits, skeletal abnormalities, ectopic calcifications and ovarian fibromas. The characteristic associated CNS tumor is medulloblastoma, and tends to be of desmoplastic variant histology [127, 128]. The affected gene is PTCH, which lies on chromosome 9q31.

8.21.7 Cowden Syndrome

This is a rare syndrome associated with hamartomatous and neoplastic lesionssuch as dysplastic gangliocytoma of the cerebellum (Lhermitte-Duclos disease), verrucous skin lesions, trichilemmomas, oral mucosa fibromas,, hamartomatous colon polyps, thyroid neoplasms and breast cancer. The affected gene is PTEN/MMAC1, located on chromosome 10q23. The gene product may be involved in cell growth and differentiation [129].

8.21.8 Li-Fraumeni Syndrome (LFS)

This is characterized by the presence of bone or soft tissue sarcomas presenting before the age of 45 years,

with presence of other cancers in the first degree relatives presenting before age 45 years. The pediatric brain tumors associated with LFS are medulloblastoma/PNET, choroid plexus tumor and ependymoma. There are two genetic determinants of LFS. The first is germline mutation of the TP53 gene located at chromosome 17q13. This gene plays a key role in cell cycle control and apoptosis. The second gene is hCHK2 (checkpoint kinase 2), located at chromosome 22q. It has been shown that the gene product of hCHK2 directly phosphorylates p53, indicating its involvement in p53 regulation of DNA damage [130].

8.22 Similarities Between the Embryo and Cancer

As suggested in Fig. 8.1 embryos share many features with cancerous cells [69, 71, 131–133]. Implantation of the embryo and progression of neoplasia both involve invasion of tissues through proteolysis, guidance of cell migration (tumor invasion) by fibroenctins, integrins and other molecules of the extracellular matrix, and secretion of angiotrophic factors to avoid growth-stunting hypoxia.

It has been speculated that cancer cells may modulate their adjacent mesenchyme in ways that favor their metastasis.

Embryos and cancer cells both show rapid cell growth. Blasts double their cell number every 2–4 days in their first 4 weeks, mostly stimulated by proto-oncogenes. Neoplastic growth rates may be less dramatic but have similar signals: regulation cells growth is lost due to mutations activating proto-oncogenes or disrupting tumor suppressors. In carcinogenesis, the disturbed cell growth can result from: overproduction of growth factors; reduced enzymatic degradation of growth factors; mutated oncogene receptors that resist inactivation or become autonomous without need for ligand (the oncogene protein); mutations in other components of signal transduction cascades, as when increased expression of MYC or CDK-4 proteins in the P53-RB cascade stimulates DNA synthesis.

Other common characteristics included extended cell longevity/immortality through activation of telomerase; this enzyme replicates DNA sequences that are unique to ends (telomeres) of chromosomes. The telomeric clusters tend to shorten with each cell division, encoding a timetable for senescence that causes cells to die after a programmed number of cycles. Immortalized cells like those of neoplastic or germline tissues, activate telomerase, which preserves their telomere length and avoids programmed cell death. Cancer cells become like embryonic cells or the stem cells of adult tissues; they outlive and overgrow neighboring somatic cells that cannot replicate their telomeres [131, 132].

Neoplastic cells and embryos are also protected from immunologic responses that would hasten their elimination. The mechanisms responsible for this tolerance are largely unknown, but fibrin may act as an "insulator". Hypercoagulability states, common in paraneoplastic syndromes, would benefit intravascular tumor cells Nitabuch's fibrin layer could also act as a barrier at the placental insertion site. The hypercoagulable state of pregnancy has also been postulated to play a role in eluding the immunologic destruction of the embryo.

The use of the blood circulation for cell migration is used by the germ cells of birds and by hemopoietic cells in mammals. Migrating cells bind to "homing molecules" localized on the surface of endothelial cells. These endothelial molecules are specific to each organ, exemplified by homing molecules in liver endothelial cells that are different from those of other tissues. Only cells with receptors for a specific homing molecule will bind endothelium at that particular site, eventually penetrating the vessel through diapedesis (invasion). Homing molecules are exploited advantageously in bone marrow grafting, where they direct intravenously injected marrow cells to repopulate the marrow. Malignant cells also possess homing receptors, explaining the predilection of tumoral metastasis: colonic adenocarcinoma preferentially spread to liver, breast carcinomas spread to bone, liver, and brain. Despite its vascular perfusion (20% of cardiac output), the kidney is rarely a metastatic target; perhaps cancer cells do not possess the appropriate receptors for renovascular homing molecules.

Another parallel concerns the epigenetic mechanisms of DNA methylation and histone modification, regulating differentiation in the embryo and reactivation of silenced genes in cancer [69, 132]. Epigenetic deregulation of developmentally important genes can also affect imprinted genes; for example, altered imprinting in an adrenocortical carcinoma can lead to overexpression of IGF2 and a loss of H19

expression [68]. Proto-oncogenes may lose silencing signals, being "mutated" to become unregulated oncogenes. Tumor suppressor genes can be pathologically methylated, and thereby inactivated, during the clonal evolution of tumor cells to malignancy. DNA methylation or demethylation can aid tumor progression, prompting "de-differentiation" as a reverse embryology, and these epigenetic alterations can be reversed by drugs in the treatment of cancer [131]. Epigenetic modulation is an early event in colorectal carcinoma, occurring at the early adenoma stage of cancer progression. Though the mechanisms for epigenetic alterations in cancer are poorly understood, they enable neoplastic progression by expression of specific cell adhesion molecules, proteases, angiotrophic factors, telomerase, and apoptotic-inhibiting molecules.

It is apparent that the molecular cascades so perfectly well regulated in embryogenesis can be hijacked by cancer cells to favor their growth, invasion and dissemination. Several "developmental cancer syndromes" are known. For example, in Bloom syndrome, the dosage of BLM protein is crucial to somatic changes in that disorder and to genome instability of those patients' intestinal cells [67]. Inactivation of one BLM allele (haploinsufficiency) causes defective DNA repair with production of a cancer syndrome that predisposes to colorectal cancers. Haploinsufficiency of tumor suppressor genes has been demonstrated in other developmental/cancer syndromes, including ATM in ataxia-telangiectasia, PTCH in basal cell nevus syndrome, and PTEN in Ruvalcaba or Cowden syndrome [67]. The SHH cascade is also crucial to both development and neoplasia, as exemplified by the fact that in humans, abnormal cholesterol synthesis yields an abnormal development of forebrain, and the basal cell nevus syndrome associated with the development of large numbers of basal cell carcinomas. The addition of cholesterol to promote SHH action in forebrain, in addition to the basal nevi is paralleled by farnesylation of RAS which regulates cell proliferation by controlling mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) [66].

The link between CAMs, development, and neoplasia is exemplified by aberrant cell adhesion resulting from the COLLAGEN VII mutations that cause the epidermis-dermis fragility in epidermolysis bullosa [65]. When such mutations preserve the anchoring domain of COLLAGEN VII, COLLAGEN VII promotes squamous cell cancer and allows dermal invasion through its interaction with laminins.

New approaches to birth defects and tumors consider molecular mechanisms behind each step of classical embryogenesis, for these are the vulnerabilities that can be exploited for understanding diagnosis, prevention and therapy.

References

1. Bader JL, Miller RW: US cancer incidence and mortality in the first year of life. *Am J Dis Child* 1979, 133(2): 157–159.
2. Bolande RP: Benignity of neonatal tumors and concept of cancer repression in early life. *Am J Dis Child* 1971, 122(1):12–14.
3. Bolande RP: Neoplasia of early life and its relationships to teratogenesis. *Perspect Pediatr Pathol* 1976, 3:145–183.
4. Crist W, Pullen J, Boyett J, Falletta J, van Eys J, Borowitz M, et al.: Clinical and biologic features predict a poor prognosis in acute lymphoid leukemias in infants: a Pediatric Oncology Group Study. *Blood* 1986, 67(1): 135–140.
5. Young JL, Jr., Ries LG, Silverberg E, Horm JW, Miller RW: Cancer incidence, survival, and mortality for children younger than age 15 years. *Cancer* 1986, 58(2 Suppl):598–602.
6. Potter EL, Craig JM: *Pathology of Fetus and Infant*, 3rd edn. Chicago: Year Book Medical; 1975.
7. Reaman G: *Special Considerations for the Infant with Cancer*, 2nd edn. Philadelphia: Lippincott; 1993.
8. Reaman G, Zeltzer P, Bleyer WA, Amendola B, Level C, Sather H, et al.: Acute lymphoblastic leukemia in infants less than one year of age: a cumulative experience of the Children's Cancer Study Group. *J Clin Oncol* 1985, 3(11):1513–1521.
9. Willis RA: *The Borderland of Embryology and Pathology*. London: Butterworths; 1962.
10. Fernbach DJ, Vietti TJ: *General Aspects of Childhood Cancer*, 3rd edn. St. Louis: Mosby; 1991.
11. Isaacs HJ: *Tumors of the Newborn and Infant*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1991.
12. Berry PJ: *Congenital Tumors*, 2nd edn. Berlin: Springer-Verlag; 1993.
13. Broadbent VA: *Malignant Disease in the Neonate*, 2nd edn. Edinburgh: Churchil Livingstone; 1992.
14. Gale GB, D'Angio GJ, Uri A, Chatten J, Koop CE: Cancer in neonates: the experience at the Children's Hospital of Philadelphia. *Pediatrics* 1982, 70(3):409–413.
15. Isaacs H, Jr.: Neoplasms in infants: a report of 265 cases. *Pathol Annu* 1983, 18 Pt 2:165–214.
16. Werb P, Scurry J, Ostor A, Fortune D, Attwood H: Survey of congenital tumors in perinatal necropsies. *Pathology* 1992, 24(4):247–253.
17. Mulvihill JJ: *Childhood Cancer, Environment and Hereditary*, 2nd edn. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott; 1993.
18. Ross DW: *Introduction to Molecular Medicine*. New York: Springer-Verlag; 1992.

19. Kirsch IR: *Genetics of Pediatric Tumors: The Consequences of Chromosomal Aberrations*, 2nd edn. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott; 1993.
20. Israel MA: *Cancer Cell Biology*, 2nd edn. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott; 1993.
21. Pendergrass TW: Letter: Fetal hydantoin syndrome and neuroblastoma. *Lancet* 1976, 2(7977):150.
22. Fine PE, Adelstein AM, Snowman J, Clarkson JA, Evans SM: Long term effects of exposure to viral infections in utero. *Br Med J (Clin Res Ed)* 1985, 290(6467): 509–511.
23. Little MP, de Vathaire F, Shamsaldin A, Oberlin O, Campbell S, Grimaud E, et al.: Risks of brain tumour following treatment for cancer in childhood: modification by genetic factors, radiotherapy and chemotherapy. *Int J Cancer* 1998, 78(3):269–275.
24. Walter AW, Hancock ML, Pui CH, Hudson MM, Ochs JS, Rivera GK, et al.: Secondary brain tumors in children treated for acute lymphoblastic leukemia at St Jude Children's Research Hospital. *J Clin Oncol* 1998, 16(12):3761–3767.
25. Loning L, Zimmermann M, Reiter A, Kaatsch P, Henze G, Riehm H, et al.: Secondary neoplasms subsequent to Berlin-Frankfurt-Munster therapy of acute lymphoblastic leukemia in childhood: significantly lower risk without cranial radiotherapy. *Blood* 2000, 95(9):2770–2775.
26. Bhatia S, Sather HN, Pabustan OB, Trigg ME, Gaynon PS, Robison LL: Low incidence of second neoplasms among children diagnosed with acute lymphoblastic leukemia after 1983. *Blood* 2002, 99(12):4257–4264.
27. Lengauer C: Cancer. An unstable liaison. *Science* 2003, 300(5618):442–443.
28. Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B: *Familial Cancer Syndromes the Role of Caretakers an Gatekeepers*, 8th edn. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001.
29. Levsky JM, Shenoy SM, Pezo RC, Singer RH: Single-cell gene expression profiling. *Science* 2002, 297(5582): 836–840.
30. Triche TJ: Molecular pathology of soft tissue tumors. In: *United States/Canadian Academy of Pathology Long Course on Soft Tissue Tumors: 1994*; San Francisco; 1994.
31. Triche TJ: *Pathology of Pediatric Malignancies*, 2nd edn. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott; 1993.
32. Biegel JA, Meek RS, Parmiter AH, Conard K, Emanuel BS: Chromosomal translocation t(1;13)(p36;q14) in a case of rhabdomyosarcoma. *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 1991, 3(6):483–484.
33. Tycko B: Genomic imprinting: mechanism and role in human pathology. *Am J Pathol* 1994, 144(3):431–443.
34. Bardeesy N, Falkoff D, Petruzzi MJ, Nowak N, Zabel B, Adam M, et al.: Anaplastic Wilms' tumour, a subtype displaying poor prognosis, harbours p53 gene mutations. *Nat Genet* 1994, 7(1):91–97.
35. Brodeur GM, Seeger RC: Gene amplification in human neuroblastomas: basic mechanisms and clinical implications. *Cancer Genet Cytogenet* 1986, 19(1–2):101–111.
36. Murphree AL, Munier FL: *Retinoblastoma*, vol. 1, 2nd edn. St. Louis: Mosby; 1994.
37. Harris CC, Hollstein M: Clinical implications of the p53 tumor-suppressor gene. *N Engl J Med* 1993, 329(18):1318–1327.
38. Knudson AG, Jr.: Retinoblastoma: a prototypic hereditary neoplasm. *Semin Oncol* 1978, 5(1):57–60.
39. Friend SH, Bernards R, Rogelj S, Weinberg RA, Rapaport JM, Albert DM, et al.: A human DNA segment with properties of the gene that predisposes to retinoblastoma and osteosarcoma. *Nature* 1986, 323(6089): 643–646.
40. Benish BM: Letter: "The neurocristopathies: a unifying concept of disease arising in neural crest development". *Hum Pathol* 1975, 6(1):128.
41. Isaacs HJ: Tumors. In: *Potter's Pathology of the Fetus and Infant*, Gilbert-Barness EF, Ed., vol. 2. Philadelphia: Mosby Year Book Inc.; 1997.
42. Isaacs HJ: Introduction to Tumors. In: *Potter's Pathology of Fetus, Infant and Child*, Gilbert-Barness E, Ed., vol. 2, 2nd edn. New York: Elsevier; 2007.
43. Ablin A, Isaacs HJ: *Germ Cell Tumors*, 2nd edn. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott; 1993.
44. Palmer N, Evans AE: The association of aniridia and Wilms' tumor: methods of surveillance and diagnosis. *Med Pediatr Oncol* 1983, 11(2):73–75.
45. McKusick VA: *Mendelian Inheritance in Man: Catalogs of Autosomal Dominant, Autosomal Recessive and X-Linked Phenotypes*, vol. 1 and 2. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1992.
46. Feinberg AP: The epigenetics of cancer etiology. *Semin Cancer Biol* 2004, 14(6):427–432.
47. Shannon MF, Rao S: Transcription of chips and ChIPs. *Science* 2002, 296(5568):666–669.
48. Gaietta G, Deerinck TJ, Adams SR, Bouwer J, Tour O, Laird DW, et al.: Multicolor and electron microscopic imaging of connexin trafficking. *Science* 2002, 296(5567):503–507.
49. Schirmer EC, Florens L, Guan T, Yates JR, 3rd, Gerace L: Nuclear membrane proteins with potential disease links found by subtractive proteomics. *Science* 2003, 301(5638):1380–1382.
50. Giot L, Bader JS, Brouwer C, Chaudhuri A, Kuang B, Li Y, et al.: A protein interaction map of Drosophila melanogaster. *Science* 2003, 302(5651):1727–1736.
51. Alberts B, Johnson A, Lewis J: *Molecular Biology of the Cell*, 4th edn. New York: Garland Science; 2002.
52. Epstein CJ, Erickson RP, Wynshaw-Boris A: *Inborn Errors of Development-The Molecular Basis of Clinical Disorders of Morphogenesis*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2004.
53. Reik W, Dean W, Walter J: Epigenetic reprogramming in mammalian development. *Science* 2001, 293(5532):1089–1093.
54. Falls JG, Pulford DJ, Wylie AA, Jirtle RL: Genomic imprinting: implications for human disease. *Am J Pathol* 1999, 154(3):635–647.
55. Hall JG: Genomic imprinting: review and relevance to human diseases. *Am J Hum Genet* 1990, 46(5): 857–873.
56. Hark AT, Schoenherr CJ, Katz DJ, Ingram RS, Levorse JM, Tilghman SM: CTCF mediates methylation-sensitive enhancer-blocking activity at the H19/Igf2 locus. *Nature* 2000, 405(6785):486–489.
57. Barlow DP: Imprinting: a gamete's point of view. *Trends Genet* 1994, 10(6):194–199.

58. Jelinic P, Shaw P: Loss of imprinting and cancer. *J Pathol* 2007, 211(3):261–268.
59. Diaz-Meyer N, Day CD, Khatod K, Maher ER, Cooper W, Reik W, et al.: Silencing of CDKN1C (p57KIP2) is associated with hypomethylation at KvDMR1 in Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome. *J Med Genet* 2003, 40(11): 797–801.
60. Scotting PJ, Walker DA, Perilongo G: Childhood solid tumours: a developmental disorder. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2005, 5(6):481–488.
61. Yelon D, Stainier DY: Pattern formation: swimming in retinoic acid. *Curr Biol* 2002, 12(20):R707–R709.
62. Kumar V, Robbins SL. *Robbins and Cotran Pathologic Basis of Disease*, 7th edn. Philadelphia: Elsevier Saunders; 2005.
63. Villavicencio EH, Walterhouse DO, Iannaccone PM: The sonic hedgehog-patched-gli pathway in human development and disease. *Am J Hum Genet* 2000, 67(5): 1047–1054.
64. Hooper JE, Scott MP: Communicating with Hedgehogs. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2005, 6(4):306–317.
65. Yuspa SH, Epstein EH, Jr.: Cancer. An anchor for tumor cell invasion. *Science* 2005, 307(5716):1727–1728.
66. Meder D, Simons K: Cell biology. Ras on the roundabout. *Science* 2005, 307(5716):1731–1733.
67. Fodde R, Smits R: Cancer biology. A matter of dosage. *Science* 2002, 298(5594):761–763.
68. Wilkin F, Gagne N, Paquette J, Oligny LL, Deal C: Pediatric adrenocortical tumors: molecular events leading to insulin-like growth factor II gene overexpression. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2000, 85(5):2048–2056.
69. Grier DG, Thompson A, Kwasniewska A, McGonigle GJ, Halliday HL, Lappin TR: The pathophysiology of HOX genes and their role in cancer. *J Pathol* 2005, 205(2): 154–171.
70. Levine AJ: p53, the cellular gatekeeper for growth and division. *Cell* 1997, 88(3):323–331.
71. Guo W, Giancotti FG: Integrin signalling during tumour progression. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2004, 5(10):816–826.
72. Knudson AG, Jr.: Genetics of human cancer. *Annu Rev Genet* 1986, 20:231–251.
73. Cooper WN, Luharia A, Evans GA, Raza H, Haire AC, Grundy R, et al.: Molecular subtypes and phenotypic expression of Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome. *Eur J Hum Genet* 2005, 13(9):1025–1032.
74. DeBaun MR, Niemitz EL, McNeil DE, Brandenburg SA, Lee MP, Feinberg AP: Epigenetic alterations of H19 and LIT1 distinguish patients with Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome with cancer and birth defects. *Am J Hum Genet* 2002, 70(3):604–611.
75. McTaggart SJ, Algar E, Chow CW, Powell HR, Jones CL: Clinical spectrum of Denys-Drash and Frasier syndrome. *Pediatr Nephrol* 2001, 16(4):335–339.
76. Pelletier J, Bruening W, Kashtan CE, Mauer SM, Manivel JC, Striegel JE, et al.: Germline mutations in the Wilms' tumor suppressor gene are associated with abnormal urogenital development in Denys-Drash syndrome. *Cell* 1991, 67(2):437–447.
77. Porteus MH, Narkool P, Neuberg D, Guthrie K, Breslow N, Green DM, et al.: Characteristics and outcome of children with Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome and Wilms' tumor: a report from the National Wilms Tumor Study Group. *J Clin Oncol* 2000, 18(10):2026–2031.
78. Call KM, Glaser T, Ito CY, Buckler AJ, Pelletier J, Haber DA, et al.: Isolation and characterization of a zinc finger polypeptide gene at the human chromosome 11 Wilms' tumor locus. *Cell* 1990, 60(3):509–520.
79. Haber DA, Englert C, Maheswaran S: Functional properties of WT1. *Med Pediatr Oncol* 1996, 27(5):453–455.
80. Gessler M, Poustka A, Cavenee W, Neve RL, Orkin SH, Bruns GA: Homozygous deletion in Wilms tumours of a zinc-finger gene identified by chromosome jumping. *Nature* 1990, 343(6260):774–778.
81. Gashler AL, Bonthron DT, Madden SL, Rauscher FJ, 3rd, Collins T, Sukhatme VP: Human platelet-derived growth factor A chain is transcriptionally repressed by the Wilms tumor suppressor WT1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 1992, 89(22):10984–10988.
82. Drummond IA, Madden SL, Rohwer-Nutter P, Bell GI, Sukhatme VP, Rauscher FJ, 3rd: Repression of the insulin-like growth factor II gene by the Wilms tumor suppressor WT1. *Science* 1992, 257(5070):674–678.
83. Morrison DJ, English MA, Licht JD: WT1 induces apoptosis through transcriptional regulation of the proapoptotic Bcl-2 family member Bak. *Cancer Res* 2005, 65(18):8174–8182.
84. Scott J, Cowell J, Robertson ME, Priestley LM, Wadey R, Hopkins B, et al.: Insulin-like growth factor-II gene expression in Wilms' tumour and embryonic tissues. *Nature* 1985, 317(6034):260–262.
85. Fraizer GE, Bowen-Pope DF, Vogel AM: Production of platelet-derived growth factor by cultured Wilms' tumor cells and fetal kidney cells. *J Cell Physiol* 1987, 133(1):169–174.
86. Eccles MR, Wallis LJ, Fidler AE, Spurr NK, Goodfellow PJ, Reeve AE: Expression of the PAX2 gene in human fetal kidney and Wilms' tumor. *Cell Growth Differ* 1992, 3(5):279–289.
87. Little MH, Prosser J, Condie A, Smith PJ, Van Heyningen V, Hastie ND: Zinc finger point mutations within the WT1 gene in Wilms tumor patients. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 1992, 89(11):4791–4795.
88. Feinberg AP: Multiple genetic abnormalities of 11p15 in Wilms' tumor. *Med Pediatr Oncol* 1996, 27(5):484–489.
89. Li M, Squire JA, Weksberg R: Molecular genetics of Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome. *Curr Opin Pediatr* 1997, 9(6):623–629.
90. Pal N, Wadey RB, Buckle B, Yeomans E, Pritchard J, Cowell JK: Preferential loss of maternal alleles in sporadic Wilms' tumour. *Oncogene* 1990, 5(11):1665–1668.
91. Huff V, Amos CI, Douglass EC, Fisher R, Geiser CF, Krill CE, et al.: Evidence for genetic heterogeneity in familial Wilms' tumor. *Cancer Res* 1997, 57(10):1859–1862.
92. Rahman N, Abidi F, Ford D, Arbour L, Rapley E, Tonin P, et al.: Confirmation of FWT1 as a Wilms' tumour susceptibility gene and phenotypic characteristics of Wilms' tumour attributable to FWT1. *Hum Genet* 1998, 103(5):547–556.
93. Ping AJ, Reeve AE, Law DJ, Young MR, Boehnke M, Feinberg AP: Genetic linkage of Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome to 11p15. *Am J Hum Genet* 1989, 44(5): 720–723.

94. Wu NF, Kushnick T: The Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome. The exomphalos-macroglossia-gigantism syndrome. *Clin Pediatr (Phila)* 1974, 13(5):452–457.
95. Henry I, Bonaiti-Pellie C, Chehensse V, Beldjord C, Schwartz C, Utermann G, et al.: Uniparental paternal disomy in a genetic cancer-predisposing syndrome. *Nature* 1991, 351(6328):665–667.
96. Dao D, Walsh CP, Yuan L, Gorelov D, Feng L, Hensle T, et al.: Multipoint analysis of human chromosome 11p15/mouse distal chromosome 7: inclusion of H19/IGF2 in the minimal WT2 region, gene specificity of H19 silencing in Wilms' tumorigenesis and methylation hyper-dependence of H19 imprinting. *Hum Mol Genet* 1999, 8(7):1337–1352.
97. Lee MP, DeBaun MR, Mitsuya K, Galonek HL, Brandenburg S, Oshimura M, et al.: Loss of imprinting of a paternally expressed transcript, with antisense orientation to KVLQT1, occurs frequently in Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome and is independent of insulin-like growth factor II imprinting. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 1999, 96(9):5203–5208.
98. Morison IM, Reeve AE: A catalogue of imprinted genes and parent-of-origin effects in humans and animals. *Hum Mol Genet* 1998, 7(10):1599–1609.
99. Onyango P, Miller W, Lehoczky J, Leung CT, Birren B, Wheelan S, et al.: Sequence and comparative analysis of the mouse 1-megabase region orthologous to the human 11p15 imprinted domain. *Genome Res* 2000, 10(11):1697–1710.
100. Paulsen M, Davies KR, Bowden LM, Villar AJ, Franck O, Fuermann M, et al.: Syntenic organization of the mouse distal chromosome 7 imprinting cluster and the Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome region in chromosome 11p15.5. *Hum Mol Genet* 1998, 7(7):1149–1159.
101. Xin Z, Soejima H, Higashimoto K, Yatsuki H, Zhu X, Satoh Y, et al.: A novel imprinted gene, KCNQ1DN, within the WT2 critical region of human chromosome 11p15.5 and its reduced expression in Wilms' tumors. *J Biochem (Tokyo)* 2000, 128(5):847–853.
102. Weksberg R, Shuman C, Smith AC: Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome. *Am J Med Genet C Semin Med Genet* 2005, 137(1):12–23.
103. Bennett WR, Crew TE, Slack JM, Ward A: Structural-proliferative units and organ growth: effects of insulin-like growth factor 2 on the growth of colon and skin. *Development* 2003, 130(6):1079–1088.
104. DeChiara TM, Robertson EJ, Efstratiadis A: Parental imprinting of the mouse insulin-like growth factor II gene. *Cell* 1991, 64(4):849–859.
105. Sun FL, Dean WL, Kelsey G, Allen ND, Reik W: Transactivation of Igf2 in a mouse model of Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome. *Nature* 1997, 389(6653):809–815.
106. Weksberg R, Shen DR, Fei YL, Song QL, Squire J: Disruption of insulin-like growth factor 2 imprinting in Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome. *Nat Genet* 1993, 5(2):143–150.
107. Sakatani T, Kaneda A, Iacobuzio-Donahue CA, Carter MG, de Boom Witzel S, Okano H, et al.: Loss of imprinting of Igf2 alters intestinal maturation and tumorigenesis in mice. *Science* 2005, 307(5717):1976–1978.
108. Ohlsson R, Cui H, He L, Pfeifer S, Malmikumpu H, Jiang S, et al.: Mosaic allelic insulin-like growth factor 2 expression patterns reveal a link between Wilms' tumorigenesis and epigenetic heterogeneity. *Cancer Res* 1999, 59(16):3889–3892.
109. Steenman MJ, Rainier S, Dobry CJ, Grundy P, Horon IL, Feinberg AP: Loss of imprinting of IGF2 is linked to reduced expression and abnormal methylation of H19 in Wilms' tumour. *Nat Genet* 1994, 7(3):433–439.
110. Hao Y, Crenshaw T, Moulton T, Newcomb E, Tycko B: Tumour-suppressor activity of H19 RNA. *Nature* 1993, 365(6448):764–767.
111. Joyce JA, Lam WK, Catchpoole DJ, Jenks P, Reik W, Maher ER, et al.: Imprinting of IGF2 and H19: lack of reciprocity in sporadic Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome. *Hum Mol Genet* 1997, 6(9):1543–1548.
112. Hatada I, Nabetani A, Morisaki H, Xin Z, Ohishi S, Tonoki H, et al.: New p57KIP2 mutations in Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome. *Hum Genet* 1997, 100(5–6): 681–683.
113. Hatada I, Ohashi H, Fukushima Y, Kaneko Y, Inoue M, Komoto Y, et al.: An imprinted gene p57KIP2 is mutated in Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome. *Nat Genet* 1996, 14(2):171–173.
114. Lee MP, DeBaun M, Randhawa G, Reichard BA, Elledge SJ, Feinberg AP: Low frequency of p57KIP2 mutation in Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome. *Am J Hum Genet* 1997, 61(2):304–309.
115. Bliek J, Maas SM, Ruijter JM, Hennekam RC, Alders M, Westerveld A, et al.: Increased tumour risk for BWS patients correlates with aberrant H19 and not KCNQ1OT1 methylation: occurrence of KCNQ1OT1 hypomethylation in familial cases of BWS. *Hum Mol Genet* 2001, 10(5):467–476.
116. Weksberg R, Nishikawa J, Caluseriu O, Fei YL, Shuman C, Wei C, et al.: Tumor development in the Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome is associated with a variety of constitutional molecular 11p15 alterations including imprinting defects of KCNQ1OT1. *Hum Mol Genet* 2001, 10(26):2989–3000.
117. Qian N, Frank D, O'Keefe D, Dao D, Zhao L, Yuan L, et al.: The IPL gene on chromosome 11p15.5 is imprinted in humans and mice and is similar to TDAG51, implicated in Fas expression and apoptosis. *Hum Mol Genet* 1997, 6(12):2021–2029.
118. Dao D, Frank D, Qian N, O'Keefe D, Vosatka RJ, Walsh CP, et al.: IMPT1, an imprinted gene similar to polyspecific transporter and multi-drug resistance genes. *Hum Mol Genet* 1998, 7(4):597–608.
119. Schwienbacher C, Sabbioni S, Campi M, Veronese A, Bernardi G, Menegatti A, et al.: Transcriptional map of 170-kb region at chromosome 11p15.5: identification and mutational analysis of the BWR1A gene reveals the presence of mutations in tumor samples. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 1998, 95(7):3873–3878.
120. Seizinger BR, Rouleau GA, Ozelius LJ, Lane AH, Faryniarz AG, Chao MV, et al.: Genetic linkage of von Recklinghausen neurofibromatosis to the nerve growth factor receptor gene. *Cell* 1987, 49(5):589–594.

121. Listernick R, Charrow J, Gutmann DH: Intracranial gliomas in neurofibromatosis type 1. *Am J Med Genet* 1999, 89(1):38–44.
122. Evans DG, Birch JM, Ramsden RT: Paediatric presentation of type 2 neurofibromatosis. *Arch Dis Child* 1999, 81(6):496–499.
123. Brook-Carter PT, Peral B, Ward CJ, Thompson P, Hughes J, Maheshwar MM, et al.: Deletion of the TSC2 and PKD1 genes associated with severe infantile polycystic kidney disease – a contiguous gene syndrome. *Nat Genet* 1994, 8(4):328–332.
124. Crino PB, Nathanson KL, Henske EP: The tuberous sclerosis complex. *N Engl J Med* 2006, 355(13):1345–1356.
125. Vinaitheerthan M, Wei J, Mizuguchi M, Greco A, Barness EG: Tuberous sclerosis: immunohistochemistry expression of tuberin and hamartin in a 31-week gestational fetus. *Fetal Pediatr Pathol* 2004, 23(4):241–249.
126. Cavenee WK: *Turcot syndrome*. Lyon: International Agency for Research on Cancer; 1997.
127. Schofield D, West DC, Anthony DC, Marshal R, Sklar J: Correlation of loss of heterozygosity at chromosome 9q with histological subtype in medulloblastomas. *Am J Pathol* 1995, 146(2):472–480.
128. Cowan R, Hoban P, Kelsey A, Birch JM, Gattamaneni R, Evans DG: The gene for the naevoid basal cell carcinoma syndrome acts as a tumour-suppressor gene in medulloblastoma. *Br J Cancer* 1997, 76(2): 141–145.
129. Wiestler OD, Kleihues P, Vital A, Padberg GW: *Cowden Disease and Dysplastic Gangliocytoma of the Cerebellum/Lhermite-Duclos Disease*. Lyon: International Agency for Research on Cancer; 1997.
130. Marsh D, Zori R: Genetic insights into familial cancers – update and recent discoveries. *Cancer Lett* 2002, 181(2):125–164.
131. Esteller M: DNA methylation and cancer therapy: new developments and expectations. *Curr Opin Oncol* 2005, 17(1):55–60.
132. Valk-Lingbeek ME, Bruggeman SW, van Lohuizen M: Stem cells and cancer; the polycomb connection. *Cell* 2004, 118(4):409–418.
133. Wilson GN, Oligny LL: Mechanisms of development and growth: Molecular growth. In: *Potter's Pathology of Fetus, Infant and Child*, Gilbert-Barness E, Ed., vol. 1, 2nd edn. New York: Elsevie

Chapter 9

Carcinogenetic Pathway of Malignant Melanoma

Kenneth B. Calder and Michael B. Morgan

Contents

9.1 Introduction

Malignant melanoma is a burgeoning public health concern. In recent decades, the incidence of primary cutaneous melanoma has increased throughout most of the world including the United States. The overall age-adjusted incidence of melanoma has increased nearly 200% among Caucasians in the US between 1973 and 2002 (21.9 cases per 100,000 in 2002). This increased incidence of melanoma has been seen in all age groups, with a disproportionate increase in individuals over 55 years. The incidence of melanoma has also increased among African Americans and Hispanics in the US [1].

Along with the increased incidence of melanoma, between 1973 and 2002, the overall mortality rate among Caucasians increased from 2.1 per 100,000 to 2.9 per 100,000. The mortality rate in men has remained stable while the mortality rate among women has declined since 1992. Between the years of 1973 and 2002 the mortality rate among adults younger than age 55 decreased, while an increase in mortality in both men and women older than 55 was noted. Most importantly, 5-year survival rates for melanoma now surpass 90% in American, Australia, and Sweden [1].

Despite considerable debate, the risk factors associated with melanoma include environmental, phenotypic, and genotypic influences. Such factors include skin and hair color [2], numerous freckles [3], tendency to burn with sun exposure [2], blistering burns [4], presence of nevi [5], immunosuppression [6], and genetic mutations, among others. It has been demonstrated that a personal history of melanoma is one of the strongest predictors for melanoma. In a seven-year follow-up study including 4,484 patients diagnosed with primary melanoma, 9% had a second primary lesion [7]. Other studies have demonstrated an increased risk of melanoma in individuals with a history of nonmelanoma skin cancer [8].

Distinct populations have also been associated with an increased risk of melanoma including transplant patients. The risk of melanoma has also been associated with the presence of precursor large congenital nevi and dysplastic nevi [5]. More recently, the risk of melanoma appears to be greater in individuals with more than 50 nevi or a size greater than 6 mm in diameter [9, 10]. Lastly, 8–12% of melanomas occur in a familial setting, with specific genes responsible for these cases [11].

The tumorigenesis of cutaneous melanoma is a complex, multistep, and enigmatic process. With the many risk factors implicated in the development

K.B. Calder (✉)
Department of Pathology and Cell Biology,
College of Medicine, University of South Florida,
Tampa, FL, USA
e-mail: kcalder@health.usf.edu

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_9,

of melanoma, the potential mechanisms leading to carcinogenesis are likely to prove as numerous and variable. These statements are supported by the enormous body of research in the medical literature dedicated to all aspects of melanoma. In an attempt to better understand the complex biology of melanoma and elucidate the tumorigenesis of this malignancy, studies have not placed limits on the potential pathways and mechanisms responsible for melanoma progression. The purpose of this chapter is to present and summarize the most recent advances in the understanding of melanoma tumorigenesis, regarding proposed mechanisms of carcinogenesis, genetic mutations, and the clinical implications of current melanoma research.

9.2 The Role of Photocarcinogenesis in Melanoma

The ultraviolet fraction of the electromagnetic spectrum is considered a major etiological factor in both non-melanoma and melanoma skin cancer. Both UVB and UVA irradiation are responsible for mutations in melanocyte genes responsible for the initiation, promotion, and tumor progression [12]. UVB radiation has been demonstrated to cause mutations as a result of the formation of pyrimidine dimmers and non-dimer photoproducts [13]. On the other hand, the role of UVA radiation is not as well understood. UVA radiation is implicated in the promotion of oxidative mutagenic DNA base alterations and DNA breaks [14].

The complex mechanisms involved in the photocarcinogenesis of melanoma are not completely understood. Studies have demonstrated an increased risk of melanoma associated with latitude gradient [15], skin type and tendency to burn [2], chronic sun exposure with increasing age, and childhood sunburns [4]. At the same time, there appears to be a paradoxical relationship between sun exposure and melanoma. In fair-skinned individuals melanomas are most common in areas intermittently exposed to sun (Trunk, arms, and legs), instead of areas like the face that are chronically exposed to ultraviolet radiation (UVR). It has also been shown that indoor workers and those associated with a higher socioeconomic status are at a higher risk for melanoma [16]. Similarly, all the studies evaluating the effectiveness of sunscreen in the prevention of skin cancer have not demonstrated protective effects [17]. Lastly, certain histologic subtypes of melanoma arise in sites that are exposed to minimal UVR, including the palms, soles, and mucosal membranes.

Melanomas involving skin with chronic solar damage are associated with a location on the face, older age, and chronic UVR exposure. Melanomas associated with intermittent sun exposure present in younger fair-skinned individuals, in such locations as the trunk, arms, and legs. A recent study evaluating 126 primary melanomas using array-based comparative genomic hybridization, classified the melanomas into four groups based upon location and amount of sun exposure; 30 melanomas from skin with chronic solar damage, 40 melanomas from skin with no chronic solar damage, 36 melanomas from the palm, soles, and subungual region, and 20 mucosal melanomas. These lesions underwent genome-wide evaluation for differences DNA copy numbers. The results demonstrate frequent BRAF mutations and losses of chromosome 10 in melanomas arising in areas intermittently exposed to sun. BRAF encodes a serine/threonine kinase responsible for the transduction of mitogenic signals from the cell membrane to the nucleus. In contrast, there was a low frequency of BRAF mutations, and frequent increases in the number of copies of the cyclin D1 (CCND1) gene in melanomas that arise in skin with evidence of chronic solar damage. Acral and mucosal melanomas were associated with a higher frequency of losses of the CDKN2A (p16) locus compared to melanomas in sites with or without evidence of chronic solar damage [18].

The tumor suppressor protein p16 is implicated in the photocarcinogenesis of both melanoma and nonmelanoma skin cancer; squamous cell (SCC) and basal cell (BCC). p16 is a cyclin dependent kinase (CDK) inhibitor preventing the phosphorylation of the retinoblastoma gene (Rb) product; acting as a negative cell cycle regulator [19]. In the normal epidermis p16 is expressed only in the granular cell layer [20]. In the carcinogenesis of SCC p16 protein expression showed gradual up-regulation in the progression from actinic keratosis to SCC in situ to invasive SCC to metastatic SCC [21]. On the other hand, p16 gene mutations in melanoma demonstrate a gradual down-regulation with tumor progression, and complete loss of expression in metastatic tumors [22]. Some have associated p16 mutations (C:G to T:A transitions, CC to TT tandem mutations, and C:G to A:T transversions) with UVR in melanoma cell lines, based upon the similarity of the aforementioned mutations to those observed in mammalian genes exposed to UVR [23].

Unlike SCC carcinogenesis, p53 mutations are described as rare and late events in the tumorigenesis of melanoma that occur in the progression to higher grade malignancy. Nonetheless, p53 mutations have been associated with UVR exposure [24]. Sixty percent of melanomas in patients with xeroderma pigmentosum have TP53 gene mutations, implicating UVR as a potential factor in TP53 gene mutations [25]. TP53 gene mutations in melanoma are usually a result of base pairing substitutions, T:A substituting C:G, also supporting the possible role of UVR in these gene mutations [26]. Compared to nonmelanoma skin cancers, there is a lower frequency of UV-induced TP53 gene mutations in melanoma. Therefore, p53 is unlikely to play a major role in UV-related tumorigenesis of melanoma.

Lastly, UVA exposure is associated with the production of photosensitizers and the generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS). In order to reduce the harmful effects of ROS, the skin produces copper-zinc superoxide dismutase (CuZnSOD), manganese SOD (MnSOD), and catalase. Using immunohistochemical techniques, an up-regulation of CuZnSOD, MnSOD, and catalase was demonstrated in human melanomas compared to age-matched nevi and young control skin. This enhanced antioxidant activity may serve to protect melanoma cells from ROS, allowing selective growth of malignant cells [27].

In conclusion, the role of UVR in the tumorigenesis of melanoma is not as well established as the association between UVR exposure and nonmelanoma skin cancer. As mentioned, there are numerous potential environmental risk factors and models of UV-induced photocarcinogenesis associated with melanoma. It is possible that several of these mechanisms, along with specific environmental and biologic factors, are essential in melanoma progression. Determining the role of UVR in melanoma may potentially assist in further clinical and histopathologic classification of this malignancy.

9.3 Tumorigenesis of Melanoma

9.3.1 p16 (INK4A)

The gene CDKN2A is located at 9p21 and encodes two distinct proteins; INK4A (inhibitor of cyclin-dependent kinase 4) also known as p16 and ARF (alternative reading frame) also designated p14. The p16 protein is a member of the INK4 family and is responsible for controlling the G1/S cell cycle transition. p16 prevents the phosphorylation of the retinoblastoma protein (pRB) by binding to CDK4 and CDK6 which inhibits the formation of the CDK4/6/cyclin D complex, responsible for phosphorylating the pRB. In the presence of p16 expression, the pRB is hypophosphorylated and remains complexed to E2F; resulting in G1 cell cycle arrest. Therefore, loss of p16 expression results in a lack of regulatory control of cell cycle progression due to hyperphosphorylation (inactivation) of pRB [28].

The CDKN2A gene, located at chromosome 9p21, has been identified as one of the familial melanoma genes. Loss of heterozygosity or mutations in this gene is associated with the presentation of melanoma in familial melanoma kindred. More specific, germline mutations or deletions that result in the inactivation of p16 have been identified in cultured melanoma cell lines [29]. p16 mutations have been demonstrated in 25–40% of families with an increased risk of melanoma and in 0.2–2% of sporadic melanoma cases [30, 31]. However, in a more recent study utilizing genomic hybridization, loss of p16 expression has been demonstrated in nearly 50% of primary melanomas [32]. Mechanisms implicated in the loss of p16 expression include: hypermethylation of promoter regions [33], homozygous deletions [34], loss of heterozygosity [32], and microsatellite instability [35], among others.

Decreased expression of p16 (protein and mRNA expression) has been associated with the clinical progression of melanoma in both familial and sporadic cases [22, 36, 37]. Based upon the majority of data at this time, p16 expression is not believed to be altered in nevi [37], and is either unaltered of reduced in melanoma in situ [37]. The expression of p16 has also been studied in melanomas with and without association with a contiguous nevus. Loss of p16 expression was demonstrated in 85% of melanomas not associated with a nevus remnant. On the other hand, 24% of melanomas associated with a nevus demonstrated loss of p16 expression [38].

The loss of expression of p16 in melanoma has been associated with increased tumor thickness [39] and Clark level [40], increased proliferation rate [22], and higher mitotic count [39]; however, not all studies support these findings [32, 36]. Others have associated the reduced expression of p16 with risk of disease relapse

and as an independent predictor of decreased disease survival [41]. In summary, the loss of p16 expression in locally advanced melanoma is characteristic of this malignancy, but the role of p16 in the early stages of melanoma presentation/progression, association with UVR exposure, and prognosis are currently debated.

9.3.2 p53 (TP53)

The tumor suppressor gene TP53 is located on the short arm of chromosome 17 and encodes the p53 protein. DNA damage and other genomic alterations are responsible for activating the p53 protein, which is usually quiescent under normal circumstances. p53 is responsible for activating downstream signals to arrest cells in G1, inhibiting the replication of damaged DNA and allowing DNA repair. Also critical, p53 is responsible for inducing apoptosis if the DNA damage is significant. Hence, alterations in p53 function and/or expression allows replication of cells with damaged DNA, leading to the accumulation of genetic alterations that promote malignancy [42].

Numerous studies have evaluated p53 gene alterations in melanoma with varying results. Some studies have reported the absence of TP53 gene alterations in both primary and metastatic melanoma [43], while other studies report an incidence of mutations between 1 and 29% [26, 44, 45]. Interestingly, metastatic melanomas have been associated with higher frequency of TP53 gene mutations, and nevi have been shown to have less frequent mutations in the TP53 gene [46]. The differences in the reported incidence of TP53 gene mutations in melanoma have been attributed to variations in detection techniques, variable selection of tumors in different stages of progression, variation in anatomic site, and genetic heterogeneity [47].

There is also variable expression of the p53 protein in melanomas, ranging from 5 to 86% of primary melanomas [48, 49]. p53 is thought to be expressed late in the tumorigenesis of melanoma, based upon the absence of or low expression of p53 in nevi and the progressive increased expression of p53 in melanomas as they progress from the radial (horizontal) to vertical (invasive) growth phases and to metastatic disease [46, 48].

p53 has been evaluated in different anatomic sites, in an attempt to demonstrate a relationship between UVR exposure and p53 expression. More frequent (32%) and greater expression of p53 was noted in melanomas arising in the head and neck (chronic sun exposed sites), compared with other sites (6%) [41]. However, there is evidence demonstrating that the expression of p53 is independent of anatomic location and sun exposure [45]. Interestingly, all melanomas demonstrating over-expression of p53 do not have TP53 mutations, implying that the activation of p53 expression is dependent upon other cellular signals and mechanisms [26]. Lastly, some studies have demonstrated an association between p53 expression and tumor thickness, Clark level, and high mitotic rate, while other studies have demonstrated no relationship between p53 expression and such clinical parameters [50, 51].

9.3.3 c-KIT

It is well established that the c-kit receptor and its ligand, stem cell factor (SCF), are important in the development of melanocytes. SCF is responsible for mouse melanocyte migration, proliferation, and differentiation [52]. In the skin, fibroblasts, keratinocytes, and endothelial cells are responsible for the production of SCF [53]. SCF binds to c-kit, a receptor tyrosine kinase, causing dimerization of the c-kit receptor leading to autophosphorylation and activation of downstream pathways (MAP2K). SCF/c-kit are essential in the paracrine regulation of melanocytes in both normal human skin and pigmentary disorders [54]. C-kit expression has been demonstrated in several malignancies, and is implicated in the pathogenesis of gastrointestinal stromal tumors.

Similar to melanocytes, melanoma cells also express the c-kit receptor. C-kit expression has been demonstrated in normal melanocytes and benign nevi, with loss of expression described in advanced melanoma. It is thought that the loss of c-kit expression is associated with the change in the radial to vertical growth phase of melanoma [55]. Immunohistochemistry for c-kit was performed on 261 patients with primary melanoma (AJCC Stage I or II), who had undergone completion of surgical resection with adequate margins. Diffuse expression of c-kit was found in 144 (55%) of cases, while 117 cases did not stain positive with the c-kit polyclonal antibody. Of the 144 cases which stained positive for c-kit, 60 cases demonstrated <30% of positive cells, 64 cases

demonstrated 30–60% of positive cells, and 20 cases demonstrated >60% of positive cells. In this study, c-kit expression showed no association with prognostic significance [56]. Another study evaluated array comparative genomic hybridization data from 102 primary melanomas subdivided in four groupings: mucosal melanoma [38], acral skin [28], skin with chronic sun-induced damage (CSD) [18], and skin without CSD [18]. Oncogenic mutations in c-kit were demonstrated in 3/7 tumors with amplifications on 4q12. Mutations and/or copy number increases of c-kit were demonstrated in 39% of mucosal, 36% of acral, and 28% of melanomas on skin with evidence of CSD. Of note, no mutations and/or copy number increases were present in melanomas on skin without CSD. Increased c-kit protein levels in the vertical growth phase were demonstrated in 79% of tumors with mutations and in 53% of tumors with copy number increases [57].

These findings demonstrate increased c-kit expression in the advanced stages of melanoma tumorgenesis, which contrasts with other studies describing a down regulation of c-kit during progression. The authors of the aforementioned study reconcile their findings by explaining that the prior studies, which demonstrate down regulation of c-kit during melanoma progression, utilized melanoma cell lines of the melanoma subtype that occurs on intermittently sun-exposed skin (superficial-spreading type) with frequent BRAF mutations. Therefore, the absence of c-kit mutations or lack of increased copy number is expected in this melanoma subtype, and further supports the findings of Curtin et al. The melanoma subtypes associated with frequent genetic alterations in c-kit (i.e. lentigo-maligna) typically demonstrate a lentiginous growth pattern, whereas melanomas arising in skin without CSD lack c-kit expression and show a pagetoid growth pattern [57].

Imatinib, a tyrosine kinase inhibitor, has been studied in phase II clinical trials in patients with metastatic melanoma. This study demonstrated no evidence of clinical efficacy of high-dose imatinib in patients with metastatic melanoma [58]. These findings raise the question concerning the true role c-kit in melanoma tumorigenesis. As described by Curtin et al., it is possible that only certain subtypes of melanomas; acral, mucosal, and melanomas in the setting of CSD are associated with mutations and increased expression of c-kit. Appreciating the variability in melanoma subtype expression of c-kit, it is possible that the benefits of imatinib therapy may be seen in a specific group of patients with c-kit mutations.

9.3.4 EGFR

Epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) is a member of the tyrosine kinase growth factor receptor family. Tyrosine kinase receptors are responsible for communicating extracellular signals to the nucleus and play vital roles in tumor evolution including: growth, differentiation, inhibition of apoptosis, and metastatic progression. Binding of specific ligands to the extracellular domain of EGFR leads to receptor dimerization and activation of intrinsic tyrosine kinase activity, which in turn induces the RAS/RAF/MEK/MAPK and PI3K/Akt signaling pathways. Over expression, and mutations of EGFR have been demonstrated in several malignancies; including cutaneous melanoma.

EGFR over expression has been described in late stage melanoma, and associated with extra copies of chromosome 7. In a recent study of 81 primary melanomas, 70% of the lesions demonstrated aneusomy of chromosome 7. Copy number alterations of the EGFR gene was demonstrated in 79% of the tumors, and amplification of the EGFR gene was associated with polysomy of chromosome 7. An increased copy number of the EGFR gene has been demonstrated in the progression of melanoma, and has been associated with poor prognosis (increased Breslow and ulceration) [59]. In addition, the expression of EGFR has been shown to increase during melanoma progression and predicts a poor prognosis [60]. Other studies have demonstrated minimal or no expression of EGFR in human melanocytes and melanoma [61]. Therefore, the role of EGFR in the tumorigenesis of melanoma is not fully elucidated nor completely accepted. Further studies are needed to evaluate the significance of EGFR gene alterations as it relates to mRNA and protein expression, to determine the potential utility of anti-EGFR therapeutics.

9.3.5 Cyclin D1

Cyclin D1 is encoded by the CCND1 gene located at 11q13, and has been shown in some studies to be

involved in the tumorigenesis of melanoma. Cyclin D1 is an important positive regulator of the G1-S cell cycle transition, via activation of cdk 4/6, which in turn leads to the inactivation (phosphorylation) of the Rb protein. Inactivation of the Rb protein promotes the release of bound E2F, allowing cell cycle progression [62]. Studies implicating cyclin D1 in the pathogenesis of melanoma have demonstrated amplification of the CCND1 gene in 47% of primary lesions and 35% of metastatic melanomas [63]. A second study demonstrated CCND1 gene amplification in 44% of acral lentiginous melanomas [64]. At the same time, there is evidence demonstrating no amplification of CCND1 in metastatic melanomas [65].

Using immunohistochemistry, increased expression of cyclin D1 has been show in both in cutaneous [66] and uveal melanoma [67]. Nevi and normal skin adjacent to melanomas demonstrate absent or weak expression of cyclin D1 [66]. Some studies report no association between increased cyclin D1 expression and clinical outcomes [67], while there is evidence describing a significant association between increased cyclin D1 expression and thinner lesions [68]. Therefore, the role of cyclin D1 in the tumorigenesis, progression, and prognosis of melanoma is debated at this time.

9.3.6 Telomerase

Telomerase is a ribonucleoprotein DNA polymerase responsible for maintaining telomere length on the ends of chromosomes and is not expressed in somatic cells. In malignancy, the expression of telomerase is implicated in the immortalization of cells [69]. The expression of human telomerase RNA (hTERT) has been evaluated in both benign and malignant melanocytic lesions, demonstrating an increase in telomerase RNA levels from benign to malignant lesion and from primary to metastatic melanomas [70]. In a recent study, Fullen et al. showed increasing mean expression of hTERT from nevi to dysplastic nevi and primary melanoma to metastatic melanoma, but failed to demonstrate a diagnostic role for hTERT in distinguishing between a benign and malignant melanocytic neoplasm [71]. There are also studies reporting uniform moderate to high levels of telomerase expression among ordinary nevi, spitz nevi, and melanomas [72].

Telomerase has also been implicated in the regression phenomenon of melanoma. It is thought that telomere attrition (as a result of several rounds of cell division), leads to open DNA ends and end-to-end fusion of chromatids. During this period of DNA restructuring, the rate of apoptosis is high (regression phenomenon) and ultimately leads to an internal natural selection of a more aggressive phenotype. At this point, the tumors cells activate telomerase, which is responsible for re-stabilizing the telomeres allowing continued proliferation [73]. Further studies are needed to determine the role of telomerase in the pathogenesis of melanoma, which may have prognostic and/or therapeutic implications.

9.3.7 RAS

The mitogen-activated protein kinase pathway (MAPK), via Ras/Raf/Mek/Erk, regulates cell proliferation and survival. Errors in this signaling pathway are implicated in the tumorigenesis of melanoma. The Ras GTPases are small G proteins responsible for mediating growth signals from growth factor receptors to the nucleus. The Ras family of proto-oncogenes includes H-Ras, N-Ras, and K-Ras; with N-Ras more frequently associated with melanocytic lesions [74, 75].

Activating mutations in N-Ras have been demonstrated in 56% of congenital nevi [74], 33% of primary melanomas, and 26% of metastatic melanomas [75]. Of note, N-Ras mutations are not frequently associated with dysplastic nevi [74]. Activating N-Ras mutations have also been associated with sun exposure and nodular lesions [76, 77]. H-Ras is more frequently associated with Spitz nevi, which demonstrate amplification of the H-Ras genomic locus on 11p and oncogenic point mutations [78].

In a study of 126 melanomas subdivided on the basis of UV light exposure, all mutations in the Ras gene were of N-Ras and occurred only in samples without BRAF mutations. The majority of melanomas with N-Ras mutations were from skin with no evidence of chronic sun damage. No significant association between N-Ras mutations and melanoma subtypes or tumor thickness was observed [18]. Therefore based upon the presence of Ras and BRAF mutations in

certain subtypes of melanoma, therapies targeting the Ras/RAF/ERK/PI3K pathways could prove beneficial.

9.4 Conclusion

Noting the number of conflicting studies and ongoing debates concerning the tumorigenesis of melanoma, it is evident that much remains unknown. The complexity of this disease is apparent in the numerous environmental and biologic factors implicated in its pathogenesis. Traditionally, genetic alterations in melanoma were approached according to the histologic subtype. As presented herein, distinct genetic alterations in melanomas are observed not only in the different histologic subtypes, but are also based upon location and degree of sun exposure. Ultimately, a number of different pathways, acting both independently and in concert, are most likely responsible for the carcinogenesis of melanoma. In order to treat this malignancy, therapies will most likely need to exploit the unique genetic and biologic characteristics of the specific tumor.

The heterogeneity of this malignancy is further demonstrated by the numerous pathways implicated in melanoma tumorigenesis. Efforts to elucidate the tumorigenesis of melanoma are not in vain, with an increase in the 5-year survival rate of patients with this disease. Further studies are needed to identify the risk factors, pathogenesis, and the prognostic factors associated with melanoma. Most importantly, based upon the studies and advances made in melanoma, progress may be made in understanding pathways involved in other malignancies as well.

References

1. Geller AC, Swetter SM, Brooks K, Demierre M, Yaroch AL. Screening, early detection, and trends for melanoma: current status (2000–2006) and future directions. J Am Acad Dermatol 2007; 57(4):555–72.
2. Beral V, Evans S, Shaw H, Milton G. Cutaneous factors related to the risk of melanoma. Br J Dermatol 1983; 109:165–72.
3. Katsambas A, Nicolaidou E. Cutaneous malignant melanoma and sun exposure. Recent developments in epidemiology. Arch Dermatol 1996; 132:444–50.
4. Lew RA, Sober AJ, Cook N, Marvell R, Fitzpatrick TB. Sun exposure habits in patients with cutnaeous melanoma: a case control study. J Dermatol Surg Oncol 1983; 9:981–6.
5. Schneider JS, Moore DH, Sagebiel RW. Risk factors for melanoma incidence in prospective follow-up. The importance of atypical (dysplastic) nevi. Arch Dermatol 1994; 130:1002–7.
6. Kasiske BL, Danpanich E. Malignancies in renal transplant recipients. Transplant Proc 2000; 32:1499–500.
7. Ferrone CR, Ben Porat L, Panageas KS, Berwick M, Halpern AC, Patel A, et al. Clinicopathologic features of and risk factors for multiple primary melanomas. JAMA 2005; 294:1647–54.
8. Rosenberg CA, Greenland P, Khandekar J, Loar A, Ascensao J, Lopez AM. Association of nonmelanoma skin cancer with second malignancy. Cancer 2004; 100:130–8.
9. Mikkilineni R, Weinstock MA. Is the self-counting of moles a valid method of assessing melanoma risk? Arch Dermatol 2000; 136:1550–51.
10. Naldi L, Imberti GL, Parazzini F, Gallus S, La Vecchia C. Pigmentary traits, modalities of sun reaction, history of sunburns, and melanocytic nevi as risk factors for cutaneous malignant melanoma in the Italian population. Cancer 2000; 88:2703–10.
11. Grange F, Chompret A, Guilloud-Bataille M, Guillaume JC, Marqulis A, Prade M, et al. Comparison between familial and nonfamilial melanoma in France. Arch Dermatol 1995; 131:1154–59.
12. Luther U, Dichmann S, Schlobe A, Czech W, Norgauer J. UV light and skin cancer. Med Monatsschr Pharm 2000; 23:261.
13. de Laat A, van Tilburg M, van der Leun JC, van Vloten WA, de Gruijl FR. Cell cycle kinetics following UVA irradiation in comparison to UVB and UVC irradiation. Photochem Photobiol 1996; 63:492.
14. de Gruijl FR, van der Leun JC. Physical variables in experimental photocarcinogenesis and quantitative relationships between stages of tumor development. Front Biosci 2002; 7:d1525.
15. Koh HK, Kligler BE, Lew RA. Sunlight and cutaneous malignant melanoma. Evidence for and against causation. Photochem Photobiol 1990; 51:765.
16. Holly EA, Aston DA, Cress RD, Ahn DK, Kristiansen JJ. Cutaneous melanoma in women. Exposure to sunlight, ability to tan, and other risk factors related to ultraviolet light. Am J Epidemiol 1995; 141:923.
17. Autier P. Sunscreen and melanoma revisited. Arch Dermatol 2000; 136:423.
18. Curtin JA, Fridlyand J, Kageshita T, Patel HN, Busam KJ, Kutzner H, et al. Distinct sets of genetic alterations in melanoma. N Engl J Med 2005; 353(20):2135–47.
19. Sherr CJ, Roberts JM. CDK inhibitors: positive and negative regulators of G1-phase progression. Genes Devel 1999; 13:1501–12.
20. Kramer M, Stein B, Mai S, Kunz E, Konig H, Loferer H, et al. Radiation-induced activation of transcription factors in mammalian cells. Radiat Environ Biophys 1990; 29:303.
21. Hodges A, Smoller BR. Immunohistochemical comparison of p16 expression in actinic keratoses and squamous cell carcinomas of the skin. Mod Pathol 2002; 15:1121.

22. Sparrow LE, Eldon MJ, English DR, Heenan PJ. p16 and p21WAF1 protein expression in melanocytic tumors by immunohistochemistry. Am J Dermatopathol 1998; 20:255–61.
23. Hussein MR. Ultraviolet radiation and skin cancer: molecular mechanisms. J Cutan Pathol 2005; 32:191–205.
24. Hussein MR, Haemel AK, Wood GS. Apoptosis and melanoma: molecular mechanisms. J Pathol 2003; 199:275.
25. Spatz A, Giglia-Mari G, Benhammou S, Sarasin A. Association between DNA repair-deficiency and high level of p53 mutations in melanoma of xeroderma pigmentosum. Cancer Res 2001; 61:2480–6.
26. Albino AP, Vidal MJ, McNutt NS, Shea CR, Prieto VG, Nanus DM, et al. Mutation and expression of p53 gene in human malignant melanoma. Melanoma Res 1994; 4:35–45.
27. Sander CS, Hamm F, Elsner P, Thiele JJ. Oxidative stress in malignant melanoma and non-melanoma skin cancer. Br J Dermatol 2003; 148:913–22.
28. Ortega S, Malumbres M, Barbacid M. Cyclin D-dependent kinases, INK4 inhibitors and cancer. Biochim Biophys Acta 2002; 1602:73–87.
29. Hussussian CJ, Struewing JP, Goldstein AM, Higgins PA, Ally DS, Sheahan MD, et al. Germline p16 mutations in familial melanoma. Nat Genet 1994; 8:15–21.
30. Aitken J, Welch J, Duffy D, Milligan A, Green A, Martin N, et al. CDKN2A variants in a population-based sample of Queensland families with melanoma. J Natl Cancer Inst 1999; 91:446–52.
31. Tsao H, Zhang X, Kwitkiwski K, Finkelstein DM, Sober AJ, Haluska FG. Low prevalence of germline CDKN2A and CDK4 mutations in patients with early-onset melanoma. Arch Dermatol 2000; 136:1118–22.
32. Funk JO, Schiller PI, Barrett MT, Wong DJ, Kind P, Sander CA. p16INK4a expression is frequently decreased and associated with 9p21 loss of heterozygosity in sporadic melanoma. J Cut Pathol 1998; 25:291–6.
33. van der Velden PA, Metzelaar-Blok JA, Bergaman W, Monique H, Hurks H, Frants RR, et al. Promoter hypermethylation: a common cause of reduced p16(INK4a) expression in uveal melanoma. Cancer Res 2001; 61: 5303–6.
34. Peng HQ, Bailey D, Bronson D, Goss PE, Hogg D. Loss of heterozygosity of tumor suppressor genes in testis cancer. Can Res 1995; 55:2871–5.
35. Matsumura Y, Nishigori C, Yagi T, Imamura S, Takebe H. Mutations of p16 and p15 tumor suppressor genes and replication errors contribute independently to the pathogenesis of sporadic malignant melanoma. Arch Dermatol Res 1998; 290:175–80.
36. Reed JA, Loganzo F Jr, Shea CR, Walker GJ, Flores JF, Glendening JM, et al. Loss of expression of the p16/cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 2 tumor suppressor gene in melanocytic lesions correlates with invasive stage of tumor progression. Cancer Res 1995; 55:2713–8.
37. Keller-Melchior R, Schmidt R, Piepkorn M. Expression of the tumor suppressor gene product p16INK4 in benign and malignant melanocytic lesions. J Invest Dermatol 1998; 110:932–8.
38. Winnepenninckx V, van den Oord JJ. p16INK4A expression in malignant melanomas with or without a contiguous naevus remnant: a clue to their divergent pathogenesis? Melanoma Res 2004; 14:321–2.
39. Pavey SJ, Cummings MC, Whiteman DC, Castellano M, Walsh MD, Gabrielli BG, et al. Loss of p16 expression is associated with histological features of melanoma invasion. Melanoma Res 2002; 12:539–47.
40. Talve L, Sauroja I, Collan Y, Punnonen K, Ekfors T. Loss of expression of the p16INK4/CDKN2 gene in cutaneous malignant melanoma correlates with tumor cell proliferation and invasive stage. Int J Cancer 1997; 74:255–9.
41. Straume O, Akslen LA. Alterations and prognostic significance of p16 and p53 protein expression in subgroups of cutaneous melanoma. Int J Cancer 1997; 74:535–9.
42. Darnton SJ. Demystified. . .p53. Mol Pathol 1998; 51: 248–53.
43. Lubbe J, Reichel M, Burg G, Kleihues P. Absence of p53 gene mutations in cutaneous melanoma. J Invest Dermatol 1994; 102:819–21.
44. Soto JL, Cabrera CM, Serrano S, Lopez-Nevot MA. Mutation analysis of genes that control the G1/S cell cycle in melanoma: TP53, CDKN1A, CDKN2A, and CDKN2B. BMC Cancer 2005; 5:36.
45. Ragnarsso-Olding BK, Karsberg S, Platz A, Ringborq UK. Mutations in the TP53 gene in human malignant melanomas derived from sun-exposed skin and unexposed mucosal membranes. Melanoma Res 2002; 12:453–63.
46. Sparrow LE, Soong R, Dawkins HJ, Iacopetta BJ, Heenan PJ. p53 gene mutation and expression in naevi and melanomas. Melanoma Res 1995; 5:93–100.
47. Li W, Sanki A, Karim RZ, Thompson JF, Lee CS, Zhuang L, et al. The role of cell cycle regulatory proteins in the pathogenesis of melanoma. Pathol 2006; 38:287–301.
48. Lassam NJ, From L, Kahn HJ. Overexpression of p53 is a late event in the development of malignant melanoma. Cancer Res 1993; 53:2235–8.
49. Ross DA, Wilson GD. Flow cytometric analysis of p53 oncoprotein expression in cutaneous melanoma. Br J Surg 1997; 84; 803–7.
50. Flores VA, Holm R, Fodstad O. Accumulation of p53 protein in human malignant melanoma. Relationship to clinical outcome. Melanoma Res 1995; 5:183–7.
51. Yamamoto M, Takahashi H, Saitoh K, Horikoshi T, Takahashi M. Expression of the p53 protein in malignant melanoma as a prognostic indicator. Arch Dermatol Res 1995; 287:146–51.
52. Wehrle-Haller B, Weston JA. Altered cell-surface targeting of stem cell factor causes loss of melanocyte precursors in steel^{17H} mutant mice. Dev Biol 1999; 210:71.
53. Welker P, Schadendorf D, Artue M, Grabbe J, Henz BM. Expression of SCF splice variants in human melanocytes and melanoma cell lines: potential prognostic implications. Br J Cancer 2000; 82:1453.
54. Imokawa G. Autocrine and paracrine regulation of melanocytes in human skin and in pigmentary disorders. Pigment Cell Res 2004; 17:96.
55. Montone KT, van Belle P, Elenitsas R, Elder DE. Proto-oncogene c-kit expression in malignant melanoma: protein loss with tumor progression. Mod Pathol 1997; 10: 939–44.
56. Janku F, Novotny J, Julis I, Julisova I, Pecen L, Tomancova V, et al. KIT receptor expressed in more than 50% of

early-stage malignant melanoma: a retrospective study of 261 patients. Melanoma Res 2005; 15:251–6.
57. Curtin JA, Busam K, Pinkel D, Bastian BC. Somatic activation of KIT in distinct subtypes of melanoma. J Clin Oncol 2006; 24:4340–6.
58. Wyman K, Atkins MB, Prieto V, Eton O, McDermott DF, Hubbard F, et al. Multicenter phase II trial of high-dose imatinib mesylate in metastatic melanoma. Cancer 2006; 106:2005–11.
59. Rakosy Z, Vizkeleti L, Ecsedi S, Voko Z, Begany A, Barok M, et al. EGFR gene copy number alterations in primary cutaneous malignant melanomas are associated with poor prognosis. Int J Cancer 2007; 121:1729–37.
60. de Wit PE, Moretti S, Koenders PG, Weterman MA, van Muijen GN, Gianotti B, et al. Increasing epidermal growth factor receptor expression in human melanocytic tumor progression. J Invest Dermatol 1992; 99:168–73.
61. Stove C, Stove V, Derycke L, Van Marck V, Mareel M, Bracke M. The heregulin/human epidermal growth factor receptor as a new growth factor system in melanoma with multiple ways of deregulation. J Invest Dermatol 2003; 121:802–12.
62. Bartek J, Bartkova J, Lukas J. The retinoblastoma protein pathway and the restriction point. Curr Opin Cell Biol 1996; 8:805–14.
63. Utikal J, Udart M, Leiter U, Peter RU, Krahn G. Additional cyclin D(1) gene copies associated with chromosome 11 aberrations in cutaneous malignant melanoma. Int J Oncol 2005; 26:597–605.
64. Bastian BC, Kashani-Sabet M, Hamm H, Godfrey T, Moore DH 2nd, Brocker EB, et al. Gene amplification characterize acral melanoma and permit the detection of occult tumor cells in the surrounding skin. Cancer Res 2000; 60: 1968–73.
65. Maelandsmo GM, Florenes VA, Hovig E, Oyjord T, Engebraaten O, Holm R, et al. Involvement of the pRb/p16/cdk4/cyclin D1 pathway in the tumorigenesis of sporadic malignant melanomas. Br J Cancer 1996; 73: 909–16.
66. Sauter ER, Yeo UC, von Stemm A, Zhu W, Litwin S, Tichansky DS, et al. Cyclin D1 is a candidate oncogene in cutaneous melanoma. Cancer Res 2002; 62:3200–6.
67. Errico ME, Staibano S, Tranfa F, Bonavolonta G, Lo Muzio L, Somma P, et al. Expression of cyclin-D1 in uveal malignant melanoma. Anticancer Res 2003; 23:2701–6.
68. Florenes VA, Faye RS, Maelandsmo GM, Nesland JM, Holm R. Levels of cyclin D1 and D3 in malignant melanoma: deregulated cyclin D3 expression is associated with poor clinical outcome in superficial melanoma. Clin Cancer Res 2000; 6:3614–20.
69. Blackburn EH. Structure and function of telomeres. Nature 1991; 350:569.
70. Ramirez RD, D'Atri S, Pagani E, Faraggiana T, Lacal PM, Taylor RS, et al. Progressive increase in telomerase activity from benign melanocytic conditions to malignant melanoma. Neoplasia 1999; 1:42.
71. Fullen DR, Weijian Z, Dafydd T, Lyndon DS. HTERT expression in melanocytic lesions: an immunohistochemical study on paraffin-embedded tissue. J Cutan Pathol 2005; 32:680–4.
72. Guttman-Yassky E, Bergman R, Manov L, Sprecher E, Shaefer Y, Kerner H. Human telomerase RNA component expression in Spitz nevi, common melanocytic nevi, and malignant melanoma. J Cutan Pathol 2002; 29:341.
73. Bastian BC. Hypothesis: a role for telomere crisis in spontaneous regression of melanoma. Arch Dermatol 2003; 139:667–8.
74. Papp T, Pemsel H, Zimmermann R, Bastrop R, Weiss DG, Schiffmann D. Mutational analysis of the N-ras, p53, p16INK4a, CDK4, and MC1R genes in human congenital melanocytic naevi. J Med Genet 1999; 36:610–14.
75. Demunter A, Stas M, Degreef H, De Wolf-Peeters C, van den Oord JJ. Analysis of N- and K-ras mutations in distinctive tumor progression phases of melanoma. J Invest Dermatol 2001; 117:1483–9.
76. Jafari M, Papp T, Kirchner S, Diener U, Henschler D, Burg G, et al. Analysis of ras mutations in human melanocytic lesions: activation of the ras gene seems to be associated with the nodular type of human malignant melanoma. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 1995; 121:23–30.
77. van Elsas A, Zerp SF, van der Flier S, Kruse KM, Aarnoudse C, Hayward NK, et al. Relevance of ultraviolet-induced N-ras oncogene point mutations in development of primary human cutaneous melanoma. Am J Pathol 1996; 149:883–93.
78. Bastian BC, LeBoit PE, Pinkel D. Mutations and copy number increase of HRAS in Spitz nevi with distinctive histopathologic features. Am J Pathol 2000; 157: 967–72.

Chapter 10

Ewing Sarcoma: Molecular Characterization and Potential Molecular Therapeutic Targets

Marilyn M. Bui and Paul J. Zhang

Contents

10.1 Introduction

Ewing sarcoma (ES) is the second most common malignant bone tumor (after osterosarcoma) among children and young adults. According to the most recently published surveillance epidemiology and end results data [1], the overall incidence of ES of the bone has remained unchanged, with an average of 2.93 cases/1,000,000 reported annually between 1973 and 2004 among patients who are 1–19 years of age. ES is slightly male predominant (male to female ratio = 1.3:1) and significantly prominent in whites (almost never shown in blacks) [2].

M.M. Bui (✉)
Departments of Anatomic Pathology and Sarcoma,
Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, Tampa, FL, USA
e-mail: Marilyn.Bui@moffitt.org

10.2 Etiology and Pathogenesis

ES is one of the members of the Ewing sarcoma family of tumors (ESFT), which also includes soft tissue Ewing sarcoma and primitive neuroectodermal tumors (PNET). All members of the ESFT share similar histologic, cytogenetic, and molecular characteristics and have been thought to be derived from neural crest cells and represent a spectrum of tumors with neural differentiation. However, the uniformity of the morphological, immunohistochemical, cytogenetic, and molecular profile suggests that ESFT may derive from special mesenchymal stem cells that are capable of multilineage differentiation. Emerging data have provided evidence in support of this hypothesis by demonstrating the related histopathology of human mesenchymal stem cells in an experimental tumor model [3, 4]. There is also data demonstrating that expression of the *EWS-FLI-1* fusion protein triggers an ES initiation program in primary human mesenchymal stem cells [5, 6]; this is consistent with the hypothesis that ES is most likely the result of spontaneous genetic translocations rather than Mendelian inheritance or environmental (toxic) exposure. Human mesenchymal stem cell models expressing the *EWS-FLI-1* fusion oncogene may provide more information on tumorogenesis and progression of ES. Studies have indicated that *EWS-FLI-1* participates in ES pathogenesis by promoting at least two sets of events that synergize in tumor development and progression: cell proliferation and survival. This is accomplished by inducing other candidate genes, such as *PDGFC, IGF1, MYC, CCND-1,* and *NKX2-2,* and escaping from apoptosis and growth inhibition by repressing p21, $p57^{Kip}$, TGFbRII, and IGFBPP3 [7]. Further study of the translocation-driven events and

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_10,

the *EWS-FLI-1* targets will be helpful in identifying potential molecular therapeutic targets.

With the use of classic cytogenetic karyotyping, the hallmark of ES was found to be the presence of one of five distinctive balanced translocations, with EWS at chromosome 22 band q12 rearranged to fuse with one of five members of the erythroblast transformation sequence transcription factor gene family (*FLI-1, ERG, ETV1, E1AF,* and *FEV*) at chromosomes 11, 21, 7, 17, and 2. EWS is an RNA-binding protein of unknown function by itself. However, fusion with one of the erythroblast transformation sequence genes results in a hybrid transcript and an oncogenic chimeric protein, which leads to the tumorigenesis of ES. *EWS-FLI-1,* which translocates in *t*(11;22)(q24;q12), is the most common fusion protein and is associated with 85% of cases of ES. Cytogenetic characteristics of ES are summarized in Table 10.1. *FLI-1* is a transcription factor, which alone is not sarcomagenic. There are as many as 18 variants of *EWS-FLI-1* transcripts. All translocations contain the N-terminal domain of *EWS* (exon 1–7) and the *FLI-1* domain (exon 9). The two most common fusions are *EWS* exon 7 to *FLI-1* exon 6 (type 1), which is a less potent transactivator and confers a better prognosis, and *EWS* exon 7 to *FLI-1* exon 5 (type 2) [8].

In addition to the key translocation of *EWS-FLI-1,* ES is associated with many secondary chromosomal changes (in approximately 20–30% of ES). Numerical chromosomal gains include trisomy 8 (45%), as well as chromosomes 2, 5, 7, 9, and 12 (10–15%); translocation includes *t*(1;16)(q12;q11.2); and mutations or deletions include p53 and p16 ink4A [9–12], which are thought to be associated with poor clinical outcome.

Although *EWS-FLI-1* translocation is necessary for tumorogenesis and progression in many cases of ES, it is reasonable to suspect that this hallmark event interplays with other signal transcription pathways, such as *PDGFC, IGF1, MYC, CCND-1,* and *NKX2-2,* for its full oncogenic effect in ES. Telomeres are specialized structures at the ends of human chromosomes and consist of hundreds of hexanucleotide repeats, which protect the chromosomes from DNA degradation, end to end fusions, rearrangements, and chromosome loss. Telemerase is composed of a multisubunit ribonucleoprotein. Its function is to add telomeric DNA to the ends of linear chromosomes using a RNA template. One of the targets of the *EWS-FLI-1* transcript is telomerase, which is expressed at high levels in ES [13]. Loss of p16 INK4A is commonly associated with ES and is associated with telomerase-immortalized human cell models [14].

10.3 Tissue Diagnosis

Hemotoxylin and eosin staining of formalin-fixed and paraffin-embedded tissue sections has shown ES to be morphologically composed of homogenous small, blue, round cells arranged in sheets with or without pseudorosette formation. Intracytoplasmic glycogen can be detected using periodic acid-Schiff stain with and without diastase digestion. However, results are not specific. With the use of immunohistochemical analysis, ES is shown to characteristically express CD99 and *FLI-1* [15]. CD99 is a 32-kDa cell surface glycoprotein encoded by the MIC2 gene. *FLI-1* nuclear reactivity is typically detected in 71% of cases of ES and PNET, which may also have *EWS-FLI-1* fusion. Both markers are very useful in assisting the diagnosis in patients who have typical clinical

Table 10.1 Cytogenetic characteristics of Ewing sarcoma

Translocation	Hybrid transcript and oncogenic chimeric protein	Frequency (%)	References
t(11;22)(q24;q12)	*EWS-FLI-1*	85–90	Martinez-Ramirez [53]; Mitelman [54]
t(21;22)(q12;q12)	*EWS-ERG*	5–10	Delattre [55]; Mitelman [54]
t(7;22)(p22;q12)	*EWS-ETV1*	<1	Delattre [55]; Mitelman [54]
t(17;22)(q12;q12)	*EWS-EIAF*	<1	Delattre [55]
t(2;22)(q33;q12)	*EWS-FEV*	<1	Delattre [55]

presentation and morphology for ES. However, these markers are not specific, and both can be seen in other neoplasms other than ESFT. Therefore, their diagnostic utility is limited when the clinical presentation and morphology are not typical for the disease. In this situation, the most confirmative study is to identify the hallmark genetic translocation or the fusion gene.

Classic cytogenetic karyotyping requires fresh tumor tissue. The tumor cells are grown in cell culture, and metaphase spread is harvested for karyotyping. Karyotyping provides global information, including structural and numerical chromosomal changes and specific translocation and the secondary alteration information. However, it is a time consuming process and can be useless when tumor cells fail to grow in culture.

Fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) is a molecular assay that has been widely used in detection of the hallmark translocation in ES and other members of the family. In addition to frozen and fresh tissue [16], FISH assay is suitable for formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded tissue samples and for cytology smears made from limited volumes of fresh tumor samples or from cell cultures prepared for karyotyping. Fusion probes for *EWS-FLI1* [17–19] and break-apart probes for EWS breakpoint have been used. FISH using fusion probes is very sensitive and specific because it also detects the fusion partner for EWS. The recently described dual-color break-apart cocktail [20] DNA probes flanking the EWS breakpoint region on chromosome 22 only detected breaks at the EWS locus. This break-apart strategy disregarded the translocation partner or fusion type, making it easier to interpret than the probe fusion approach [21]. However, this method is less specific for ES because EWS break-apart signals can be seen in other sarcomas with translocation involving EWS.

Reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) is another commonly used molecular assay used to confirm *EWS-FLI-1* chimeric transcripts in frozen tissue and formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded tissue. Because all translocations contain the N-terminal domain of EWS (exon 1–7) and the *FLI-1* domain (exon 9), RT-PCR can be performed using an EWS exon 7 forward primer and an *FLI-1* exon 9 reverse primer, which amplifies all forms of *EWS-FLI-1* of various sizes. However, this approach may yield false-negative results when the tumor harbors large fusions and is more vulnerable when the tumor RNA is partially degraded when formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded tissue samples are used. The common alternative is to perform RT-PCR using an EWS exon 7 forward primer and an *FLI1* exon 6 reverse primer, which detected *EWS-FLI1* in 85% of ES cases [22]. There are also reports of improved detection of ES chimeric gene fusions by using real-time PCR [23, 24].

10.4 Prognostic Factors

ES by definition is a high-grade malignancy. According to the American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC), the most important prognostic factor is tumor stage. A metastatic tumor and larger than 8 cm confers poor clinical outcome. Unlike in patients with carcinomas or melanoma, ES has no propensity to spread via lymph nodes. Other clinical prognostic factors include tumor location and the age of the patient. Without metastatic disease at the time of diagnosis, good prognostic factors include nonpelvic location, younger than 15 years of age, and tumor size less than 8 cm. Type 1 *EWS-FLI-1* translocation has been shown as an independent favorable prognostic factor [25].

The role of molecular markers such as p53 and INK4A in ES remains to be determined [12]. A low p27 protein expression level is associated with poor survival in patients with ES [26]. Other potential markers are connexin [26-a], intracellular signaling pathways [26-b], [27] and thymidylate synthase [27-a]. As shown in various other cancers [28–31], telomere length reduction is also a predictor and shown to be an independent significant predictor of ES relapse [32]. Patients with short telomeres had a 5.3-fold greater risk of relapse than those with unchanged or longer telomeres.

10.5 Treatment and Clinical Outcomes

The traditional treatment approach entails surgical resection, radiation therapy, and chemotherapy based on resectable (localized) or unresectable (locally advanced with distance metastasis) disease stage.

Surgery and radiation are for local control of the tumor, and chemotherapy is for systemic control. For localized disease, preoperative neoadjuvant therapy can facilitate the shrinkage of the tumor and eradicate micrometastatic disease. Surgical resection with negative margin is the preferred method for eradication of all known tumors. In addition, modern surgical approaches have given patients improved limb salvage, limb function, and survival. Subsequent adjuvant chemotherapy and radiation will reduce local recurrence. Although ES is known for its radiosensitivity, due to its side effects and morbidities, this method is less preferred than modern surgical approach. Multimodality therapy is the cornerstone of current treatment of ES. The current generation of chemotherapy uses a combination of actinomycin D and doxorubicin, ifosamide, and etoposide [33–35]. However, clinical trials are trying to improve survival by using alternative cycles of vincristine, adriamycin, and cyclophosphamide and ifosfamide and etoposide (Children's Oncology Group AEWS0031 trial) and with granulocyte colony-stimulating factor [36]. The EUROpean Ewing Tumour Working Initiative of National Groups (EURO-EWING) 99 protocol provides six cycles of vincristine, ifofamide, doxorubicin, and etoposide; results from this protocol are also pending.

According to the surveillance, epidemiology, and end result data [1] the proportion of patients with distant metastasis among all ES cases remained 26–28%, whereas localized disease increased slightly from 57 to 67%. The 5-year survival of patients with localized diseases only increased from 44% in 1973–1982 to 68% after 1993. The 5-year survival of patients with metastatic disease increased from 16 to 39%. The corresponding 10-year survival increased from 39 to 63% in patients with localized disease and from 16 to 32% in patients with metastatic disease. The improvements in survival for patients with localized and metastatic disease reflect the improvements in multimodality therapy.

Conventional chemotherapy is generally considered the "shot gun approach," with inevitably undesirable cytotoxic events to healthy cells in the body. In addition, high-dose chemotherapy supported with autologous bone marrow transplantation may cause increased risk of treatment-related hematopoietic malignancy [37]. The poor outcome of patients with metastatic disease warrants the development of novel therapeutic modalities. The desirable novel therapy should be more effective and less toxic than conventional chemotherapy by targeting the specific and biologically relevant molecular aberrations.

10.6 Approaches to Identify Molecular Targets

Gene microarray technology provides us with the ability to analyze the complete gene expression profile of ES and shed light on the key molecules of the regulatory network in the origination and progression of ES and to facilitate the identification of potential novel therapeutic targets. Schaefer et al. [38], by analyzing 27 ESFT specimens using Affymetrix microarrays, identified genes differentially regulated between metastatic and localized tumor, including PDGF, TP53, NOTCH, and WNT1 signaling. Polychemotherapy-induced regression of 20 primary tumors was correlated with expression of genes related to angiogenesis, apoptosis, and p53 pathways and genes encoding ubiquitin, proteasome, and phosphoinositide 3-kinase. A set of 46 marker genes correctly classified these 20 tumors as responders versus nonresponders. It was concluded that expression signatures of initial tumor biopsies can facilitate identification of ESFT patients at high risk to develop tumor metastasis or to suffer from a therapy refractory cancer. Using gene expression profiles, Cheung et al. [39] developed a novel genomic approach to detect subclinical disease in ES.

The study of ES cell lines is a valuable tool to evaluate potential targeted therapies. For example, dasatinib, an oral multitargeted inhibitor of several kinases including BCR-ABL, SAR-family kinases, c-Kit, and PDGFR, in a study by Timeus et al. [40], induced cytostatic and antimigratory activity in ES cell lines, suggesting a possible use of dasatinib in the treatment of ES when combined with other cytotoxic therapies. However, for cell line studies, it is important to evaluate preclinical models that recapitulate the molecular characteristics of their respective clinical histologic types. Neale et al. [41] applied Affymetrix HG-U133Plus 2 profiling to an expanded panel of models in the Pediatric Preclinical Testing Program. Profiling led to exclusion of some tumor cell lines that did not cluster with human or xenograft

samples. The expression profiles of the remaining 87 models were compared with 112 clinical samples and showed appropriate correlation to clinical histologic type. Analysis of copy number alterations using Affymetrix 100 K single nucleotide polymorphism showed that the models have copy number alterations similar to their clinical counterparts. In addition, the copy number-altered genes were shown to be nonrandom and appeared to identify histologic type-specific programs of genetic alterations. Therefore, preclinical models can accurately recapitulate expression profiles and genetic alterations common to childhood cancer and are valuable in drug development.

The potential molecular targets that are identified by gene microarray assay or cell line studies need to be validated on tumor tissue obtained from ES patients. The tumor samples can be fresh, frozen, or fixed tissue (such as in RNA preservatives or formalin fixed paraffin embedded). Formalin fixed paraffin embedded tissue is most available and abundant in routine pathology practice. Using immunohistochemical study to validate molecular markers on this type of tissue has been a popular and productive approach. Tissue microarray (TMA) is a method for assembling formalin fixed paraffin embedded tissue from multiple patients into a single block, which allows simultaneous testing of potential molecular markers in multiple tumor samples. Our group has constructed an ES TMA with corresponding clinical information including therapy and outcome. Using this method we have assessed muscarnic and nicotinic acetylcholine receptor (AchRs) expression in ES [42]. We found that AChRs are overexpresssed in a significant number of ES. The western blot analysis of 3 human ES cell lines confirms the presence of AChRs. We are following this lead to investigate their potential therapeutic implications.

10.7 Other Therapeutic Alternatives

10.7.1 Dendritic Cell Immunotherapy

Dendritic cells (DC) are the most potent antigen-presenting cells that induces the activation and proliferation of CD8+ cytotoxic T cells with the help of CD4+ T cells. Activated CD8+ T cells function as tumor-killing cells by cytolysis and apoptosis. Cytokines, especially interferon-gamma, play important roles in this interaction [43]. DC-based immunotherapy has shown promise in patients with breast, prostate, colon, and renal cell carcinomas [44–46]. Our group has also preliminary data that demonstrated the effectiveness of DC immunotherapy in combination with radiation therapy in a clinical trial in patients with sarcoma (Finkeitain SE, Gabrilovich D, Bui MM, Cheong D, Heydek R, Janssen W, Letson D, Sondak V, Szekely R, Antonia SJ, unpublished observations). However, the effects of this therapy in overall survival and disease-free survival will require longer follow-up. To verify the hypothesis and develop the most effective DC vaccine against ES, Guo et al. [47] evaluated the antitumoral efficacy of DC-ES hybrids (DC-A673) and dendritic cells pulsed with other antigen-loading methods. The results indicated that the hybrids induce stronger antitumor efficacy.

10.7.2 siRNA Targets Against the EWS-FLI1 *Oncogene*

RNA interference (RNAi) is a process of sequence-specific, posttranscriptional gene silencing. The sequence is composed of 21–23 nucleotides (siRNA) and is associated with a complex of proteins named the RNA-induced silencing complex. The RNA-induced silencing complex directs the siRNA to the complementary target sequence and results in cleavage of the target RNA [48, 49]. The *EWS-FLI1* transcript is composed of a specific mRNA sequence, which constitutes a relevant target. Toub et al. [50] demonstrated the efficiency of siRNA targeted toward the *EWS-FLI1* transcript, free or encapsulated, delivered by means of nanotechnology. These siRNA-loaded nanocapsules were then tested in vivo on mouse xenografted *EWS-FLI1* expressing tumor and found to trigger a dose-dependent inhibition of tumor growth after intratumoral injection. Specific inhibition of *EWS-FLI-1* was also observed. siRNA is a promising strategy in the development of therapeutic applications in ES [51, 52].

The above alternative therapeutic modalities are not expected to replace surgery, radiation, or chemotherapy; rather, they are expected to be an addition to

the current treatment modalities. In general, alternative therapies are more specific to biologically relevant targets and would be expected to have far less toxicity than traditional chemotherapy.

10.8 Future Directions

The modern revolution in molecular biology will lead to characterization of important signaling pathways in ES and the identification of candidate targets for novel therapies. The specificity of targeted agents will make it possible that a therapy will be tailored to the specific and biologically relevant molecular targets of individual tumors, fitting in the era of personalized medicine. However, despite substantial progress made in recent years in molecular oncology and pathology, so far there are no clinically validated tests to assess the efficacy of drugs targeting aberrant activated signaling pathways in individual patients with ES. We are developing a highly sensitive, quantitative multiplex microbead suspension array approach to simultaneously measure phosphorylation and activation of multiple signaling proteins in small tumor samples from patients with ES, similar to what was done on lung cancer by our group [27]. This approach may serve as a clinically validated test to guide future therapeutic decisions with regard to utility of specific inhibitors for the individual patients based on the signaling profile of ES cancer cells. We are developing a primary human xenograpft model of ES to assess the efficacy of new therapeutic agents. We are also working in collaboration with other groups (academic, private, non-profit, and pharmaceutical) in clinical trials for future drug development for ES.

Acknowledgment The authors are very appreciative of Ms. Rasa Hamilton, Writer/Editor for Experimental Therapeutics at Moffitt Cancer Center for her valuable help with the manuscript preparation.

References

1. Esiashvili N, Goodman M, Marcus RB, Jr. Changes in incidence and survival of Ewing sarcoma patients over the past 3 decades: surveillance epidemiology and end results data. J Pediatr Hematol Oncol. 2008;30(6):425–430.
2. Parkin DM, Stiller CA, Nectoux J. International variations in the incidence of childhood bone tumours. Int J Cancer. 1993;53(3):371–376.
3. Burns JS, Abdallah BM, Shroder HD, Kassem M. The histopathology of a human mesenchymal stem cell experimental tumor model: support for an hMSC origin for Ewing's sarcoma? Histol Histopathol. 2008;23(10): 1229–1240.
4. Tirode F, Laud-Duval K, Prieur A, Delorme B, Charbord P, Delattre O. Mesenchymal stem cell features of Ewing tumors. Cancer Cell. 2007;11(5):421–429.
5. Castillero-Trejo Y, Eliazer S, Xiang L, Richardson JA, Ilaria RL, Jr. Expression of the EWS/FLI-1 oncogene in murine primary bone-derived cells Results in EWS/FLI-1-dependent, ewing sarcoma-like tumors. Cancer Res. 2005;65(19):8698–8705.
6. Riggi N, Suva ML, Suva D, et al. EWS-FLI-1 expression triggers a Ewing's sarcoma initiation program in primary human mesenchymal stem cells. Cancer Res. 2008;68(7):2176–2185.
7. Riggi N, Stamenkovic I. The Biology of Ewing sarcoma. Cancer Lett. 2007;254(1):1–10.
8. Ludwig JA. Ewing sarcoma: historical perspectives, current state-of-the-art, and opportunities for targeted therapy in the future. Curr Opin Oncol. 2008;20(4): 412–418.
9. Maurici D, Perez-Atayde A, Grier HE, Baldini N, Serra M, Fletcher JA. Frequency and implications of chromosome 8 and 12 gains in Ewing sarcoma. Cancer Genet Cytogenet. 1998;100(2):106–110.
10. Mugneret F, Lizard S, Aurias A, Turc-Carel C. Chromosomes in Ewing's sarcoma. II. Nonrandom additional changes, trisomy 8 and der(16)*t*(1;16). Cancer Genet Cytogenet. 1988;32(2):239–245.
11. Hattinger CM, Rumpler S, Ambros IM, et al. Demonstration of the translocation der(16)*t*(1;16)(q12;q11.2) in interphase nuclei of Ewing tumors. Genes Chromosomes Cancer. 1996;17(3):141–150.
12. Honoki K, Stojanovski E, McEvoy M, et al. Prognostic significance of p16 INK4a alteration for Ewing sarcoma: a meta-analysis. Cancer. 2007;110(6):1351–1360.
13. Takahashi A, Higashino F, Aoyagi M, et al. EWS/ETS fusions activate telomerase in Ewing's tumors. Cancer Res. 2003;63(23):8338–8344.
14. Darbro BW, Lee KM, Nguyen NK, Domann FE, Klingelhutz AJ. Methylation of the p16(INK4a) promoter region in telomerase immortalized human keratinocytes co-cultured with feeder cells. Oncogene. 2006;25(56):7421–7433.
15. Folpe AL, Hill CE, Parham DM, O'Shea PA, Weiss SW. Immunohistochemical detection of FLI-1 protein expression: a study of 132 round cell tumors with emphasis on CD99-positive mimics of Ewing's sarcoma/primitive neuroectodermal tumor. Am J Surg Pathol. 2000;24(12): 1657–1662.
16. Bui MM, Smith P, Agresta SV, Cheong D, Letson GD. Practical issues of intraoperative frozen section diagnosis of bone and soft tissue lesions. Cancer Control. 2008;15(1):7–12.
17. Taylor C, Patel K, Jones T, Kiely F, De Stavola BL, Sheer D. Diagnosis of Ewing's sarcoma and peripheral neuroectodermal tumour based on the detection of *t*(11;22) using fluorescence in situ hybridisation. Br J Cancer. 1993;67(1):128–133.

18. Nagao K, Ito H, Yoshida H, et al. Chromosomal rearrangement *t*(11;22) in extraskeletal Ewing's sarcoma and primitive neuroectodermal tumour analysed by fluorescence in situ hybridization using paraffin-embedded tissue. J Pathol. 1997;181(1):62–66.
19. Kumar S, Pack S, Kumar D, et al. Detection of EWS-FLI-1 fusion in Ewing's sarcoma/peripheral primitive neuroectodermal tumor by fluorescence in situ hybridization using formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded tissue. Hum Pathol. 1999;30(3):324–330.
20. Fuller CE, Dalton J, Jenkins JJ, Shurtleff S. Detection of translocations involving the EWS gene locus in Ewing sarcoma/primitive neuroectodermal tumor and desmoplastic small round cell tumor by dual color break-apart probe FISH assay (Abstract 1385). Mod Pathol. 2004;17:329a.
21. Bridge RS, Rajaram V, Dehner LP, Pfeifer JD, Perry A. Molecular diagnosis of Ewing sarcoma/primitive neuroectodermal tumor in routinely processed tissue: a comparison of two FISH strategies and RT-PCR in malignant round cell tumors. Mod Pathol. 2006;19(1):1–8.
22. Khoury JD. Ewing sarcoma family of tumors. Adv Anat Pathol. 2005;12(4):212–220.
23. Meier VS, Kuhne T, Jundt G, Gudat F. Molecular diagnosis of Ewing tumors: improved detection of EWS-FLI-1 and EWS-ERG chimeric transcripts and rapid determination of exon combinations. Diagn Mol Pathol. 1998;7(1): 29–35.
24. Peter M, Gilbert E, Delattre O. A multiplex real-time pcr assay for the detection of gene fusions observed in solid tumors. Lab Invest. 2001;81(6):905–912.
25. Zoubek A, Dockhorn-Dworniczak B, Delattre O, et al. Does expression of different EWS chimeric transcripts define clinically distinct risk groups of Ewing tumor patients? J Clin Oncol. 1996;14(4):1245–1251.
26. Matsunobu T, Tanaka K, Matsumoto Y, et al. The prognostic and therapeutic relevance of p27kip1 in Ewing's family tumors. Clin Cancer Res. 2004;10(3):1003–1012.
26-a. Bui MM, Pasha TL, Acs G, Zhang PJ. Connecxin 40 may be a potential prognostic biomarker for Ewing sarcoma (EWS)/PNET (Abstract 40). Mod Pathol. 2009; 22(1S):12A.
26-b. Bui M, Brazelle W, Gemmer J, Altiok S. A quantitative multiplex protein assay for analysis of intracellular signaling pathways in sarcoma samples (Abstract 1673). 2009;22(1S):368A.
27. Piparo G, Bui MM, Brazelle W, Gemmer J, Altiok S. Multiplex analysis of intracellular signaling pathways in lung cancer FNA samples by microbead suspension arrays (Abstract PF10). Cancer Cytopathol. 2008; 114(S5):348.
27-a. Bui MM, Zheng Z, Antonia S, Bepler G. Thymidylate synthase 1 (TS1) in situ protein expression predicts the survival of Ewing/PNET. Fetal Pediatr Pathol. 2010 (in print).
28. Hiraga S, Ohnishi T, Izumoto S, et al. Telomerase activity and alterations in telomere length in human brain tumors. Cancer Res. 1998;58(10):2117–2125.
29. Franco S, Ozkaynak MF, Sandoval C, et al. Telomere dynamics in childhood leukemia and solid tumors: a follow-up study. Leukemia. 2003;17(2):401–410.
30. Bisoffi M, Heaphy CM, Griffith JK. Telomeres: prognostic markers for solid tumors. Int J Cancer. 2006;119(10):2255–2260.
31. Fordyce CA, Heaphy CM, Bisoffi M, et al. Telomere content correlates with stage and prognosis in breast cancer. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2006;99(2):193–202.
32. Avigad S, Naumov I, Ohali A, et al. Short telomeres: a novel potential predictor of relapse in Ewing sarcoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2007;13(19):5777–5783.
33. Jurgens H, Exner U, Gadner H, et al. Multidisciplinary treatment of primary Ewing's sarcoma of bone. A 6-year experience of a European Cooperative Trial. Cancer. 1988;61(1):23–32.
34. Razek A, Perez CA, Tefft M, et al. Intergroup Ewing's Sarcoma Study: local control related to radiation dose, volume, and site of primary lesion in Ewing's sarcoma. Cancer. 1980;46(3):516–521.
35. Grier HE, Krailo MD, Tarbell NJ, et al. Addition of ifosfamide and etoposide to standard chemotherapy for Ewing's sarcoma and primitive neuroectodermal tumor of bone. N Engl J Med. 2003;348(8):694–701.
36. Womer RB, Daller RT, Fenton JG, Miser JS. Granulocyte colony stimulating factor permits dose intensification by interval compression in the treatment of Ewing's sarcomas and soft tissue sarcomas in children. Eur J Cancer. 2000;36(1):87–94.
37. Bhatia S, Krailo MD, Chen Z, et al. Therapy-related myelodysplasia and acute myeloid leukemia after Ewing sarcoma and primitive neuroectodermal tumor of bone: a report from the Children's Oncology Group. Blood. 2007;109(1):46–51.
38. Schaefer KL, Eisenacher M, Braun Y, et al. Microarray analysis of Ewing's sarcoma family of tumours reveals characteristic gene expression signatures associated with metastasis and resistance to chemotherapy. Eur J Cancer. 2008;44(5):699–709.
39. Cheung IY, Feng Y, Danis K, et al. Novel markers of subclinical disease for Ewing family tumors from gene expression profiling. Clin Cancer Res. 2007;13(23): 6978–6983.
40. Timeus F, Crescenzio N, Fandi A, Doria A, Foglia L, Cordero di Montezemolo L. In vitro antiproliferative and antimigratory activity of dasatinib in neuroblastoma and Ewing sarcoma cell lines. Oncol Rep. 2008;19(2): 353–359.
41. Neale G, Su X, Morton CL, et al. Molecular characterization of the pediatric preclinical testing panel. Clin Cancer Res. 2008;14(14):4572–4583.
42. Schlauder SM, Steffensen TS, Morgan M, et al. Assessment of muscarinic and nicotinic acetylcholine receptor expression in primitive neuroectodermal tumor/Ewing family of tumor and desmoplastic small round cell tumor: an immunohistochemical and western blot study of tissue microarray and cell lines. Fetal Pediatr Pathol, 2008; 27:83–97.
43. Banchereau J, Steinman RM. Dendritic cells and the control of immunity. Nature. 1998;392(6673):245–252.
44. Avigan D. Fusions of breast cancer and dendritic cells as a novel cancer vaccine. Clin Breast Cancer. 2003;3(Suppl. 4): S158–163.
45. Geiger C, Regn S, Weinzierl A, Noessner E, Schendel DJ. A generic RNA-pulsed dendritic cell vaccine strategy for renal cell carcinoma. J Transl Med. 2005;3:29.
46. Savai R, Schermuly RT, Pullamsetti SS, et al. A combination hybrid-based vaccination/adoptive cellular therapy to

prevent tumor growth by involvement of T cells. Cancer Res. 2007;67(11):5443–5453.
47. Guo W, Guo Y, Tang S, Qu H, Zhao H. Dendritic cell-Ewing's sarcoma cell hybrids enhance antitumor immunity. Clin Orthop Relat Res. 2008;466(9):2176–2183.
48. Bernstein E, Caudy AA, Hammond SM, Hannon GJ. Role for a bidentate ribonuclease in the initiation step of RNA interference. Nature. 2001;409(6818):363–366.
49. Hannon GJ. RNA interference. Nature. 2002;418(6894): 244–251.
50. Toub N, Bertrand JR, Tamaddon A, et al. Efficacy of siRNA nanocapsules targeted against the EWS-Fli1 oncogene in Ewing sarcoma. Pharm Res. 2006;23(5):892–900.
51. Maksimenko A, Polard V, Villemeur M, et al. In vivo potentialities of EWS-Fli-1 targeted antisense oligonucleotides-nanospheres complexes. Ann NY Acad Sci. 2005;1058:52–61.
52. Guan H, Zhou Z, Wang H, Jia SF, Liu W, Kleinerman ES. A small interfering RNA targeting vascular endothelial growth factor inhibits Ewing's sarcoma growth in a xenograft mouse model. Clin Cancer Res. 2005;11(7): 2662–2669.
53. Martinez-Ramirez A, Rodriguez-Perales S, Melendez B, et al. Characterization of the A673 cell line (Ewing tumor) by molecular cytogenetic techniques. Cancer Genet Cytogenet. 2003;141(2):138–142.
54. Mitelman F. Mitelman's Catalog of Chromosome Aberrations in Cancer. 5th ed. New York: John Wiley & Sons; 1994.
55. Delattre O, Zucman J, Melot T, et al. The Ewing family of tumors – a subgroup of small-round-cell tumors defined by specific chimeric transcripts. N Engl J Med. 1994;331(5):294–299.

Chapter 11

Molecular Mechanisms of Central Nervous System Metastasis

Nicole D. Riddle, Mumtaz V Rojiani, Steven Brem, and Amyn M. Rojiani

Contents

11.1 Introduction

Brain metastasis occurs in up to 20–40% of cancer patients and regardless of the treatment, prognosis is usually poor [1–3]. The development of metastases undoubtedly contributes significantly to both morbidity and mortality in cancer patients, impacting prognosis and quality of life. It is well accepted that the more aggressive the cancer the more likely the potential for metastasis and vice versa. How and why tumors metastasize is still a topic of ongoing debate, although the migratory and invasive properties of the individual primary tumor are directly related to its metastatic potential. Malignant cells must manifest these properties in order to attain a more aggressive, and therefore more invasive phenotype. These abilities permit tumor cells to migrate and invade through the basement membrane associated with the tumor and its vasculature, compromising its integrity and initiating focal destruction of the extracellular matrix architecture. Although invasion into the lymphatics and/or vasculature followed by eventual extravasation is the primary physical modality that facilitates metastases from the primary site to distant anatomic sites, it is at the molecular level that expression of critical proteins is altered, effecting pathways within the cell that allow enhanced migration and invasion [4–8]. The central nervous system is a prime site for distant metastasis, particularly for such tumors as lung, breast, gastrointestinal, renal and melanoma, although most malignant tumors have been shown to have CNS metastatic potential [9–11].

Typically, metastases to the brain are seen as multiple, well demarcated neoplasms with significant necrosis and peritumoral edema and gliosis (Figs. 11.1 and 11.2). At the macroscopic level the pattern of distribution of lesions is often peripheral, a reflection of the embolic nature of the pathogenetic process as well as the smaller caliber of vasculature seen at the junction of gray and white matter.

11.2 The Metastatic Process

This involves several sequential steps, each one being imperative in its contribution to the final result [12–15]. For CNS metastasis these are: (1) separation from the primary neoplasm; (2) invasion through the basement membrane and extracellular matrix; (3) release into lymphatics or vasculature; (4) trapping in the brain capillary bed; (5) local growth; and

A.M. Rojiani (✉)
Department of Anatomic Pathology and Neuro-Oncology Program, Moffitt Cancer Center, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA
e-mail: Amyn.Rojiani@moffitt.org

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_11,

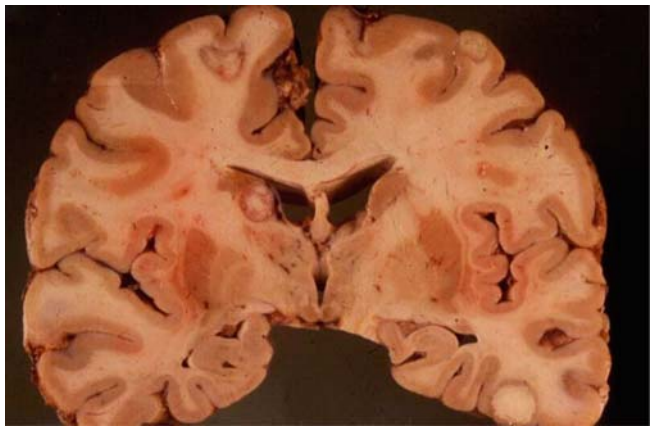


Fig. 11.1 Multiple, well delineated, solid and focally necrotic nodules of metastatic adenocarcinoma (*arrows*) are seen on this coronal section through the cerebral hemispheres

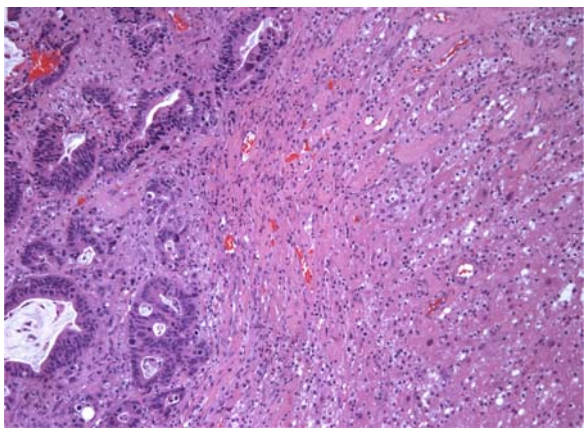


Fig. 11.2 Microscopically, the lesions are frequently well-delineated from adjacent brain which demonstrates reactive gliosis. Formalin fixed, paraffin embedded, Hematoxylin and Eosin stained section – original magnification 200

(6) angiogenesis. Studies show that it is essential that the malignant cells reach the vasculature of the brain and attach there, invade through the endothelial wall, and be able to grow in the brain parenchyma in order for metastasis to form [16–20]. In addition, there are data that suggest that it is not the amount of circulating single cells that correlate with metastasis, rather it is the presence of tumor cell clusters that is more important as a determinant of metastasis [13, 21–24].

11.3 Molecular Mechanisms

Any attempt to answer questions such as why certain cancers notoriously metastasize to the CNS whereas others (such as prostate adenocarcinoma) metastasize widely to other sites but almost never grow in the brain; or what potential targets can be explored for the development of successful therapeutic modalities, we must first examine the molecular mechanism of metastasis. Although the steps outlined in the preceding paragraphs identify the basic steps of the metastatic process, the molecular mechanisms are far more complex and challenging. Many of the molecules and pathways are involved in several different steps of metastasis and often influence multiple pathophysiologic components such as growth, proliferation, angiogenesis, apoptosis and migration. Many of these actions occur concurrently, and frequently are interdependent.

11.4 Hedgehog Signaling Pathway

The first steps in metastasis are separation from the primay tumor and local invasion. It is well recognized that the hedgehog (Hh) signaling pathway, plays a critical role in cell growth and tissue differentiation during embryonic development [25–28]. Hedgehog signaling plays a role in regulating the motility and migration of multiple cell types, including endothelial progenitor cells involved in microvascular remodeling, during would healing, as well as in yolk sac and embryonal vasculogenesis [29–31]. The mammalian Hh ligand, sonic hedgehog (SHh), activates the Hh signaling pathway by binding to their receptor, Patched 1 and 2. This halts Patched suppression of Smoothened (Smo), a membrane protein related to the G-protein receptor family, which upon activation promotes nuclear translocation of a family of transcription factors, Glis, to active Hh genes [26, 32, 33].

There are a variety of human cancers known to be caused by mutations leading to inappropriate SHh pathway signaling, including basal cell carcinoma, gastric carcinoma, medulloblastoma, pancreatic cancer and prostate cancer. Mechanisms include excessive activation due to mutations in the Smo gene and/or loss-of-functions mutations in the Patched gene. Inhibition by using a ligand-blocking antibody or Smo inhibitor, such as KAAD-cyclopamine, inhibits tumor growth [34–37]. Recently it has been reported that SHh signaling is involved not only in the *de novo* vascularization of certain embryonic tissues, but also in angiogenesis [38]. In addition, studies by Hochman et al. have shown that components of the SHh pathway may directly participate in cell migration and angiogenesis. Inhibition of the SHh pathway blocks SHh-induced migration and vascular generation [39]. Young et al. showed that higher concentrations of N-SHh increased cell motility and invasiveness in malignant cells and this enhancement was halted by inhibition of the SHh pathway by KAAD-cyclopramine or anti-SHh antibodies [40]. In addition, interference with SHh signaling decreases the activity of key metalloproteinases (MMP-2 and -9) involved in cell migration and invasion, suggesting these proteins may also be linked to SHh-mediated metastasis [40]. Studies on pancreatic cancer showed reduced metastasis with disruption of the SHh pathway and increased Gli expression has been linked to lymphatic metastasis [41, 42]. These findings, taken together, suggest that SHh activity is with a major molecular player in stepwise progression of metastases.

11.5 Transforming Growth Factor-β

Transforming growth factor (TGF)-β is a pleiotropic cytokine that plays a critical role in regulation of cell growth, differentiation and migration [43–45]. The primary mechanism of TGF-β is signal binding to specific receptors with serine/threonine activity, TGF-β type 1 and 2 receptor (TGF-βR1, TGF-βR2). TGF-βR1 is also referred to as activin receptor-like kinase (ALK) which also has a role in TGF-β signal mediation [46]. Coupling of TGF-β to TGF-βR2 leads to activation of ALK and the Smads receptor [47–50]. Mutations in each of these components can contribute to tumorigenesis [51–53]. In particular, mutations leading to continued activation of ALK5 enhance invasion and angiogenesis through the regulation of matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) [54–56]. MMP overexpression correlates with invasiveness of certain tumors [57–60]. Also, TGF-β activation of several related pathways (mitogen-activated protein kinases and PI3K/Akt) can enhance malignant cell migration and immunosuppresson, thus altering the tumor micro-environment [61–63]. TGF-β can aid in metastasis by breaking down basement membrane barriers and promoting malignant cell motility [54, 55, 64, 65]. Recent research by Young et al. revealed that TGF-β is more effective in promoting invasion and migration in the presence of SHh. Anti-TGF-β-blocking antibody reduces migration and invasiveness of malignant cells. Blockade of the ALK5 kinase significantly reduces SHh-induced cell motility. Taken together, the results show that SHh promotes motility and invasiveness of malignant cells through TGF-β-mediated by activation of the ALK5-Smad 3 pathway [40].

11.6 Angiopoietin Pathway

There are numerous additional proteins involved in invasion by tumor cells. Angiopoietin 2 (Ang2) is a known angiogenic regulator found on both endothelial cells and tumor cells that plays important roles in angiogenesis and tumor progression and has been significantly associated with tumor metastasis and invasion [66–71]. It has been shown that Ang2 functions via the integrin receptor family, which is crucial for migration and invasion of tumor cells [72–74]. Mutations within specific integrins have been shown to affect cell adhesion, invasion and metastasis [75]. Specifically, Ang2 is a potential substrate for integrins in endothelial cells, fibroblasts and myocytes enhancing cell adhesion and triggering intracellular signaling pathways [76–78]. Recent studies show Ang2 stimulates tumor cell invasion via up-regulation and activation of matrix-metalloprotease 2 (MMP-2) [79]. This mechanism appears to overlap with the TGF-β pathways discussed above. Ang2 interacts specifically with αvβ1 integrin activating focal adhesion kinase (FAK), p130Cas, extracellular signal-regulated protein kinase (ERK)/mitogen – activated protein kinase, and c-Jun NH2-terminal kinase (JNK)/stress-activated protein kinase, thereby enhancing MMP-2 expression and secretion [80–84]. MMP-2 then degrades the

extracellular matrix allowing invasion of tumor cells [79]. Ang2 and MMP-2 are found at the invasive edge of tumors, but not in the more central areas [57, 59]. Vascular endothelial growth factor proteins enhance endothelial cell adhesion, migration, and survival via the integrin family receptors [85].

11.7 Matrix Interactions

An important component of the metastatic process is the implantation and subsequent proliferation of metastatic tumor cells within the host organ. This interplay between factors associated with the newly arrived cells and the host microenvironment is a key factor determining the success of the metastatic process. In addition to their ability to physically create a space for themselves, these tumor cells must also generate a significant blood supply for them to grow to a size greater than 2 mm in diameter and become clinically detectable. As noted, MMPs are critical to various steps in the sequence of events leading to metastasis, but particularly as the principle pathway to remodel the extracellular matrix [86–89]. Most invasive human malignancies are associated with up-regulation of the metalloproteinases, especially MMP-2 and MMP-9. Tissue inhibitors of MMPs (TIMPs) are considered the classical regulators of the proteolytic activites of the MMPs, a family of zinc dependent endopeptidases [87–89] and hence tumor inhibitors [90–94]. However, more recently, it has become evident that TIMPs are truly multifunctional proteins with far-reaching effects. They encompass an extensive repertoire of functions that are both MMP dependent and MMP-independent.

These effects are either tumor inhibitory or paradoxically, tumor promoting. TIMP1 is a mitogen for various cell lines [91–97]. Elevated TIMP1 levels is associated with increased invasion and poor prognosis in many malignancies, including non-small cell lung carcinoma [92]; breast cancer [93] and colorectal carcinoma [94]. In concert with the multiplicity of tumors impacted by these mechanisms, an equally diverse range of mechanisms have been implicated including cell proliferation, tumor infiltration and growth, angiogenesis and apoptosis involving a yet unidentified receptor mechanism. These studies have reinforced the concept of MMP independent activity with involvement of signaling pathways.

We examined the effects of overexpression of TIMP-1 in a CNS model of metastasis, focusing primarily on the interaction of TIMP1 in the CNS microenvironment, particularly its impact on the implantation and growth of tumor. Following implantation of lung adenocarcinoma cells transfected to overexpress human TIMP-1, we demonstrated both increased tumor size as well as more aggressive tumor growth patterns with multiplicity of tumors and increased invasion. Utilizing in vivo and in vitro analysis of vascular patterns, we noted increased angiogenesis either in tumors from these cells or when serum-free medium from TIMP-1 overexpressing clones was used. Gene expression profiling of TIMP-1 clone exhibited a 3-fold reduction of thrombospondin-1 (TSP1) expression. TSP-1 is a well documented inhibitor of angiogenesis. An elegant study by Watnick et al. (2003) describes the role of *ras* and *myc* oncogenes to repress TSP-1 leading to increased angiogenesis [95]. These studies indicate that TSP-1 is a crucial inhibitor of angiogenesis, just as VEGF is an activator. These studies further confirm the role of TIMP-1 to promote tumor growth and suggest yet another possible mechanism for its interaction in the host microenvironment.

11.8 VEGF Pathway

The growth and spread of metastases are dependent on the establishment of an adequate blood supply [22, 23, 90, 96–100]. Angiogenesis occurs by sprouting and non-sprouting methods. The prior involving branching of new capillaries from preexisting vessels, and the latter resulting from enlargement, splitting and fusion of preexisting cells produced by proliferation of endothelial cells within the wall of a vessel [101]. Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) is a well known participant in the increased vascular density of tumors and correlates directly with a poor prognosis [102–110]. There are several possible mechanisms to explain this phenomenon: cells that have increased expression of VEGF may be more successful in outgrowing their dormant state after metastasis and the probability of cellular entry into the vasculature may increase with vessel density [97, 111]. However, there is research that shows that for certain sites, induction of angiogenesis is not a prerequisite as the pre-existent vascular

bed may be sufficient for tumor growth as tumors can survive and infiltrate by co-option of pre-existing vessels [107, 112–120].

When VEGF is involved in tumor metastasis it appears that endothelial cells and pericytes in dilated vessels are induced to proliferate and migrate, thereby covering the micronodules protruding into the lumen of these vessels [121]. There is also speculation that this encasement of tumor cells by endothelial cells can provide protection from the immune system, thus increasing the possibility of successful metastasis [121], providing a protected vascular "niche". Tumor cells that do not usually have efficient metastatic potential can successfully travel with VEGF expressing tumor cells, providing an explanation for the observation that metastasis form with little angiogenic potential despite origin from highly vascular tumors [119, 121]. Also, these tumor nodule out-pouchings are frequently found in the vasculature of patients with poor prognosis [107, 122]. Many tumors with a nodular phenotype and intravascular growth often have high VEGF expression [123]. For brain metastasis, in particular, studies show that VEGF is necessary, but not sufficient by itself, for the production and growth [124]. Rapidly enlarging brain metastases have numerous large blood vessels and the expression of VEGF directly correlates with angiogenesis and growth [124]. In one study, tumor cells with a mutant-VEGF had significantly decreased incidence of brain metastasis, though this was not found for all cancers [124]. Additional studies showed potential involvement in neovascularization of brain tumors by platelet derived growth factor (PDGF), fibroblast growth factor (FGF), and epidermal growth factor (EGF) [125]. Using similar pathways to VEGF these angiogenic molecules overcome inhibition of angiogenesis at the primary tumor site leading to disintegration of the basement membrane and migration of endothelial cells towards the tumor [126].

11.9 Other Molecular Pathways

In addition to the mechanism of actual growth, many studies have investigated why certain tumors metastasize more often to specific organs. For example, certain tumors have a predilection for neural tissue. In a series of studies by Schackert and Fidler it was demonstrated that certain cell lines metastasize to the meninges, whereas other preferentially formed tumors within the brain parenchyma [18–20]. A primary example of this is the study by Onodera [127] that showed that neural cell adhesion molecule (NCAM) expression was significantly higher in primary colorectal tumors that had brain metastases than those with metastases to other sites [127]. NCAM is involved in the formation of neuronal networks as well as in neuromuscular synapses [120, 128–130]. Another study involving melanoma cells showed that expression p75NTR, a common receptor for the neurotrophin family, correlated to brain metastasis as well as greater survival therein [131]. Mammalian neurotrophins include nerve growth factor (NGF), brain-derived neurotrophic binding factor (BDNF), neurotrophin-3 (NT-3), and neurotrophin-4/5 (NT-4/5) [132]. All have been shown to affect certain malignant cell lines and to work through their own specific tyrosine kinase receptor [133–140]. Marchetti has also linked human heparanase to brain metastases [139]. In addition, nuclear factor com 1 was shown to be increased in brain metastatic tumors with significant increases of expression upon activation of receptor tyrosine kinase [141].

Tyrosine kinase receptors in their own right have been shown to aid in metastasis of small cell lung cancers to the brain, as well as other organs [142]. Another player in brain specific metastasis is the polymorphic cell adhesion molecule CD44. CD44 is a family of proteins generated by extensive splicing of CD44 pre-messenger RNA that is present in normal brain and primary brain tumors. A variant of CD44 (CD44v) has been shown to be increased in metastatic brain tumors, but not in normal brain or primary brain tumors. Metastases to the spine are almost always negative for CD44v expression [143, 144].

A 2003 study by Gerlach et al. revealed that malignant tumors with intracerebral metastasis had higher levels of tissue factor pathway inhibitor (TFPI) compared to their benign counterparts, as well as being higher in primary brain tumors [145]. In prostate cancer, higher levels of a splice variant of the Kruppel-like factor 6 (KLF6) suppressor gene was shown to lead to poorer survival due to more rapid metastasis and dissemination to distant sites, including the CNS [146]. Recent study of the notch signaling pathway in experimental brain metastasis showed that activation of this pathway led to more migratory and invasive cell lines implying that it may play a crucial role in brain metastasis [147, 148]. Finally, galectin-3 is increased

in metastatic breast cancer, but not in normal breast tissue [149].

11.10 Endogenous Inhibitors

An interesting adjunct to the topic of metastasis is the idea of endogenous inhibition. The concept of tumor dormancy suggests that there is a prolonged period of latency for micrometastasis prior to their growth and clinical appearance [150, 151]. While fast growing tumors have been shown to have strong angiogenic properties, recent findings suggest that the primary tumor may actually exert anti-angiogenic effects on silent metastasis. Brain metastases have been reported months or years after removal of the primary tumor [152–159]. It is believed that the balance between proliferation and apoptosis at the secondary tumor site is influenced by anti-angiogenic mediators released by the primary tumor and that removal of this primary site may then result in loss of inhibition of the secondary tumors angiogenesis. Two factors have been shown to take part in this phenomenon, angiostatin and endostatin. Angiostatin was the first endogenous anti-angiogenic factor isolated in 1994 [160–161]. It was shown to keep lung metastasis in a dormant stage by inducing an insufficient vascularization and a higher apoptotic rate [150, 160–163]. Endostatin is a carboxyl-terminal fragment of collagen XVIII 1 originally purified from a hemangioendothelioma [164]. Its anti-angiogenic properties are mediate specifically by inhibiting proliferation, migration, and tube formation of endothelial cells [164–168]. Though angiostatin and endostatin are the only two factors whose mechanism is well understood to date, research is being done to elucidate other proteins that may be involved in endogenous inhibition as well as their possible utilization for cancer treatment.

11.11 Conclusions

Investigations into the mechanisms of metastatic disease remain an integral part of neuro-oncology research. Many of the findings are recent and, in the final analysis, the pathogenetic mechanisms that are critical to the spread of cancer in general and the evolution of metastasis within the central nervous system still remain elusive. Despite the advances that have significantly contributed to our understanding of the intricacies of the metastatic process at cellular and subcellular levels, it remains abundantly clear that understanding molecular mechanisms will perhaps provide us the most useful information. Success in deciphering complex interactions in the tumor microenvironment, to the identification of specific therapeutic targets, as well as predictions of prognosis and response, all fall within the realm of these endeavors, and therefore the search for a better understanding must continue if we are to impact this devastating disease.

References

1. Prados M, Wilson C. Neoplasms of the central nervous system. In: Holland J, RC Bast J, Kufe D, Morton D, Weichselbaum R, editors. Cancer Medicine. 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lea & Febiger; 1993, pp. 1080–119.
2. Sawaya R, Ligon BL, Bindal AK, Bindal RK, Hess KR. Surgical treatment of metastatic brain tumors. J Neurooncol. 1996 Mar;27(3):269–77.
3. Sawaya R, Ligon BL, Bindal RK. Management of metastatic brain tumors. Ann Surg Oncol. 1994 Mar;1(2):169–78.
4. Duband JL, Monier F, Delannet M, Newgreen D. Epithelium-mesenchyme transition during neural crest development. Acta Anat (Basel). 1995;154(1):63–78.
5. Thiery JP, Sleeman JP. Complex networks orchestrate epithelial-mesenchymal transitions. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2006 Feb;7(2):131–42.
6. Huber MA, Azoitei N, Baumann B, Grunert S, Sommer A, Pehamberger H, et al. NF-kappaB is essential for epithelial-mesenchymal transition and metastasis in a model of breast cancer progression. J Clin Invest. 2004 Aug;114(4):569–81.
7. Thompson EW, Paik S, Brunner N, Sommers CL, Zugmaier G, Clarke R, et al. Association of increased basement membrane invasiveness with absence of estrogen receptor and expression of vimentin in human breast cancer cell lines. J Cell Physiol. 1992 Mar;150(3):534–44.
8. Thompson EW, Torri J, Sabol M, Sommers CL, Byers S, Valverius EM, et al. Oncogene-induced basement membrane invasiveness in human mammary epithelial cells. Clin Exp Metastasis. 1994 May;12(3):181–94.
9. Black PM. Brain tumor. Part 2. N Engl J Med. 1991 May 30;324(22):1555–64.
10. Black PM. Brain tumors. Part 1. N Engl J Med. 1991 May 23;324(21):1471–6.
11. Schouten LJ, Rutten J, Huveneers HA, Twijnstra A. Incidence of brain metastases in a cohort of patients with carcinoma of the breast, colon, kidney, and lung and melanoma. Cancer. 2002 May 15;94(10):2698–705.
12. Aukerman SL, Price JE, Fidler IJ. Different deficiencies in the prevention of tumorigenic-low-metastatic murine

K-1735b melanoma cells from producing metastases. J Natl Cancer Inst. 1986 Oct;77(4):915–24.
13. Fidler IJ. The relationship of embolic homogeneity, number, size and viability to the incidence of experimental metastasis. Eur J Cancer. 1973 Mar;9(3):223–7.
14. Fidler IJ. Critical determinants of metastasis. Semin Cancer Biol. 2002 Apr;12(2):89–96.
15. Price JE, Aukerman SL, Fidler IJ. Evidence that the process of murine melanoma metastasis is sequential and selective and contains stochastic elements. Cancer Res. 1986 Oct;46(10):5172–8.
16. Fujimaki T, Price JE, Fan D, Bucana CD, Itoh K, Kirino T, et al. Selective growth of human melanoma cells in the brain parenchyma of nude mice. Melanoma Res. 1996 Oct;6(5):363–71.
17. Nicolson GL, Menter DG, Herrmann JL, Yun Z, Cavanaugh P, Marchetti D. Brain metastasis: role of trophic, autocrine, and paracrine factors in tumor invasion and colonization of the central nervous system. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol. 1996;213 (Pt 2):89–115.
18. Schackert G, Fidler IJ. Site-specific metastasis of mouse melanomas and a fibrosarcoma in the brain or meninges of syngeneic animals. Cancer Res. 1988 Jun 15;48(12):3478–84.
19. Schackert G, Fidler IJ. Development of in vivo models for studies of brain metastasis. Int J Cancer. 1988 Apr 15;41(4):589–94.
20. Schackert G, Simmons RD, Buzbee TM, Hume DA, Fidler IJ. Macrophage infiltration into experimental brain metastases: occurrence through an intact blood-brain barrier. J Natl Cancer Inst. 1988 Sept 7;80(13):1027–34.
21. Glaves D. Correlation between circulating cancer cells and incidence of metastases. Br J Cancer. 1983 Nov;48(5):665–73.
22. Liotta LA, Saidel MG, Kleinerman J. The significance of hematogenous tumor cell clumps in the metastatic process. Cancer Res. 1976 Mar;36(3):889–94.
23. Liotta LA, Steeg PS, Stetler-Stevenson WG. Cancer metastasis and angiogenesis: an imbalance of positive and negative regulation. Cell. 1991 Jan 25;64(2):327–36.
24. Vlems FA, Ruers TJ, Punt CJ, Wobbes T, van Muijen GN. Relevance of disseminated tumour cells in blood and bone marrow of patients with solid epithelial tumours in perspective. Eur J Surg Oncol. 2003 May;29(4): 289–302.
25. Hooper JE, Scott MP. Communicating with Hedgehogs. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2005 Apr;6(4):306–17
26. Ingham PW, McMahon AP. Hedgehog signaling in animal development: paradigms and principles. Genes Dev. 2001 Dec 1;15(23):3059–87.
27. McMahon AP, Ingham PW, Tabin CJ. Developmental roles and clinical significance of hedgehog signaling. Curr Top Dev Biol. 2003;53:1–114.
28. Pasca di Magliano M, Hebrok M. Hedgehog signalling in cancer formation and maintenance. Nat Rev Cancer. 2003 Dec;3(12):903–11.
29. Asai J, Takenaka H, Kusano KF, Ii M, Luedemann C, Curry C, et al. Topical sonic hedgehog gene therapy accelerates wound healing in diabetes by enhancing endothelial progenitor cell-mediated microvascular remodeling. Circulation. 2006 May 23;113(20):2413–24.
30. Gering M, Patient R. Hedgehog signaling is required for adult blood stem cell formation in zebrafish embryos. Dev Cell. 2005 Mar;8(3):389–400.
31. Vokes SA, Yatskievych TA, Heimark RL, McMahon J, McMahon AP, Antin PB, et al. Hedgehog signaling is essential for endothelial tube formation during vasculogenesis. Development. 2004 Sept;131(17):4371–80.
32. Bale AE, Yu KP. The hedgehog pathway and basal cell carcinomas. Hum Mol Genet. 2001 Apr;10(7):757–62.
33. Ingham PW. Hedgehog signalling. Curr Biol. 2008 Mar 25;18(6):R238–41.
34. Beachy PA, Karhadkar SS, Berman DM. Tissue repair and stem cell renewal in carcinogenesis. Nature. 2004 Nov 18;432(7015):324–31.
35. Chen JK, Taipale J, Cooper MK, Beachy PA. Inhibition of Hedgehog signaling by direct binding of cyclopamine to Smoothened. Genes Dev. 2002 Nov 1;16(21):2743–8.
36. Chen JK, Taipale J, Young KE, Maiti T, Beachy PA. Small molecule modulation of Smoothened activity. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2002 Oct 29;99(22):14071–6.
37. Karhadkar SS, Bova GS, Abdallah N, Dhara S, Gardner D, Maitra A, et al. Hedgehog signalling in prostate regeneration, neoplasia and metastasis. Nature. 2004 Oct 7;431(7009):707–12.
38. Pola R, Ling LE, Aprahamian TR, Barban E, Bosch-Marce M, Curry C, et al. Postnatal recapitulation of embryonic hedgehog pathway in response to skeletal muscle ischemia. Circulation. 2003 Jul 29;108(4):479–85.
39. Hochman E, Castiel A, Jacob-Hirsch J, Amariglio N, Izraeli S. Molecular pathways regulating pro-migratory effects of Hedgehog signaling. J Biol Chem. 2006 Nov 10;281(45):33860–70.
40. Yoo YA, Kang MH, Kim JS, Oh SC. Sonic hedgehog signaling promotes motility and invasiveness of gastric cancer cells through TGF-beta-mediated activation of the ALK5-Smad 3 pathway. Carcinogenesis. 2008 Mar;29(3):480–90.
41. Feldmann G, Dhara S, Fendrich V, Bedja D, Beaty R, Mullendore M, et al. Blockade of hedgehog signaling inhibits pancreatic cancer invasion and metastases: a new paradigm for combination therapy in solid cancers. Cancer Res. 2007 Mar 1;67(5):2187–96.
42. Mori Y, Okumura T, Tsunoda S, Sakai Y, Shimada Y. Gli-1 expression is associated with lymph node metastasis and tumor progression in esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. Oncology. 2006;70(5):378–89.
43. Leivonen SK, Ala-Aho R, Koli K, Grenman R, Peltonen J, Kahari VM. Activation of Smad signaling enhances collagenase-3 (MMP-13) expression and invasion of head and neck squamous carcinoma cells. Oncogene. 2006 Apr 27;25(18):2588–600.
44. Leivonen SK, Kahari VM. Transforming growth factor-beta signaling in cancer invasion and metastasis. Int J Cancer. 2007 Nov 15;121(10):2119–24.
45. Zavadil J, Bottinger EP. TGF-beta and epithelial-to-mesenchymal transitions. Oncogene. 2005 Aug 29;24(37):5764–74.
46. Bertolino P, Deckers M, Lebrin F, ten Dijke P. Transforming growth factor-beta signal transduction in angiogenesis and vascular disorders. Chest. 2005 Dec; 128(6 Suppl.): 585S–90S.

47. Massague J. TGF-beta signal transduction. Annu Rev Biochem. 1998;67:753–91.
48. Massague J, Seoane J, Wotton D. Smad transcription factors. Genes Dev. 2005 Dec 1;19(23):2783–810.
49. Massague J, Wotton D. Transcriptional control by the TGF-beta/Smad signaling system. EMBO J. 2000 Apr 17;19(8):1745–54.
50. Shi Y, Massague J. Mechanisms of TGF-beta signaling from cell membrane to the nucleus. Cell. 2003 Jun 13;113(6):685–700.
51. Bottinger EP, Jakubczak JL, Haines DC, Bagnall K, Wakefield LM. Transgenic mice overexpressing a dominant-negative mutant type II transforming growth factor beta receptor show enhanced tumorigenesis in the mammary gland and lung in response to the carcinogen 7,12-dimethylbenz-[a]-anthracene. Cancer Res. 1997 Dec 15;57(24):5564–70.
52. Gorska AE, Jensen RA, Shyr Y, Aakre ME, Bhowmick NA, Moses HL. Transgenic mice expressing a dominant-negative mutant type II transforming growth factor-beta receptor exhibit impaired mammary development and enhanced mammary tumor formation. Am J Pathol. 2003 Oct;163(4):1539–49.
53. Pierce DF, Jr., Gorska AE, Chytil A, Meise KS, Page DL, Coffey RJ, Jr., et al. Mammary tumor suppression by transforming growth factor beta 1 transgene expression. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 1995 May 9;92(10):4254–8.
54. Dumont N, Arteaga CL. Transforming growth factor-beta and breast cancer: tumor promoting effects of transforming growth factor-beta. Breast Cancer Res. 2000;2(2):125–32.
55. Dumont N, Bakin AV, Arteaga CL. Autocrine transforming growth factor-beta signaling mediates Smad-independent motility in human cancer cells. J Biol Chem. 2003 Jan 31;278(5):3275–85.
56. Safina A, Vandette E, Bakin AV. ALK5 promotes tumor angiogenesis by upregulating matrix metalloproteinase-9 in tumor cells. Oncogene. 2007 Apr 12;26(17):2407–22.
57. Bellail AC, Hunter SB, Brat DJ, Tan C, Van Meir EG. Microregional extracellular matrix heterogeneity in brain modulates glioma cell invasion. Int J Biochem Cell Biol. 2004 Jun;36(6):1046–69.
58. Guo P, Imanishi Y, Cackowski FC, Jarzynka MJ, Tao HQ, Nishikawa R, et al. Up-regulation of angiopoietin-2, matrix metalloprotease-2, membrane type 1 metalloprotease, and laminin 5 gamma 2 correlates with the invasiveness of human glioma. Am J Pathol. 2005 Mar;166(3):877–90.
59. Hood JD, Cheresh DA. Role of integrins in cell invasion and migration. Nat Rev Cancer. 2002 Feb;2(2):91–100.
60. Park MJ, Park IC, Hur JH, Kim MS, Lee HC, Woo SH, et al. Modulation of phorbol ester-induced regulation of matrix metalloproteinases and tissue inhibitors of metalloproteinases by SB203580, a specific inhibitor of p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase. J Neurosurg. 2002 Jul;97(1):112–8.
61. Derynck R, Zhang YE. Smad-dependent and Smad-independent pathways in TGF-beta family signalling. Nature. 2003 Oct 9;425(6958):577–84.
62. Muraoka RS, Koh Y, Roebuck LR, Sanders ME, Brantley-Sieders D, Gorska AE, et al. Increased malignancy of Neu-induced mammary tumors overexpressing active transforming growth factor beta1. Mol Cell Biol. 2003 Dec;23(23):8691–703.
63. Muraoka-Cook RS, Shin I, Yi JY, Easterly E, Barcellos-Hoff MH, Yingling JM, et al. Activated type I TGFbeta receptor kinase enhances the survival of mammary epithelial cells and accelerates tumor progression. Oncogene. 2006 Jun 8;25(24):3408–23.
64. Wakefield LM, Roberts AB. TGF-beta signaling: positive and negative effects on tumorigenesis. Curr Opin Genet Dev. 2002 Feb;12(1):22–9.
65. Wang KS, Hu ZL, Li JH, Xiao DS, Wen JF. Enhancement of metastatic and invasive capacity of gastric cancer cells by transforming growth factor-beta1. Acta Biochim Biophys Sin (Shanghai). 2006 Mar;38(3):179–86.
66. Etoh T, Inoue H, Tanaka S, Barnard GF, Kitano S, Mori M. Angiopoietin-2 is related to tumor angiogenesis in gastric carcinoma: possible in vivo regulation via induction of proteases. Cancer Res. 2001 Mar 1;61(5):2145–53.
67. Koga K, Todaka T, Morioka M, Hamada J, Kai Y, Yano S, et al. Expression of angiopoietin-2 in human glioma cells and its role for angiogenesis. Cancer Res. 2001 Aug 15;61(16):6248–54.
68. Lind AJ, Wikstrom P, Granfors T, Egevad L, Stattin P, Bergh A. Angiopoietin 2 expression is related to histological grade, vascular density, metastases, and outcome in prostate cancer. Prostate. 2005 Mar 1;62(4):394–9.
69. Ochiumi T, Tanaka S, Oka S, Hiyama T, Ito M, Kitadai Y, et al. Clinical significance of angiopoietin-2 expression at the deepest invasive tumor site of advanced colorectal carcinoma. Int J Oncol. 2004 Mar;24(3):539–47.
70. Sfiligoi C, de Luca A, Cascone I, Sorbello V, Fuso L, Ponzone R, et al. Angiopoietin-2 expression in breast cancer correlates with lymph node invasion and short survival. Int J Cancer. 2003 Feb 10;103(4):466–74.
71. Yancopoulos GD, Davis S, Gale NW, Rudge JS, Wiegand SJ, Holash J. Vascular-specific growth factors and blood vessel formation. Nature. 2000 Sept 14;407(6801):242–8.
72. Camenisch G, Pisabarro MT, Sherman D, Kowalski J, Nagel M, Hass P, et al. ANGPTL3 stimulates endothelial cell adhesion and migration via integrin alpha vbeta 3 and induces blood vessel formation in vivo. J Biol Chem. 2002 May 10;277(19):17281–90.
73. Hynes RO. Integrins: bidirectional, allosteric signaling machines. Cell. 2002 Sept 20;110(6):673–87.
74. Yokoyama K, Erickson HP, Ikeda Y, Takada Y. Identification of amino acid sequences in fibrinogen gamma-chain and tenascin C C-terminal domains critical for binding to integrin alpha vbeta 3. J Biol Chem. 2000 Jun 2;275(22):16891–8.
75. Brakebusch C, Bouvard D, Stanchi F, Sakai T, Fassler R. Integrins in invasive growth. J Clin Invest. 2002 Apr;109(8):999–1006.
76. Carlson TR, Feng Y, Maisonpierre PC, Mrksich M, Morla AO. Direct cell adhesion to the angiopoietins mediated by integrins. J Biol Chem. 2001 Jul 13;276(28):26516–25.
77. Cascone I, Napione L, Maniero F, Serini G, Bussolino F. Stable interaction between alpha5beta1 integrin and Tie2 tyrosine kinase receptor regulates endothelial cell response to Ang-1. J Cell Biol. 2005 Sept 12;170(6):993–1004.

78. Dallabrida SM, Ismail N, Oberle JR, Himes BE, Rupnick MA. Angiopoietin-1 promotes cardiac and skeletal myocyte survival through integrins. Circ Res. 2005 Mar 4;96(4):e8–24.
79. Hu B, Jarzynka MJ, Guo P, Imanishi Y, Schlaepfer DD, Cheng SY. Angiopoietin 2 induces glioma cell invasion by stimulating matrix metalloprotease 2 expression through the alphavbeta1 integrin and focal adhesion kinase signaling pathway. Cancer Res. 2006 Jan 15;66(2):775–83.
80. Hsia DA, Mitra SK, Hauck CR, Streblow DN, Nelson JA, Ilic D, et al. Differential regulation of cell motility and invasion by FAK. J Cell Biol. 2003 Mar 3;160(5):753–67.
81. Kramer RH, McDonald KA, Crowley E, Ramos DM, Damsky CH. Melanoma cell adhesion to basement membrane mediated by integrin-related complexes. Cancer Res. 1989 Jan 15;49(2):393–402.
82. Kurata H, Thant AA, Matsuo S, Senga T, Okazaki K, Hotta N, et al. Constitutive activation of MAP kinase kinase (MEK1) is critical and sufficient for the activation of MMP-2. Exp Cell Res. 2000 Jan 10;254(1):180–8.
83. Mitra SK, Hanson DA, Schlaepfer DD. Focal adhesion kinase: in command and control of cell motility. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2005 Jan;6(1):56–68.
84. Zhang Y, Thant AA, Hiraiwa Y, Naito Y, Sein TT, Sohara Y, et al. A role for focal adhesion kinase in hyluronan-dependent MMP-2 secretion in a human small-cell lung carcinoma cell line, QG90. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2002 Jan 25;290(3):1123–7.
85. Hutchings H, Ortega N, Plouet J. Extracellular matrix-bound vascular endothelial growth factor promotes endothelial cell adhesion, migration, and survival through integrin ligation. FASEB J. 2003 Aug;17(11):1520–2.
86. Sternlicht MD, Werb Z. How matrix metalloproteinases regulate cell behavior. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol. 2001;17:463–516.
87. Baker AH, Edwards DR, Murphy G. Metalloproteinase inhibitors: biological actions and therapeutic opportunities. J Cell Sci. 2002 Oct 1;115(Pt 19):3719–27.
88. Coussens LM, Fingleton B, Matrisian LM. Matrix metalloproteinase inhibitors and cancer: trials and tribulations. Science. 2002 Mar 29;295(5564):2387–92.
89. Nguyen M, Arkell J, Jackson CJ. Human endothelial gelatinases and angiogenesis. Int J Biochem Cell Biol. 2001 Oct;33(10):960–70.
90. Schultz RM, Silberman S, Persky B, Bajkowski AS, Carmichael DF. Inhibition by human recombinant tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinases of human amnion invasion and lung colonization by murine B16-F10 melanoma cells. Cancer Res. 1988 Oct 1;48(19):5539–45.
91. Hayakawa T, Yamashita K, Tanzawa K, Uchijima E, Iwata K. Growth-promoting activity of tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinases-1 (TIMP-1) for a wide range of cells. A possible new growth factor in serum. FEBS Lett. 1992 Feb 17;298(1):29–32.
92. Fong KM, Kida Y, Zimmerman PV, Smith PJ. TIMP1 and adverse prognosis in non-small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 1996 Aug;2(8):1369–72.
93. McCarthy K, Maguire T, McGreal G, McDermott E, O'Higgins N, Duffy MJ. High levels of tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinase-1 predict poor outcome in patients with breast cancer. Int J Cancer. 1999 Feb 19;84(1):44–8.
94. Zeng ZS, Cohen AM, Zhang ZF, Stetler-Stevenson W, Guillem JG. Elevated tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinase 1 RNA in colorectal cancer stroma correlates with lymph node and distant metastases. Clin Cancer Res. 1995 Aug;1(8):899–906.
95. Watnick RS, Cheng YN, Rangerajan A, Ince TA, Weinberg RA. Ras modulates Myc activity to repress thrombospondin-1 expression and increase tumor angiogenesis. Cancer Cell. 2003. Mar;3(3):219–31.
96. Algire G. The Biology of Melanomas. New York: New York Academy of Sciences; 1947.
97. Folkman J. What is the evidence that tumors are angiogenesis dependent? J Natl Cancer Inst. 1990 Jan 3;82(1):4–6.
98. Folkman J. The influence of angiogenesis research on management of patients with breast cancer. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 1995;36(2):109–18.
99. Hanahan D, Folkman J. Patterns and emerging mechanisms of the angiogenic switch during tumorigenesis. Cell. 1996 Aug 9;86(3):353–64.
100. Harris AL. Anti-angiogenesis therapy and strategies for integrating it with adjuvant therapy. Recent Results Cancer Res. 1998;152:341–52.
101. Risau W. Mechanisms of angiogenesis. Nature. 1997 Apr 17;386(6626):671–4.
102. Cheng SY, Nagane M, Huang HS, Cavenee WK. Intracerebral tumor-associated hemorrhage caused by overexpression of the vascular endothelial growth factor isoforms VEGF121 and VEGF165 but not VEGF189. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 1997 Oct 28;94(22):12081–7.
103. Claffey KP, Brown LF, del Aguila LF, Tognazzi K, Yeo KT, Manseau EJ, et al. Expression of vascular permeability factor/vascular endothelial growth factor by melanoma cells increases tumor growth, angiogenesis, and experimental metastasis. Cancer Res. 1996 Jan 1;56(1):172–81.
104. Ferrara N. Vascular endothelial growth factor and the regulation of angiogenesis. Recent Prog Horm Res. 2000;55:15–35; discussion 6.
105. Ferrara N. VEGF and the quest for tumour angiogenesis factors. Nat Rev Cancer. 2002 Oct;2(10):795–803.
106. Oku T, Tjuvajev JG, Miyagawa T, Sasajima T, Joshi A, Joshi R, et al. Tumor growth modulation by sense and antisense vascular endothelial growth factor gene expression: effects on angiogenesis, vascular permeability, blood volume, blood flow, fluorodeoxyglucose uptake, and proliferation of human melanoma intracerebral xenografts. Cancer Res. 1998 Sept 15;58(18):4185–92.
107. Weidner N. New paradigm for vessel intravasation by tumor cells. Am J Pathol. 2002 Jun;160(6):1937–9.
108. Weidner N, Folkman J. Tumoral vascularity as a prognostic factor in cancer. Important Adv Oncol. 1996: 167–90.
109. Hasan J, Byers R, Jayson GC. Intra-tumoural microvessel density in human solid tumours. Br J Cancer. 2002 May 20;86(10):1566–77.
110. Weidner N. Tumoural vascularity as a prognostic factor in cancer patients: the evidence continues to grow. J Pathol. 1998 Feb;184(2):119–22.
111. Ellis LM, Fidler IJ. Angiogenesis and metastasis. Eur J Cancer. 1996 Dec; 32A(14):2451–60.
112. Al-Mehdi AB, Tozawa K, Fisher AB, Shientag L, Lee A, Muschel RJ. Intravascular origin of metastasis from the

proliferation of endothelium-attached tumor cells: a new model for metastasis. Nat Med. 2000 Jan;6(1):100–2.
113. Auguste P, Lemiere S, Larrieu-Lahargue F, Bikfalvi A. Molecular mechanisms of tumor vascularization. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol. 2005 Apr;54(1):53–61.
114. Kim ES, Serur A, Huang J, Manley CA, McCrudden KW, Frischer JS, et al. Potent VEGF blockade causes regression of coopted vessels in a model of neuroblastoma. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2002 Aug 20;99(17): 11399–404.
115. Kusters B, Leenders WP, Wesseling P, Smits D, Verrijp K, Ruiter DJ, et al. Vascular endothelial growth factor-A(165) induces progression of melanoma brain metastases without induction of sprouting angiogenesis. Cancer Res. 2002 Jan 15;62(2):341–5.
116. Leenders WP, Kusters B, de Waal RM. Vessel co-option: how tumors obtain blood supply in the absence of sprouting angiogenesis. Endothelium. 2002;9(2):83–7.
117. Leenders WP, Kusters B, Verrijp K, Maass C, Wesseling P, Heerschap A, et al. Antiangiogenic therapy of cerebral melanoma metastases results in sustained tumor progression via vessel co-option. Clin Cancer Res. 2004 Sept 15;10(18 Pt 1):6222–30.
118. Neves S, Mazal PR, Wanschitz J, Rudnay AC, Drlicek M, Czech T, et al. Pseudogliomatous growth pattern of anaplastic small cell carcinomas metastatic to the brain. Clin Neuropathol. 2001 Jan–Feb;20(1):38–42.
119. Pezzella F, Pastorino U, Tagliabue E, Andreola S, Sozzi G, Gasparini G, et al. Non-small-cell lung carcinoma tumor growth without morphological evidence of neoangiogenesis. Am J Pathol. 1997 Nov;151(5):1417–23.
120. Vermeulen PB, Colpaert C, Salgado R, Royers R, Hellemans H, Van Den Heuvel E, et al. Liver metastases from colorectal adenocarcinomas grow in three patterns with different angiogenesis and desmoplasia. J Pathol. 2001 Oct;195(3):336–42.
121. Kusters B, Kats G, Roodink I, Verrijp K, Wesseling P, Ruiter DJ, et al. Micronodular transformation as a novel mechanism of VEGF-A-induced metastasis. Oncogene. 2007 Aug 23;26(39):5808–15.
122. Ruiter DJ, van Krieken JH, van Muijen GN, de Waal RM. Tumour metastasis: is tissue an issue? Lancet Oncol. 2001 Feb;2(2):109–12.
123. Sugino T, Kusakabe T, Hoshi N, Yamaguchi T, Kawaguchi T, Goodison S, et al. An invasion-independent pathway of blood-borne metastasis: a new murine mammary tumor model. Am J Pathol. 2002 Jun;160(6):1973–80.
124. Yano S, Shinohara H, Herbst RS, Kuniyasu H, Bucana CD, Ellis LM, et al. Expression of vascular endothelial growth factor is necessary but not sufficient for production and growth of brain metastasis. Cancer Res. 2000 Sept 1;60(17):4959–67.
125. LaRochelle WJ, Jeffers M, Corvalan JR, Jia XC, Feng X, Vanegas S, et al. Platelet-derived growth factor D: tumorigenicity in mice and dysregulated expression in human cancer. Cancer Res. 2002 May 1;62(9):2468–73.
126. Folkman J, Shing Y. Angiogenesis. J Biol Chem. 1992 Jun 5;267(16):10931–4.
127. Onodera H, Nagayama S, Tachibana T, Fujimoto A, Imamura M. Brain metastasis from colorectal cancer. Int J Colorectal Dis. 2005 Jan;20(1):57–61.
128. Bartsch U. Neural CAMS and their role in the development and organization of myelin sheaths. Front Biosci. 2003 Jan 1;8:477–90.
129. Farinola MA, Weir EG, Ali SZ. CD56 expression of neuroendocrine neoplasms on immunophenotyping by flow cytometry: a novel diagnostic approach to fine-needle aspiration biopsy. Cancer. 2003 Aug 25; 99(4):240–6.
130. Sytnyk V, Leshchyns'ka I, Delling M, Dityateva G, Dityatev A, Schachner M. Neural cell adhesion molecule promotes accumulation of TGN organelles at sites of neuron-to-neuron contacts. J Cell Biol. 2002 Nov 25;159(4):649–61.
131. Marchetti D, Aucoin R, Blust J, Murry B, Greiter-Wilke A. p75 neurotrophin receptor functions as a survival receptor in brain-metastatic melanoma cells. J Cell Biochem. 2004 Jan 1;91(1):206–15.
132. Menter DG, Herrmann JL, Marchetti D, Nicolson GL. Involvement of neurotrophins and growth factors in brain metastasis formation. Invasion Metastasis. 1994; 14(1–6):372–84.
133. Barbacid M. Nerve growth factor: a tale of two receptors. Oncogene. 1993 Aug;8(8):2033–42.
134. Bibel M, Barde YA. Neurotrophins: key regulators of cell fate and cell shape in the vertebrate nervous system. Genes Dev. 2000 Dec 1;14(23):2919–37.
135. Chao MV. Neurotrophins and their receptors: a convergence point for many signalling pathways. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2003 Apr;4(4):299–309.
136. Chao MV, Bothwell M. Neurotrophins: to cleave or not to cleave. Neuron. 2002 Jan 3;33(1):9–12.
137. Kaplan DR, Miller FD. Neurotrophin signal transduction in the nervous system. Curr Opin Neurobiol. 2000 Jun;10(3):381–91.
138. Marchetti D, Menter D, Jin L, Nakajima M, Nicolson GL. Nerve growth factor effects on human and mouse melanoma cell invasion and heparanase production. Int J Cancer. 1993 Oct 21;55(4):692–9.
139. Marchetti D, Nicolson GL. Human heparanase: a molecular determinant of brain metastasis. Adv Enzyme Regul. 2001;41:343–59.
140. Marchetti D, Parikh N, Sudol M, Gallick GE. Stimulation of the protein tyrosine kinase c-Yes but not c-Src by neurotrophins in human brain-metastatic melanoma cells. Oncogene. 1998 Jun 25;16(25):3253–60.
141. Ree AH, Bratland A, Kroes RA, Aasheim HC, Florenes VA, Moskal JR, et al. Clinical and cell line specific expression profiles of a human gene identified in experimental central nervous system metastases. Anticancer Res. 2002 Jul–Aug;22(4):1949–57.
142. Jafri NF, Ma PC, Maulik G, Salgia R. Mechanisms of metastasis as related to receptor tyrosine kinases in small-cell lung cancer. J Environ Pathol Toxicol Oncol. 2003;22(3):147–65.
143. Resnick DK, Resnick NM, Welch WC, Cooper DL. Differential expressions of CD44 variants in tumors affecting the central nervous system. Mol Diagn. 1999 Sept;4(3):219–32.
144. Ariza A, Lopez D, Mate JL, Isamat M, Musulen E, Pujol M, et al. Role of CD44 in the invasiveness of glioblastoma multiforme and the noninvasiveness

of meningioma: an immunohistochemistry study. Hum Pathol. 1995 Oct;26(10):1144–7.
145. Gerlach R, Scheuer T, Bohm M, Beck J, Woszczyk A, Raabe A, et al. Increased levels of plasma tissue factor pathway inhibitor in patients with glioblastoma and intracerebral metastases. Neurol Res. 2003 Jun;25(4):335–8.
146. Narla G, DiFeo A, Fernandez Y, Dhanasekaran S, Huang F, Sangodkar J, et al. KLF6-SV1 overexpression accelerates human and mouse prostate cancer progression and metastasis. J Clin Invest. 2008 Aug;118(8):2711–21.
147. Lee EJ, Whang JH, Jeon NK, Kim J. The epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor ZD1839 (Iressa) suppresses proliferation and invasion of human oral squamous carcinoma cells via p53 independent and MMP, uPAR dependent mechanism. Ann NY Acad Sci. 2007 Jan;1095:113–28.
148. Lee Y, Vassilakos A, Feng N, Lam V, Xie H, Wang M, et al. GTI-2040, an antisense agent targeting the small subunit component (R2) of human ribonucleotide reductase, shows potent antitumor activity against a variety of tumors. Cancer Res. 2003 Jun 1;63(11): 2802–11.
149. Mayoral MA, Mayoral C, Meneses A, Villalvazo L, Guzman A, Espinosa B, et al. Identification of galectin-3 and mucin-type O-glycans in breast cancer and its metastasis to brain. Cancer Invest. 2008 Jul;26(6): 615–23.
150. Holmgren L, O'Reilly MS, Folkman J. Dormancy of micrometastases: balanced proliferation and apoptosis in the presence of angiogenesis suppression. Nat Med. 1995 Feb;1(2):149–53.
151. Murray C. Tumour dormancy: not so sleepy after all. Nat Med. 1995 Feb;1(2):117–8.
152. Crowley NJ, Seigler HF. Relationship between disease-free interval and survival in patients with recurrent melanoma. Arch Surg. 1992 Nov;127(11):1303–8.
153. Demicheli R, Abbattista A, Miceli R, Valagussa P, Bonadonna G. Time distribution of the recurrence risk for breast cancer patients undergoing mastectomy: further support about the concept of tumor dormancy. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 1996;41(2):177–85.
154. Demicheli R, Retsky MW, Hrushesky WJ, Baum M, Gukas ID. The effects of surgery on tumor growth: a century of investigations. Ann Oncol. 2008 Nov;19(11):1821–8.
155. Demicheli R, Terenziani M, Valagussa P, Moliterni A, Zambetti M, Bonadonna G. Local recurrences following mastectomy: support for the concept of tumor dormancy. J Natl Cancer Inst. 1994 Jan 5;86(1):45–8.
156. Fujii Y, Fukui I, Kihara K, Tsujii T, Kageyama Y, Oshima H. Late recurrence and progression after a long tumor-free period in primary Ta and T1 bladder cancer. Eur Urol. 1999 Oct;36(4):309–13.
157. Karrison TG, Ferguson DJ, Meier P. Dormancy of mammary carcinoma after mastectomy. J Natl Cancer Inst. 1999 Jan 6;91(1):80–5.
158. Meltzer A. Dormancy and breast cancer. J Surg Oncol. 1990 Mar;43(3):181–8.
159. Stewart TH, Hollinshead AC, Raman S. Tumour dormancy: initiation, maintenance and termination in animals and humans. Can J Surg. 1991 Aug;34(4):321–5.
160. O'Reilly MS, Holmgren L, Shing Y, Chen C, Rosenthal RA, Cao Y, et al. Angiostatin: a circulating endothelial cell inhibitor that suppresses angiogenesis and tumor growth. Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol. 1994;59:471–82.
161. O'Reilly MS, Holmgren L, Shing Y, Chen C, Rosenthal RA, Moses M, et al. Angiostatin: a novel angiogenesis inhibitor that mediates the suppression of metastases by a Lewis lung carcinoma. Cell. 1994 Oct 21;79(2):315–28.
162. Kirsch M, Schackert G, Black PM. Metastasis and angiogenesis. Cancer Treat Res. 2004;117:285–304.
163. Kirsch M, Strasser J, Allende R, Bello L, Zhang J, Black PM. Angiostatin suppresses malignant glioma growth in vivo. Cancer Res. 1998 Oct 15;58(20):4654–9.
164. O'Reilly MS, Boehm T, Shing Y, Fukai N, Vasios G, Lane WS, et al. Endostatin: an endogenous inhibitor of angiogenesis and tumor growth. Cell. 1997 Jan 24;88(2): 277–85.
165. Dhanabal M, Ramchandran R, Waterman MJ, Lu H, Knebelmann B, Segal M, et al. Endostatin induces endothelial cell apoptosis. J Biol Chem. 1999 Apr 23;274(17):11721–6.
166. Dhanabal M, Volk R, Ramchandran R, Simons M, Sukhatme VP. Cloning, expression, and in vitro activity of human endostatin. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 1999 May 10;258(2):345–52.
167. O'Reilly MS, Holmgren L, Chen C, Folkman J. Angiostatin induces and sustains dormancy of human primary tumors in mice. Nat Med. 1996 Jun;2(6):689–92.
168. Yamaguchi N, Anand-Apte B, Lee M, Sasaki T, Fukai N, Shapiro R, et al. Endostatin inhibits VEGF-induced endothelial cell migration and tumor growth independently of zinc binding. EMBO J. 1999 Aug 16;18(16):4414–23.

Chapter 12

Carcinogenesis of Human Papillomavirus in Head and Neck Squamous Cell Carcinoma

Dahui Qin

Contents

12.1 Introduction

In 2000, head and neck cancer was ranked as the eighth leading cause of cancer death worldwide. Approximately 481,100 new cases developed, and 320,000 persons died of the disease [1]. In 2007, approximately 45,660 new cases developed in the United States and 11,210 patients died of the disease [2]. Head and neck squamous cell carcinoma is the most common head and neck malignant tumor. Carcinogenesis of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma is an important issue. Smoking and drinking are well known in carcinogenesis of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. In recent years, Human papillomavirus (HPV) has drawn attention for its possible role in the carcinogenesis of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma.

D. Qin (✉)
Department of Anatomic Pathology,
Moffitt Cancer and Research Center, Tampa, FL, USA
e-mail: Dahui.Qin@moffitt.org

12.2 Squamous Cell Carcinoma

Squamous cell carcinoma is a malignant epithelial neoplasm arising from squamous epithelial cells [3], stratified squamous epithelial cells to be exact, not including simple squamous epithelial cells. For the purpose of simplicity, most pathologists use the term squamous epithelium for stratified squamous cell epithelium. We will do the same in this chapter. The squamous epithelium can be found on the surface of mucosa and surface of skin. The squamous cell carcinoma of head and neck can arise from both mucosa and skin. The head and neck squamous cell carcinoma originating from skin is the same as other skin squamous cell carcinoma. Very often, the term head and neck squamous cell carcinoma implies an origin from squamous mucosa of head and neck. The squamous mucosa of head and neck can be found at oral cavity, pharynx, larynx, nasal vestibule and other locations. Apart from the locations mentioned above, it is not unusual that other type of epithelia at head and neck may have squamous cell meteplasia. Squamous cell carcinoma can arise from such metaplastic epithelia.

12.3 Squamous Epithelium

The squamous epithelium is a thick epithelium. Its major function is protection. It consists of four layers, including stratum basale, stratum spinosum, stratum granulosum, and stratum corneum [4].

The stratum basale consists of a single layer of cuboidal or low columnar cells, which are often called basal cells. This layer of basal cells rests on the

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_12,

basal lamina. The nucleus of basal cell is relatively large and the cytoplasm is relatively more basophilic when compared with other layer of squamous epithelium. The basal cells are able to undergo mitosis and proliferation. The proliferation of basal cells is mainly responsible for the continual renewal of basal cell itself and the layers of cells above the basal layer. Mitosis can normally be seen at the basal layer. Immunohistochemistry stain using Ki-67 shows proliferative activity of basal layer. The stratum spinosum consists of polygonal cells with more cytoplasm. The cytoplasm is somewhat basophilic, but less so when compared to basal cells. The stratum granulosum consists of flattened cells with irregularly shaped coarse granules that are strongly basophilic in H&E staining. The stratum corneum consists of flat cornified cells, which lose their nuclei. In squamous mucosa, the thickness of stratum corneum varies, depending on it anatomic location. All cells of squamous epithelium are originated from basal cells and moved upwards towards the surface. As the cells move towards the surface, the cells become more and more mature. In other words, cells become differentiated and show characteristics of squamous cell epithelium. Squamous cell carcinoma cells may show different differentiation, recapitulating different stages of normal squamous cell maturation. If tumor cells resemble very mature squamous cells, the tumor is called well differentiated. If tumor cells show little squamous cell maturation features, the tumor is called poorly differentiated. In between, the tumor is called moderately differentiated.

12.4 Carcinogeneis of Head and Neck Squamous Cell Carcinoma

Carcinogenesis of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma involves multiple factors. The interaction between extrinsic factors and intrinsic genetic profiles may determine the outcome. It is known that tobacco and alcohol play an important role in etiology. Human papillomavirus (HPV) has been found in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Its presence in the head and neck squamous cell carcinoma of non-smoker and non-drinker implies its role in carcinogenesis. The related findings will be the focus of this chapter.

12.4.1 Human Papillomavirus (HPV)

HPV has been grouped in the Papovaviridae family [5]. It is DNA virus with double-stranded circular DNA genome of about 8,000 bp. HPV has no envelope and has pronounced tropism for squamous epithelial cells. The viral DNA and RNA transcripts for early gene expression are found in the basal cell layer, whereas virus replication, including the production of capsid proteins and assembly of infectious virions occurs at more superficial layers of squamous cell epithelium. The infected cells suffer from failure of terminal differentiation, leading to accumulation of cells at stratum spinosum. Cells that are permissive for the production of infective virions commonly display a ballooned cytoplasmic vacuole and darkened irregular-shaped nucleus. Such morphological features are termed koilocytosis. Over 100 different HPV serotypes have been identified [6], of which about 40 are associated with female genital tract HPV infection. HPV infection is associated with uterus cervical squamous cell carcinoma. Based on its correlation with squamous cell carcinoma, HPV is divided into two groups, high risk and low risk. Eleven HPV types: 16, 18, 31, 33, 35, 39, 45, 51, 56, and 58, are consistently classified as high risk. Recently, seven additional types are added to the high risk list: 26, 53, 59, 66, 68, 73, and 82. The genomes of the various types of HPV resemble each other in genomic organizations. There are nine designated open reading frames (genes) that encode seven early proteins (E1, E2, E3, E4, E5, E6, and E7) and two late proteins (L1 and L2).

12.4.2 Role of HPV in Head and Neck Squamous Cell Carcinoma Carcinogenesis

More than 95% of uterus cervical squamous cell carcinoma is associated with HPV infection. Histologically, the squamous cell mucosa at head and neck bears similarities with cervical squamous mucosa. The evidence of HPV in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma carcinogenesis comes from three aspects, including epidemiology, laboratory research, and clinical observation.

12.4.2.1 Epidemiology Analysis

Several studies have compared the presence of HPV DNA in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma and control groups in the matched anatomic sites. Correlation of HPV DNA and head and neck squamous cell carcinoma is observed with Odds ratios between 0.5 and 6.2 [7–11]. One study shows that the Odds ratio after adjusting age, smoking and drinking is 3.7 [8].

12.4.2.2 Laboratory Analysis

Laboratory research data also indicates that HPV play a role in carcinogenesis of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. In the 1980s, it was discovered that two HPV genes (E6 and E7) are necessary and sufficient for human keratinocytes to become immortal [12]. The expression of E6 and E7 is directed by the E6/E7 promoter in genital HPVs, which is tightly controlled by a complex interplay of positively and negatively acting host transcription factors, whose binding sites are present in the long control region (LCR) [13]. The long control region of genital HPVs contains four E2 binding sites in conserved positions, two of which are very close to the TATA box. Binding of E2 to these two sites has been shown to repress the promoter in a dose dependent regulation [14]. Intergration of HPV virus into genital squamous epithelium often interrupts E2 and hence may increase E6 and E7 expression [15]. Later, it was found that HPV16 can also transform oral epithelial cells [16, 17]. Furthermore, deletion of PDZ binding motif in HPV 16 E6 prevents the virus from inducing immortalization of the infected squamous cells [18]. The observation indicates the HPV 16 E6 may be important oncogene. It also indicates that PDZ motif is an important component of E6 oncogene. PDZ domains are about 90 amino acids long and form a 3-dimensional binding pocket. These sequences were initially discovered in PSD-95, DLG and Zo-1, hence PDZ [18]. HPV E6 and E7 play an important role in uterus cervical carcinogenesis mediated by high-risk HPV types [19]. The E6 protein binds to the tumor suppressor protein p53 [20]. The interaction of these two protein results in rapid degradation of p53 via the ubiquitin pathway [21]. E7 protein can bind to RB1 tumor suppressor protein, which leads to rapid degradation of RB1 via the ubiquitin pathway [22]. Destabilization of pRB causes release of E2F from pRb/E2F complexes. This permits E2F, a transcriptional regulator of cell proliferation genes, to transactivate S-phase-related genes. The functional inactivation of pRB by E7 leads to overexpression of the cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor $p16^{INK4a}$ [23, 24]. The function loss of p53 and RB1 not only interferes with apoptosis, but also increase cellular proliferation. Both processes contribute to the carcinogenesis (Fig. 12.1). However, HPV carcinogenesis may be more complicated than our current understanding. A recent study reports that in animal, deletion of RB1 does not recapitulate all E7-mediated phenotypes [25], which imply that E7-mediated carcinogenesis may involve mechanisms beyond the RB1 pathway.

12.4.2.3 Clinical Analysis

Clinical data provides another line of evidence indicating that HPV may play a role in carcinogenesis of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Koilocytosis is a morphological change associated with HPV infection. It is commonly seen in the uterus cervical lesion and associated with cervical carcinoma. Koilocytosis is also identified in the head and neck squamous mucosa [26]. Head and neck squamous cell carcinoma may arise from a precursor lesion, leukoplakia. It has been reported that 31% of leukoplakia biopsy shows positivity for HPV DNA [27–31]. Lind et al reported a 20 case follow up. Among 20 cases, seven develop into squamous cell carcinoma in 10 year of follow up period [32]. Furthermore, HPV DNA has been identified in squamous cell carcinoma in head and neck [33–39]. Two oncogene products (E6 and E7), which are identified in uterus cervical carcinoma, have also been found in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma [40–43]. Women with uterus cervical carcinoma have higher incidence of second primary head and neck squamous cell carcinoma, when compared with a control group of women who have other cancers [44]. A recent case report shows a coupled-husband and wife has synchronous squamous cell carcinoma of head and neck [45]. The tumors in both of them are positive for HPV. The HPV in both tumors belongs to same prototype (HPV 16R). Not only that, the HPV in both tumors shares an uncommon signal variant nucleotide. Such observation implies that this unique HPV is transmitted between this couple and may be associated with

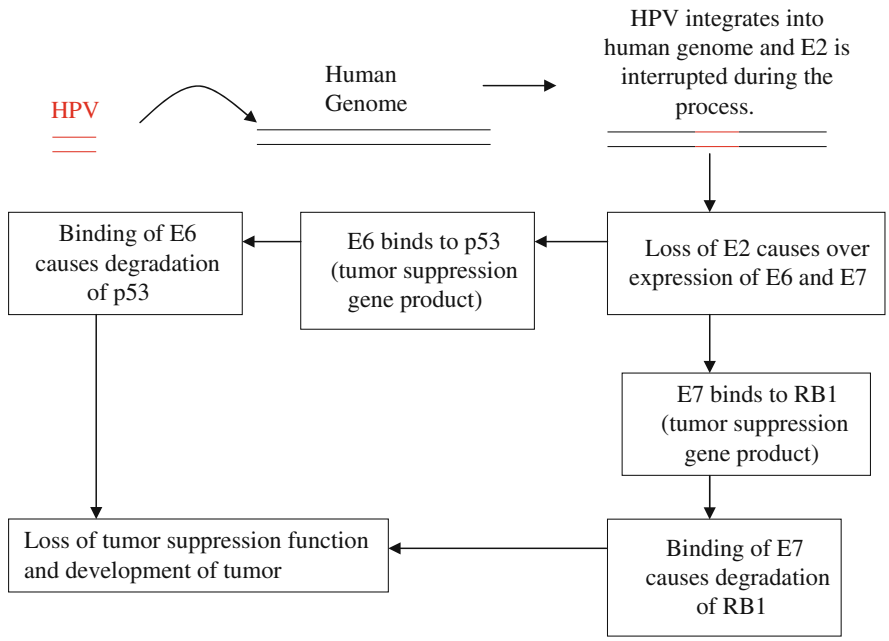


Fig 12.1 Carcinogenesis of HPV. The integration of HPV into human genome interruptes E2 of human genome. The loss of E2 causes over expression of E6 and E7, which eventually results in degredation of RB1 and p53. RB1 and p53 are tumor suppressor factors. Loss of RB1 and p53 will increase the risk of developing carcinoma

carcinogenesis of both tumors in this couple. HPV DNA is not only found in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma, but also changes host cell gene expression. A recent study compares the gene expression profiles of HPV positive and HPV negative head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. The results show that HPV positive and HPV negative head and neck squamous cell carcinoma have different gene expression profiles [46]. This result implies that HPV DNA in head and neck squamous carcinoma not only correlates with squamous cell carcinoma occurrence, but also affects cancer cell gene expression. This also implies that carcinogenetic process induced by HPV may be different from the one induced by other carcinogenetic factors. Several studies show that the HPV associated head and neck squamous cell carcinoma has better survival rate than that of HPV-negative ones. These data also implies that HPV oncogenesis mechanism may be different from other oncogenetic processes in squamous cell carcinoma. However, different observation about the correlation of HPV infection and better prognosis is also mentioned [43].

HPV positive rate found in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma varies among different reports. On average, positive rate is about 22% [34, 47]. One of the factors that cause the variation of positive rate is the anatomic location. Head and neck squamous cell carcinoma can arise from different locations, for example, buccal mucosa, tongue, and tonsil etc. It has been reported that the squamous cell carcinoma at tonsil has a much higher HPV positive rate. Syrjanen has reviewed 422 tonsil squamous cell carcinomas, with 216 positive for HPV DNA [48]. HPV is not only identified in primary tumor, but also identified in metastatic tumor. Five studies show that HPV were found in both primary tumor and their lymph node metastasis [49]. Two most common types of HPV found in oral squamous cell carcinoma are HPV 16 and 18. Among these two, HPV 16 is found far more often than HPV 18 [50–54]. Low risk HPV 6/11 are also found in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma, esp. in verrucous carcinoma, in which a positive rate of 47% has been reported [47]. Low risk HPV 6/11 are more frequently found in recurrent respiratory papillomatosis with a positive rate of about 80% [55–60]. These data indicate that low risk HPV 6/11 are usually associated with benign lesion. In other words, low risk HPV 6/11 might only promote head and neck squamous cell proliferation. It may not stop squamous cell differentiation and maturation. The squamous cells infected by HPV 6/11 may not have the capacity of infiltrating growth and metastastis, which are the features of

malignant squamous cell carcinoma. Although HPV 6/11 has been identified in small portion of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma, its role in carcinogenesis of squamous cell carcinoma may not be significant. Its presence in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma may be a coincidence, whereas the squamous cell carcinoma is caused by other carcinogenetic mechanism. On the other side, high risk HPV, for example, HPV16 and 18 appear to play an important role in squamous cell carcinoma carcinogenesis. The difference of HPV 6/11 and HPV 16/18 may shed the light on the understanding of squamous cell carcinoma carcinogenesis. One of the differences between high risk and low risk HPV is PDZ domain. In high-risk cancer-causing HPV subtypes, the E6 proteins contain a PDZ binding motif, whereas low-risk HPV types lack this motif [18]. However, it is too early to rule out possible role of low risk HPV in carcinogenesis.

It is an intriguing fact that the squamous cell carcinoma at tonsil has high rate of HPV infection. Anatomically, the squamous cell epithelium at tonsil is continuous with adjacent oral and pharyngeal squamous epithelium. Underlying the squamous epithelium, there is abundant lymphoid tissue with germinal centers. The lymphoid tissue is an important part of our immune system. Theoretically, the vicinity of the lymphoid tissue should offer protection to tonsil squamous epithelium from HPV infection. The paradox is that tonsil squamous cell epithelium has significant higher rate of HPV infection. Why does tonsil squamous epithelium, which has such close proximity to oral and pharyngeal squamous epithelium, has significant higher incidence of HPV infection. One of the explanations may lay in its unique anatomic structure. Tonsil squamous mucosa has convoluted surface with numerous crypts. These crypts are easy to trap infective agents. A well-known fact is bacterial tonsilitis, which is a frequent site in oropharyngeal infection. The tonsil, as an immune organ, is designed to increase its exposure to infectious agents so that the tonsil can effectively launch immune responses to the infectious agents. The lymphocytes activated in the immune response will migrate into circulation and to reach other organs of our body. By doing this, our body is better protected from infective agents. However, the infectious agents trapped at the tonsil can be overwhelming sometimes. The tonsil is like a guard of our body. It attracts "enemy fire" and sometimes, takes the casualty itself. Tonsil squamous cell carcinoma not only has higher rate of HPV infection, but also has higher viral load. One report shows that E6 level of tonsil squamous cell carcinoma could be 80,000 times higher than non-tonsil squamous cell carcinoma [43]. This difference is striking. It may provide important clue leading to understanding HPV mediated carcinogenesis. It deserves further exploring as to why tonsil squamous carcinoma has such a higher viral load. Anatomically, tumor consists of tumor cells (malignant squamous cells in case of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma) and stroma. In case of tonsil squamous cell carcinoma, the stroma contains significant amount of lymphoid tissue with numerous germinal centers. It is necessary to know the distribution of HPV in tonsil squamous carcinoma, i.e. if the HPV is in malignant squamous cells or in underlying lymphoid stroma. In the tonsil lymphoid tissue, there are many germinal centers. It is well known that germinal centers contain follicular dendritic cells [61, 62]. The dendrites of follicular dendritic cells form three-dimensional network in germinal center. One of the unique features of this network is to trap antigen-antibody complexes, including antibody-virus complexes [63–67]. Therefore, it is necessary to know if there is any viral load in tonsil squamous cell carcinoma that is located in lymphoid tissue rather than in malignant squamous cells. In situ hybridization data for HPV in tonsil carcinoma should provide the answer for such a question. Although it is not fully understood why the squamous cell carcinoma at tonsil has higher rate of HPV infection, this unique fact provides a window for exploring the role of HPV carcinogenesis in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Finding an effective HPV test to monitor tonsil HPV infection and squamous epithelial dysplastic changes associated with HPV infection may help to reduce the incidence of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma.

12.5 HPV Testing Methods

Different methods have been used to monitor HPV infection. Most of these experiences come from monitoring uterus cervical HPV infection.

Most PCR protocols for HPV testing make use of consensus primers targeted to HPV L1 gene [19]. Such design is potentially capable of detecting all HPV types that affect the anogenital region. The primer sets

that amplify shorter regions of the L1 gene can be used to increase the sensitivity of analysis , especially when testing FFPE (formalin-fixed paraffin embedded) tissue because the DNA in FFPE tissue tend to be in smaller fragments. Following amplification using consensus primers, the HPV type can be determined by DNA sequence analysis. The different HPV types have differences in their L1 sequences. The amplified HPV sequence can also be detected using membrane hybridization with type-specific probes. In such an assay, the oligonucleotide probes for individual HPV types are arrayed on a membrane strip. The probe for each HPV type has a fixed position on a membrane strip. The PCR amplified HPV DNA will hybridize to the complement probes on the membrane strip at its unique position. The bound PCR amplified HPV DNA will be detected by a chromogenic reaction and the position of chromogenic reaction product in the array indicates the HPV type.

Another assay uses solution hybridiztion methods. A cocktail of RNA probes for either high risk or low risk HPV types will be used to hybridize. DNA will be extracted from the specimen. The cocktail of RNA probes will be mixed with the DNA and RNA:DNA hybrids will be formed if the specimen has HPV DNA. The RNA:DNA hybrids will be captured by antibodies specific for RNA:DNA hybrids, and the bound RNA:DNA will be detected using a chemiluminescent probe.

In situ hybridization is another assay that can identify HPV DNA in tissue sections. Florescence in situ hybridization (FISH) and chromogenic in situ hybridization (CISH) can be used. The advantage of CISH is that the florescent microscopy is not needed because chromogenic hybridization product can be observed using light microscope. Tissue can be counterstained and better correlation of HPV DNA and morphology can be obtained. Cocktails of probes for high risk HPV are available. The probes for individual HPV type can be developed. New assays have been developed; for example, the assays targeting on E6 and E7 instead of L1 and new algorithm of HPV test has been proposed [68]. The assays that have been used to detect HPV in head and neck are usually those used in uterus cervidal cancer. Therefore, not all HPV types have been tested in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Greater variation has been observed in head and neck squamous carcinoma-HPV study, including HPV positive rate and HPV viral load. The most prominent HPV type in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma is HPV 16. However, it may not be a bad idea to keep our minds open at present. For the culprits in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma carcinogenesis, HPV16 is a devil that we know. At the same time, one may wonder what is the devil that we don't know.

12.6 Conclusion

Head and neck squamous cell carcinoma is a relatively common malignant tumor and has tremendous impact on human health. Understanding the carcinogenesis of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma will help to reduce the incidence and help to treat the disease. Apart from smoking and drinking, HPV may be an important factor in carcinogenesis of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. However, more study is needed in this field.

References

1. Shibuya K, Mathers CD, Boschi-Pinto C, Lopez AD, Murray CJ. Global and regional estimates of cancer mortality and incidence by site: II. Results for the global burden of disease 2000. BMC Cancer. 2002 Dec 26;2:37.
2. Jemal A, Siegel R, Ward E, Murray T, Xu J, Thun MJ. Cancer statistics, 2007. CA Cancer J Clin. 2007 Jan–Feb; 57(1);43–66.
3. Leon B, Eveson JW, Reichart P, Sidransky D, editor. WHO classification of tumors: Pathology & genetics: Head and neck tumours. Lyon: IARC Press; 2005.
4. Dreibelbis D, editor. A textbook of histology. 11th ed. Philadelphia, PA: W. B. Saunders Company; 1986.
5. Joklik WK, Willett HP, Amos BD, Wilfert CM, editor. Zinsser microbiology. 20th ed. Norwalk, CT/San Mateo, CA: Appleton & Lange; 1992.
6. de Villiers EM, Fauquet C, Broker TR, Bernard HU, zur Hausen H. Classification of papillomaviruses. Virology. 2004 Jun 20;324(1);17–27.
7. Brandsma JL, Abramson AL. Association of papillomavirus with cancers of the head and neck. Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg. 19 May;115(5);621–5.
8. Smith EM, Summersgill KF, Allen J, Hoffman HT, McCulloch T, Turek LP, et al. Human papillomavirus and risk of laryngeal cancer. Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol. 2000 Nov;109(11);1069–76.
9. Maden C, Beckmann AM, Thomas DB, McKnight B, Sherman KJ, Ashley RL, et al. Human papillomaviruses, herpes simplex viruses, and the risk of oral cancer in men. Am J Epidemiol. 1992 May 15;135(10);1093–102.

10. Nishioka S, Fukushima K, Nishizaki K, Gunduz M, Tominaga S, Fukazawa M, et al. Human papillomavirus as a risk factor for head and neck cancers – a case-control study. Acta Otolaryngol Suppl. 1999;540:77–80.
11. Mork J, Lie AK, Glattre E, Hallmans G, Jellum E, Koskela P, et al. Human papillomavirus infection as a risk factor for squamous-cell carcinoma of the head and neck. N Engl J Med. 2001 Apr 12;344(15);1125–31.
12. Munger K, Phelps WC, Bubb V, Howley PM, Schlegel R. The E6 and E7 genes of the human papillomavirus type 16 together are necessary and sufficient for transformation of primary human keratinocytes. J Virol. 1989 Oct;63(10);4417–21.
13. Turek LP. The structure, function, and regulation of papillomaviral genes in infection and cervical cancer. Adv Virus Res. 1994;44:305–56.
14. Steger G, Corbach S. Dose-dependent regulation of the early promoter of human papillomavirus type 18 by the viral E2 protein. J Virol. 1997 Jan;71(1);50–8.
15. Jeon S, Allen-Hoffmann BL, Lambert PF. Integration of human papillomavirus type 16 into the human genome correlates with a selective growth advantage of cells. J Virol. 1995 May;69(5);2989–97.
16. Park NH, Min BM, Li SL, Huang MZ, Cherick HM, Doniger J. Immortalization of normal human oral keratinocytes with type 16 human papillomavirus. Carcinogenesis. 1991 Sep;12(9);1627–31.
17. Oda D, Bigler L, Lee P, Blanton R. HPV immortalization of human oral epithelial cells: A model for carcinogenesis. Exp Cell Res. 1996 Jul 10;226(1);164–9.
18. Spanos WC, Geiger J, Anderson ME, Harris GF, Bossler AD, Smith RB, et al. Deletion of the PDZ motif of HPV16 E6 preventing immortalization and anchorage-independent growth in human tonsil epithelial cells. Head Neck. 2008 Feb;30(2);139–47.
19. Pfeifer JD, editor. Molecular genetic testing in surgical pathology. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2006.
20. Werness BA, Levine AJ, Howley PM. Association of human papillomavirus types 16 and 18 E6 proteins with p53. Science. 990 Apr 6;248(4951);76–9.
21. Scheffner M, Huibregtse JM, Vierstra RD, Howley PM. The HPV-16 E6 and E6-AP complex functions as a ubiquitin-protein ligase in the ubiquitination of p53. Cell. 1993 Nov 5;75(3);495–505.
22. Boyer SN, Wazer DE, Band V. E7 protein of human papilloma virus-16 induces degradation of retinoblastoma protein through the ubiquitin-proteasome pathway. Cancer Res. 1996 Oct 15;56(20);4620–4.
23. Khleif SN, DeGregori J, Yee CL, Otterson GA, Kaye FJ, Nevins JR, et al. Inhibition of cyclin D-CDK4/CDK6 activity is associated with an E2F-mediated induction of cyclin kinase inhibitor activity. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 1996 Apr 30;93(9);4350–4.
24. Ragin CC, Modugno F, Gollin SM. The epidemiology and risk factors of head and neck cancer: A focus on human papillomavirus. J Dent Res. 2007 Feb;86(2);104–14.
25. Strati K, Lambert PF. Role of rb-dependent and rb-independent functions of papillomavirus E7 oncogene in head and neck cancer. Cancer Res. 2007 Dec 15;67(24); 11585–93.
26. Syrjanen K, Syrjanen S, Lamberg M, Pyrhonen S, Nuutinen J. Morphological and immunohistochemical evidence suggesting human papillomavirus (HPV) involvement in oral squamous cell carcinogenesis. Int J Oral Surg. 1983 Dec;12(6);418–24.
27. Loning T, Ikenberg H, Becker J, Gissmann L, Hoepfer I, zur Hausen H. Analysis of oral papillomas, leukoplakias, and invasive carcinomas for human papillomavirus type related DNA. J Invest Dermatol. 1985 May;84(5);417–20.
28. D'Costa J, Saranath D, Dedhia P, Sanghvi V, Mehta AR. Detection of HPV-16 genome in human oral cancers and potentially malignant lesions from India. Oral Oncol. 1998 Sep;34(5);413–20.
29. Matzow T, Boysen M, Kalantari M, Johansson B, Hagmar B. Low detection rate of HPV in oral and laryngeal carcinomas. Acta Oncol. 1998;37(1);73–6.
30. Sand L, Jalouli J, Larsson PA, Hirsch JM. Human papilloma viruses in oral lesions. Anticancer Res. 2000 Mar–Apr;20(2B):1183–8.
31. Bouda M, Gorgoulis VG, Kastrinakis NG, Giannoudis A, Tsoli E, Danassi-Afentaki D, et al. "High risk" HPV types are frequently detected in potentially malignant and malignant oral lesions, but not in normal oral mucosa. Mod Pathol. 2000 Jun;13(6);644–53.
32. Lind PO, Syrjanen SM, Syrjanen KJ, Koppang HS, Aas E. Local immunoreactivity and human papillomavirus (HPV) in oral precancer and cancer lesions. Scand J Dent Res. 1986 Oct;94(5);419–26.
33. Syrjanen S. Human papillomavirus (HPV) in head and neck cancer. J Clin Virol. 2005 Mar; 32(Suppl. 1):S59–66.
34. Herrero R, Castellsague X, Pawlita M, Lissowska J, Kee F, Balaram P, et al. Human papillomavirus and oral cancer: The international agency for research on cancer multicenter study. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2003 Dec 3;95(23);1772–83.
35. Koch WM, Lango M, Sewell D, Zahurak M, Sidransky D. Head and neck cancer in nonsmokers: A distinct clinical and molecular entity. Laryngoscope. 1999 Oct;109(10); 1544–51.
36. Wiseman SM, Swede H, Stoler DL, Anderson GR, Rigual NR, Hicks WL, Jr, et al. Squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck in nonsmokers and nondrinkers: An analysis of clinicopathologic characteristics and treatment outcomes. Ann Surg Oncol. 2003 Jun;10(5);551–7.
37. Ishibashi T, Matsushima S, Tsunokawa Y, Asai M, Nomura Y, Sugimura T, et al. Human papillomavirus DNA in squamous cell carcinoma of the upper aerodigestive tract. Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg. 1990 Mar;116(3);294–8.
38. Bradford CR, Zacks SE, Androphy EJ, Gregoire L, Lancaster WD, Carey TE. Human papillomavirus DNA sequences in cell lines derived from head and neck squamous cell carcinomas. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg. 1991 Mar;104(3);303–10.
39. Fouret P, Monceaux G, Temam S, Lacourreye L, St Guily JL. Human papillomavirus in head and neck squamous cell carcinomas in nonsmokers. Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg. 1997 May;123(5);513–6.
40. Snijders PJ, Meijer CJ, van den Brule AJ, Schrijnemakers HF, Snow GB, Walboomers JM. Human papillomavirus (HPV) type 16 and 33 E6/E7 region transcripts in tonsillar carcinomas can originate from integrated and episomal HPV DNA. J Gen Virol. 1992 Aug;73(Pt 8):2059–66.

41. Wilczynski SP, Lin BT, Xie Y, Paz IB. Detection of human papillomavirus DNA and oncoprotein overexpression are associated with distinct morphological patterns of tonsillar squamous cell carcinoma. Am J Pathol. 1998 Jan;152(1);145–56.
42. Wiest T, Schwarz E, Enders C, Flechtenmacher C, Bosch FX. Involvement of intact HPV16 E6/E7 gene expression in head and neck cancers with unaltered p53 status and perturbed pRb cell cycle control. Oncogene. 2002 Feb 28;21(10);1510–7.
43. Koskinen WJ, Chen RW, Leivo I, Makitie A, Back L, Kontio R, et al. Prevalence and physical status of human papillomavirus in squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck. Int J Cancer. 2003 Nov 10;107(3);401–6.
44. Rose Ragin CC, Taioli E. Second primary head and neck tumor risk in patients with cervical cancer – SEER data analysis. Head Neck. 2008 Jan;30(1);58–66.
45. Haddad R, Crum C, Chen Z, Krane J, Posner M, Li Y, et al. HPV16 transmission between a couple with HPV-related head and neck cancer. Oral Oncol. 2008 Aug;44(8);812–5.
46. Schlecht NF, Burk RD, Adrien L, Dunne A, Kawachi N, Sarta C, et al. Gene expression profiles in HPV-infected head and neck cancer. J Pathol. 2007 Nov;213(3);283–93.
47. Syrjanen KJ, Syrjanen S. Papillomavirus infections in human disease. New York: Wiley; 2000.
48. Syrjanen S. HPV infections and tonsillar carcinoma. J Clin Pathol. 2004 May;57(5);449–55.
49. Howell RE, Gallant L. Human papillomavirus type 16 in an oral squamous carcinoma and its metastasis. Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol. 1992 Nov;74(5);620–6.
50. Snijders PJ, Scholes AG, Hart CA, Jones AS, Vaughan ED, Woolgar JA, et al. Prevalence of mucosotropic human papillomaviruses in squamous-cell carcinoma of the head and neck. Int J Cancer. 1996 May 16;66(4);464–9.
51. Snijders PJ, Steenbergen RD, Meijer CJ, Walboomers JM. Role of human papillomaviruses in cancer of the respiratory and upper digestive tract. Clin Dermatol. 1997 May–Jun;15(3);415–25.
52. Badaracco G, Venuti A, Morello R, Muller A, Marcante ML. Human papillomavirus in head and neck carcinomas: Prevalence, physical status and relationship with clinical/pathological parameters. Anticancer Res. 2000 Mar–Apr; 20(2B):1301–5.
53. Miller CS, Johnstone BM. Human papillomavirus as a risk factor for oral squamous cell carcinoma: A meta-analysis, 1982–1997. Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol Oral Radiol Endod. 2001 Jun;91(6);622–35.
54. Ringstrom E, Peters E, Hasegawa M, Posner M, Liu M, Kelsey KT. Human papillomavirus type 16 and squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck. Clin Cancer Res. 2002 Oct;8(10);3187–92.
55. Lin KY, Westra WH, Kashima HK, Mounts P, Wu TC. Coinfection of HPV-11 and HPV-16 in a case of laryngeal squamous papillomas with severe dysplasia. Laryngoscope. 1997 Jul;107(7);942–7.
56. Derkay CS, Darrow DH. Recurrent respiratory papillomatosis of the larynx: Current diagnosis and treatment. Otolaryngol Clin North Am. 2000 Oct;33(5);1127–42.
57. Derkay CS. Recurrent respiratory papillomatosis. Laryngoscope. 2001 Jan;111(1);57–69.
58. Rabah R, Lancaster WD, Thomas R, Gregoire L. Human papillomavirus-11-associated recurrent respiratory papillomatosis is more aggressive than human papillomavirus-6-associated disease. Pediatr Dev Pathol. 2001 Jan–Feb; 4(1);68–72.
59. Velyvyte D, Laiskonis A, Uloza V, Gozdzicka-Jozefiak A. Prevalence of papillomavirus infection among patients with laryngeal papillomatosis and the effects of some risk factors on the persistence of papillomaviruses in the upper respiratory tract. Medicina (Kaunas). 2002;38(5);499–504.
60. Herrero R. Chapter 7 Human papillomavirus and cancer of the upper aerodigestive tract. J Natl Cancer Inst Monogr. 2003;31:47–51.
61. Miller JJ, 3rd, Nossal GJ. Antigens in immunity. vi. the phagocytic reticulum of lymph node follicles. J Exp Med. 1964 Dec 1;120:1075–86.
62. Chen LL, Adams JC, Steinman RM. Anatomy of germinal centers in mouse spleen, with special reference to "follicular dendritic cells". J Cell Biol. 1978 Apr;77(1);148–64.
63. NOSSAL GJ, ADA GL, AUSTIN CM. Antigens in immunity. iv. cellular localization of 125-I- and 131-I-labelled flagella in lymph nodes. Aust J Exp Biol Med Sci. 1964 Jun;42:311–30.
64. Chen LL, Frank AM, Adams JC, Steinman RM. Distribution of horseradish peroxidase (HRP)-anti-HRP immune complexes in mouse spleen with special reference to follicular dendritic cells. J Cell Biol. 1978 Oct;79(1);184–99.
65. Stein H, Spiegel H, Herbst H, Niedobitek G, Foss HD. Lymphoid tissues and AIDS: Role of lymphocytes and follicular dendritic cells (FDC). Verh Dtsch Ges Pathol. 1991;75:4–19.
66. Stahmer I, Ordonez C, Popovic M, Ekmman M, Biberfeld G. SIV infection of follicular dendritic cells (FDC) and other spleen cell subsets in experimentally infected cynomolgus monkeys. Adv Exp Med Biol. 1995;378: 321–7.
67. Burton GF, Masuda A, Heath SL, Smith BA, Tew JG, Szakal AK. Follicular dendritic cells (FDC) in retroviral infection: Host/pathogen perspectives. Immunol Rev. 1997 Apr;156:185–97.
68. Smeets SJ, Hesselink AT, Speel EJ, Haesevoets A, Snijders PJ, Pawlita M, et al. A novel algorithm for reliable detection of human papillomavirus in paraffin embedded head and neck cancer specimen. Int J Cancer. 2007 Dec 1;121(11);2465–72.

Chapter 13

Postmenopausal Hormone Replacement Therapy and Breast Cancer – Clinicopathologic Associations and Molecular Mechanisms

Geza Acs and Michael J. Wagoner

Contents

13.1 Introduction

Breast cancer is the leading malignancy in women with an estimated 178,480 new cases and 40,460 deaths in 2007 in the United States [1]. Although the cause of breast cancer is currently unknown, several molecular pathways have been identified to play a role in breast cancer development and progression. Perhaps the most important pathway involves the estrogen receptor (ER). The causal relationship between ER expression and cellular responsiveness to estrogens and antiestrogens has been extensively studied in cell lines [2], animal models [3] and humans [4], and makes ER one of the most important therapeutic targets in breast cancer [5]. More than two thirds of breast cancers show ER expression at the time of diagnosis [6], and immunohistochemical detection of ER expression is routinely used in making decisions on hormonal (anti-estrogen) therapy for breast cancer [7]. Current anti-estrogen treatment strategies include blocking by selective modulators (e.g. tamoxifen, raloxifene), destabilizing and degradation of ER by selective down-regulators (e.g. fulvestrant) and disruption of estrogen synthesis (i.e. aromatase inhibitors), any of which alone can result in a substantial decrease of tumor growth in about 30–50% of patients with ER positive breast cancer [8].

13.2 Endogenous Sex Steroid Hormones and Breast Carcinogenesis

A large and compelling body of epidemiological and experimental data implicates estrogens in the etiology of human breast cancer [9]. Animal studies repeatedly demonstrated that estrogens can induce and promote mammary tumors in rodents and that removing the animals' ovaries or administering an anti-estrogenic drug has the opposite effect [10]. The most widely accepted risk factors for breast cancer (such as early menarche, late menopause, obesity, etc.) can be thought of as measures of the cumulative dose of estrogen that breast epithelium is exposed to over time [11–13]. Indeed, an association between the risk of breast cancer and persistently elevated blood levels of estrogen has

G. Acs (✉)
Department of Anatomic Pathology and Comprehensive Breast Program, Moffitt Cancer and Research Center, Tampa, FL, USA; Departments of Oncologic Sciences, Pathology and Cell Biology, College of Medicine, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA
e-mail: Geza.Acs@moffitt.org

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_13, © Springer Science+Business Media B.V. 2010

been found consistently in many studies [14, 15]. Not only do increased circulating levels of estradiol confer an increased relative risk, women with levels in the highest quartiles of fellow hormones such as estrone sulfate, androstenedione, dehydroepiandrosterone, and testosterone all have similarly increased relative risk of breast carcinoma [15]. In addition to circulating steroid hormones, estrogens are produced locally within the breast tissue as well, the levels of which cannot be measured with simple blood tests. Enzymes such as aromatase and steroid sulfatase can convert precursors into active estrogen metabolites in the local breast environment and since many of these enzymes are cytosolic, the estrogens they produce can act within the cell immediately. This form of hormonal synthesis and action has been termed "intracrine" and it is thought to play as large a role in overall estrogen exposure of breast tissue as do circulating hormone levels [16].

Studies have shown that endogenous estrogens may exert their effects in breast carcinogenesis through either promotion of growth of epithelial cells or via the formation of DNA toxic metabolites [13, 17, 18]. The degradation of estrogens follows a multistep oxidative metabolism process. Phase I metabolism begins with one of several cytochrome P-450 enzymes which catalyzes estrone or estradiol to a hydroxycatechol estrogen. These metabolites are further broken down to estrogen quinones which can constitutively form unstable adducts with adenine and guanine in DNA [19–21]. The reduction of estrogen quinones back to hydroquinones and catechols further produces reactive oxygen species which have been theorized to be responsible for DNA damage associated with estrogens [22]. Phase II detoxification pathways active in breast tissue involve multiple sulfation, methylation, and glutathione pathways designed to protect against the aforementioned DNA toxicity of estrogen metabolites. 4-hydroxyequilenin, a reactive catechol metabolite of equilenin formed from the degradation of equine estrogens present in hormone-replacement-therapy prescriptions have been found to inhibit detoxification enzymes such as glutathione S-transferase P1-1 and catechol O-methyltransferase [23, 24]. It was hypothesized that such inhibition might shift the balance of the overall reaction towards the toxic estrogen metabolites and thus promote DNA damage.

The role of hormones other than estrogen is less clear [25]. While estrogen promotes ductal proliferation and maturation, progesterone, acting through the progesterone receptor (PR), is required for mammary gland side branching and alveolar differentiation [25]. Several studies have shown progesterone to impart protective effects on the breast tissue and unlike estrogens, elevated serum levels of progesterone have not been associated with increased risk of breast cancer in postmenopausal women [26, 27]. In fact, an inverse relationship between serum progesterone levels and breast cancer risk has been demonstrated in premenopausal women [28, 29]. This effect has been best studied in relation to pregnancy associated breast cancer risk reduction. Pregnancy confers a significant risk reduction if full term gestation is reached in the first 30 years of life. Interestingly, this protection does not seem to be conferred in the setting of preterm labor or aborted pregnancies. In contrast, preeclamptic pregnancies confer an increased risk reduction compared to normal pregnancy. Examination of the hormonal influences at play in these findings reveals that progesterone levels are relatively increased in preeclamptic women, while levels of estrogens are decreased [30–32]. Physiologically, the levels of progesterone peek in the last several weeks of pregnancy and are believed to promote the final maturation stages of the breast glandular epithelium in preparation for lactation. Progesterone is also the only hormone to show such a sharp increase in the last weeks of pregnancy. These findings in combination with the lack of benefit of abrupt pregnancy termination and increased benefit in preeclampsia strongly suggest that progesterone is the hormonal agent which confers the protective effects seen with a full term pregnancy.

13.3 Long Term Use of Postmenopausal Combined Hormone Replacement Therapy (HRT) Is Associated with an Increased Risk of Breast Cancer

Menopausal symptoms (i.e. hot flushes, vasomotor changes, mood disturbances, genitourinary symptoms such as atrophic vaginitis, etc.) affect more than 50% of women, and approximately 40% of women suffer from symptoms severe enough to seek medical help [33]. Among the spectrum of therapies prescribed, estrogen treatment, with or without a progestin, is the most effective therapy [34–36]. The trends in formulation have moved from estrogen-only or unopposed

replacement (ERT) to combinations of estrogens and progestins (HRT) due to the protective effects of progestins on the endometrium. In the US, the main replacement preparations contain conjugated equine estrogens (CEE) alone or combined with medroxyprogesterone acetate (MPA) [37]. Non-hormonal therapies have been reported to improve menopausal symptoms to a lesser degree than HRT, but have other beneficial effects [38–42]. HRT alone or combined with physical exercise and supplements, has also been demonstrated to have a positive influence on post-menopausal loss of bone mass and subsequent osteoporosis.

Given the associations between sex steroid hormones and breast cancer, the possibility that ERT and/or HRT may increase the risk of breast cancer has been a concern since their use in the 1950s. Accordingly, many observational and cohort studies examined the influence of HRT on breast cancer risk in the past decades. Although the results were contradictory, some studies have been interpreted as suggesting a small but significant increase in the risk of breast cancer in women using HRT at the time of diagnosis [15, 43–52]. The collaborative reanalysis from 1997 was an attempt to bring together and re-examine the individual data of all 51 relevant studies published thus far. It revealed that breast cancer risk increased by 2.3% per year of hormone use, compared with an increased risk of 2.8% per year of natural delay in the onset of the menopause [49]. The risk of breast cancer, which was not significant until 5 years of use, increased by 35% in women who had used HRT for 11 years on average. Within 5 years after discontinuation of treatment, the elevated risk has returned to baseline [49]. Overall, most studies indicated a greater risk associated with combined HRT than with unopposed estrogen treatment, particularly for hormone receptor-positive carcinoma. Between the mid 1970s and 1980s surveillance data showed that the incidence of ER positive tumors increased by an average of 131% in the population-based tumor registry of Kaiser Permanente, Portland, OR [53], and some investigators suggested that this finding may implicate the involvement of HRT use in the rising incidence of breast cancer [54].

Since randomized placebo-controlled trials are regarded as the highest level of evidence for the investigation of the impact of drugs on disease risk, the results of the Heart and Estrogen/Progestin Replacement (HER) study and both arms of the Women's Health Initiative (WHI) study were highly anticipated [55–57]. The HER study on the secondary prevention of coronary heart disease by continuous treatment with CEE/MPA, observed a statistically non-significant 27% increase in the relative risk of breast cancer after 6.8 years of use [55]. In the combined HRT arm of the WHI study, 5.2 years of treatment with CEE/MPA increased the relative risk of breast cancer by 24%, which reached statistical significance [57]. The authors of the study estimated eight additional breast cancer cases for 10,000 women-years for CEE/MPA treatment, which corresponds to the results of the collaborative re-analysis [57, 58]. Interestingly, a 2006 reanalysis of the WHI CEE/MPA data [59], revealed that breast cancer risk was significantly different in women who used HRT prior to the initiation of the trial compared to those not using hormones before: Among 4,311 prior users, the adjusted hazard ratio (HR) for CEE/MPA versus placebo was 1.96, significantly different from that among 12,297 never users (HR: 1.02). At the same time, the Million Women Study (MWS), a massive observational follow-up study designed to assess the risk of breast cancer among HRT recipients in a population of British women undergoing screening mammography, observed a relative risk of breast cancer in HRT users of up to 2.0 [60]. On the other hand, the arm of the WHI study investigating the effect of CEE alone in hysterectomized women, revealed no increased risk of breast cancer after 6.8 years of treatment [56, 61]. Similarly, in the study of Chen et al. [62] no significantly increased breast cancer risk was seen in women using unopposed estrogens for up to 20 years; however, these authors found a significantly increased risk (relative risk of 1.42) in women using unopposed estrogens for more than 20 years.

Although both the combined arm of the WHI study and the MWS were widely criticized and have not conclusively ruled out various sources of bias [63–68], their results were highly publicized in the media. The use of HRT at menopause has become a matter of intense debate, and its utility and safety has been questioned. Despite ongoing debate [67], the theory that combined HRT increases the risk of being diagnosed with invasive breast cancer appears widely accepted and the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) has recently classified combined HRT as a class I carcinogen in humans [69]. However, many important questions remain unanswered. One of the major limitations to our understanding of the effect

of HRT on breast cancers is due to the fact that most reports are based on epidemiologic studies utilizing data extracted from cancer registries without central pathologic review and confirmation of diagnoses and tumor features. Given the typically small number of cancer cases included even in the largest studies and the known significant disagreement rate in the determination of tumor size, histological type, grade and receptor status even among expert breast pathologists, misclassification of even a few tumors could drastically change the results of such studies.

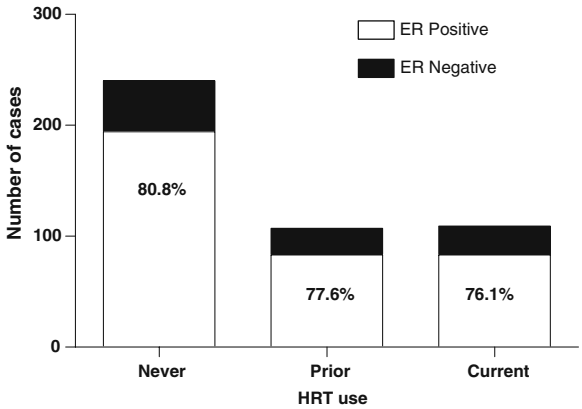


Fig. 13.1 Comparison of the ratio of estrogen receptor (ER) positive and negative cases of 456 breast carcinomas diagnosed in postmenopausal women according to use of combined hormone replacement therapy (HRT)

13.4 Association of HRT Use with Histologic Features and Prognosis of Breast Cancers

The expression of specific receptors by the tumor cells is considered to be a pathophysiological prerequisite for potential hormone effect on breast cancers. The analysis of data from the Nurses' Health Study revealed that postmenopausal women who used HRT had a higher probability of developing ER positive and progesterone receptor (PR) positive tumors [70]. HRT use increased the frequency of ER/PR positive invasive breast cancers 2- to 2.5-fold, whereas the effect on receptor-negative carcinoma was less pronounced [52, 71–73]. Other epidemiologic studies have reported a similar greater risk in current users of continuous combined HRT, concentrated in ER positive disease [48, 50, 72–74]. Indeed, use of HRT was found to be the greatest predictor of ER positive disease [75]. In contrast, other studies, such as the WHI, did not find a difference between HRT users and non-users with regard to hormone receptor status. Similarly, our own review of 456 consecutive breast carcinoma cases diagnosed in postmenopausal women at the Moffitt Cancer Center [76] showed no difference in hormone receptor status between HRT users and non-users (Acs et al., manuscript in preparation) (Fig. 13.1).

Other investigators have focused on the reported increase in the rate of lobular carcinoma compared to ductal (no special type) cancer [52, 77]. Given the usually ER positive nature of lobular carcinomas, it was hypothesized that HRT increases the incidence of lobular more than other types of breast cancer and account for the reported rise in the incidence of the former [52, 78, 79]. Seven epidemiological studies investigated the risk of breast cancer associated with HRT according to histologic type of tumors [71, 73, 77, 80–83]. In these studies, 387 lobular cancer cases and 1,582 ductal cancer cases were current hormone users. The results (summarized in Table 13.1) indicated that while the use of estrogens alone was associated with no or a slightly elevated risk, combination HRT increased the incidence of lobular and "mixed ductal-lobular" cancers to a much greater extent than that of ductal carcinoma. In addition to the fact that these results are based on relatively few cases of lobular cancer, several of these studies are from a small geographic region [71, 77, 80, 82, 84]. None of these studies had central pathologic review of the cases, which significantly limits the reliability of their conclusions. Given the small number of lobular cancer cases included, misclassification of even a few tumors could significantly change the results. It should also be kept in mind that the validity of comparing lobular carcinoma, a relatively well defined, single entity in its classic form, to the rest of the majority of breast cancers (designated "ductal" or "no special type" carcinoma simply based on the lack of diagnostic features of special subtypes of breast cancer) characterized by a wide variety of genetic alterations, phenotypic features and degrees of differentiation, is rather questionable. In addition, the entity of "mixed ductal-lobular" carcinoma is not defined and pathologists use this diagnosis to designate a variety of breast carcinomas ranging from ductal (no special type, NST) carcinomas with focal single cell

Table 13.1 Summary of results of epidemiological studies on HRT use and breast cancer histology

		Lobular carcinoma			Ductal carcinoma		
	Studies (*n*)	User cases (*n*)	RR (95% CI)	*P*	User cases (*n*)	RR (95% CI)	*P*
E only	6	164	1.44 (0.97–2.13)	0.001	795	0.90 (0.69–1.18)	0.083
E+P	6	182	2.82 (1.95–4.07)		629	1.15 (0.86–1.54)	
All hormones	7	387	2.19 (1.61–2.99)		1,582	1.08 (0.84–1.39)	

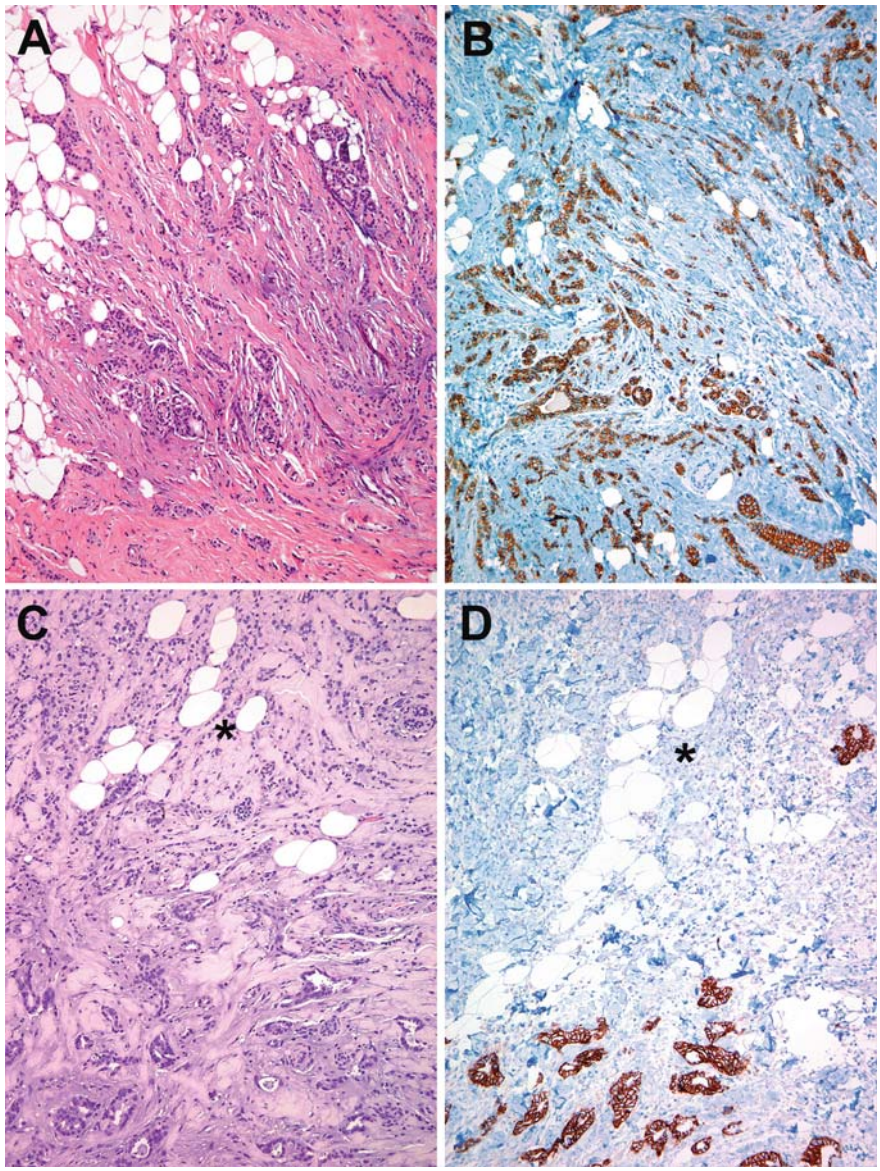


Fig. 13.2 **A**. Invasive carcinoma "with ductal and lobular features". The tumor cells focally show a single file infiltrating pattern reminiscent of lobular carcinoma. Small areas of lobular-like growth pattern can be often seen in otherwise usual ductal (no special type, NST) carcinomas and their presence does not warrant a diagnosis of mixed type carcinoma. **B**. The foci of carcinoma showing lobular-like growth patterns retain strong membrane staining for E-cadherin. **C**. Invasive carcinoma, mixed ductal NST and lobular type. The NST component of the carcinoma is composed of cohesive nests and glands, while the distinct lobular component shows dyscohesive cells growing in a single file infiltrative patter. **D**. E-cadherin immunostaining shows strong membrane reactivity in the NST carcinoma component and complete lack of staining in the lobular component

infiltrating pattern to carcinomas having clearly distinct components of classic lobular and ductal (NST) areas (Fig. 13.2). In fact, the only study using central pathology review [85] indicated that HRT is associated with low tumor grade, rather than a specific histologic type. In this study, the agreement rates for the diagnosis of lobular and "mixed ductal-lobular" carcinomas were only 68 and 18%, respectively, highlighting the

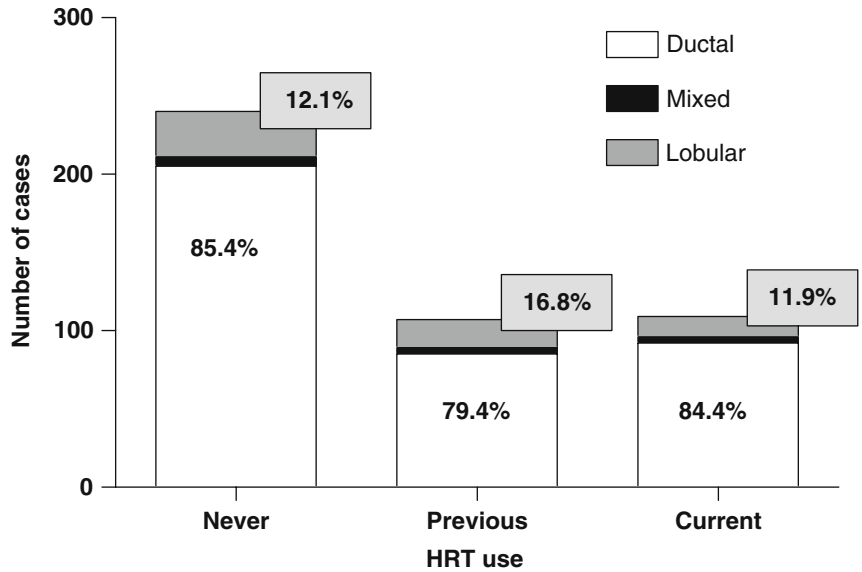


Fig. 13.3 Comparison of histologic type of 456 breast carcinomas diagnosed in postmenopausal women according to use of combined hormone replacement therapy (HRT)

importance of central pathology review. Our recent review of 456 consecutive cases of invasive breast carcinoma diagnosed in postmenopausal women at the Moffitt Cancer Center [76] showed no difference in the rate of lobular carcinoma according to HRT use when strict histologic criteria were applied (Acs et al., manuscript in preparation) (Fig. 13.3). The WHI CEE/MPA trial did not show such a differential risk either: 11.2 and 10.6% of the cancers in the HRT and placebo groups, respectively, were lobular cancers [58].

Although HRT has been shown to be associated with an increased risk of being diagnosed with invasive breast cancer, no increased breast cancer mortality has been demonstrated in HRT users in the reports. In contrast, most studies which investigated mortality have shown improved breast cancer survival in women using HRT [86–96]. Although the improved survival was suggested to be simply due to early detection of tumors by some investigators, studies also indicate that HRT users develop smaller, better differentiated tumors [97–112]. These findings suggest a possible effect of HRT on pre-existing tumors and that surveillance/detection bias is not the only explanation for better survival. Differing with most reports in the literature, the WHI CEE/MPA study found that tumors in the HRT group were larger and more likely to be associated with lymph node metastases than those in the placebo group [58]. The WHI investigators argued that their results are consistent with the stimulation of growth of established breast cancers and concluded that invasive breast cancers diagnosed in women who use HRT may have a worse prognosis. A recent systematic review of 25 studies on the influence of hormone use on prognostic factors of breast cancers concluded that, because of their methodology, the epidemiological studies cannot negate the findings of the WHI [113].

13.5 Initiation of New Breast Cancers Versus Promotion of Pre-existing Tumors

The exact pathogenetic mechanisms of breast cancer initiation and/or promotion are still poorly understood [51, 114–117]. One of the most important questions is whether postmenopausal HRT initiates the growth of new breast cancers or whether the epidemiologic results reflect a hormonal impact on pre-existing tumors. Studies in rodents have demonstrated that estrogens or their catechol metabolites are carcinogens in various tissues, including the mammary gland [13, 17, 118–122]. Although estrogens may theoretically be involved in the initiation of breast cancer, a carcinogenic/mutagenic role of HRT seems improbable. In almost every study reporting an increase in breast cancer risk with HRT, the increase in incidence has been found within a few years. There is general acceptance

that 30–35 tumor doublings are required to achieve a tumor size of 1 cm in diameter, which is more or less the smallest lesion that can be diagnosed in the clinic [65, 123, 124]. Although the doubling time of breast cancers is highly variable, in general a tumor doubles in size every 100 days. Thus, it is estimated to take approximately 7 years for a single malignant cell to grow large enough to become detectable by mammography and 10 years to grow to a clinically detectable 1 cm mass [125]. The rapid finding of an increased risk of breast cancer within a few years of HRT use suggests that the epidemiologic studies are detecting pre-existing tumors [126]. Accordingly, it is currently believed that HRT does not initiate new tumors, but may increase (promote) the likelihood of tumor growth at a later stage of carcinogenesis. Although it was also suggested that by stimulating cell division and thus increasing the rate of spontaneous mutations [10], hormones may contribute to the emergence of frankly malignant tumors from atypical precursor lesions [127], the available studies indicate that HRT use does not further elevate the breast cancer risk associated with proliferative breast disease with or without atypia [128–131] and thus, do not support such a hypothesis. Two recent studies examining the effect of either unopposed CEE or combined CEE/MPA treatment on the risk of benign proliferative breast disease within the WHI trials found that both CEE (average duration of 6.9 years) and CEE/MPA (average duration 5.5 years) treatments conferred an increased risk of benign proliferative breast disease without atypia (HR: 2.34 and 2.00, respectively), but neither had any significant effect on the risk of proliferative breast disease with atypia (atypical hyperplasia, HR: 1.12 and 0.76, respectively) [132, 133].

Recent US statistics have indicated a rapid decrease in breast cancer incidence immediately after the publicity surrounding the reports from the WHI and the resulting drop in HRT use. National data revealed a 7% decrease in breast cancer incidence in 2003, which was greatest in women aged 50–69 years and mostly confined to ER positive tumors [134, 135]. Breast cancer declined 10% in the Northern California Kaiser program in the years 2003 and 2004 [136]. It was suggested that these findings most likely reflect pre-existing cancers just below the detection limit in 2002 that slowed or stopped growing upon HRT removal [54, 68, 135]. An impact of HRT on pre-existing tumors also appears to be supported by statistics derived from the area around Geneva, Switzerland [137]. Beginning in 1997, the peak breast cancer incidence in the Geneva area has moved to a younger group of women (aged 60–64), with the increase occurring only in early stage disease with ER positive tumors in HRT users. However, the drop in incidence appears to be too immediate after cessation of hormone use, it was also seen for advanced stage disease, and other explanations (e.g. a decline in the prevalence of screening mammography [138]) have not been excluded. As MacMahon and Cole [139] noted, the reported increase in breast cancer incidence rates before 2000 probably reflects the increasing use of more effective methods of breast cancer screening leading to earlier diagnosis. As they point out, the cases detected by screening during a fixed time period will increase the number of cases diagnosed and hence the incidence rate of the diagnosed disease over time. At the same time, effective screening also decreases the number of preclinical cases to be found by screening in subsequent years, which could have contributed to the decline in breast cancer incidence after 2003.

13.6 The Effect of HRT on the Proliferation of Breast Cancers

Epidemiological studies suggest that the impact of estrogens on the relative risk of breast cancer is modest, but it is significantly enhanced by the addition of progestins. In contrast to the endometrium, epithelial cell proliferation in the normal breast reaches its peak during the progesterone-dominant luteal phase of the menstrual cycle [140–142]. This observation has been the driving force behind the argument that progestins are the major hormonal mitogens in the breast and that combined HRT stimulates the proliferation of pre-existing breast cancers. However, most experimental studies do not support a major role for an adverse progestational influence on breast cancer. In animal models, estrogen, not progesterone, is the major inducer of proliferation, and evidence indicates that with increasing duration of exposure, progesterone can limit breast epithelial growth as it does in endometrial epithelium [143–145]. In vitro studies of normal breast epithelial cells also revealed that progestins inhibit proliferation [146]. The story with benign human breast tissue

specimens removed after women were treated with estrogen and progestin is more confusing, indicating on one hand that progestins inhibit in vivo estrogen-induced proliferation [143, 144, 147], and on the other hand that markers of epithelial cell proliferation are higher in women being treated with estrogen-progestin [115, 148]. Similar effects of CEE and CEE/MPA were observed in a monkey model [149]. Nevertheless, progestins have also been demonstrated to decrease anti-apoptotic protein expression [150], and apoptosis in breast tissue is also higher in the luteal phase than in the follicular phase [151].

Importantly, there are profound differences between benign and malignant breast tissue concerning the hormone dependent regulation of cell proliferation. In the resting normal mammary tissue ERα and PR are expressed in very few epithelial cells, while ERβ is present in 70% of the cells. The minority (approximately 2%) of epithelial cells which are proliferating, do not contain ER and the mitoses are probably controlled by paracrine interactions of adjacent epithelial cells [152, 153]. In contrast, the transition of benign to malignant mammary tissue is characterized by a switch from paracrine to autocrine regulation of epithelial cell proliferation by sex steroids, i.e., in breast tumors ERα and PR are also expressed in proliferating cells [154–156]. Studies have shown that the mitotic rate of both ER/PR positive and ER/PR negative breast carcinoma is higher in the luteal phase than in the follicular phase of the menstrual cycle [142]. In addition, studies indicate that neither ethinylestradiol, plus norethisterone, nor tibolone had a significant effect on the proliferation of normal breast epithelium [157, 158], even though both tibolone and all types of estrogen/progestin combinations were found to be associated with an increased risk of breast cancer [60, 73, 74, 159, 160]. It is thus questionable whether the effects of different HRT preparations on benign mammary epithelium reflect those on breast carcinoma. In fact, most studies which have investigated the proliferation rate of breast cancers in women using HRT found that tumors detected in these patients showed significantly lower S-phase fraction, mitotic activity and Ki-67 labeling index, compared to tumors in non-users [61, 97–111, 161].

Studies of patients with invasive breast carcinoma have shown that early changes (<3 weeks) in cell proliferation and PR expression occur after antiestrogen therapy in ER positive but not in ER negative tumors [162–165]. These changes are accepted surrogate markers of clinical tumor response. In one study [165], the decrease in proliferation correlated with subsequent reduction in tumor size in patients receiving tamoxifen therapy. Despite its clear clinical importance, there is only a single study reported in the literature investigating the effect of HRT withdrawal on

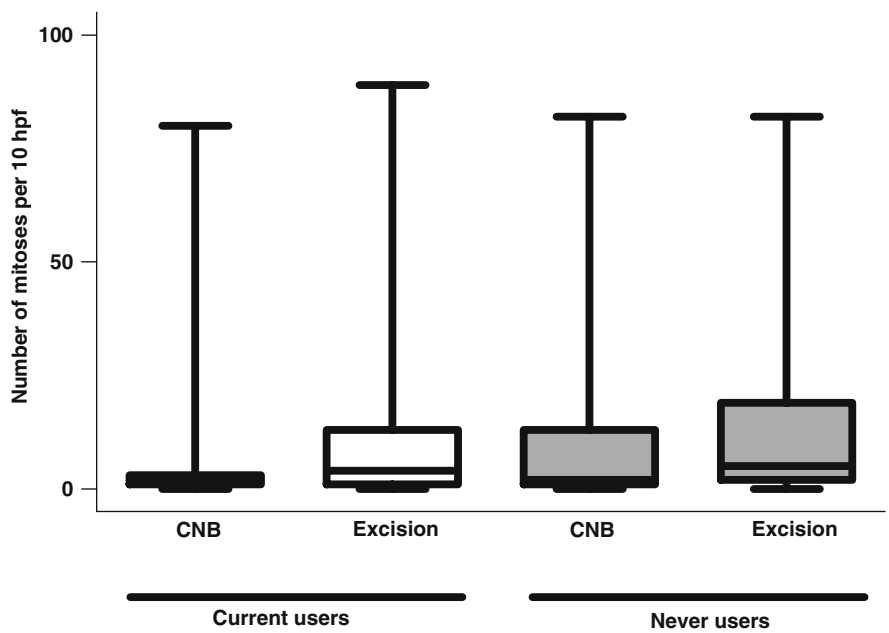


Fig. 13.4 Comparison of mitotic activity (number of mitoses per 10 high power fields) in core needle biopsy (CNB, taken when patients were receiving combined hormone replacement therapy (HRT) in the current user group) and corresponding subsequent excisional biopsy samples (taken at least 3 weeks after cessation of HRT) of breast cancer in current HRT users and never users

the proliferation rate of breast cancers [166]. Although limited by small sample size and methodological flaws, the results suggested a decrease in proliferation after withdrawal of HRT in ER positive, but not in ER negative tumors. On the other hand, similar to prior results, this study also showed that tumors in HRT users had significantly lower proliferative activity compared to cancers in non-users. Our recent results obtained in 404 consecutive postmenopausal breast cancers showed that there was no significant decrease in proliferation after HRT withdrawal in the tumor cells measured by either the number of mitotic figures per 10 high power fields or Ki-67 labeling index (Acs et al., unpublished data) (Fig. 13.4).

13.7 Effect of HRT on Hormone Receptor and Gene Expression Profile in Breast Cancers

It is well recognized that early pregnancy produces changes in the breast that result in resistance to carcinogenesis [167–169]. In rodents a similar effect is accomplished by treatment with estrogen plus a progestin. The refractory phenotype produced is associated with progestin-induced changes in the expression of genes involved in cellular proliferation [124, 170]. The PR is induced by estrogens at the transcriptional level and decreased by progestins at both the transcriptional and translational levels [171]. The PR has two major isoforms, designated PR-A and PR-B receptors [172]. The two PR forms are expressed by a single gene, a consequence of transcription from distinctly different promoters, in a complex system of transcription regulation [173]. The breast tissue of normal women expresses equal amounts of PR-A and PR-B, while breast cancers are associated with increased PR-A levels [174, 175]. PR-A and PR-B have different molecular functions and affect different genes. Therefore, the target tissue response to progestins depends on the differential expression of each receptor and the ratio of their concentrations, as well as the target tissue context of adaptor proteins [176, 177]. In most cells PR-B is the positive regulator of progesterone-responsive genes, and PR-A inhibits PR-B activity. The broad activity of PR-A suggests that this PR isoform regulates inhibition of steroid hormone action wherever it is expressed [178]. In the absence of progestins the PR-A isoforms are dominant and they can exert gene regulation in ER positive breast cell lines even in the absence of their ligand [175]. In the absence of progestins, unliganded PR-A can up-regulate genes associated with aggressive growth, invasion and poor prognosis, including genes that provide resistance to apoptosis, and adversely influence the biology of ER positive tumors [174, 175]. Indeed, ER positive breast cancers with a higher rate of recurrence were shown to be rich in the PR-A isoform [174, 175]. PR-A-rich tumors with a high PR-A/PR-B ratio do poorly and respond less well to tamoxifen [174]. In the presence of progestins, however, PR-B is a stronger regulator of gene transcription. In monkeys the breast levels of PR-A were unchanged after 3 years of treatment with CEE alone [179]. In contrast, treatment with CEE/MPA produced a decline in PR-A levels with a 10-fold beneficial change in the PR-A/PR-B ratio. It thus seems possible that exposure of an ER positive tumor to estrogen-progestin treatment can prevent an unfavorable PR-A/PR-B ratio, promoting the beneficial actions of PR-B.

Early molecular biology studies also provide support for a favorable effect of estrogen-progestin exposure in breast cancers. Estrogen regulated genes can be separated into two groups [180, 181]: The first group is associated with poor prognosis with high expression of cell proliferation and anti-apoptosis related genes. The other, good prognosis group is associated with better differentiated tumors with better survival and response to tamoxifen. In vitro studies using microarray analysis have profiled the gene networks regulated by estrogen [182]. Genes that are up-regulated by estrogen are down-regulated by estrogen-progestin treatment [183]. There is only a single study reported in the literature that examined the gene expression profile of breast cancers in HRT users [183]. This study showed that HRT use altered the gene expression profile only in ER positive cancers. Comparison of HRT users and non-users, 276 genes were found to be activated by HRT exposure. Among the genes regulated, many were involved in either DNA repair or cell cycle regulation. Interestingly, the pattern of changes in the HRT treated tumors was very similar to those observed in breast cancer cells treated with tamoxifen [183]. All women in this cluster were free of recurrence 5 years after diagnosis. In a cohort of 131 breast cancer patients, the women whose tumors exhibited the gene expression

profile associated with combined HRT exposure preferentially benefited from tamoxifen treatment [183].

Additional supporting data for a potential beneficial effect of combined estrogen-progestin exposure can also be found in two recent studies. A retrospective cohort study in the Southern California Kaiser program showed a reduction in breast cancer case mortality that was significant only among women with breast cancer who were users of estrogen-progestin and not among users of estrogen alone [184]. A large study of 374,465 women screened in six US mammography centers reported that an increase in lower grade, lower stage, ER positive cancers was found only in current users of estrogen-progestin [105]. The molecular and clinical data thus suggest a potential beneficial effect of estrogen-progestin treatment on the biology of breast cancers, likely based on changing the PR-A/PR-B ratio and activity.

13.8 Chemo-/Hormonal Prevention

Numerous studies have shown that tamoxifen use in high risk patient populations can significantly reduce the development of ER+ breast carcinoma [185–187]. Furthermore, these studies have shown that the improvements in risk profiles increase with time after the 5 year course of Tamoxifen has been completed. Recently, investigators have examined the use of prepubertal hormonal exposure simulating pregnancy in order to reduce the risk of breast carcinoma in mouse models [188]. Specifically, mice implanted with mammary tissue harboring deleted p53 and exposed to short term (2–4 weeks) hormonal therapy received both significant short term and long term protective effect from the treatment compared to control mice. Additionally, the mice received similar protective effects from estrogen alone or estrogen plus progesterone. Investigation as to the cellular mechanisms of such conferred protection revealed a 53–85% reduction in the proliferative potential of the mammary cells of treated mice compared to control animals. This protective effect was also observed in other model systems [188]. The results of such animal studies certainly raise the intriguing question whether this model might translate into a “hormonal vaccine” in humans. Numerous studies have demonstrated the protective effects of early pregnancy on breast tissue [167–169, 189, 190]. While the exact cellular mechanisms of this protection are not fully understood, the effect likely involves the attenuation of the proliferative potential of mammary cells, up-regulation of tumor suppressor genes, and maturation of terminal duct lobular units to a more stable form [168, 169, 191].

References

1. Jemal A, Siegel R, Ward E et al. Cancer statistics, 2007. *CA Cancer J Clin*. 2007;57:43–66.
2. Katzenellenbogen BS, Kendra KL, Norman MJ et al. Proliferation, hormonal responsiveness, and estrogen receptor content of MCF-7 human breast cancer cells grown in the short-term and long-term absence of estrogens. *Cancer Res*. 1987;47:4355–4360.
3. Ip M, Milholland RJ, Rosen F et al. Mammary cancer: selective action of the estrogen receptor complex. *Science*. 1979;203:361–363.
4. Rose C, Thorpe SM, Lober J et al. Therapeutic effect of tamoxifen related to estrogen receptor level. *Recent Results Cancer Res*. 1980;71:134–141.
5. Sunderland MC, Osborne CK. Tamoxifen in premenopausal patients with metastatic breast cancer: a review. *J Clin Oncol*. 1991;9:1283–1297.
6. Stierer M, Rosen H, Weber R et al. Immunohistochemical and biochemical measurement of estrogen and progesterone receptors in primary breast cancer. Correlation of histopathology and prognostic factors. *Ann Surg*. 1993;218:13–21.
7. Andersen J, Poulsen HS. Immunohistochemical estrogen receptor determination in paraffin-embedded tissue. Prediction of response to hormonal treatment in advanced breast cancer. *Cancer*. 1989;64:1901–1908.
8. Wolmark N, Dunn BK. The role of tamoxifen in breast cancer prevention: issues sparked by the NSABP Breast Cancer Prevention trial (P-1). *Ann NY Acad Sci*. 2001;949:99–108.
9. Henderson BE, Ross R, Bernstein L. Estrogens as a cause of human cancer: the Richard and Hinda Rosenthal Foundation award lecture. *Cancer Res*. 1988;48:246–253.
10. Henderson BE, Feigelson HS. Hormonal carcinogenesis. *Carcinogenesis*. 2000;21:427–433.
11. Clemons M, Goss P. Estrogen and the risk of breast cancer. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344:276–285.
12. Key TJ, Appleby PN, Reeves GK et al. Body mass index, serum sex hormones, and breast cancer risk in postmenopausal women. *J Natl Cancer Inst*. 2003;95:1218–1226.
13. Yue W, Santen RJ, Wang JP et al. Genotoxic metabolites of estradiol in breast: potential mechanism of estradiol induced carcinogenesis. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol*. 2003;86:477–486.
14. Thomas HV, Reeves GK, Key TJ. Endogenous estrogen and postmenopausal breast cancer: a quantitative review. *Cancer Causes Control*. 1997;8:922–928.

15. Key T, Appleby P, Barnes I et al. Endogenous sex hormones and breast cancer in postmenopausal women: reanalysis of nine prospective studies. *J Natl Cancer Inst*. 2002;94:606–616.
16. Suzuki T, Miki Y, Nakamura Y et al. Sex steroid-producing enzymes in human breast cancer. *Endocr Relat Cancer*. 2005;12:701–720.
17. Yager JD, Davidson NE. Estrogen carcinogenesis in breast cancer. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354:270–282.
18. Yager JD, Liehr JG. Molecular mechanisms of estrogen carcinogenesis. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 1996;36: 203–232.
19. Cavalieri E, Frenkel K, Liehr JG et al. Estrogens as endogenous genotoxic agents – DNA adducts and mutations. *J Natl Cancer Inst Monogr*. 2000;75–93.
20. Jefcoate CR, Liehr JG, Santen RJ et al. Tissue-specific synthesis and oxidative metabolism of estrogens. *J Natl Cancer Inst Monogr*. 2000;95–112.
21. Liehr JG. Is estradiol a genotoxic mutagenic carcinogen? *Endocr Rev*. 2000;21:40–54.
22. Lavigne JA, Goodman JE, Fonong T et al. The effects of catechol-O-methyltransferase inhibition on estrogen metabolite and oxidative DNA damage levels in estradiol-treated MCF-7 cells. *Cancer Res*. 2001;61:7488–7494.
23. Yao J, Chang M, Li Y et al. Inhibition of cellular enzymes by equine catechol estrogens in human breast cancer cells: specificity for glutathione S-transferase P1-1. *Chem Res Toxicol*. 2002;15:935–942.
24. Yao J, Li Y, Chang M et al. Catechol estrogen 4-hydroxy-equilenin is a substrate and an inhibitor of catechol-O-methyltransferase. *Chem Res Toxicol*. 2003;16:668–675.
25. Pike MC, Spicer DV, Dahmoush L et al. Estrogens, progestogens, normal breast cell proliferation, and breast cancer risk. *Epidemiol Rev*. 1993;15:17–35.
26. Missmer SA, Eliassen AH, Barbieri RL et al. Endogenous estrogen, androgen, and progesterone concentrations and breast cancer risk among postmenopausal women. *J Natl Cancer Inst*. 2004;96:1856–1865.
27. Helzlsouer KJ, Alberg AJ, Bush TL et al. A prospective study of endogenous hormones and breast cancer. *Cancer Detect Prev*. 1994;18:79–85.
28. Kaaks R, Berrino F, Key T et al. Serum sex steroids in premenopausal women and breast cancer risk within the European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition (EPIC). *J Natl Cancer Inst*. 2005;97:755–765.
29. Micheli A, Muti P, Secreto G et al. Endogenous sex hormones and subsequent breast cancer in premenopausal women. *Int J Cancer*. 2004;112:312–318.
30. Baksu A, Gurarslan H, Goker N. Androgen levels in pre-eclamptic pregnant women. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 2004;84:247–248.
31. Innes KE, Byers TE. Preeclampsia and breast cancer risk. *Epidemiology*. 1999;10:722–732.
32. Tamimi R, Lagiou P, Vatten LJ et al. Pregnancy hormones, pre-eclampsia, and implications for breast cancer risk in the offspring. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*. 2003;12:647–650.
33. Grady D. Postmenopausal hormones – therapy for symptoms only. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348:1835–1837.
34. Greendale GA, Reboussin BA, Hogan P et al. Symptom relief and side effects of postmenopausal hormones: results from the Postmenopausal Estrogen/Progestin Interventions trial. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1998;92:982–988.
35. Neves-E-Castro. Menopause in crisis post-Women's Health Initiative? A view based on personal clinical experience. *Hum Reprod*. 2003;18:2512–2518.
36. Schneider HPG. General aspects of worldwide HRT use. In: Kato J, Minaguchi H, Nishino Y, eds. *Hormone Replacement Therapy and Osteoporosis. Ernst Schering Research Foundation Workshop Supplement 4*. 2000; Berlin: Springer Verlag.
37. International Agency for Research on Cancer. *Postmenopausal Oestrogen Therapy. (IARC Scientific Publications No. 72.)* 1999; Lyon: International Agency for Research on Cancer.
38. Early Breast Cancer Trialists' Collaborative Group. Tamoxifen for early breast cancer: an overview of the randomised trials. *Lancet*. 1998;351:1451–1467.
39. Fisher B, Costantino JP, Wickerham DL et al. Tamoxifen for prevention of breast cancer: report of the National Surgical Adjuvant Breast and Bowel Project P-1 study. *J Natl Cancer Inst*. 1998;90:1371–1388.
40. Cummings SR, Eckert S, Krueger KA et al. The effect of raloxifene on risk of breast cancer in postmenopausal women: results from the MORE randomized trial. Multiple Outcomes of Raloxifene Evaluation. *JAMA*. 1999;281:2189–2197.
41. Ettinger B, Black DM, Mitlak BH et al. Reduction of vertebral fracture risk in postmenopausal women with osteoporosis treated with raloxifene: results from a 3-year randomized clinical trial. Multiple Outcomes of Raloxifene Evaluation (MORE) Investigators. *JAMA*. 1999;282:637–645.
42. Jordan VC. Selective estrogen receptor modulation: a personal perspective. *Cancer Res*. 2001;61:5683–5687.
43. Colditz GA, Hankinson SE, Hunter DJ et al. The use of estrogens and progestins and the risk of breast cancer in postmenopausal women. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;332: 1589–1593.
44. Magnusson C, Baron JA, Correia N et al. Breast-cancer risk following long-term oestrogen- and oestrogen-progestin-replacement therapy. *Int J Cancer*. 1999;81: 339–344.
45. Schairer C, Lubin J, Troisi R et al. Menopausal estrogen and estrogen-progestin replacement therapy and breast cancer risk. *JAMA*. 2000;283:485–491.
46. American Institute for Cancer Research/World Cancer Research Fund. *Food, Nutrition and the Prevention of Cancer: A Global Perspective*. 2002; Washington, DC: American Institute of Cancer Research.
47. La VC, Franceschi S. Hormone replacement therapy and cancer: an update. *Eur J Cancer Prev*. 2003;12:3–4.
48. Porch JV, Lee IM, Cook NR et al. Estrogen-progestin replacement therapy and breast cancer risk: the Women's Health study (United States). *Cancer Causes Control*. 2002;13:847–854.
49. Collaborative Group on Hormonal Factors in Breast Cancer. Breast cancer and hormone replacement therapy: collaborative reanalysis of data from 51 epidemiological studies of 52,705 women with breast cancer and 108,411 women without breast cancer. *Lancet*. 1997;350: 1047–1059.

50. Olsson HL, Ingvar C, Bladstrom A. Hormone replacement therapy containing progestins and given continuously increases breast carcinoma risk in Sweden. *Cancer*. 2003;97:1387–1392.
51. Brekelmans CT. Risk factors and risk reduction of breast and ovarian cancer. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol*. 2003;15:63–68.
52. Li CI, Anderson BO, Daling JR et al. Trends in incidence rates of invasive lobular and ductal breast carcinoma. *JAMA*. 2003;289:1421–1424.
53. Glass AG, Hoover RN. Rising incidence of breast cancer: relationship to stage and receptor status. *J Natl Cancer Inst*. 1990;82:693–696.
54. Colditz GA. Decline in breast cancer incidence due to removal of promoter: combination estrogen plus progestin. *Breast Cancer Res*. 2007;9:108.
55. Hulley S, Furberg C, Barrett-Connor E et al. Noncardiovascular disease outcomes during 6.8 years of hormone therapy: Heart and Estrogen/Progestin Replacement study follow-up (HERS II). *JAMA*. 2002;288:58–66.
56. Anderson GL, Limacher M, Assaf AR et al. Effects of conjugated equine estrogen in postmenopausal women with hysterectomy: the Women's Health Initiative randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2004;291:1701–1712.
57. Rossouw JE, Anderson GL, Prentice RL et al. Risks and benefits of estrogen plus progestin in healthy postmenopausal women: principal results. From the Women's Health Initiative randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2002;288:321–333.
58. Chlebowski RT, Hendrix SL, Langer RD et al. Influence of estrogen plus progestin on breast cancer and mammography in healthy postmenopausal women: the Women's Health Initiative randomized trial. *JAMA*. 2003;289: 3243–3253.
59. Anderson GL, Chlebowski RT, Rossouw JE et al. Prior hormone therapy and breast cancer risk in the Women's Health Initiative randomized trial of estrogen plus progestin. *Maturitas*. 2006;55:103–115.
60. Beral V. Breast cancer and hormone-replacement therapy in the Million Women study. *Lancet*. 2003;362:419–427.
61. Stefanick ML, Anderson GL, Margolis KL et al. Effects of conjugated equine estrogens on breast cancer and mammography screening in postmenopausal women with hysterectomy. *JAMA*. 2006;295:1647–1657.
62. Chen WY, Manson JE, Hankinson SE et al. Unopposed estrogen therapy and the risk of invasive breast cancer. *Arch Intern Med*. 2006;166:1027–1032.
63. Nyirjesy I. Breast cancer and hormone-replacement therapy: the Million Women study. *Lancet*. 2003;362: 1330–1331.
64. Mastorakos G, Sakkas EG, Xydakis AM et al. Pitfalls of the WHIs: Women's Health Initiative. *Ann NY Acad Sci*. 2006;1092:331–340.
65. Dietel M, Lewis MA, Shapiro S. Hormone replacement therapy: pathobiological aspects of hormone-sensitive cancers in women relevant to epidemiological studies on HRT: a mini-review. *Hum Reprod*. 2005;20:2052–2060.
66. Kuhl H. Is the elevated breast cancer risk observed in the WHI study an artifact? *Climacteric*. 2004;7:319–322.
67. Shapiro S. Adverse neoplastic and cardiovascular outcomes of HRT: the validity of the evidence. *Endocrine*. 2004;24:203–210.
68. Speroff L. Postmenopausal hormone therapy and the risk of breast cancer: a contrary thought. *Menopause*. 2008;15:393–400.
69. http://www.iarc.fr/ENG/Press_Releases/pr167a.html
70. Colditz GA, Rosner BA, Chen WY et al. Risk factors for breast cancer according to estrogen and progesterone receptor status. *J Natl Cancer Inst*. 2004;96:218–228.
71. Chen CL, Weiss NS, Newcomb P et al. Hormone replacement therapy in relation to breast cancer. *JAMA*. 2002;287:734–741.
72. Stahlberg C, Pedersen AT, Andersen ZJ et al. Breast cancer with different prognostic characteristics developing in Danish women using hormone replacement therapy. *Br J Cancer*. 2004;91:644–650.
73. Tjonneland A, Christensen J, Thomsen BL et al. Hormone replacement therapy in relation to breast carcinoma incidence rate ratios: a prospective Danish Cohort study. *Cancer*. 2004;100:2328–2337.
74. Stahlberg C, Pedersen AT, Lynge E et al. Increased risk of breast cancer following different regimens of hormone replacement therapy frequently used in Europe. *Int J Cancer*. 2004;109:721–727.
75. Hwang ES, Chew T, Shiboski S et al. Risk factors for estrogen receptor-positive breast cancer. *Arch Surg*. 2005;140:58–62.
76. Mathew R, Hoover S, Laronga C et al. Clinicopathologic features of breast carcinomas in women taking postmenopausal hormone replacement therapy. Mod Pathol. 2008;21(Suppl. 1):27A.
77. Li CI, Weiss NS, Stanford JL et al. Hormone replacement therapy in relation to risk of lobular and ductal breast carcinoma in middle-aged women. *Cancer*. 2000;88: 2570–2577.
78. Verkooijen HM, Fioretta G, Vlastos G et al. Important increase of invasive lobular breast cancer incidence in Geneva, Switzerland. *Int J Cancer*. 2003;104:778–781.
79. Levi F, Te VC, Randimbison L et al. Increase in lobular breast cancer incidence in Switzerland. *Int J Cancer*. 2003;107:164–165.
80. Li CI, Malone KE, Porter PL et al. Relationship between long durations and different regimens of hormone therapy and risk of breast cancer. *JAMA*. 2003;289:3254–3263.
81. Newcomb PA, Titus-Ernstoff L, Egan KM et al. Postmenopausal estrogen and progestin use in relation to breast cancer risk. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*. 2002;11:593–600.
82. Newcomer LM, Newcomb PA, Potter JD et al. Postmenopausal hormone therapy and risk of breast cancer by histologic type (United States). *Cancer Causes Control*. 2003;14:225–233.
83. Daling JR, Malone KE, Doody DR et al. Relation of regimens of combined hormone replacement therapy to lobular, ductal, and other histologic types of breast carcinoma. *Cancer*. 2002;95:2455–2464.
84. Daling JR, Malone KE, Doody DR et al. Association of regimens of hormone replacement therapy to prognostic factors among women diagnosed with breast cancer aged 50–64 years. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*. 2003;12:1175–1181.
85. Garcia-Closas M, Brinton LA, Lissowska J et al. Established breast cancer risk factors by clinically important tumour characteristics. *Br J Cancer*. 2006;95:123–129.

86. Bergkvist L, Adami HO, Persson I et al. Prognosis after breast cancer diagnosis in women exposed to estrogen and estrogen-progestogen replacement therapy. *Am J Epidemiol*. 1989;130:221–228.
87. Fowble B, Hanlon A, Freedman G et al. Postmenopausal hormone replacement therapy: effect on diagnosis and outcome in early-stage invasive breast cancer treated with conservative surgery and radiation. *J Clin Oncol*. 1999;17:1680–1688.
88. Grodstein F, Stampfer MJ, Colditz GA et al. Postmenopausal hormone therapy and mortality. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;336:1769–1775.
89. Henderson BE, Paganini-Hill A, Ross RK. Decreased mortality in users of estrogen replacement therapy. *Arch Intern Med*. 1991;151:75–78.
90. Hunt K, Vessey M, McPherson K. Mortality in a cohort of long-term users of hormone replacement therapy: an updated analysis. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol*. 1990;97: 1080–1086.
91. Jernstrom H, Frenander J, Ferno M et al. Hormone replacement therapy before breast cancer diagnosis significantly reduces the overall death rate compared with never-use among 984 breast cancer patients. *Br J Cancer*. 1999;80:1453–1458.
92. Nanda K, Bastian LA, Schulz K. Hormone replacement therapy and the risk of death from breast cancer: a systematic review. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2002;186: 325–334.
93. Persson I, Yuen J, Bergkvist L et al. Cancer incidence and mortality in women receiving estrogen and estrogen-progestin replacement therapy – long-term follow-up of a Swedish cohort. *Int J Cancer*. 1996;67:327–332.
94. Schairer C, Gail M, Byrne C et al. Estrogen replacement therapy and breast cancer survival in a large screening study. *J Natl Cancer Inst*. 1999;91:264–270.
95. Sellers TA, Mink PJ, Cerhan JR et al. The role of hormone replacement therapy in the risk for breast cancer and total mortality in women with a family history of breast cancer. *Ann Intern Med*. 1997;127:973–980.
96. Willis DB, Calle EE, Miracle-McMahill HL et al. Estrogen replacement therapy and risk of fatal breast cancer in a prospective cohort of postmenopausal women in the United States. *Cancer Causes Control*. 1996;7: 449–457.
97. Bilimoria MM, Winchester DJ, Sener SF et al. Estrogen replacement therapy and breast cancer: analysis of age of onset and tumor characteristics. *Ann Surg Oncol*. 1999;6:200–207.
98. Bonnier P, Romain S, Giacalone PL et al. Clinical and biologic prognostic factors in breast cancer diagnosed during postmenopausal hormone replacement therapy. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1995;85:11–17.
99. Cheek J, Lacy J, Toth-Fejel S et al. The impact of hormone replacement therapy on the detection and stage of breast cancer. *Arch Surg*. 2002;137:1015–1019.
100. Delgado RC, Lubian Lopez DM. Prognosis of breast cancers detected in women receiving hormone replacement therapy. *Maturitas*. 2001;38:147–156.
101. Esteve J, Seradour B, Jacquemier J et al. Does a better grade of tumour occurring in women under hormone replacement therapy compensate for their lower probability of detection by screening mammography. *J Med Screen*. 2002;9:70–73.
102. Gertig DM, Erbas B, Fletcher A et al. Duration of hormone replacement therapy, breast tumour size and grade in a screening programme. *Breast Cancer Res Treat*. 2003;80:267–273.
103. Harding C, Knox WF, Faragher EB et al. Hormone replacement therapy and tumour grade in breast cancer: prospective study in screening unit. *Br Med J*. 1996;312:1646–1647.
104. Holli K, Isola J, Cuzick J. Low biologic aggressiveness in breast cancer in women using hormone replacement therapy. *J Clin Oncol*. 1998;16:3115–3120.
105. Kerlikowske K, Miglioretti DL, Ballard-Barbash R et al. Prognostic characteristics of breast cancer among postmenopausal hormone users in a screened population. *J Clin Oncol*. 2003;21:4314–4321.
106. Magnusson C, Holmberg L, Norden T et al. Prognostic characteristics in breast cancers after hormone replacement therapy. *Breast Cancer Res Treat*. 1996;38:325–334.
107. Manjer J, Malina J, Berglund G et al. Increased incidence of small and well-differentiated breast tumours in post-menopausal women following hormone-replacement therapy. *Int J Cancer*. 2001;92:919–922.
108. Pappo I, Meirshon I, Karni T et al. The characteristics of malignant breast tumors in hormone replacement therapy users versus nonusers. *Ann Surg Oncol*. 2004;11:52–58.
109. Sacchini V, Zurrida S, Andreoni G et al. Pathologic and biological prognostic factors of breast cancers in short- and long-term hormone replacement therapy users. *Ann Surg Oncol*. 2002;9:266–271.
110. Salmon RJ, Ansquer Y, Asselain B et al. Clinical and biological characteristics of breast cancers in postmenopausal women receiving hormone replacement therapy for menopause. *Oncol Rep*. 1999;6:699–703.
111. Squitieri R, Tartter PI, Ahmed S et al. Carcinoma of the breast in postmenopausal hormone user and nonuser control groups. *J Am Coll Surg*. 1994;178:167–170.
112. Stallard S, Litherland JC, Cordiner CM et al. Effect of hormone replacement therapy on the pathological stage of breast cancer: population based, cross sectional study. *Br Med J*. 2000;320:348–349.
113. Antoine C, Liebens F, Carly B et al. Influence of HRT on prognostic factors for breast cancer: a systematic review after the Women's Health Initiative trial. *Hum Reprod*. 2004;19:741–756.
114. Adami HO, Signorello LB, Trichopoulos D. Towards an understanding of breast cancer etiology. *Semin Cancer Biol*. 1998;8:255–262.
115. Hofseth LJ, Raafat AM, Osuch JR et al. Hormone replacement therapy with estrogen or estrogen plus medroxyprogesterone acetate is associated with increased epithelial proliferation in the normal postmenopausal breast. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 1999;84:4559–4565.
116. Olsson H, Jernstrom H, Alm P et al. Proliferation of the breast epithelium in relation to menstrual cycle phase, hormonal use, and reproductive factors. *Breast Cancer Res Treat*. 1996;40:187–196.
117. Wiseman RA. Breast cancer hypothesis: a single cause for the majority of cases. *J Epidemiol Commun Health*. 2000;54:851–858.

118. Harvell DM, Strecker TE, Tochacek M et al. Rat strain-specific actions of 17beta-estradiol in the mammary gland: correlation between estrogen-induced lobuloalveolar hyperplasia and susceptibility to estrogen-induced mammary cancers. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2000;97:2779–2784.
119. Nandi S, Guzman RC, Yang J. Hormones and mammary carcinogenesis in mice, rats, and humans: a unifying hypothesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1995;92:3650–3657.
120. Shull JD, Spady TJ, Snyder MC et al. Ovary-intact, but not ovariectomized female ACI rats treated with 17beta-estradiol rapidly develop mammary carcinoma. *Carcinogenesis*. 1997;18:1595–1601.
121. Turan VK, Sanchez RI, Li JJ et al. The effects of steroidal estrogens in ACI rat mammary carcinogenesis: 17beta-estradiol, 2-hydroxyestradiol, 4-hydroxyestradiol, 16alpha-hydroxyestradiol, and 4-hydroxyestrone. *J Endocrinol*. 2004;183:91–99.
122. Yang X, Edgerton SM, Kosanke SD et al. Hormonal and dietary modulation of mammary carcinogenesis in mouse mammary tumor virus-c-erbB-2 transgenic mice. *Cancer Res*. 2003;63:2425–2433.
123. Speer JF, Petrosky VE, Retsky MW et al. A stochastic numerical model of breast cancer growth that simulates clinical data. *Cancer Res*. 1984;44:4124–4130.
124. Spratt JS, Spratt JA. What is breast cancer doing before we can detect it? *J Surg Oncol*. 1985;30:156–160.
125. Wertheimer MD, Costanza ME, Dodson TF et al. Increasing the effort toward breast cancer detection. *JAMA*. 1986;255:1311–1315.
126. La Vecchia C. Estrogen and combined estrogen-progestogen therapy in the menopause and breast cancer. *Breast*. 2004;13:515–518.
127. Allred DC, Mohsin SK, Fuqua SA. Histological and biological evolution of human premalignant breast disease. *Endocr Relat Cancer*. 2001;8:47–61.
128. Byrne C, Connolly JL, Colditz GA et al. Biopsy confirmed benign breast disease, postmenopausal use of exogenous female hormones, and breast carcinoma risk. *Cancer*. 2000;89:2046–2052.
129. Dupont WD, Page DL, Parl FF et al. Estrogen replacement therapy in women with a history of proliferative breast disease. *Cancer*. 1999;85:1277–1283.
130. Dupont WD, Page DL, Rogers LW et al. Influence of exogenous estrogens, proliferative breast disease, and other variables on breast cancer risk. *Cancer*. 1989; 63:948–957.
131. Schnitt SJ. Benign breast disease and breast cancer risk: morphology and beyond. *Am J Surg Pathol*. 2003;27: 836–841.
132. Rohan TE, Negassa A, Chlebowski RT et al. Estrogen plus progestin and risk of benign proliferative breast disease. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*. 2008;17: 2337–2343.
133. Rohan TE, Negassa A, Chlebowski RT et al. Conjugated equine estrogen and risk of benign proliferative breast disease: a randomized controlled trial. *J Natl Cancer Inst*. 2008;100:563–571.
134. Jemal A, Ward E, Thun MJ. Recent trends in breast cancer incidence rates by age and tumor characteristics among U.S. women. *Breast Cancer Res*. 2007;9:R28.
135. Ravdin PM, Cronin KA, Howlader N et al. The decrease in breast-cancer incidence in 2003 in the United States. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356:1670–1674.
136. Clarke CA, Glaser SL, Uratsu CS et al. Recent declines in hormone therapy utilization and breast cancer incidence: clinical and population-based evidence. *J Clin Oncol*. 2006;24:e49–e50.
137. Bouchardy C, Morabia A, Verkooijen HM et al. Remarkable change in age-specific breast cancer incidence in the Swiss canton of Geneva and its possible relation with the use of hormone replacement therapy. *BMC Cancer*. 2006;6:78.
138. Breen N, Cronin A, Meissner HI et al. Reported drop in mammography: is this cause for concern? *Cancer*. 2007;109:2405–2409.
139. MacMahon B, Cole P. Is the incidence of breast cancer declining? *Epidemiology*. 2008;19:268–269.
140. Anderson TJ, Ferguson DJ, Raab GM. Cell turnover in the "resting" human breast: influence of parity, contraceptive pill, age and laterality. *Br J Cancer*. 1982;46: 376–382.
141. Key TJ, Pike MC. The role of oestrogens and progestagens in the epidemiology and prevention of breast cancer. *Eur J Cancer Clin Oncol*. 1988;24:29–43.
142. Menard S, Casalini P, Agresti R et al. Proliferation of breast carcinoma during menstrual phases. *Lancet*. 1998;352:148–149.
143. Chang KJ, Lee TT, Linares-Cruz G et al. Influences of percutaneous administration of estradiol and progesterone on human breast epithelial cell cycle in vivo. *Fertil Steril*. 1995;63:785–791.
144. Foidart JM, Colin C, Denoo X et al. Estradiol and progesterone regulate the proliferation of human breast epithelial cells. *Fertil Steril*. 1998;69:963–969.
145. Laidlaw IJ, Clarke RB, Howell A et al. The proliferation of normal human breast tissue implanted into athymic nude mice is stimulated by estrogen but not progesterone. *Endocrinology*. 1995;136:164–171.
146. Gompel A, Malet C, Spritzer P et al. Progestin effect on cell proliferation and 17 beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase activity in normal human breast cells in culture. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 1986;63:1174–1180.
147. Conner P, Christow A, Kersemaekers W et al. A comparative study of breast cell proliferation during hormone replacement therapy: effects of tibolon and continuous combined estrogen-progestogen treatment. *Climacteric*. 2004;7:50–58.
148. Potten CS, Watson RJ, Williams GT et al. The effect of age and menstrual cycle upon proliferative activity of the normal human breast. *Br J Cancer*. 1988;58: 163–170.
149. Cline JM, Soderqvist G, von SE et al. Effects of hormone replacement therapy on the mammary gland of surgically postmenopausal cynomolgus macaques. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1996;174:93–100.
150. Gompel A, Somai S, Chaouat M et al. Hormonal regulation of apoptosis in breast cells and tissues. *Steroids*. 2000;65:593–598.
151. Stute P, Wood CE, Kaplan JR et al. Cyclic changes in the mammary gland of cynomolgus macaques. *Fertil Steril*. 2004;82(Suppl. 3):1160–1170.

152. Clarke RB, Howell A, Potten CS et al. Dissociation between steroid receptor expression and cell proliferation in the human breast. *Cancer Res*. 1997;57:4987–4991.
153. Clarke RB. Human breast cell proliferation and its relationship to steroid receptor expression. *Climacteric*. 2004;7:129–137.
154. Conneely OM, Mulac-Jericevic B, rnett-Mansfield R. Progesterone signaling in mammary gland development. *Ernst Schering Found Symp Proc*. 2007;45–54.
155. Fuqua SA, Schiff R, Parra I et al. Estrogen receptor beta protein in human breast cancer: correlation with clinical tumor parameters. *Cancer Res*. 2003;63:2434–2439.
156. Roger P, Sahla ME, Makela S et al. Decreased expression of estrogen receptor beta protein in proliferative preinvasive mammary tumors. *Cancer Res*. 2001;61: 2537–2541.
157. Cline JM, Register TC, Clarkson TB. Effects of tibolone and hormone replacement therapy on the breast of cynomolgus monkeys. *Menopause*. 2002;9:422–429.
158. Suparto IH, Williams JK, Cline JM et al. Contrasting effects of two hormone replacement therapies on the cardiovascular and mammary gland outcomes in surgically postmenopausal monkeys. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2003;188:1132–1140.
159. Bakken K, Alsaker E, Eggen AE et al. Hormone replacement therapy and incidence of hormone-dependent cancers in the Norwegian Women and Cancer study. *Int J Cancer*. 2004;112:130–134.
160. Jernstrom H, Bendahl PO, Lidfeldt J et al. A prospective study of different types of hormone replacement therapy use and the risk of subsequent breast cancer: the women's health in the Lund area (WHILA) study (Sweden). *Cancer Causes Control*. 2003;14:673–680.
161. O'Connor IF, Shembekar MV, Shousha S. Breast carcinoma developing in patients on hormone replacement therapy: a histological and immunohistological study. *J Clin Pathol*. 1998;51:935–938.
162. Chang J, Powles TJ, Allred DC et al. Prediction of clinical outcome from primary tamoxifen by expression of biologic markers in breast cancer patients. *Clin Cancer Res*. 2000;6:616–621.
163. Clarke RB, Laidlaw IJ, Jones LJ et al. Effect of tamoxifen on Ki67 labelling index in human breast tumours and its relationship to oestrogen and progesterone receptor status. *Br J Cancer*. 1993;67:606–611.
164. Dowsett M, Bundred NJ, Decensi A et al. Effect of raloxifene on breast cancer cell Ki67 and apoptosis: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomized clinical trial in postmenopausal patients. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev*. 2001;10:961–966.
165. Makris A, Powles TJ, Allred DC et al. Changes in hormone receptors and proliferation markers in tamoxifen treated breast cancer patients and the relationship with response. *Breast Cancer Res Treat*. 1998;48:11–20.
166. Prasad R, Boland GP, Cramer A et al. Short-term biologic response to withdrawal of hormone replacement therapy in patients with invasive breast carcinoma. *Cancer*. 2003;98:2539–2546.
167. Russo J, Moral R, Balogh GA et al. The protective role of pregnancy in breast cancer. *Breast Cancer Res*. 2005;7:131–142.
168. Russo J, Balogh GA, Heulings R et al. Molecular basis of pregnancy-induced breast cancer protection. *Eur J Cancer Prev*. 2006;15:306–342.
169. Russo IH, Russo J. Primary prevention of breast cancer by hormone-induced differentiation. *Recent Results Cancer Res*. 2007;174:111–130.
170. Conneely OM, Jericevic BM, Lydon JP. Progesterone receptors in mammary gland development and tumorigenesis. *J Mammary Gland Biol Neoplasia*. 2003;8:205–214.
171. Horwitz KB, Tung L, Takimoto GS. Novel mechanisms of antiprogestin action. *Acta Oncol*. 1996;35:129–140.
172. Read LD, Katzenellenbogen BS. Characterization and regulation of estrogen and progesterone receptors in breast cancer. *Cancer Treat Res*. 1992;61:277–299.
173. Kastner P, Krust A, Turcotte B et al. Two distinct estrogen-regulated promoters generate transcripts encoding the two functionally different human progesterone receptor forms A and B. *EMBO J*. 1990;9:1603–1614.
174. Hopp TA, Weiss HL, Hilsenbeck SG et al. Breast cancer patients with progesterone receptor PR-A-rich tumors have poorer disease-free survival rates. *Clin Cancer Res*. 2004;10:2751–2760.
175. Jacobsen BM, Schittone SA, Richer JK et al. Progesterone-independent effects of human progesterone receptors (PRs) in estrogen receptor-positive breast cancer: PR isoform-specific gene regulation and tumor biology. *Mol Endocrinol*. 2005;19:574–587.
176. Giangrande PH, Kimbrel EA, Edwards DP et al. The opposing transcriptional activities of the two isoforms of the human progesterone receptor are due to differential cofactor binding. *Mol Cell Biol*. 2000;20:3102–3115.
177. Richer JK, Jacobsen BM, Manning NG et al. Differential gene regulation by the two progesterone receptor isoforms in human breast cancer cells. *J Biol Chem*. 2002; 277:5209–5218.
178. McDonnell DP, Goldman ME. RU486 exerts antiestrogenic activities through a novel progesterone receptor A form-mediated mechanism. *J Biol Chem*. 1994;269: 11945–11949.
179. Isaksson E, Wang H, Sahlin L et al. Effects of long-term HRT and tamoxifen on the expression of progesterone receptors A and B in breast tissue from surgically postmenopausal cynomolgus macaques. *Breast Cancer Res Treat*. 2003;79:233–239.
180. Jansen MP, Foekens JA, van S, I et al. Molecular classification of tamoxifen-resistant breast carcinomas by gene expression profiling. *J Clin Oncol*. 2005;23:732–740.
181. Oh DS, Troester MA, Usary J et al. Estrogen-regulated genes predict survival in hormone receptor-positive breast cancers. *J Clin Oncol*. 2006;24:1656–1664.
182. Frasor J, Danes JM, Komm B et al. Profiling of estrogen up- and down-regulated gene expression in human breast cancer cells: insights into gene networks and pathways underlying estrogenic control of proliferation and cell phenotype. *Endocrinology*. 2003;144:4562–4574.
183. Hall P, Ploner A, Bjohle J et al. Hormone-replacement therapy influences gene expression profiles and is associated with breast-cancer prognosis: a cohort study. *BMC Med*. 2006;4:16.
184. Chen W, Petitti DB, Geiger AM. Mortality following development of breast cancer while using oestrogen

or oestrogen plus progestin: a computer record-linkage study. *Br J Cancer*. 2005;93:392–398.
185. Cuzick J, Forbes JF, Sestak I et al. Long-term results of tamoxifen prophylaxis for breast cancer – 96-month follow-up of the randomized IBIS-I trial. *J Natl Cancer Inst*. 2007;99:272–282.
186. Howell A, Cuzick J, Baum M et al. Results of the ATAC (Arimidex, Tamoxifen, Alone or in Combination) trial after completion of 5 years' adjuvant treatment for breast cancer. *Lancet*. 2005;365:60–62.
187. Powles TJ, Ashley S, Tidy A et al. Twenty-year follow-up of the Royal Marsden randomized, double-blinded tamoxifen breast cancer prevention trial. *J Natl Cancer Inst*. 2007;99:283–290.
188. Rajkumar L, Kittrell FS, Guzman RC et al. Hormone-induced protection of mammary tumorigenesis in genetically engineered mouse models. *Breast Cancer Res*. 2007;9:R12.
189. Lambe M, Hsieh CC, Chan HW et al. Parity, age at first and last birth, and risk of breast cancer: a population-based study in Sweden. *Breast Cancer Res Treat*. 1996;38:305–311.
190. MacMahon B, Cole P, Lin TM et al. Age at first birth and breast cancer risk. *Bull World Health Organ*. 1970;43:209–221.
191. Russo J, Balogh G, Mailo D et al. The genomic signature of breast cancer prevention. *Recent Results Cancer Res*. 2007;174:131–150.

Chapter 14

Carcinogenesis of Lung Cancer

Jeffrey Aufman and Farah Khalil

Contents

14.1 Incidence and Epidemiology

There are an estimated 1.2 million deaths per year world wide from lung cancer, making it the most common cause of mortality worldwide [1]. More people die from lung cancer in the United States, estimated 162,000 in 2007, than colon, breast and prostate cancer combined, estimated 124,000 deaths [2]. The health-related economic loss associated with cigarette smoking is approximately $157 billion [3]. The incidence rate in men has declined since 1984 and increased in women since 1990. Lung cancer usually occurs between the ages of forty and seventy years, with a peak in the fifties or sixties. Fifty nine percent of patients diagnosed with lung cancer die within one year and only 15% survive after five years [1]. Before the use of tobacco around the 1920s primary lung cancer was considered very rare in making up less then 1% of all malignancies in the US [4]. With the advent of smoking, lung cancer has increased to be one of the more common causes of mortality. Despite decades of warnings, cigarette smoking remains the most common risk factor for development of pulmonary carcinoma [5]. In spite of recent advances in the diagnosis, staging and treatment few advances have been made in overall patient survival over the past decade [6]. Although abstinence from smoking is the only known way to lower cancer risks, attempts at detecting markers for early lung cancer are being studied. Early detection of cancer helps improve the chances of survival in patients and produce fewer complications. Studies for detecting lung cancer include higher resolution imaging, and markers for early lung cancer. This chapter will describe the molecular abnormalities so far found in adenocarcinoma of the lung and its possible origins.

14.2 Cancer Risk in Smoking

The first scientific study associating cigarette smoke with an increase risk of death was conducted in 1938 [7] but it was not until 1950 that epidemiological studies clearly demonstrated that smoking was associated with lung cancer and death [8]. In 1964 the Surgeon General of the United States after reviewing the large collection of scientific data definitively concluded that smoking is the major cause of lung cancer [2]. This was confirmed, again in 2004, after review of massive law suites data.

J. Aufman (✉)
Anatomic and Clinical Pathology, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA
e-mail: Jeffery.Aufman@moffitt.org

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_14,

It is well known now, that both the number of cigarettes smoked per day as well as the life time duration of smoking, increases the relative risk of lung cancer. This is referred to as pack history. The risks of lung cancer in a smoker compared to a nonsmoker is 10–30 fold, light to heavy smoking respectively, however, even non smokers have a 1% risk of developing lung cancer [2]. People who smoke over 15 cigarettes a day are considered heavy smokers. When a heavy smoker reduces his intake by 50%, it decreases his relative risk by 27% after 18 years. When a smoker quits smoking, the relative risk decreases by 20%, starting in just 5 years and decreases to 90% in 15 years, compared to a smoker who does not quit [9]. Cigars, pipes, second hand smoke exposure, marijuana and cocaine all are associated with increased risk of lung cancer but less than tobacco cigarettes [9].

Other chemical causes of lung cancer include asbestos, radon, arsenic, bis-choromethyl ether, chromium, formaldehyde, ionizing radiation, nickel, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, hard metal dust and vinyl chloride and work synergistically with tobacco smoke to increase the risk of cancer [2].

Other factors like race and gender can cause increased risks. African Americans and native Hawaiians are more susceptible when fewer than 30 cigarettes are smoked per day. However, no difference is observed between races if more than 30 cigarettes are smoked per day [9].

Women are at a twofold greater risk for cancer than men for similar number of cigarettes smoked. This may be due to different smoking habits and genetic factors. Current brands with low tar and nicotine cigarettes preferred by women have lead to smoking more cigarettes per day and deeper inhalation to sustain a personal threshold of nicotine [4]. The deeper inhalation causes carcinogenic particles to reach more peripheral portions of the lung and higher burning temperatures that cause increased levels of nitrosamine carcinogens [10]. Unfiltered cigarettes have larger tar particles that settle in the more proximal portions of the trachea and bronchi causing squamous cell carcinoma compared to filtered cigarettes that create smaller particles which diffuse to the more peripheral alveoli causing adenocarcinomas [5]. These two factors have caused a reverse in the incidence of squamous cell carcinoma to adenocarcinomas from past decades. There are polymorphic differences in the genes that detoxify and activate carcinogens between men and women and this may also cause a difference in the incidence of cancer.

Less understood risk factors for lung cancer are familial risk, inflammation, dietary factors and other lung diseases. Epidemiological studies have shown that first-degree relatives of patients with lung cancer have an increased risk of developing lung cancer. The studies suggest, that certain people have higher risks from certain environmental carcinogens because of genetic and acquired susceptibility factors [11].

Chronic inflammation is also associated with lung cancer. Patients who have high C reactive protein levels greater than 3 mg/dl, without a known malignancy had increased risk of developing lung cancer [12]. The antithesis of this was seen with decreased risk in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) taking inhaled corticosteroids greater than 1,200 mcg/day [13].

Dietary factors like low serum concentrations of antioxidant compounds, especially vitamins A and E, are associated with development of lung cancer. Trials supplementing retinoids, beta carotene and alpha tocopherol have shown not to reduce the incidence of lung cancer and interestingly some trials have even shown an increase in lung cancer [14]. Cruciferous vegetables, such as broccoli and cabbage, rich in isothiocyanates may have protective effect against lung cancer. GSTM1 and GSTT are genes that encode enzymes responsible for eliminating isothiocyanates and if there is an increase in transcriptions of the genes, it may lead to increased cancer. Diets high in phytoestrogens are also associated with a decrease in the incidence of lung cancer in both smokers and non smokers and is consistent with other studies that estrogens may protect against lung cancer [15].

Other lung diseases like pulmonary fibrosis due to asbestos exposure and COPD (emphysema and chronic bronchitis) have a two to four fold increase in frequency of primary lung cancer [16].

14.3 Etiology and Pathogenesis

It is now known how some of the toxins from tobacco smoke cause cancer. Lung cancer can be divided into two major histopathological groups, non small cell lung cancer NSCLC (adenocarcinoma, squamous cell carcinoma, bronchioloalveolar carcinoma and large

cell carcinoma) comprising 80% of carcinomas and small cell lung cancer SCLC (neuroendocrine) comprising 20% of carcinomas of the lung [17, 18].

Tobacco smoke has a vapor phase and a particulate phase with both phases containing more than 100 mutagens and carcinogens [19]. Specific chemicals in tobacco smoke include polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAH), N-nitrosamines, aromatic amines, ethylene oxide 1, 3 butadiene and others. It is thought that tobacco specific nitrosamines (TSN) and PAH are the compounds that most commonly cause lung cancer [10]. PAHs are metabolically activated by the genes CYP1A1 and CYP1B1 and CYP3A4 which make enzymes that conjugate glutathione-S-transferases to the toxins for excretion [20].

TSN's form three different classes of DNA adducts, or in other words, cancer causing chemicals that are covalently bonded to DNA. The first class of DNA adducts is methylation of different nucleotides that cause mutations, the second is inactivation of different repair enzymes that repair mutations (tumor suppressors) and the third is bulky adducts that interfere with replication or repair [21]. ERCC1 and RRM1 are DNA nucleotide excision repair genes and a decrease in these gene proteins correlate with a poor prognosis and no benefit from platinum based chemotherapy [22] There are polymorphisms of alleles at loci of carcinogen activating and detoxifying enzymes such as cytochrome P450, glutathione S transferase, p53 and DNA repair proteins that cause variability in susceptibility to lung cancer in different individuals [23]. One study has shown that high levels of toxins covalently bonded to the chromosomes (adducts) are associated with an increased risk of lung cancer [10].

14.4 Histology of Lung Adenocarcinoma, Pneumocyte Hyperplasia and Emphysema

Adenocarcinoma is the most common subtype of lung carcinoma and makes up 40% of all primary lung carcinomas. Adenocarcinoma is more common in women than men and most arise in the peripheral areas of the lungs and are subpleural [24]. Adenocarcinomas are subcategorized into adenocarcinoma no special type (NST), acinar, papillary, bronchioloalveolar, solid and mixed types.

Adenocarcinoma of the lung, like cancer at other sites, arises by a stepwise accumulation of genetic abnormalities that transforms benign bronchial epithelium to neoplastic tissue. Atypical alveolar hyperplasia (AAH) and bronchioloalveolar carcinoma (BAC) are both postulated to be precursors of invasive adenocarcinomas, analogous to dysplasia and carcinoma in situ of squamous cell carcinoma. Atypical alveolar hyperplasia and invasive adenocarcinoma share many molecular abnormalities and have clonal populations, which support the possibility that alveolar hyperplasia leads to adenocarcinoma [5]. Emphysema is a destructive disease of the alveoli walls that produces enlarged alveoli and may also be a precursor to lung adenocarcinoma [16]. Not all precursor lesions progress to invasion and research is underway to determine which precursor lesions will progress to cancer development.

Atypical alveolar hyperplasia has cells that are cuboidal and uniform with scant cytoplasm and the nuclei are mildly atypical. AAH morphologically looks very similar to BAC, showing identical dysplastic nuclei, making differentiating the two lesions rather difficult in some cases. It is separated from BAC by the size, which is usually less than 5 mm, milder cytological atypical and has a less monotonous cell population unlike BAC which is more monotonous [5].

Bronchioloalveolar (BAC) carcinoma is rare and occurs more often in women and nonsmokers. BAC can present as solitary or multiple nodules that appears like pneumonia on radiological imaging. BAC grows in a lepidic pattern with moderate to large atypical cells lining the alveolar spaces (Fig. 14.1). It maintains the alveolar architecture and has no signs of invasion, like desmoplasia or frank destruction of tissue [5].

Bronchioloalveolar carcinoma is divided into type I and type II. In Type I BAC the cells are mucinous and resemble goblet cells of the intestine. These produce abundant mucin that may cause bronchorrhea and can even fill up the alveoli. Type I BAC is usually multifocal and the cells grow along the walls in a non-continuous fashion.

Type II BAC's are more often solitary and the cells resemble alveolar type II pneumocytes and clara cells. The cytoplasm may have PAS positive apical granules and the nuclei often have intranuclear pseudoinclusions [5].

Adenocarcinoma of no special type is the most common form of adenocarcinoma and has low power features of glands or tubules (Fig. 14.2) and/or solid

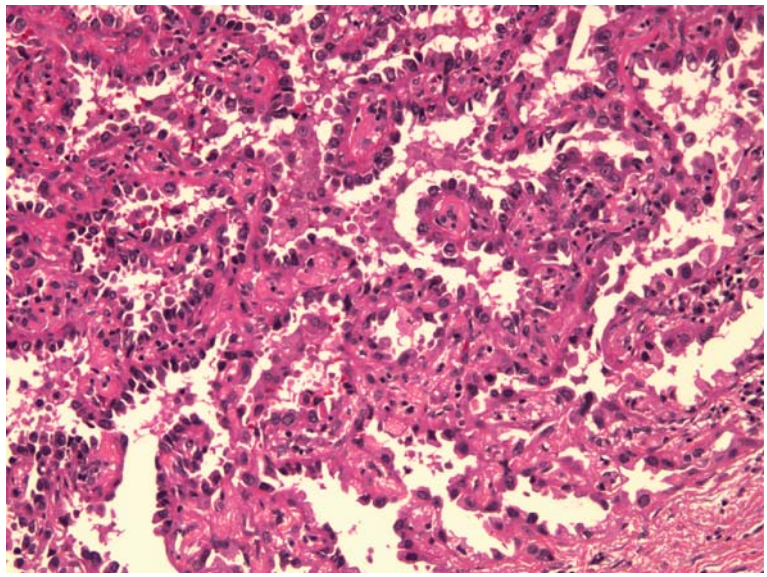


Fig. 14.1 Bronchioloalveolar carcinoma of the lung 20× magnification

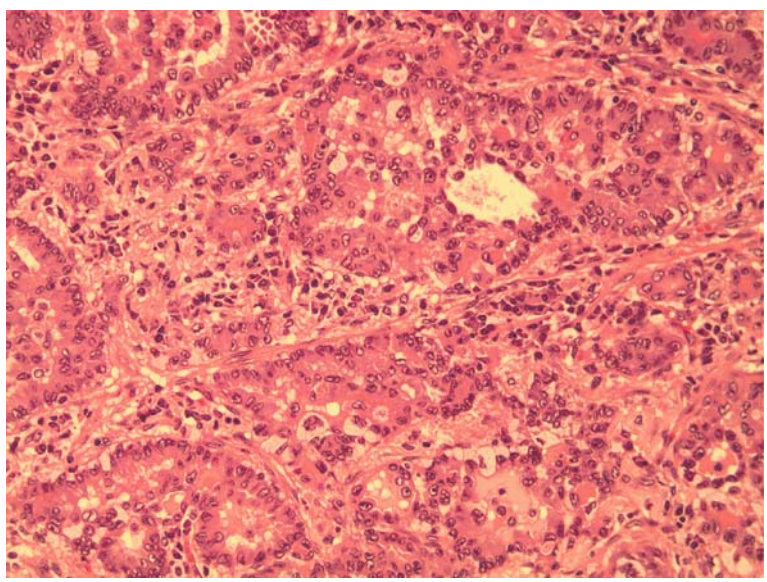


Fig. 14.2 Pulmonary adenocarcinoma 20× magnification

growth pattern. The cells at high power have very bland well differentiated to anaplastic forms. Eighty percent of these tumors have mucin in their cytoplasm. Peripheral tumors are easily treated with surgery due to accessibility. Since the tumors are located at the surface of the lungs they may involve the pleura and then disseminate in the pleural space. Lymphatic, vascular and lymph nodal invasion is common even in small peripheral tumors [5].

It is very important and usually difficult to be able to morphologically distinguish poorly differentiated metastatic adenocarcinoma from primary lung poorly differentiated adenocarcinoma. Immunoperoxidase stains are helpful in making this distinction in most instances. Lung adenocarcinoma is immunoreactive for CK 7 and TTF-1 in a majority of cases, except in mucinous BAC and adenocarcinomas that are very poorly differentiated. CDX-2 reactivity in metastatic lesion from colorectal adenocarcinomas is helpful in differentiating it from lung primary adenocarcinomas which are usually nonreactive. TTF-1 reactivity does not entirely rule in primary lung adenocarcinoma since

thyroid carcinomas and neuroendocrine carcinomas from other sites can be reactive for TTF-1. Pulmonary adenocarcinoma may also express general carcinoma markers including CEA, B72.3 related antigen, CD15 and MOC31 [5].

Emphysema shows abnormal, permanent enlarged airspaces, distal to the terminal bronchiole of the lung caused by destruction of the alveolar walls without fibrosis. Centriacinar emphysema occurs predominantly in heavy smokers with chronic bronchitis. The etiology of emphysema hinges around the fact that chronic inflammation disrupts the protease antiprotease ratio. Alveolar wall destruction results from activated neutrophils and macrophages releasing their proteases (neutrophil elastase, proteinase 3, and cathepsin G). Nicotine and reactive oxygen species found in smoke attract and activate neutrophils and macrophages in the alveoli. Smoking also increases elastase and metalloproteinase's in macrophages and neutrophils. Tobacco smoke contains numerous free radicals and decreases the normal amount of superoxide dismutase, a normal antioxidant that neutralizes endogenous free radicals, allowing increase free radicals to cause tissue damage. Tissue damage is therefore caused by decrease amounts of protective antiproteases caused by free radicals of cigarette smoke and increase amounts of proteases caused by activation of macrophages and neutrophils [1]. It is interesting that the carcinogens in tobacco smoke that cause cancer also cause direct tissue damage as in emphysema and patients with COPD have a 2–4% increase in the risk of developing carcinoma [16].

14.5 Cytology of Lung Adenocarcinoma

Cytologic evaluation of lung masses is performed using sputum, bronchial washes, bronchial brushes, bronchial lavage, capillary wedge, fine needle aspirations and pleural effusions specimens [25]. The ability to detect cancer in these specimens varies due to the number of cells collected by the different techniques. Screening asymptomatic smokers for cancer by sputum cytology has not shown to decrease mortality and thus it is used only in symptomatic patients [25].

Type II pneumocyte hyperplasia is seen in pneumonia, sepsis, embolus, chemotherapy, radiation, oxygen toxicity, and smoking. The cells seen are sometimes single and more commonly found in three-dimensional clusters. The cells have large nuclei with coarse chromatin and prominent nucleoli. Type II pneumocyte hyperplasia that is florid can often look similar to adenocarcinoma [25].

Majority of adenocarcinomas occur in the periphery of the lung and are often associated with desmoplastic reaction and pleural puckering. The malignant features of adenocarcinoma include cells with fine foamy to vacuolated cytoplasm, and secretory vacuoles that tend to have cohesive sheets with three dimensional clusters and acini. The nuclei are eccentric, irregular and vesicular with prominent nucleoli. Tumor diathesis background is usually seen in squamous cell carcinomas and not in adenocarcinomas [25]. Mucinous bronchioloalveolar carcinoma has well differentiated mucinous cells that are difficult to recognize as malignant. Features that help recognize malignant cells of a well-differentiated mucinous cell carcinoma are abundant cells in sheets or three dimensional groups of monotonous cells. The nucleus is enlarged and has irregular contours and nucleoli [25]. Mucinous bronchioloalveolar carcinoma cytologically resembles papillary thyroid carcinoma when it demonstrates psammoma bodies, intranuclear pseudoinclusions, nuclear grooves and clear nuclei [26].

14.6 Molecular Pathways

Over the past two decades, progress has been made in understanding the molecular pathogenesis of cancer. Identification of genes that help suppress tumor growth and the identification of genes that activate tumor cell growth are common in many different types of cancer including lung cancer. Lung cancer cells often show deletions at multiple chromosome sites and several tumor suppressor genes are located at these regions which can cause loss of heterozygosity. There are a small number of tumor suppressor genes inactivated (loss of heterozygosity) in lung cancer, which include p53, RB, p16, FHIT and PPP2R1B. Loss of heterozygosity can occur by chromosome breakage, deletions, nucleotide changes, amplification and hypermethylation. These causes have been identified in lung cancer, pre-neoplastic tissue and even in normal lung epithelium of nonsmokers [18]. In non small cell carcinomas

especially squamous cell carcinoma a stepwise progression occurs from hyperplasia, metaplasia, dysplasia, carcinoma in situ and finally to invasive tumors. Other cancers like adenocarcinoma and neuroendocrine follow similar progression. It is now thought that the precursor cell of adenocarcinoma is the bronchioloalveolar stem cell with the K-Ras, Pten, phosphoinositide 3 kinase and cyclin dependent kinase pathways implicated in the proliferation of these stem cells [27].

14.6.1 Chromosomal Changes

Chromosome analysis of lung tumor cells has shown multiple nonrandom breaks of chromosomes 1, 3, 7, 15, 17 [28]. These breaks can cause loss of heterozygosity in tumor suppressor genes which cause tumor development. Lung cancer cells often show deletions at multiple chromosomal regions and deletion mapping have found more than 30 regions in 21 different chromosomes as candidates for tumor suppressor loci [29].

NSCLC often has extensive chromosomal abnormalities which include structural changes, and numerical changes in chromosomes often near triploid [6].

Numerical changes include losses of chromosome 9, 13, Y (in males). Trisomy 7 has also been observed in early changes of NSCLC and premalignant lung tissue. Chromosome imbalances include gains of chromosome arms 1q, 3q, 5p and 8q and losses of 3p, 8p, 9p, 12q and 1p. Losses of 5p, and 13q are also prominent changes found in NSCLC's [30].

Genetic analysis of lung adenocarcinomas lesions show a stepwise loss of heterozygosity (LOH) first in chromosome, 3p21.3 (site of RASSF1A a member of the Ras association Domain family, and FUS1) 3p14.2 (FHIT, a fragile histidine triad gene) followed by 9p21 (p16), 8p, 17p13 (p53), and finally 5q which are all tumor suppressor genes [31]. The loss of heterozygosity is one of the earliest molecular change found in 50% of adenocarcinomas and greater than 90% of squamous cell carcinomas and SCLC of slightly abnormal and even normal appearing epithelium of smokers [18]. In the future surgical margins may be examined by molecular analysis to identify patients most likely to benefit from adjuvant therapy [32].

Microsatellites are repeated sequence motifs of 1 to 6 base pairs found in the regulatory regions of genes and influences gene expression and transcriptional activity. Microsatellite alterations are found in 22% of NSCLC and 35% of SCLC's and correlate with a younger age of incidence and more advanced stage at diagnosis [31].

Normal somatic cells have decreasing amounts of telomerase that eventually leads to cell death unlike tumor cells and germ cells that have increased telomerase that extend the telomeres and cell immortality. How telomerase is re-expressed in lung cancer is unknown but this may be used as a marker and a target for therapy. Telomerase activity and telomere replications are increased in 80% of NSCLC and almost 100% of SCLC. It is associated with advanced stage in primary NSCLC's [31].

14.6.2 Tumor Suppressor Oncogenes

The p53 gene is located on chromosome 17. The p53 protein binds to DNA which stimulates another gene to produce a protein called p21 and GADD45. P21 binds with cdk2 a cell division-stimulating protein and inhibits the cell from passing through to the next stage of cell division. P21 controls G1/S cell cycle advancement, and GADD45, controls the G2/M cycle both stop the replication of DNA if it is damaged [24]. BAX, PERP and other proteins can activate p53 and cause apoptosis. MDM2 a proteasome degrades p53 and keeps the levels low by auto-regulatory feedback found that MDM2 is over expressed in 25% of NSCLC's [18]. Mutant p53 can not bind DNA or is ineffective so no p21 or GADD45 is made to stop cell division therefore the cell divides uncontrollably creating cancer. The p53 and Rb genes are the most common tumor suppressor genes affected in lung carcinoma and are inactivated by mutations, chromosomal deletions, gamma radiation, UV radiation, and carcinogens like tobacco smoke. Tobacco smoke often causes a p53 mutation, with G to T transversions, and hypermethylation of the promoter regions of p53 gene. Benzoapyrene a tobacco smoke metabolite damages three specific loci on the p53 gene. These three loci are known to be abnormal in approximately 50% of primary lung cancer and 75% of SCLC [31]. Recently two functional and structural

homologues of the p53 gene, p73 and p51 were identified but their genetic alterations seem to be rare in lung cancer [29]. P53 mutations can be found in lung tumors of nonsmokers but at a significantly lower rate than that of smokers [33].

The Retinoblastoma gene is found on chromosome 13 which encodes a protein that also stops the cell cycle. The Rb protein prevents cells from entering S phase of the cell cycle. The Rb protein binds to a transcription factor E2F. E2F is not able to bind to the promoters of proto-oncogenes c-myc and c-fos. Transcription of c-myc and c-fos is needed for mitosis so blocking the transcription factor needed to turn on these genes prevents cell division. In summary, if there is a mutation in the Rb gene, no suppressor protein is made to bind with EF2, and EF2 is free to start transcription of genes c-myc and c-fos that creates uncontrolled mitosis and tumorgenesis. Mutations in the RB protein have been found in 15–30% of NSCLC and 90% of SCLC. Mutations of the RB and $P16^{INK4A}$ are rarely found in the same lung tumor however, $P16^{INK4A}$, cyclin D1, and cdk4 are usually seen in NSCLC whereas RB gene inactivation is usually seen in SCLCs. Other members of the RB family, p107 and pR2/p130 are found mutated rarely in NSCLCs and SCLCs [18].

The RAS genes encode a GTPase protein that signals growth and survival after the membrane bound RAS tyrosine kinase receptors are activated. The GTP is hydrolyzed to GDP and starts the RAS signaling. If there are RAS mutations, sometimes GTP hydrolysis is decreased or non functional and there is an increase or constant signaling that causes uncontrolled cell growth [18]. The RAS genes (HRAS, KRAS, and NRAS) are transformed into oncogenes by a point mutation with a G-T transversion caused by bulky DNA adducts present in tobacco smoke like benzopyrene diethlyoxide and nitrosamides [34]. The mutations of the RAS gene are highly associated with smoking and found in 20–30% of lung adenocarcinomas and in 25–40% of atypical alveolar hyperplasia [5]. These point mutations are most commonly found at codon 12 [34] followed by codons 13 and 61 and affect the KRAS gene 90% of the time. Patients with tumors that have K-ras, N-ras or H-ras mutations have a decreased survival [28, 34].

BCL-2 is an anti-apoptotic protein and counteracts BAX, a pro-apoptotic protein that acts on p53 that stops the cell cycle. The proto-oncogene BCl-2 is over expressed in 10% of adenocarcinomas, 25–30% of squamous cell carcinomas and 75–95% of SCLC's. BCL-2 expression in NSCLC is believed to be a favorable prognostic factor, while BCL-2 expression does not influence survival in SCLC's. High BCL-2 and low BAX expression are frequently found in SCLC's that are p53 deficient and are very sensitive to chemotherapy [18].

MYC protein is a basic helix-loop-helix transcription factor that regulates the expression of genes involved in DNA synthesis, RNA metabolism and cell cycle regulation [18]. Over expression of MYC is found in 5–10% of non-small cell lung carcinomas but up to 36% of SCLC and may indicate chemotherapy resistant tumors. Activation of MYC genes c-myc, L-myc, and N–myc occur by amplification or loss of transcriptional control and cause an uncontrolled cell growth and tumor genesis.

Notch-3 is involved in differentiation and neoplasia and influences differentiation of lung cancer cells. Notch-3 is found to be over expressed in NSCLC after chromosome 19p translocation [18].

The $p16^{INK4A}$ is a major step in controlling the G1/S cell cycle advancement. $P16^{INK4A}$ binds to cyclin-dependent protein kinase 4 (CDK4) which inhibits CDK4 to interact with cyclin D1. The cyclin D1 associated CDK4 phosphorylates RB, releasing the cell from RB mediated cell cycle arrest. $P16^{INK4A}$, cyclin D1-CDK4-RB pathway is usually altered, mutated or hypermethylated in 30–50% of NSCLC and rarely in SCLC [18]. P16 methylation is very rare in adenocarcinoma and occurs in the atypical alveolar hyperplasia stage [32]. Promoter methylation of p16 is associated with recurrence after resection [32]. CDK4 and cyclin D1 over expression have been found in NSCLC and is correlated with a poor prognosis [18].

$p14^{ARF}$ interacts with MDM2 and prevents p53-MDM2 interaction that causes degradation of p53. This mutated $p14^{ARF}$ allows mutated DNA to not repair itself and replicate (Fong et al. 2003) [18]. $P14^{ARF}$ mutations are found in 20% of NSCLC's.

The FHIT gene (family histidine triad) encodes a diadenosine 5′,5‴-P1,P3-triphosphate hydrolase involved in purine metabolism. The gene encompasses the common fragile site FRA3B on chromosome 3p14.2, where carcinogen-induced damage can lead to translocations and aberrant transcripts of this gene. The FHIT gene shows LOH in 40% of NSCLC's and 80%

of SCLC even though the FHIT protein is found in only 50% of all lung cancers. Other candidate tumor suppressor genes in the 3p region include RASSF1, SEMA3B, FUS1 and RARB [18].

Another pathway tumor suppressor genes are inactivated is by hypermethylation of the promoter regions resulting in transcriptional inactivation of one allele with the other allele lost by mutation [18]. Hypermethylation has been shown to lead to the silencing of mRNA expression [29]. This occurs in NSCLC and SCLC but can also be detected in early preneoplastic lesions of smokers. Methylated promoter rejoins of genes TIMP-3, P16, p14, CDH13 (H-cadherin) DAPK, GSTP1 and the genes of the chromosome 3p region have been reported [18]. Hypermethylated spots on chromosomal regions 4q, 10q and 17p are present in both NSCLC an SCLC, but so far no candidate tumor suppressor genes have been found in these regions (Fong et al. 2003) [18].

14.6.3 Proliferation Markers

Lung cancer cells can express receptors for growth promoting and inhibitory factors and are often associated with poor prognosis [18].

Gastrin-releasing or other bombesin like peptides (GRP/BN) can stimulate the growth of both normal and malignant lung cells. Increase in GRP levels occurs in fetal lung development and differentiation [28, 31]. Most SCLC and NSCLC express gastrin-releasing or other bombesin like peptides (GRP/BN) receptors and GRPBN peptides although no mutations or amplifications of these genes have been found the mechanism of this growth stimulatory pathway remains unknown. High levels of GRP-like activity have also been recorded in bronchial lavages of smokers compared with nonsmokers [28]. The GRP receptor is located on the X chromosome but does not undergo X inactivation so that women have two genes but men have only have one gene. This may be one reason why women are more susceptible to lung adenocarcinomas from smoking [31].

Another signaling loop uses receptors for tyrosine kinase like the receptors erb-b1 and erb-b2 known as Her-2/neu. Erb-b2 is over expressed in 30% of NSCLC mostly adenocarcinomas and not SCLC. Erb-b1 or epidermal growth factor receptor is over expressed along with EGF hormone or TGF alpha in 13% of NSCLC's. HER2 mutations are associated with resistance to of the EGFR tyrosine kinase [35].

Hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) induces differentiation of lung epithelial cells and is found in NSCLC but not SCLC [31, 36].

EGFR regulates proliferation, apoptosis, angiogenesis, and tumor invasion. EGFR is frequently over expressed in 10% NSCLC's. EGFR mutations are increased in women and nonsmokers and 80% of these mutations involve in frame deletions within exon 19 or the L858R mutant within exon 21 [37]. EGFR mutations can transform fibroblast and lung epithelial cells into atypical alveolar hyperplasia, then into bronchioloalveolar carcinoma and finally into adenocarcinomas in transgenic mice [38]. Clinical trials of the EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitor, erlotinib a monoclonal antibody against EGFR, are used for treatment of previously untreated advanced lung adenocarcinoma.

AKR1B10 is a gene that produces aldo-keto reductase family 1, member B10 (AKR1B10) was examined by immunohistochemical analysis of 101 non-small cell lung carcinomas (NSCLC) and its over expression was observed in 27 of 32 (84.4%) SCC's and 19 of 65 (29.2%) adenocarcinomas [36].

IGF-1 and IGF-2 are tyrosine kinase receptors that bypass EGFR to activate downstream signaling pathways like KRAS [39]. IGF-1 and IGF-2 also induce self regulation in NSCLC and SCLC. C KIT receptor and hormone are highly expressed and cause growth in SCLC but much less in NSCLC and is an important negative prognostic factor [31].

VGRF induces neovascularization and is secreted by tumor cells and stromal tumor cells. VEGF expression is associated with loss of p53 function. VGEF is expressed in 50% of NSCLCs and is associated with increase microvascular density in tumors and poor prognosis. IL-8 is also a strong angiogenic factor and is part of the CXC chemokine family and is expressed in 50% of NSCLCs.

PD-ECFG are expressed in 30–40% of adenocarcinomas. Metalloproteinases (MMP) and their inhibitors are major causes of metastasis and promotion of tumor related angiogenesis. MMP expression in NSCLC and SCLC is not well studied and undetermined prognostic significance.

E-cadherin-catenin is important for maintaining normal tissue architecture. Lung cancers have reduced expression of laminins and integrins which is associated with disrupted tumor cells and extracellular matrix. This disrupted tumor cells and extracellular

matrix leads to fragmentation of the basement membrane and invasion into the surrounding stroma. E-cadherin-catenin complex loss is seen in lung cancer invasion and metastasis and is associated with poor prognosis.

Cyfra 21-1 is a serum marker uniquely found in high levels in NSCLC's like adenocarcinoma and squamous cell carcinoma and low levels were found in patients with non-malignant pulmonary diseases and patients with small cell lung cancer [40].

Retinoic acid induces early cancer cells to stop proliferating but advanced cancer cells lose responsiveness to retinoids. In a M.D. Anderson trail, 13-cis retinoic acid was used to reduce the development of a new primary cancer in people previously treated for head and neck cancer. Most head and neck caners and lung cancer are caused by cigarette smoke and if their first cancer is controlled, they have a very high risk of developing a second primary cancer of the upper aerodigestive tract. In the M.D. Anderson trail none of the patients who received retinoic acid developed lung cancer, whereas four of the patients receiving placebo did 3. In contrast to the rate of new primary cancers, the rate of head and neck primary cancer relapse were not affected by the treatment of retinoic acid [28].

14.7 Conclusion

Fifty percent of all newly diagnosed lung cancers in the US occur in patient's who had stopped smoking in the last 5 years. If we can detect some of these genetic alterations in preneoplastic respiratory epithelial lesions before cancer develops, early intervention and chemoprevention in such high risk individuals could greatly increase survival rates. Patients with increase baseline risk may be appropriate candidates for screening with procedures such as bronchoscopy to obtain epithelial cells to detect amplifications, mutations, or deletions of genes involved in signal transduction, regulation of gene expression or cellular proliferation and may result in clinically useful detection of early cancer. Interventional approaches that interfere with tumor growth and invasion may keep cells from undergoing malignant transformation [28].

Never smokers are people who have smoked less than 100 cigarettes in their lifetime. In Asia 60–80% of women with lung cancer never smoked [41]. In the US 19% of lung cancer in women occurs in never smokers, compared to 53% in the rest of the world [42]. Adenocarcinoma is more associated with never smokers, light smokers and former smokers while squamous cell carcinoma and small cell lung cancer are associated with heavy smokers [41]. The molecular biology is different between adencocarcinoma caused by smoking and never smoking people. Adenocarcinoma of never smokers more commonly shows mutations of the EGFR receptor (kinase domain) and adenocarcinoma of smokers more commonly shows K-Ras mutations [43]. Lung adenocarcinoma in never-smokers has a very distinct immunohistochemical expression profile of EGFR-related biomarkers as compared to lung adenocarcinoma in smokers. Differences are also seen in the p53, chromosomal abnormalities and methlyation of p16 [44]. Survival of nonsmokers with adenocarcinoma is greatly influenced by CEA level than that of smokers [45]. High levels of EGFR and Ki-67 are observed in smokers, while never-smokers are characterized by high levels of pAKT and p27 [46].

In summary, early detection of adenocarcinoma in smokers may help in increasing the survival rate. The different chromosomal, molecular tumor suppressors, oncogene and proliferation markers may be the key to identifying early lung adenocarcinomas in\break smokers.

References

1. Kumar, V., et al., Robbins and Cotran pathologic basis of disease. 7th ed. 2005, Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Saunders. xv, 1525p.
2. Midthun, D.E. and J.R. Jett. Update on screening for lung cancer. Semin Respir Crit Care Med, 2008. 29(3): pp. 233–40.
3. Mazzone, P.J., T. Mekhail, and A.C. Arroliga. Is lung cancer in the nonsmoker a different disease? Chest, 2004. 126(2): pp. 326–9.
4. Shields, P.G. Molecular epidemiology of lung cancer. Ann Oncol, 1999. 10(Suppl. 5): pp. S7–11.
5. Humphrey, P.A., L.P. Dehner, and J.D. Pfeifer. The Washington manual of surgical pathology. 2008, Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
6. Carney, D.N. Oncogenes and genetic abnormalities in lung cancer. Chest, 1989. 96(1 Suppl.): pp. 25–7S.
7. Pearl, R. Tobacco smoking and longevity. Science, 1938. 87(2253): pp. 216–7.
8. Doll, R. and A.B. Hill. Smoking and carcinoma of the lung; preliminary report. Br Med J, 1950. 2(4682): pp. 739–48.
9. Mannino, D.M. Looking beyond the cigarette in COPD. Chest, 2008. 133(2): pp. 333–4.

10. Hecht, S.S. DNA adduct formation from tobacco-specific N-nitrosamines. Mutat Res, 1999. 424(1–2): pp. 127–42.
11. Matakidou, A., T. Eisen, and R.S. Houlston. Systematic review of the relationship between family history and lung cancer risk. Br J Cancer, 2005. 93(7): pp. 825–33.
12. Siemes, C., et al. C-reactive protein levels, variation in the C-reactive protein gene, and cancer risk: the Rotterdam Study. J Clin Oncol, 2006. 24(33): pp. 5216–22.
13. Parimon, T., et al. Inhaled corticosteroids and risk of lung cancer among patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Am J Respir Crit Care Med, 2007. 175(7): pp. 712–9.
14. Woodson, K., et al. Serum alpha-tocopherol and subsequent risk of lung cancer among male smokers. J Natl Cancer Inst, 1999. 91(20): pp. 1738–43.
15. Schabath, M.B., et al. Dietary phytoestrogens and lung cancer risk. JAMA, 2005. 294(12): pp. 1493–504.
16. Loganathan, R.S., et al. Prevalence of COPD in women compared to men around the time of diagnosis of primary lung cancer. Chest, 2006. 129(5): pp. 1305–12.
17. Travis, W.D., L.B. Travis, and S.S. Devesa. Lung cancer. Cancer, 1995. 75(1 Suppl.): pp. 191–202.
18. Meuwissen, R. and A. Berns. Mouse models for human lung cancer. Genes Dev, 2005. 19(6): pp. 643–64.
19. Hoffmann, D. and I. Hoffmann. The changing cigarette, 1950–1995. J Toxicol Environ Health, 1997. 50(4): pp. 307–64.
20. Bouchardy, C., S. Benhamou, and P. Dayer. The effect of tobacco on lung cancer risk depends on CYP2D6 activity. Cancer Res, 1996. 56(2): pp. 251–3.
21. Atawodi, S.E., et al. 4-Hydroxy-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone-hemoglobin adducts as biomarkers of exposure to tobacco smoke: validation of a method to be used in multicenter studies. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev, 1998. 7(9): pp. 817–21.
22. Yu, D., et al. Characterization of functional excision repair cross-complementation group 1 variants and their association with lung cancer risk and prognosis. Clin Cancer Res, 2008. 14(9): pp. 2878–86.
23. Harris, C.C., et al. Carcinogenic polynuclear hydrocarbons bind to macromolecules in cultured human bronchi. Nature, 1974. 252(5478): pp. 68–9.
24. Wakamatsu, N., et al. Overview of the molecular carcinogenesis of mouse lung tumor models of human lung cancer. Toxicol Pathol, 2007. 35(1): pp. 75–80.
25. Cibas, E.S. and B.S. Ducatman. Cytology: diagnostic principles and clinical correlates. 1996, Philadelphia, PA: W.B. Saunders. xiv, 371p.
26. Silverman, J.F., et al. Psammoma bodies and optically clear nuclei in bronchiolo-alveolar cell carcinoma. Diagnosis by fine needle aspiration biopsy with histologic and ultrastructural confirmation. Diagn Cytopathol, 1985. 1(3): pp. 205–15.
27. Yanagi, S., et al. Pten controls lung morphogenesis, bronchioalveolar stem cells, and onset of lung adenocarcinomas in mice. J Clin Invest, 2007. 117(10): pp. 2929–40.
28. Mulshine, J.L., et al. Initiators and promoters of lung cancer. Chest, 1993. 103(1 Suppl.): pp. 4–11S.
29. Kohno, T. and J. Yokota. How many tumor suppressor genes are involved in human lung carcinogenesis? Carcinogenesis, 1999. 20(8): pp. 1403–10.
30. Balsara, B.R. and J.R. Testa. Chromosomal imbalances in human lung cancer. Oncogene, 2002. 21(45): pp. 6877–83.
31. Forgacs, E., et al. Molecular genetic abnormalities in the pathogenesis of human lung cancer. Pathol Oncol Res, 2001. 7(1): pp. 6–13.
32. Herbst, R.S., J.V. Heymach, and S.M. Lippman. Lung cancer. N Engl J Med, 2008. 359(13): pp. 1367–80.
33. Husgafvel-Pursiainen, K., et al. p53 mutations and exposure to environmental tobacco smoke in a multicenter study on lung cancer. Cancer Res, 2000. 60(11): pp. 2906–11.
34. Johnson, B.E. and M.J. Kelley. Overview of genetic and molecular events in the pathogenesis of lung cancer. Chest, 1993. 103(1 Suppl.): pp. 1–3S.
35. Cappuzzo, F., et al. Increased HER2 gene copy number is associated with response to gefitinib therapy in epidermal growth factor receptor-positive non-small-cell lung cancer patients. J Clin Oncol, 2005. 23(22): pp. 5007–18.
36. Fukumoto, S., et al. Overexpression of the aldo-keto reductase family protein AKR1B10 is highly correlated with smokers' non-small cell lung carcinomas. Clin Cancer Res, 2005. 11(5): pp. 1776–85.
37. Ciardiello, F. and G. Tortora. EGFR antagonists in cancer treatment. N Engl J Med, 2008. 358(11): pp. 1160–74.
38. Ji, H., et al. The impact of human EGFR kinase domain mutations on lung tumorigenesis and in vivo sensitivity to EGFR-targeted therapies. Cancer Cell, 2006. 9(6): pp. 485–95.
39. Pao, W., et al. KRAS mutations and primary resistance of lung adenocarcinomas to gefitinib or erlotinib. PLoS Med, 2005. 2(1): p. e17.
40. Oremek, G.M., et al. [Cyfra 21-1 – a new tumor marker of the cytokeratin series in differential diagnosis of lung diseases]. Med Klin (Munich), 1995. 90(1): pp. 23–6.
41. Sun, S., J.H. Schiller, and A.F. Gazdar. Lung cancer in never smokers – a different disease. Nat Rev Cancer, 2007. 7(10): pp. 778–90.
42. Wakelee, H.A., et al. Lung cancer incidence in never smokers. J Clin Oncol, 2007. 25(5): pp. 472–8.
43. Tam, I.Y., et al. Distinct epidermal growth factor receptor and KRAS mutation patterns in non-small cell lung cancer patients with different tobacco exposure and clinicopathologic features. Clin Cancer Res, 2006. 12(5): pp. 1647–53.
44. Divine, K.K., et al. Multiplicity of abnormal promoter methylation in lung adenocarcinomas from smokers and never smokers. Int J Cancer, 2005. 114(3): pp. 400–5.
45. Okada, M., et al. Effect of histologic type and smoking status on interpretation of serum carcinoembryonic antigen value in non-small cell lung carcinoma. Ann Thorac Surg, 2004. 78(3): pp. 1004–9; discussion 1009–10.
46. Dutu, T., et al. Differential expression of biomarkers in lung adenocarcinoma: a comparative study between smokers and never-smokers. Ann Oncol, 2005. 16(12): pp. 1906–14.

Chapter 15

Genesis of Barrett's Neoplasia: Current Concepts

Domenico Coppola, Nelly A. Nasir, and Leslie Turner

Contents

15.1 Introduction

Barrett's esophagus (BE) is the result of chronic gastro-esophageal reflux, and is characterized by the replacement of the normal stratified squamous epithelium in the lower esophagus with metaplastic columnar epithelium of various types [1]. BE predisposes to the development of adenocarcinoma of the esophagus, a condition that has dramatically increased in frequency (>300%) over the past 30 years [2]. In addition, this type of tumor has a dismal 5-years survival rate of 14–22% [3].

L. Turner (✉)
Department of Anatomic Pathology, Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, Tampa, FL, USA
Department of Anatomic Pathology, College of Medicine, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA

15.2 Etiology and Pathogenesis

In general, patients with BE acquire columnar metaplasia in the lower esophagus as a consequence of gastroesophageal reflux [3]. Therefore, any condition increasing the reflux of acid from the stomach to the esophagus represents a risk factor. These conditions include a hiatal hernia, the presence of duodenogastric reflux, delayed esophageal acid clearance time, and decreased resting pressure of the lower esophageal sphincter [4, 5]. In a minority of cases, other etiologic factors may be involved such as bile reflux following gastrectomy [6], esophageal injury (lye ingestion) [7], and possibly congenital rest of gastric epithelium (especially in cases of infantile BE) [8]. The last possibility is plausible since, during fetal life, the esophagus is lined by mucin-secreting cells.

The exact mechanism by which squamous epithelium is replaced by metaplastic mucosa is not certain. However, it seems that initially, following erosion of the squamous mucosa by the acid-peptic action of the gastric content, undifferentiated progenitor cells migrate into the denuded areas. These cells are multipotential stem cells that, in the presence of persistent gastroesophageal reflux, selectively differentiate into columnar mucin-secreting epithelium [9]. Alternatively, metaplasia could occur simply by upward migration of the columnar epithelium from the stomach to re-epithelialize the ulcerated mucosa.

15.3 Cancer Risk in Barrett's Esophagus

BE predisposes to the development of adenocarcinoma. It is estimated that of the patients with

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_15,

symptomatic gastroesophageal reflux who seek medical attention and undergo endoscopy, approximately 10–20% will have BE [10–14]. Of these, 7–15% already will have adenocarcinoma at the time of their first endoscopy [15]. It has also been shown that 18% of all patients undergoing upper gastrointestinal endoscopy for any reason are found to have BE [16]. The incidence of BE has been increasing in recent years and, consequently, adenocarcinoma arising in BE is the most rapidly increasing cancer in the last two decades [15, 16]. It is estimated that patients with BE have a 30- to 125-fold increased risk of developing adenocarcinoma [15, 16]. Patients who develop adenocarcinoma are usually elderly white men with metaplastic or dysplastic epithelium [17]. This is also true for patients with very short segment BE, which suggests that even small areas of metaplastic epithelium increase the cancer risk [18]. It has been speculated that cancer in BE arises through a multistep sequence of events initiated by gastroesophageal reflux that induces metaplasia and eventually progresses to dysplasia and carcinoma. It has also been observed that the presence of ulceration, in a biopsy of a patient with BE and higher grade dysplasia is most likely associated with invasive carcinoma [18].

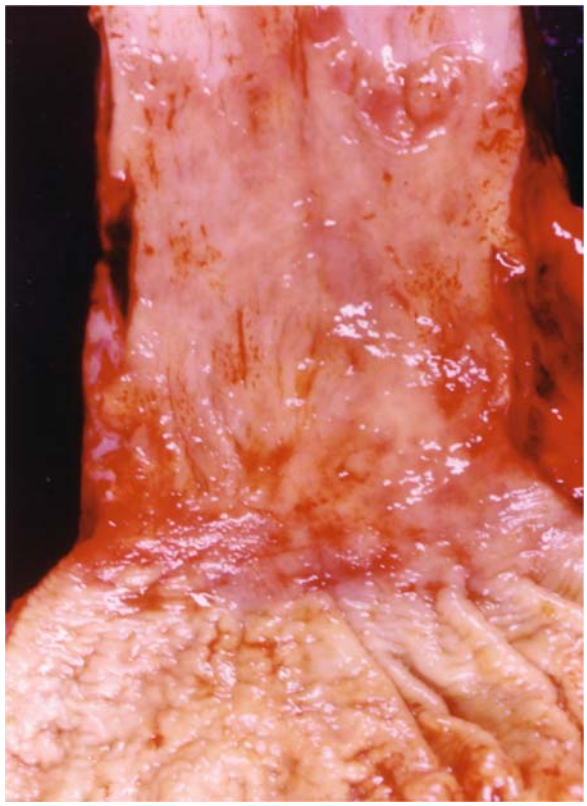


Fig. 15.1 Esophago-gastrectomy specimen showing the salmon-colored Barrett's mucosa replacing the pearly white esophageal squamous mucosa at the esophago-gastric junction

15.4 Pathology of Barrett's Esophagus and of Barrett's Esophagus Associated Neoplasia

Grossly, Barrett's mucosa is usually represented by a well-defined area of salmon-pink, velvety mucosa similar to the adjacent gastric mucosa. It has irregular margins and may contain islands of residual squamous, pearly white esophageal mucosa, or it may be ulcerated (Fig. 15.1). It is usually limited to the lower third of the esophagus, but in severe cases, it may extend to the middle and upper esophagus. The endoscopic diagnosis of BE may be challenging, especially if the gastroesophageal junction is difficult to identify [10, 19].

Histologically, problems in diagnosing BE may arise if the precise site of the biopsy is not known or if one does not realize that the metaplasia in BE can exhibit different patterns. Barrett's epithelium may be of the gastric fundic type, gastric cardiac type, or specialized (intestinal type) (Fig. 15.2) [11]. The first two types of epithelium are histologically indistinguishable from their normal counterpart in the stomach and could represent hiatal hernia. However, this is not a diagnostic problem since it is now accepted that dysplasia and carcinoma arise almost exclusively from the specialized (intestinal type) Barrett's metaplasia [12]. Therefore, it is believed that a diagnosis of BE should be made only if goblet cells are present (Fig. 15.2, arrows) [13, 20]. These are barrel-shaped cells with a distended, acidic mucin-filled cytoplasm, which can be easily identified using either an Alcian blue pH 2.5 stain or an Alcian blue PAS stain. If this rule is followed, then knowing the exact landmark of the biopsy is not so critical since any intestinalized epithelium carries an increased risk of cancer regardless of its precise location.

If gastroesophageal reflux persists in patients with BE, dysplasia can develop [19]. Dysplasia is the

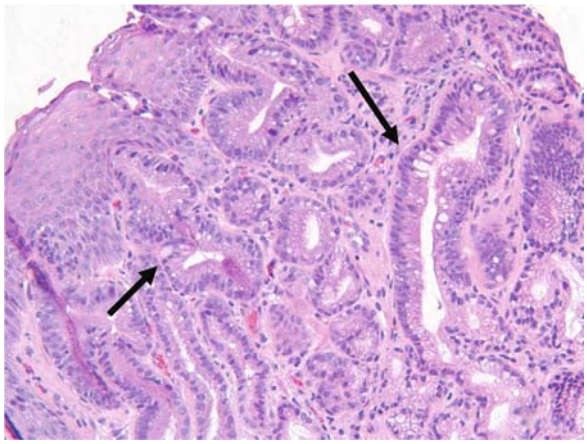


Fig. 15.2 Barrett's esophagus. Transition of esophageal squamous mucosa into a columnar epithelium containing scattered goblet cells (intestinal metaplasia)

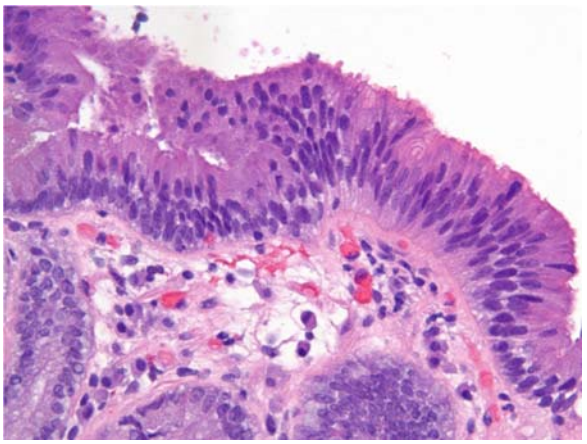


Fig. 15.3 Barrett's esophagus with low grade dysplasia. Barrett's mucosa showing glands with mild architectural distortion and gland lined by cells containing elongated (*cigar shaped*) and stratified nuclei which still retain nuclear polarity

development of neoplastic epithelium, which is confined within the superficial layer of epithelium by an intact basement membrane [20]. When neoplastic cells bridge the basement membrane, an invasive carcinoma is born. Dysplasia in BE has been graded following criteria similar to those used by the Inflammatory Dysplasia Morphology Study Group [21]. Barrett's metaplasia can be negative, indeterminate, or positive for dysplasia. It is indeterminate if features of dysplasia are present but do not extend to the surface epithelium or if these changes are associated with severe-grade inflammation, thus raising the possibility of reactive atypia [22].

Low-grade dysplasia (Fig. 15.3) is characterized by preservation of the glandular architecture, stratified cigar-shaped nuclei (which do not reach the cell surface), nuclear hyperchromasia, a moderate increase in mitotic activity, a decrease in goblet cells, and the presence of dystrophic goblet cells (mucin lies on the basal side of the nucleus). These changes are extending to the surface epithelium. High-grade dysplasia (Fig. 15.4) is characterized by marked distortion of the crypt architecture with cribiform pattern (back-to-back glands). The nuclear stratification involves the cellular surface; there is nuclear anisocytosis and pleomorphism, prominent nucleoli and loss of nuclear polarity. The mitotic figures are numerous. Areas of intestinal metaplasia are often intermingled with areas of dysplasia and adenocarcinoma that may not be endoscopically or grossly visible; therefore, small areas of dysplasia or carcinoma may be missed [23, 24].

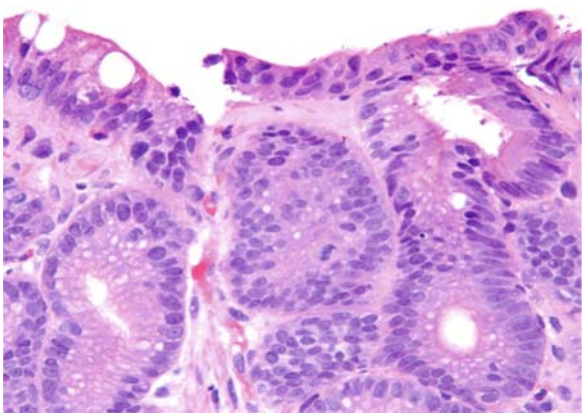


Fig. 15.4 Barrett's esophagus with high grade dysplasia. Intestinalized mucosa showing distorted and crowded glands containing enlarged cells. The cellular nuclei are polygonal, hyperchromatic, and exhibit anisocytosis and prominent nucleoli. Most importantly for the diagnosis, there is loss of nuclear polarity

Intramucosal adenocarcinoma is present when highly dysplastic cells invade through the basement membrane into the lamina propria, or into the muscularis mucosa but not beyond (Fig. 15.5).

In invasive adenocarcinoma, tumor cells infiltrate beyond the muscularis mucosa often eliciting desmoplastic reaction (Fig. 15.6). In most institutions, four-quadrant biopsies are performed, beginning at the top of the gastric folds and proceeding every 2 cm throughout the entire length of the columnar lined esophagus, in addition to biopsies of any endoscopic suspicious

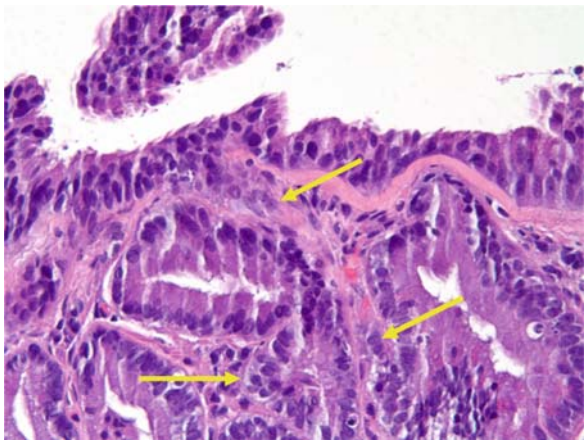


Fig. 15.5 Barrett's esophagus with intramucosal carcinoma. Barrett's mucosa with high grade dysplasia and glands exhibiting early syncytial pattern of growth. There are cellular clusters or single cells infiltrating the lamina propria. An attempt to desmoplastic reaction around these infiltrating cells is also noted (*arrow*)

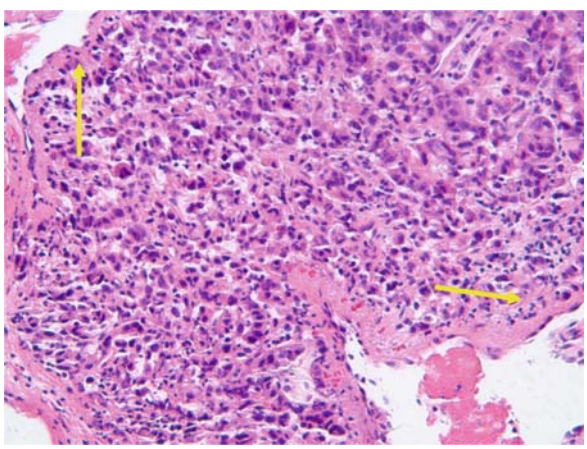


Fig. 15.6 Invasive adenocarcinoma arising in Barrett's esophagus. A poorly differentiated adenocarcinoma infiltrating the esophageal mucosa and surrounding vascular structures. Some of the tumor cells are seen within the vascular wall (*arrow*)

area [23, 25]. The use of this protocol has provided good correlation between endoscopic and pathologic diagnosis [26].

Three problems are associated with the application of the grading system: (1) the assessment of degree of dysplasia, which is subjective, (2) the lack of correlation between the degree of dysplasia and subsequent biologic behavior of the lesion, and (3) inter- and intra-observer variation, especially when assessing intermediate grades of dysplasia (indefinite or low grade).

15.5 Differential Diagnosis of Barrett's Esophagus

The main differential diagnosis of BE is gastric cardia with intestinal metaplasia. This is especially important, and more difficult to recognize, when attempting to discriminate between reactive cardia and dysplastic Barrett's epithelium. It is important to ascertain a correct diagnosis when at all possible since the natural history is different between these two conditions [27, 28]. Short segment BE has been found to have a higher prevalence of dysplasia when compared to chronic carditis with intestinal metaplasia (11.3% vs. 1.3%) and a higher incidence of dysplasia (4.6% vs. 1.5% per year) [29]. Due to this apparent lower risk of neoplasia, patients with chronic carditis with intestinal metaplasia do not currently undergo routine endoscopic surveillance [30]. Srivastava et al. reported several morphologic features that are in favor of a diagnosis of BE over intestinal metaplasia of the cardia in biopsies of the gastroesophageal junction. The reported morphologic features include: crypt disarray and atrophy, incomplete intestinal metaplasia and diffuse intestinal metaplasia, multilayered epithelium, squamous epithelium overlying columnar crypts with intestinal metaplasia, hybrid glands, and esophageal glands or ducts. In their study group, the coexistence of 4 or more of these features was 95% sensitive and 95% specific for Barrett's esophagus. In addition, three of the features (squamous epithelium overlying columnar crypts with intestinal metaplasia, hybrid glands and esophageal glands/ducts) were seen exclusively in BE [31].

Gastric heterotopia (inlet patch) can also be present in the esophagus and may be confused with Barrett's epithelium since Barrett's epithelium may be of the gastric fundic type, gastric cardia type, or specialized (intestinal) type [11]. As mentioned previously, however, it is now accepted that dysplasia and carcinoma arise almost exclusively from the specialized (intestinal type) Barrett's metaplasia [12]. Since BE is diagnosed only in the presence of goblet cells, which are not present in gastric heterotopia, this is usually

not a difficult differential. Borhan-Manesh and Farnum report an incidence of 10% for heterotopic gastric mucosa in the esophagus. These patches of heterotopic gastric mucosa were located just below the upper esophageal sphincter [32]. Pancreatic acinar metaplasia in the esophagus has been reported to occur in up to 24% of the evaluated patients. In one study, no association was found between pancreatic acinar metaplasia and any other clinical or histologic abnormalities in the esophagus or stomach, raising the possibility that this finding is actually congenital in nature [33].

15.6 Cytology and Barrett's-Associated Neoplasia

Some studies have reported the application of cytologic methods in the diagnosis of BE. Studies using brushing cytology have shown good correlation with routine histologic examination in identifying the metaplastic epithelium and carcinoma [34].

Balloon cytology has been used to evaluate the degree of dysplasia in BE. This technique was found to have 66% sensitivity and 100% specificity when using histology as the "gold standard." However, balloon cytology has poor sensitivity in detecting low-grade dysplasia [35, 36]. Prospective studies are underway in several institutions, including ours, to further assess the value of this technique that has a potential cost advantage.

15.7 Molecular Pathways of Neoplastic Progression

Not all patients with BE will progress to adenocarcinoma. Some live for years without developing dysplasia, and they eventually die of unrelated disease. Others demonstrate a rapid progression to dysplasia and carcinoma and will die of esophageal adenocarcinoma, if it is not diagnosed early and treated appropriately. Recent attempts have been made to identify molecular markers to predict which patients with BE will progress to carcinoma. The availability of such markers would allow closer patient follow-up and earlier intervention, preventing the late diagnosis of BE associated adenocarcinoma when the tumor is already disseminated.

15.8 Cell Cycle and DNA Ploidy

Cyclin D1 regulates the transition from G1 to the S phase of the cell cycle via the formation of cyclin D1-cyclin dependent kinase (cdk) complexes which phosphorylate the retinoblastoma (Rb) protein. This change in Rb phosphorylation enhances transcription of growth promoting genes. A study of 307 biopsies from Barrett's patients has shown that positivity for cyclin D1, but not p53, has a statistically significant increased risk of progression to adenocarcinoma [37].

Cyclin B1 is involved in the G2M phase transition of the cell cycle. It is synthesized early in G2 phase and it is believed to promote chromosome condensation, disruption of the nuclear membrane, and mitotic spindle formation. Altered cyclin B1 expression may induce deregulation of the cell cycle, and uncontrolled cell growth. Overexpression of cyclin B1 has been demonstrated early in the transition of BE into low grade dysplasia [38]. Similarly, $CDKN_2$/p16 gene becomes mutated and is detected early, in association to allelic loss of 9p21 chromosome, in diploid cells, just before turning to aneuploid during the neoplastic progression [39].

To date, the most reliable marker of tumor progression in BE associated neoplasia has been DNA ploidy. It has been reported that dysplasia arising in BE is commonly associated with aneuploidy [26, 40]. Reid et al. [34] observed that 9 of 13 patients with aneuploidy and increased G_2/tetraploid cell population developed high-grade dysplasia or carcinoma within 34 months. Forty-nine patients without these abnormalities did not progress to dysplasia. However, these results have not been confirmed [41]. The difficulty in endoscopically differentiating between metaplastic and dysplastic mucosa renders reproducible sampling for flow cytometry, and appropriate correlation with follow-up biopsies, problematic.

15.9 Proliferation Markers and Adhesion Molecules

Proliferation markers including oncogenes, cell receptors, and nuclear proliferation antigens have been reported in patients with BE associated neoplasia.

Al-Kasspooles et al. [42] described epidermal growth factor receptor (EGF-R) gene amplification

and protein overexpression in 31% of 13 human esophageal adenocarcinomas. Alterations have also been described for Src-specific activity, which is 3- to 4-fold higher in BE and 6-fold higher in adenocarcinomas compared to the control tissues [43].

Among the adhesion molecules, beta-catenin is an oncoprotein that mediates cell-cell adhesion via the transmembrane E-cadherin-catenin complex, and it may contribute to carcinogenesis when the APC/beta catenin/Tcf signal transduction pathway is disrupted. It has been shown that E-cadherin is significantly lower in patients with BE, compared to those with normal esophageal epithelium [44]. The nuclear accumulation of beta-catenin is a common and early event during neoplastic progression in BE [45], occurring before the mutated in colon cancer gene (MCC) loss of heterozygosity [46]. In addition, it has been observed that abnormal beta-catenin expression is present in 61% of 70 BE associated adenocarcinomas [47].

Tselepis et al. have reported the upregulation of tumor necrosis factor - α in the progression of BE, with secondary NF-κB independent transcription of beta-catenin and of c-myc [48].

Following the discovery of increased expression of claudin 3, 4 and 7 in gastric adenocarcinoma and dysplasia, as compared to normal gastric mucosa, Montgomery et al. have extendend their investigation to BE specimens. Their findings show that the increase in claudin proteins is an early event during the progression of Barrett's neoplasia [49]. Claudins are involved in the formation of intercellular tight junctions which are important for the maintenance of intercellular cell adhesion and of tissue osmotic homeostasis.

Other molecular alterations identified during the progression from Barrett's metaplasia to carcinoma include the sequential accumulation of acidic fibroblast growth factor [50], and of a novel acidic isoform of proliferating cell nuclear antigen (csPCNA). This protein has been shown to be cancer specific [51]. Finally, Ray et al have described the increase of Rab-11, a small GTP-binding protein, in BE with low grade dysplasia [52].

15.10 Tumor Suppressor Genes

p53 and the retinoblastoma (Rb) genes are important tumor suppressor genes involved in the regulation of cell proliferation and apoptosis. Phosphorylation of Rb induces its molecular conformational changes with release of the transcription factor E2F and translation of genes involved in cell cycle progression. In a study of 56 patients with adenocarcinoma arising in BE, we found progressive loss of Rb protein expression as the intestinal metaplasia progressed to dysplasia and carcinoma [53]. p53, increased in response to DNA damage, stimulates transcription of genes that mediate cell cycle arrest (p21), DNA repair (GADD45), and apoptosis (Bax). Nuclear accumulation of abnormal p53 tumor suppressor protein has been described in approximately 33–50% of adenocarcinomas arising in BE [54, 55]. When genetic sequencing is performed, p53 abnormalities in Barrett's cancer are found in up to 90% of cases.

Independent investigators have detected increased frequency of p53 mutations that parallel increasing degree of dysplasia [56–59]. Chatelain and Flejou reported strong expression of p53 by immunohistochemistry in high grade dysplasia and superficial adenocarcinoma. They detected no significant p53 expression in non-dysplastic metaplastic mucosa and in low grade dysplasia [59]. It has been shown that p53 gene mutations, with protein accumulation, can be detected in routinely processed biopsy samples [60]. In addition, Weston et al. have demonstrated that p53 localization in areas of low grade dysplasia represents a risk factor for progression to a higher degree of dysplasia. The authors suggested that these patients may benefit from a proactive secondary prevention-intervention program, rather than routine close observation [61]. However, mutated p53 has also been reported in BE without dysplasia [57, 58], and some investigators concluded that neither p53 mutation nor p53 protein accumulation had independent prognostic value in patients with BE associated adenocarcinoma [62]. Recent data seem to support the value of p53 as a predictor of BE progression to dysplasia or carcinoma [59, 63, 64]. On the other hand, p63, a p53-related protein, plays no role in BE associated carcinogenesis [65, 66].

15.11 Death-Inducing Signaling Molecules

Many factors involved in the apoptotic pathway of BE associated neoplasia have been studied to gain more

insight to the process of carcinogenesis. Fas/APO-1, a cell receptor that induces apoptosis when activated, is reduced on the cell surface of esophageal adenocarcinoma cells, but it is retained within their cytoplasm as a mechanism to evade Fas-mediated apoptosis [53, 67].

The Bcl-2 family of apoptotic regulators includes pro-apoptotic members (Bax, Bid, Bad, and Bak) and anti-apoptotic members (Bcl-2, and Bcl-xl). Proapoptotic Bcl-2 proteins increase the mitochondrial membrane permeability, allowing the leakage of cytochrome C from mitochondria into cytoplasm, with subsequent caspase activation and apoptosis. In Barrett's epithelium, Bcl-2 protein is highly expressed in low-grade dysplasia, protecting the cells from apoptosis, but it is decreased in high-grade dysplasia and adenocarcinoma [68]. In the same study the authors show high expression of the antiapototic protein Bcl-xl in BE associated dysplasia and carcinoma, but not in intestinal metaplasia. Other investigators have shown a significant reduction of Bcl-2 expression by immunohistochemistry, during the progression of Barrett's mucosa to adenocarcinoma. In this study, Bcl-2 expression correlated with improved patient survival [69].

Van Der Woude et al. concluded that a shift to an "antiapoptotic phenotype" occurs during the progression of Barrett's metaplasia to dysplasia and to adenocarcinoma, due to increased Bcl-x and decreased Bax expression [68].Others have demonstrated that CpG island hypermethylation (and consequent decrease protein expression) of the proapoptotic death associated protein kinase (DAPK) is an early change during BE neoplasia progression [70]. Finally, Li Y. et al. found a negative correlation between metallothionein (MT) expression and apoptotic index in BE associated neoplasia. The authors postulated that MT may function as a zinc-donor for DNA replication and repair in BE [71].

15.12 Angiogenic Markers

It is currently believed that angiogenesis is associated with early stages of tumor invasion, and experimental studies have shown that angiogenesis may occur during the transition from hyperplasia to neoplasia [72].

Hypervascularization/neovascularization has been observed around dysplastic colon adenomas [73], and in a background of mammary ductal carcinoma in situ [74]. Similarly, the increased expression of angiogenenic markers (VEGF, CD31) has been reported early during the progression of Barrett's neoplasia, but did not predict the progression of BE to adenocarcinoma or the survival of patients with BE associated adenocarcinoma [75, 76]. While VEGF expression and high angiogenesis score correlated with lymph node metastatsis [76], mean microvessel count, using CD31 stain, did not correlate with the tumors clinical pathologic features [77]. Others have reported the significant upregulation of VEGF and basic fibroblast growth factor messenger RNA expression in esophageal and gastroesophageal juction adenocarcinomas, suggesting a role of these factors in the development of esophageal cancer [78].

The use of non steroidal, anti-inflammatory drugs has shown to reduce the risk of gastrointestinal cancer by blocking the cyclooxygenase enzyme COX2 [79]. Cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) downregulates the expression of angiogenic factors VEGF and basic fibroblast growth factor, inhibiting angiogenesis [80]. Several investigators have observed an increase of COX 2 protein expression, possibly as a response to bile salts exposure, early during the BE associated neoplastic transformation [81, 82]. Others have reported that high COX-2 protein expression is associated with reduced survival of patients undergoing surgery for esophageal adenocarcinomas [83]. Finally, increased inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS) has been observed in 76% of Barrett's tissues in one study, however, the meaning of this finding is controversial [84].

15.13 Other Molecular Markers

Microsatellite instability (MSI) is the lost of control of the DNA fidelity, as a result of structural defects of proteins (including MLH1, MSH2, PMS2, MSH6) involved in the identification and correction of nucleotide matching defects, occurring during DNA replication. MSI has been documented in several hereditary and non hereditary malignancies. Kulke et al. have reported the absence of high levels of MSI in 80 cases of BE associated adenocarcinomas. Low levels MSI were identified in only 16% of the tumors,

and immunohisto-chemical expression of MLH1 and MSH2 was retained in all cases. The presence of low MSI was not associated with clinicopathologic features of the tumors [85].

HER-2 protein overexpression or gene amplification has been observed with variable prevalence in BE associated cancer, and it may represent a biomarker of progression from intestinal metaplasia to dysplasia, to carcinoma [86]. Using image-based three-dimensional fluorescent in situ hybridization in thick sections, Rauser et al. uncovered HER-2 low level copy gains in BE associated cancer, not detected by standard FISH. It has been proposed that this finding defines a biologically distinct subpopulation of BE associated cancer patients with unfavorable outcome [87].

A cDNA microarray analysis of BE, BE with dysplasia and BE with adenocarcinoma revealed a 2–16 fold overexpression of L-type Amino Acid Transporter-1 (LAT-1) mRNA in 7 of 8 tumor samples studied. This finding was confirmed in 28 of 28 esophageal adenocarcinoma using RT-PCR. LAT-1 is a sodium-independent, high affinity transporter of large branched chain and aromatic neutral amino acids. LAT-1 is also involved in the transport of the amino acid related chemotherapeutic agent melphalan and, theoretically, LAT-1 positive esophageal adenocarcinomas may be sensitive to therapeutic doses of this drug [88].

In another study, Lin J et al. studied the expression of melanoma-associated antigens (MAGEs) family A members, including MAGE-A10, in BE associated adenocarcinomas. These are tumor-specific antigens recognized by cytotoxic T lymphocytes and may provide potential targets for immunotherapy [89].

We should also mention studies on the expression of Glutatione S-transferase π (GST) in BE. GST are a superfamily of enzymes protecting cells from the cytotoxic effects of free radicals, and from DNA damage caused by tobacco carcinogens, chemotherapeutic drugs, and others. Brabender et al. have shown that down-regulation of GSTPI expression is an early event in the development of BE and of BE associated adenocarcinoma, and it is a marker of disease progression [90].

15.14 "Omics" of Barrett's Neoplasia

The recent advances of cDNA microarray technology with associated bioinformatics tools have allowed the interrogation of thousands of genes at once. This technology has improved the accuracy in tumor diagnosis and classification, and in predicting tumor progression and tumor response to therapy.

Several investigators have reported on the modulation of global gene expression profiling during Barrett's carcinogenesis and tumor progression [91–93]. For example, Wang et al have shown that the gene profile of BE samples is similar to that of BE associated adenocarcinoma and not to the gene profile of normal esophagus. CXCL3, TNFRSF12A, and FN14 are among the 12 differentially expressed genes between BE and esophageal adenocarcinoma [93]. This finding is in agreement with the concept that BE is biologically premalignant. In another study, filtered genes from a previous cDNA microarray study of BE associated adenocarcinoma were used to select a panel of 23 genes potentially capable to discriminate between premalignant and malignant BE changes. Using quantitative real time PCR (qRT-PCR) and bioinformatics (logistic regression analysis and linear discriminant analysis) these authors demonstrated that the combination of only 3 informative genes (BFT, TSPAN, and TP) was able to reliably discriminate between BE and BE associated adenocarcinoma [94].

It has been reported that human BE associated adenocarcinoma cells respond to acid exposure by downregulating apoptosis related genes and upregulating cell proliferation related genes [95]. Similarly, Cheng et al., using a rat model, have shown that esophageal epithelium exposed to an excess of duodenal and gastric reflux, develops BE, dysplasia, and eventually carcinoma [96, 97].

We have previously shown that the histologic progression from BE to adenocarcinoma is associated with early loss of genes regulating differentiation that begins before histologic changes, and a late gain in genes involved in remodeling and invasion [98]. Using a oligonucleotide microarray ("MitoChip") for rapid sequencing of the entire mitochondrial genome, Sui et al. have shown somatic mutations of mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) in 39% of 23 samples of BE with dysplasia, but in only 13% of 15 samples of BE without dysplasia. The somatic mtDNA alterations were observed in preneoplastic lesions even in the absence of histopathologic evidence of dysplasia, suggesting that the mitochondrial genome is susceptible at the earliest stages of multistep cancer progression. The authors proposed the use of mtDNA analysis as a biomarker for early diagnosis of BE associated dysplasia [99].

MicroRNAs (miRNAs) are a newly discovered class of small non-coding RNA molecules that may function as either oncogenes or tumor suppressor genes. Feber et al. found a subset of 13 miRNAs capable of discriminating between adenocarcinoma, squamous cell carcinoma, and normal squamous epithelium of the esophagus [100].

Finally, the recent advances in mass spectrometry and bioinformatics have improved the discrimination of cancer specific peptides. The usage of high resolution, two dimensional, polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis allows the separation of up to 2,000 proteins at a wide range of pH gradients. This methodology maximizes protein separation, allowing the excision and identification of the selected proteins by matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization, time of flight and tandem mass spectrometry (MALDI TOF MS) [101]. Using this approach a series of novel proteins differentially expressed in the progression from Barrett's metaplasia to esophageal adenocarcinoma were identified [102–104]. Peng et al. in their comparison of esophageal tumors to normal esophageal samples, identified a group of upregulated proteins (ErbB3, Dr5, Cyclin D1, and members of the zinc finger proteins) and a group of downregulated proteins (Lgi1 and Klf6). Of these ErbB3, Dr5, Znf146, and Lgi1 have not been previously described in BE [104].

15.15 Conclusion

To overcome the limitations of the pathologic criteria for detecting and evaluating BE-associated neoplasia, attempts have been made to identify molecular markers that can predict neoplastic progression in BE. It is possible that the future routine use of brush cytology in the diagnosis of BE will allow sampling of larger areas of diseased mucosa, thus increasing sensitivity and specificity in detecting dysplasia and/or carcinoma. The use of the more advanced molecular tests is promising, and may detect alterations that precede morphological changes.

References

1. Spechler SJ, Goyal RK. Barrett's esophagus. N Engl J Med. 1986;315:362–71.
2. Pohl H, Welch HG. The role of overdiagnosis and reclassification in the marked increase of esophageal adenocarcinoma incidence. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2005;97:142–6.
3. Gamliel Z, Krasna MJ. Multimodality treatment of esophageal cancer. Surg Clin North Am. 2005;85:621–30.
4. Dent J, Bremner CG, Collen MJ, et al. Barrett's oesophagus. J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 1991;6:1–22.
5. Collen MJ, Lewis JH, Benjamin SB. Gastric acid hypersecretion in refractory gastroesophageal reflux disease. Gastroenterology. 1990;98:654–61.
6. Mulholland MW, Reid BJ, Levine DS, et al. Elevated gastric acid secretion in patients with Barrett's metaplastic epithelium. Dig Dis Sci. 1989;34:1329–34.
7. Meyer W, Vollmar F, Bar W. Barrett-esophagus following total gastrectomy: a contribution to its pathogenesis. Endoscopy. 1979;11:121–6.
8. Othersen HB Jr, Ocampo RJ, Parker EF, et al. Barrett's esophagus in children: diagnosis and management. Ann Surg. 1993;217:676–80.
9. Rector LE, Connerley ML. Aberrant mucosa in the esophagus in infants and children. Arch Pathol. 1941;31:285–94.
10. Hamilton SR. Pathogenesis of columnar cell-lined (Barrett's) esophagus. In: Spechler SJ, Goyal RK, eds. Barrett's Esophagus: Pathophysiology, Diagnosis and Management. New York: Elsevier Science; 1985:29–37.
11. Woolf GM, Riddell RH, Irvine EJ, et al. A study to examine agreement between endoscopy and histology for the diagnosis of columnar-lined (Barrett's) esophagus. Gastrointest Endosc. 1989;35:541–4.
12. Paull A, Trier JS, Dalton MD, et al. The histologic spectrum of Barrett's esophagus. N Engl J Med. 1976;295:476–80.
13. Hameeteman W, Tytgat GN, Houthoff HJ, et al. Barrett's esophagus: development of dysplasia and adenocarcinoma. Gastroenterology. 1989;96:1249–56.
14. Haggitt RC. Barrett's esophagus, dysplasia, and adenocarcinoma. Hum Pathol. 1994;25:982–93.
15. Blot WJ, Devesa SS, Kneller RW, et al. Rising incidence of adenocarcinoma of the esophagus and gastric cardia. JAMA. 1991;265:1287–89.
16. Pera M, Cameron AJ, Trastek VF, et al. Increasing incidence of adenocarcinoma of the esophagus and esophagogastric junction. Gastroenterology. 1993;104:510–3.
17. Spechler SJ, Goyal RK. The columnar-lined esophagus, intestinal metaplasia, and Norman Barrett. Gastroenterology. 1996;110:614–21.
18. Hamilton SR, Smith RR, Cameron JL. Prevalence and characteristics of Barrett esophagus in patients with adenocarcinoma of the esophagus or esophagogastric junction. Hum Pathol. 1988;19:942–8.
19. McArdle JE, Lewin KJ, Randall G, et al. Distribution of dysplasias and early invasive carcinoma in Barrett's esophagus. Hum Pathol. 1992;23:479–82.
20. Hamilton SR. Reflux esophagitis and Barrett's esophagus. In: Goldman H, Appelman HD, Kaufman N, eds. Gastrointestinal Pathology. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins; 1990:11–68.
21. Riddell RH, Goldman H, Ransohoff DF, et al. Dysplasia in inflammatory bowel disease: standardized classification with provisional clinical implications. Hum Pathol. 1983;14:931–68.

22. Hamilton SR. Adenocarcinoma in Barrett's esophagus. In: Whitehead R, ed. Gastrointestinal and Esophageal Pathology. Edinburgh, Scotland: Churchill Livingstone; 1989;683–706.
23. Antonioli DA. Esophagus. In: Henson DE, Albores-Saavedra J, eds. Pathology of Incipient Neoplasia. Philadelphia, PA: WB Saunders Co; 1993;64–84.
24. Reid BJ, Weinstein WM, Lewin KJ, et al. Endoscopic biopsy can detect high-grade dysplasia or early adenocarcinoma in Barrett's esophagus without grossly recognizable neoplastic lesions. Gastroenterology. 1988;94:81–90.
25. Smith RR, Hamilton SR, Boitnott JK, et al. The spectrum of carcinoma arising in Barrett's esophagus: a clinicopathologic study of 26 patients. Am J Surg Pathol. 1984;8:563–73.
26. Levine DS, Haggitt RC, Blount PL, et al. An endoscopic biopsy protocol can differentiate high-grade dysplasia from early adenocarcinoma in Barrett's esophagus. Gastroenterology. 1993;105:40–50.
27. Sharma P. Recent advances in Barrett's esophagus: short-segment Barrett's esophagus and carida intestinal metaplasia. Semin Gastrointest Dis. 1999;10:93–102
28. Sharma P, Sampliner RE. Short segment Barrett's esophagus and intestinal metaplasia of the cardia – it's not all symantics!! Am J Gastroenterol. 1998;93:2303–4.
29. Sharma P, Weston AP, Morales T, et al. Relative risk of dysplasia for patients with intestinal metaplasia in the distal oesophagus and in the gastric cardia. Gut. 2000;46:9–13.
30. Sampliner RE. Practice guidelines on the diagnosis, surveillance, and therapy of Barrett's esophagus. The Practice Parameters Committee of the American College of Gastroenterology. Am J Gastroenterol. 1998;93: 1028–32.
31. Srivastava A, Odze RD, Lauwers GY, Redston M, Antonioli DA, Glickman JN. Morphologic features are useful in distinguishing Barrett esophagus from carditis with intestinal meatplasia. Am J Surg Pathol. 2007;31:1733–41.
32. Borhan-Manesh F, Farnum JB. Incidence of heterotopic gastric mucosa in the upper oesophagus. Gut. 1991;32:968–72.
33. Wang HH, Zeroogian JM, Spechler SJ, Goyal RK, Antonioli DA. Prevalence and significance of pancreatic acinar metaplaisa at the gastroesophageal junction. Am J Surg Pathol. 1996;20:1507–10.
34. Reid BJ, Blount PL, Rubin CE, et al. Flow-cytometric and histological progression to malignancy in Barrett's esophagus: prospective endoscopic surveillance of a cohort. Gastroenterology. 1992;102:1212–9.
35. Geisinger KR. Endoscopic biopsies and cytologic brushings of the esophagus are diagnostically complementary. Am J Clin Pathol. 1995;103:295–9.
36. Chittajallu RS, Falk GW, Goldblum JR et al. Balloon cytology for the detection and surveillance of Barrett's esophagus. Gastroenterology. 1995;108:71A.
37. Bani-Hani K, Martin IG, Hardie LJ, Mapstone N, Briggs JA, Forman D, Wild CP. Prospective study of Cyclin D1 overexpression in Barrett's esophagus: association with increased risk of adenocarcinoma. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2000;92:1316–21.
38. Geddert H, Heep H, Gabbert H, Sarbia M. Expression of Cyclin B1 in the metaplasia-dysplasia-carcinoma sequence of Barrett esophagus. Cancer. 2002;94:212–8.
39. Barrett MT, Sanchez CA, Galipeau PC, et al. Allelic loss of 9p21 and mutation of the CDKN2/p16 gene develop as early lesions during neoplastic progression in Barrett's esophagus. Oncogene. 1996;13:1867–73.
40. Nakamura T, Nekarda H, Hoelscher AH, et al. Prognostic value of DNA ploidy and c-erbB-2 oncoprotein overexpression in adenocarcinoma of Barrett's esophagus. Cancer. 1994;73:1785–94.
41. Fennerty MB, Sampliner RE, Way D, et al. Discordance between flow cytometric abnormalities and dysplasia in Barrett's esophagus. Gastroenterology. 1989;97:815–20.
42. Al-Kasspooles M, Moore JH, Orringer MB, et al. Amplification and over-expression of the EGFR and erbB-2 genes in human esophageal adenocarcinomas. Int J Cancer. 1993;4:213–19.
43. Kumble S, Omary MB, Cartwright CA, et al. Src activation in malignant and premalignant epithelia of Barrett's esophagus. Gastroenterology. 1997;112:348–56.
44. Swami S, Kumble S, Triadafilopoulos G, et al. E-cadherin expression in gastroesophageal reflux disease, Barrett's esophagus, and esophageal adenocarcinoma: an immunohistochemical and immunoblot study. Am J Gastroenterol. 1995;90:1808–13.
45. Bian YS, Osterheld MC, Bosman FT, Fontolliet C, Benhattar J. Nuclear accumulation of beta-Catenin is a common and early event during neoplastic progression of Barrett esophagus. Am J Clin Pathol. 2000;114: 583–90.
46. Betkas N, Donner A, Wirtz C, Heep H, Gabbert HE, Sarbia M. Allelic loss involving the tumor suppressor genes APC and MCC and expression of the APC protein in the development of dysplasia and carcinoma in Barrett's esophagus. Am J Clin Pathol. 2000;114:890–5.
47. Osterheld MC, Bian YS, Bosman FT, Benhattar J, Fontolliet C. Beta-catenin expression and its association with prognostic factors in adenocarcinoma developed in Barrett esophagus. Am J Clin Pathol. 2002;117:451–6.
48. Tselepis C, Perry I, Dawson C, Hardy R, Darnton SJ, Mc Conkey C, Stuart RC, Wright N, Harrison R, Jankowski JAZ. Tumour necrosis factor-α in Barrett's oesophagus: a potential novel mechanism of action. Oncogene. 2002;21:6071–81.
49. Montgomery E, Mamelak AJ, Gibson M, Maitra A, Sheikh S, Amr S, et al. Overexpression of claudin proteins in esophageal adenocarcinoma and its precursor lesions. Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol. 2006;14:24–30.
50. Soslow RA, Petersen CG, Remotti H, Altorki N. Acidic fibroblast growth factor is expressed sequentially in the progression from Barrett's esophagus to esophageal adenocarcinoma. Dis Esophag. 2001;14:23–7.
51. Hammoud ZT, Badve S, Saxena R, Kesler KA, Rieger K, Malkas L, et al. A novel biomarker for the detection of esophageal adenocarcinoma. J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg. 2007;133:82–7.
52. Ray GS, Lee JR, Nwokeji K, et al. Increased immunoreactivity for Rab11, a small GTP-binding protein, in low-grade dysplastic Barrett's epithelia. Lab Invest. 1997;77:503–11.

53. Coppola D, Schreiber RH, Mora L, et al. Significance of Fas and Rb protein expression during the progression of Barrett's metaplasia to adenocarcinoma: platform presentation at the 51st Annual Cancer Symposium of the Society of Surgical Oncology, San Diego, CA, March 26–29, 1998. Ann Surg Oncol. 1998;In press.
54. Casson AG, Kerkvliet N, O'Malley F. Prognostic value of p53 protein in esophageal adenocarcinoma. J Surg Oncol. 1995;60:5–11.
55. Hollstein MC, Metcalf RA, Welsh JA, et al. Frequent mutation of the p53 gene in human esophageal cancer. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 1990;87:9958–61.
56. Blount PL, Ramel S, Raskind WH, et al. 17p allelic deletions and p53 protein overexpression in Barrett's adenocarcinoma. Cancer Res. 1991;51:5482–6.
57. Ramel S, Reid BJ, Sanchez CA, et al. Evaluation of p53 protein expression in Barrett's esophagus by two-parameter flow cytometry. Gastroenterology. 1992;102:1220–8.
58. Younes M, Lebovitz RM, Lechago LV, et al. p53 protein accumulation in Barrett's metaplasia, dysplasia and adenocarcinoma: a follow-up study. Gastroenterology. 1993;105:1637–42.
59. Chatelain D, Flejou JF. High-grade dysplasia and superficial adenocarcinoma in Barrett's esophagus: histological mapping and expression of p53, p21 and Bcl-2 oncoproteins. Virchows Arch. 2003;442:18–24.
60. Younes M, Lechago J, Chakraborty S, Ostrowski M, Bridges M, Meriano F, et al. Relationship between dysplasia, p53 protein accumulation, DNA ploidy, and Glut1 overexpression in Barrett metaplasia. Scand J Gastroenterol. 2000;2:131–7.
61. Weston AP, Banerjee SK, Sharma P, Tran TM, Richards R, Cherian R. p53 Protein overexpression in low grade dysplasia (LGD) in Barrett's esophagus: immunohistochemical marker predictive of progression. Am J Gastroenterology. 2001;96(5);1355–62.
62. Bian YS, Osterheld MC, Bosman FT, Benhattar J, Fontolliet C. p53 Gene mutation and protein accumulation during neoplastic progression in Barrett's esophagus. Mod Pathol. 2001;14(5);397–403.
63. Flejou JF, Potet F, Muzeau F, et al. Overexpression of p53 protein in Barrett's syndrome with malignant transformation. J Clin Pathol. 1993;46:330–3.
64. Younes M, Ertan A, Lechago LV, et al. p53 Protein accumulation is a specific marker of malignant potential in Barrett's metaplasia. Dig Dis Sci. 1997;42:697–701.
65. Glickman JN, Yang A, Shahsafaei A, McKeon F, Odze R. Expression of p53-related protein p63 in the gastrointestinal tract and in esophageal metaplastic and neoplastic disorders. Hum Pathol. 2001;32(11);1157–65.
66. Hall PA, Woodman AC, Campbell SJ, Shepherd NA. Expression of the p53 homologue p63α and ΔNp63α in the neoplastic sequence of Barrett's oesophagus: correlation with morphology and p53 protein. Gut. 2001;49: 618–23.
67. Hughes SJ, Nambu Y, Soldes OS, et al. Fas/APO-1(CD95) is not translocated to the cell membrane in esophageal adenocarcinoma. Cancer Res. 1997;57:5571–8.
68. Van Der Woude CJ, Jansen PLM, Tiebosch ATGM, Beuving A, Homan M, Kleibeuker JH, et al. Expression of apoptosis-related proteins in Barrett's metaplasia-dysplasia-carcinoma sequence: a switch to a more resistant phenotype. Hum Pathol. 2002;33(7);686–92.
69. Raouf AA, Evoy DA, Carton E, Mulligan E, Griffin MM, Reynolds JV. Loss of Bcl-2 expression in Barrett's dysplasia and adenocarcinoma is associated with tumor progression and worse survival but not with response to neoadjuvant chemoradiation. Dis Esophag. 2003;16: 17–23.
70. Kuester D, Dar AA, Moskaluk CC, Krueger S, Meyer F, Hartig R, et al. Early involvement of death-associated protein kinase promoter hypermethylation in the carinogenesis of Barrett's esophageal adenocarcinoma and its association with clinical progression. Neoplasia. 2007;9: 236–45.
71. Li Y, Wo JM, Cai Lu, Zhou Z, Rosenbaum D, Mendez C, et al. Association of metallothionein expression and lack of apoptosis with progression of carcinogenesis in Barrett's esophagus. Exp Biol Med. 2003;228:286–92.
72. Folkman J, Watson K, Ingber D, Hanahan D. Induction of angiogenesis during the transition from hyperplasia to neoplasia. Nature. 1989;339:58–61.
73. Bossi P, Viale G, Lee AK, Alfano R, Coggi G, Bosari S. Angiogenesis in colorectal tumors: microvessel quantitation in adenoma and carcinomas with clinicopathological correlations. Cancer Res. 1995;55:5049–53.
74. Bosari S, Lee AK, DeLellis RA, Wiley BD, Heatley GJ, Silverman ML. Microvessel quantitation and prognosis in invasive breast carcinoma. Hum Pathol. 1992;23:755–61.
75. Millikan KW, Mall JW, Myers JA, Hollinger EF, Doolas A, Saclarides TJ. Do angiogenesis and growth factor expression predict prognosis of esophageal cancer? Am Surg. 2000;66:401–5;405–6 (discussion).
76. Torres C, Wang H, Turner J, Shahsafaei A, Odze RD. Prognostic significance and effect of chemoradiotherapy on microvessel density (angiogenesis) in esophageal Barrett's esophagus-associated adenocarcinoma and squamous cell carcinoma. Hum Pathol. 1999;30:753–8.
77. Couvelard A, Paraf F, Gratio V, Scoazec JY, Henin D, Degott C, et al. Angiogenesis in the neoplastic sequence of Barrett's oesophagus. Correlation with VEGF expression. J Pathol. 2000;192:14–8.
78. Lord RVN, Park JM, Wickramasinghe K, DeMeester SR, Oberg S, Salonga D, et al. Vascular endothelial growth factor and basic fibroblast growth factor expression in esophageal adenocarcinoma and Barrett esophagus. J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg. 2003;125:246–53.
79. Dubois RN, Gupta RA. Colorectal cancer prevention and treatment by inhibition of cyclooxygenase-2. Nat Rev Cancer. 2001;1:11–21.
80. Sawaoka H, Tsuji S, Tsujii M, Gunawan ES, Sasaki Y, Kawano S, Hori. Cyclooxygenase inhibitors suppress angiogenesis and reduce tumor growth in vivo. Lab Invest. 1999;79:1469–77.
81. Cheong E, Igali L, Harvey I, Mole M, Lund E, Johnson IT, et al. Cyclo-oxygenase-2 expression in Barrett's oesophageal carcinogenesis: an immunohitochemical study. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2003;17: 379–86.
82. Lagorce C, Paraf F, Vidaud D, Couvelard A, Wendum D, Martin A, et al. Cyclooxygenase-2 is expressed frequently

and early in Barrett's oesophagus and associated adenocarcinoma. Histopathology. 2003;42:457–65.
83. Buskens CJ, Van Rees BP, Sivula A, Reitsma JB, Haglund C, Bosma P, et al. Prognostic significance of elevated cyclooxygenase 2 expression in patients with adenocarcinoma of the esophagus. Gastroenterology. 2002;122:1800–7.
84. Wilson KT. Angiogenic markers, neovascularization and malignant deformation of Barrett's esophagus. Dis Esophag. 2002;15:16–21.
85. Kulke MH, Thakore KS, Thomas G, Wang H, Loda M, Eng C, Odze RD. Microsatellite instability and hMLH1/hMSH2 expression in Barrett esophagus-associated adenocarcinoma. Cancer. 2001; 91:1451–7.
86. Reichelt U, Duesedau P, Tsourlakis MCh, et al. Frequent homogeneous HER-2 amplification in primary and metastatic adenocarcinoma of the esophagus. Mod Pathol. 2007;20:120–9.
87. Rauser S, Weis R, Braselmann H, Feith M, Stein HJ, Langer R, et al. Significance of HER2 low-level copy gain in Barrett's cancer: implications for florescence in situ hybridization testing in tissues. Clin Cancer Res. 2007;13:5115–23.
88. Lin J, Raoof DA, Thomas DG, Greenson JK, Giordano TJ, Robinson GS, et al. L-type amino acid transporter-1 overexpression and melphalan sensitivity in Barrett's adenocarcinoma. Neoplasia. 2004;6:74–84.
89. Lin J, Lin L, Thomas DG, Greenson JK, Giordano TJ, Robinson GS, et al. Melanoma-associated antigens in esophageal adenocarcinoma: identification of novel MAGE-A10 splice variants. Clin Cancer Res. 2004;10:5708–16.
90. Brabender J, Lord RV, Wickramasinghe K, Metzger R, Schneider PM, Park JM, Holscher AH, DeMeester TR, Danenberg KD, Danenberg PV. Glutathione S-transferase-Pi expression is downregulated in patients with Barrett's esophagus and esophageal adenocarcinoma. J Gastrointest Surg. 2002;6:359–67.
91. Xu Y, Selaru F, Yin J, Zou TT, Shustova V, Mori Y, et al. Artificial neural networks and gene filtering distinguish between global gene expression profiles of Barrett's esophagus and esophageal cancer. Cancer Res. 2002;62:3493–7.
92. Selaru FM, Zou T, Xu Y, Shustova V, Yin J, Mori Y, et al. Global gene expression profiling in Barrett's esophagus and esophageal cancer: a comparative analysis using cDNA microarrays. Oncogene. 2002;21:475–8.
93. Wang S, Zhan M, Yin J, Abraham JM, Mori Y, Sato F, et al. Transcriptional profiling suggests that Barrett's metaplasia is an early intermediate stage in esophageal adenocarinogenesis. Oncogene. 2006;25:3346–56.
94. Brabender J, Marjoram P, Salonga D, Metzger R, Schneider PM, Park JM, et al. A multigene expression panel for the molecular diagnosis of Barrett's esophagus and Barrett's adenocarcinoma of the esophagus. Oncogene. 2004;23:4780–8.
95. Morgan C, Alazawi W, Sirieix P, Freeman T, Coleman N, Fitzgerald R. In vitro acid exposure has a differential effect on apoptotic and proliferative pathways in a Barrett's adenocarcinoma cell line. Am J Gastroenterol. 2004;218–24.
96. Cheng P, Gong J, Wang T, Jie C, Liu GS, Zhang R. Gene expression in Barrett's esophagus and reflux esophagitis induced by gastroduodenoesophageal refulux in rats. World J Gastroeneterol. 2005;11(21);3277–80.
97. Cheng P, Gong J, Wang T, Jie C, Liu GS, Zhang R. Gene expression in rats with Barrett's esophagus and esophageal adenocarcinoma induced by gastroduodenoesophageal reflux. World J Gastroenterol. 2005;11(33);5117–22.
98. Helm J, Enkemann S, Coppola D, Barthel JS, Kelley ST, Yeatman TJ. Dedifferentiation precedes invasion in the progression from Barrett's metaplasia to esophageal adenocarcinoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2005;11(7); 2478–85.
99. Sui G, Zhou S, Wang J, Canto M, Eshleman ER, Montgomery EA, et al. Mitochondrial DNA mutations in preneoplastic lesions of the gastrointestinal tract: a biomarker for the early detection of cancer. Mol Cancer. 2006;5:73.
100. Feber A, Xi L, Luketich J, Pennathur A, Landreneau RJ, Wu M, et al. MicroRNA expression profiles of esophageal cancer. J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg. 2008;135: 255–60.
101. Feldman A, Espina V, Petricoin EF, Liotta LA, Rosenblatt KP. Use of proteomic patterns to screen for gastrointestinal malignancies. Surgery. 2004;135(3); 243–7.
102. Zhao J, Chang AC, Li C, Shedden KA, Thomas DG, Misek DE, Manoharan AP, Giordano TJ, Beer DG, Lubman DM. Comparative proteomics analysis of Barrett metaplasia and esophageal adenocarcinoma using two-dimensional liquid mass mapping. Mol Cell Proteomics. 2007;6:987–99.
103. Ostrowski J, Mikula M, Karezmarski J, Rubel T, Wyrwicz LS, Bragoszewski P, Gaj P, Dadlez M, Butruk E, Regula J. Molecular defense mechanisms of Barrett's metaplasia estimated by an integrative genomics. J Mol Med. 2007;85(7);733–43.
104. Peng D, Sheta EA, Powell SM, Moskaluk CA, Washington K, Goldknopf IL, et al. Alterations in Barrett's-related adenocarcinomas: a proteomic approach. Int J Cancer. 2008;122(6);1303–10.

Chapter 16

Genesis of Pancreatic Ductal Neoplasia

Barbara A. Centeno and Gregory M. Springett

Contents

B.A. Centeno (✉)
Department of Anatomic Pathology and Gastrointestinal Tumor Program, Moffitt Cancer Center, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL, USA
e-mail: Barbara.Centeno@moffitt.org

16.1 Introduction

The epithelial components of the pancreas consist of acinar cells, ducts and islet cells. While the acini compose the majority of the pancreatic parenchyma, the majority of pancreatic carcinomas are of ductal type, rather than islet or acinar cell type. Indeed, when referring to pancreatic carcinoma, it is understood that one is referring to ductal adenocarcinoma of the pancreas.

The estimated incidence of pancreatic carcinoma in the United States for 2008 is 37,680, while the estimated number of deaths for 2008 is 34,290 [1]. Pancreatic cancer is the tenth most frequent cancer in men, accounting for approximately 3% of cancers in men, and accounts for less than 3% of cancers in women, and is not in the top ten for women, yet it ranks fourth as the overall leading cause of death in both sexes [2]. The 5-year overall relative survival rate for all stages is 5.1% [1]. Pancreatic cancer is such a lethal disease because it typically presents at a late stage, only 7% of patients present with carcinoma confined to the pancreas, 52% present with distant metastases, 26% are diagnosed after the carcinoma has spread to regional lymph nodes, and in the remaining 15%, the stage is unknown. Patients with localized disease have the best survival, with a 5-year survival rate of 20%. Those presenting with distant metastases have a 5-year survival rate of 1.8% [1].

Better understanding of the cellular and molecular processes which lead to the development of pancreatic carcinoma are vital both to improving the outcome for patients who present with either early or late stage disease, and also for early detection. The last two decades have seen an explosion in the knowledge of pancreatic

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_16,

cancer progression, resulting in the development of a progression model.

16.2 Epidemiology and Etiology

Pancreatic carcinoma presents primarily in older patients, with a median age of 72. The majority of cases present between the ages of 65–85 [1]. It occurs slightly more often in men than women. Black males are at the greatest risk, having a 50% increased risk of developing pancreatic carcinoma compared to whites [3], and it is slightly more common in people of Jewish descent.

The etiology of pancreatic carcinoma is unknown. Smoking, obesity, diet, alcohol, diabetes mellitus and chronic pancreatitis have all been reported to be associated with an increased risk [4]. Cigarette smoking is the most consistently identified risk factor, with an increased the risk of 2–3 fold [5]. The association with smokeless tobacco is not as clear, with one study reporting an increased risk between that of nonsmokers and smokers [6] and another study finding no increase [7]. Other risk factors include obesity, long standing diabetes, and chronic pancreatitis [4, 8–11]. The association with diet has been more controversial [12]. An association with eating red meats has been reported, but what appears to be consistent is that the method of cooking meats and eating pork and red meats is associated with a significant risk [13]. There is also an association resulting in long-standing diabetes and chronic pancreatitis.

16.3 Hereditary Pancreatic Carcinoma

Significant insight into the understanding of pancreatic carcinogenesis has been gained from studying the familial syndromes with which it is associated. Pancreatic carcinoma aggregates in families, accounting for 5–10% of all cases. A family history of pancreatic carcinoma is an indicator of pancreatic cancer risk [14], increasing the risk on average by 1.5–13 fold [15]. Syndromes with specific genetic alterations have been identified, but not all cases of familial pancreatic carcinoma are attributable to known syndromes; these cases are referred to as familial pancreatic cancer [16, 17] and show an autosomal dominant pattern of inheritance most likely due to a rare allele [15, 18]. The specific syndromes and germline mutations associated with pancreatic cancer in families include ataxia-telangiectasia syndrome (p53) [19, 20], hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer Lynch II variant (hLMH1, hMSH2) [21], familial Atypical Multiple Mole Melanoma Syndrome (p16) [22], Peutz-Jegher Syndrome (STK11/LKB1) [23], Hereditary Breast and Ovarian Cancer (BRCA2) [24], and Hereditary Pancreatitis (PRSS1) [25, 26]. Recently, germline mutations to BRCA1 have also been found to contribute to the development of pancreatic cancer [27]. Identification of these genes contributed to understanding the carcinogenesis of pancreatic carcinoma, as the same genes that are mutated in pancreatic carcinoma are mutated in sporadic cases [28].

16.4 Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma Precursor Lesions

The morphology and nomenclature for ductal pancreatic cancer precursor lesions was standardized by the Pancreas Cancer Think Tank, sponsored by the National Cancer Institute, which met in Park City, Utah, in 1999 [29]. Up until this meeting, the terminology utilized to report on ductal precursor lesions included lesions, metaplasia, hyperplasia, dysplasia and neoplasia. The result was that data from different researchers evaluating the molecular progression of pancreatic carcinoma could not be compared. The terminology pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia (PanIN), which applies to lesions arising in the smaller caliber pancreatic ducts, was unanimously adapted based on growing evidence that the spectrum of these lesions reflect a tumor progression model with neoplastic potential. The authors standardized the morphologic criteria for grade 1A, 1B, 2 and 3 PanIN, (Figs. 16.1–16.4) based the grading system on the degree of architectural complexity and cytological atypia.

PanINs harbor many of the same genetic alterations found in invasive ductal adenocarcinoma of the pancreas. There is a clear accumulation of genetic alterations associated with the histological progression from PanIN 1 to PanIN 3 and invasive carcinoma.

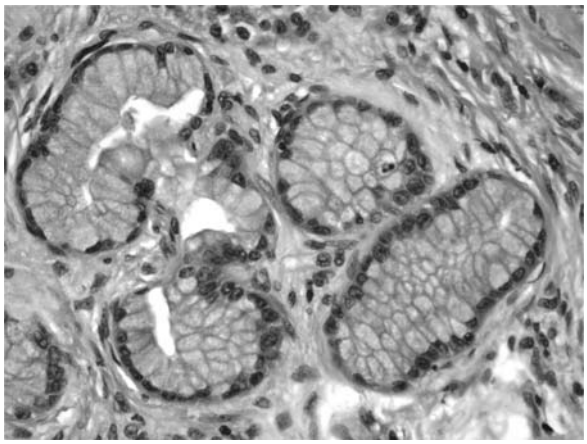


Fig. 16.1 Grades of dysplasia in PanIN 1a. The normal ductal epithelium in this small caliber duct is replaced by tall, columnar, mucinous epithelium

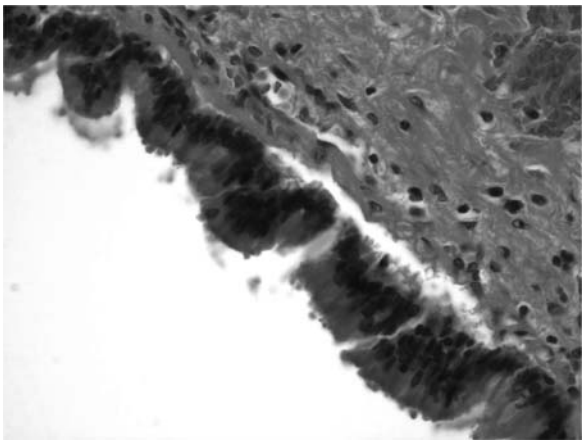


Fig. 16.3 Grades of dysplasia in PanIN 2. The nuclei are enlarged, hyperchromatic and elongated. They are crowded and overlapping but remain oriented to the basal layer

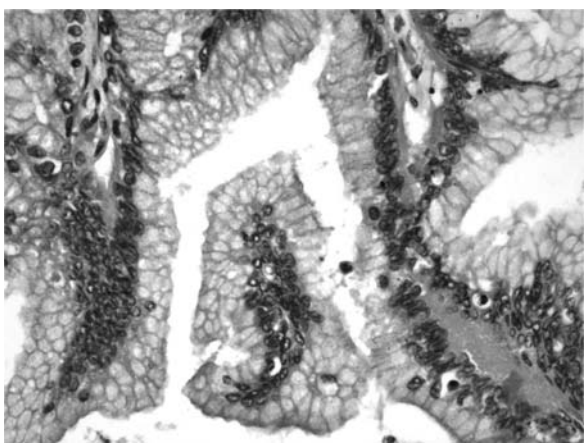


Fig. 16.2 Grades of dysplasia in PanIN 1b. The lining epithelium becomes architecturally complex, and is thrown into small papillae. The nuclei remain basally located, with minimal atypia

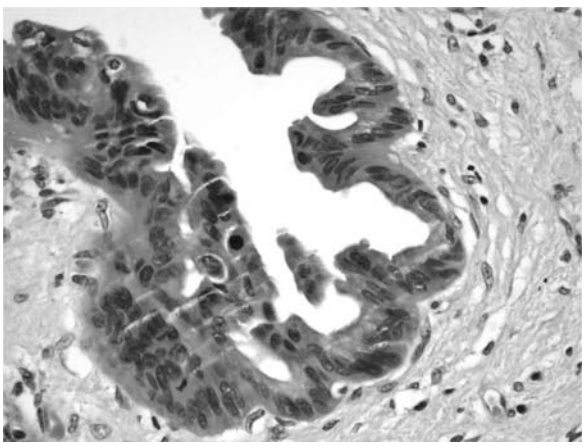


Fig. 16.4 Grades of dysplasia in PanIN 3. The nuclei are enlarged with vesicular nuclei and prominent nucleoli. There is significant mitotic activity, and the mitoses extend to the surface. The nuclei show loss of polarity, extending to the luminal surface

A progression model for pancreatic carcinoma has been developed based on these observations [30].

Intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasms and mucinous cystic neoplasms are the other forms of pre-invasive pancreatic neoplasia, both of which present as visible masses on imaging studies [31]. Intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasms (IPMN) are grossly visible neoplasms arising in the main pancreatic duct or one of its branches, characterized morphologically by a mucinous epithelium replacing the normal ductal epithelium that may also exhibit a papillary growth pattern. These lesions are distinct from PanINs in that they arise in the main duct system and present as a visible mass on imaging studies. Mucinous cystic neoplasms (MCN) are also grossly visible lesions. In contrast to IPMN, they do not communicate with the pancreatic ductal system, and in contrast to both PanIN and IPMN, the cysts are surrounded by an ovarian type stroma. Just as in PanIN, both IPMN and MCN show a progression of the degree of atypia of the duct lining epithelium, graded as low-grade, moderate grade and high grade.

Since PanIN are still considered to be the most common of these three precursor lesions, and most of the studies and progress made in understanding progression has focused on these lesions, the remainder of the discussion will be limited to PanIN.

16.5 Genetic and Molecular Alterations in Pancreatic Carcinoma

16.5.1 Telomeres

One of the earliest initiating events in pancreatic carcinogenesis is telomere dysfunction and shortening, which leads to chromosomal instability. Utilizing an in-situ hybridization technique assessing telomere length on a tissue microarray of PanINs, van Heek et al. [32] found telomere shortening in 96% of all PanINs examined, with 91% of all PanIN 1A harboring this abnormality. The reduction in telomere length was found in any PanIN lesion, whether it was associated with invasive adenocarcinoma or chronic pancreatitis. Ducts with atrophy or inflammation retained telomere length. This finding indicates that all PanIN lesions are truly neoplastic. Telomere shortening is the most common early genetic event occurring in PanIN 1A, with its reported frequency of 96% exceeding even that of K-ras oncogene activation (50%). The genesis of telomere shortening has not yet been elucidated.

16.5.2 Tumor Suppressor Genes

p16/CDKN2A is the most frequently inactivated tumor suppressor gene in pancreatic carcinoma [33], occurring in 90% of pancreatic carcinomas [34]. The loss occurs by homozygous deletion, intragenic mutation with loss of the second allele, and epigenetic silencing by promoter methylation. It is first identified in PanIN 2 lesions. The p16/CDKN2A gene encodes for the $p16^{INK4A}$ protein, part of the cyclin –dependent kinase (CDK) inhibitor family, regulating the cell cycle through the p16/Rb pathway. This protein normally inhibits cell cycle progression through the G1-S checkpoint. Loss of p16 is seen in 30% PanIN 1, 55% PanIN 2 and 71% of PanIN [35].

Inactivation of p53 is identified in 50–75% of pancreatic carcinomas. The method of inactivation typically involves intragenic mutation in one allele coupled with loss of the second allele [36]. The functions of p53 in the cell include G1/S cell cycle checkpoint, maintenance of G2/M arrest and induction of apoptosis. p53 mutations lead to dysregulation of apoptosis and cell cycle control in pancreatic cancer. Mutations in p53 occur late, showing up in PanIN 3 [37].

The DPC4/MADH4/SMAD 4 gene is inactivated in 55% of all pancreatic carcinomas and occurs late in pancreatic carcinogenesis [38]. This gene codes for Madh4 protein, a mediator in the TGFα pathway, which is a tumor suppressive pathway. A number of receptors in the TGFα pathway, including TGFα receptor types 1 and 2 and the activin receptors types 1B and 2 exert their effects through Madh4. Emphasizing the importance of this pathway in pancreatic carcinogenesis, mutations in the genes encoding for these receptors, TGFαR1 and 2, ACVRB/ALK4, and ACVR2, have been found in pancreatic and carcinomas [39–41] in low frequencies.

Mutations in the STK11/LKB1 gene occur in both familial and sporadic cases of pancreatic carcinoma. Mutations in this gene are the cause of the autosomal-dominant inherited disorder Peutz-Jegher syndrome. Patients with this disorder have a relative risk for pancreatic cancer of 132 [42]. In a Peutz-Jegher syndrome patient with both intestinal polyps and pancreatic cancer, sequencing analysis revealed loss of the STK11/LKB1 wild-type allele in the pancreatic cancer. As part of this same study, 127 sporadic cases of pancreatic and biliary tract cancers were evaluated for mutations in STK11/LKB1. Homozygous deletions or somatic sequence mutations coupled with loss of heterozygosity, were demonstrated in 4–6% of these cancers [23].

Other tumor suppressors targeted less frequently include mitogen activated protein kinase-4 (MKK4) [43], EP300 which codes for p300 which is a histone acetyltransferase regulating transcription [44] and FBXW7, a cyclin E regulator [45].

16.5.3 Oncogenes

K-RAS gene mutations are the most frequently identified mutations in pancreatic cancer, found in approximately 90% of all pancreatic carcinomas [46].

Most mutations are single point mutation in codon 12, with mutations in codon 13 and 61 occurring infrequently. Kras mutations play two roles in pancreatic carcinogenesis: initiation and maintenance. Kras gene mutations occur early and are an initiating event [47]. Constitutively active KRAS signaling, induced by the mutation in the KRAS protein, is needed for pancreatic cancer maintenance.

Mutations in the BRAF gene have been identified in one-third of pancreatic cancers lacking a mutation in KRAS [45]. Mutations in both Kras and BRAF are mutually exclusive, but both affect the RAF-MAP signaling pathway, suggesting that this is a very important pathway.

16.5.4 BRCA 2 and Fanconi Anemia Pathway Genes: Caretaker Genes

Germline mutations in BRCA2 are a source of familial cases of pancreatic carcinoma [48] and are identified in up to 7% of pancreatic carcinomas [24], even in patients with apparently sporadic disease. Mutations in BRCA2 also appear to be a late event in pancreatic carcinogenesis, similar to p53 and DPC4, presenting in PanIN 3 [49].

Recent studies have linked BCA2 to some cases of Fanconi anemia, and also identified some Fanconi anemia genes (FANC) as being mutated in pancreatic cancer. Biallelic mutations in BRCA2 gene are responsible for a subset of Fanconi anemia cases [50]. Other Fanconi genes were surveyed in 22 pancreatic cancer xenografts and 11 pancreatic cancer cell lines. A germline nonsense mutation was identified in FANCC in one cell line and somatic frameshift mutations were identified in FANCG in one xenograft. Both of these were accompanied by loss of a second allele [51]. The rate of mutations in FANCC and FANCG is estimated to be about 3% [52].

16.5.5 Gene Overexpression

Her2neu overexpression occurs in approximately 70% of pancreatic adenocarcinomas. It occurs early, being identified in 82% of PanIN 1A lesions [53].

16.6 Epigenetic Changes

Epigenetic changes, characterized by both hypo and hypermethylation of genes, play an important role in pancreatic carcinogenesis [54] by either silencing or activating a number of genes. Aberrant hypermethylation of the promoter region of the p16 gene is responsible for inactivation of this tumor suppressor gene in the 15–20% of cases lacking bi-allelic mutational silencing [33]. Examples of other genes that are frequently hypermethylated include SPARC(55) and ppENK [56]. Aberrant methylation of p16 and ppENK were detected in PanIN and in IPMN at various frequencies. As the neoplasms progressed, the frequency of aberrant methylation increased [57, 58].

Aberrant hypomethylation of genes can cause aberrant gene activation (54). An example of one such gene, identified as being overexpressed in pancreatic carcinoma using gene expression profiling is S100A4 [59]. Other genes identified as being hypomethylated in pancreatic cancer include claudin4, lipocalin2, 14-3-3σ, trefoil factor2, mesothelin and PSCA [60]. Of note in this list is 14-3-3σ, which is abnormally methylated in 85 and 97% of pancreatic cancer cell lines and xenografts, respectively, making it the most frequently hypomethylated gene in pancreatic cancer.

16.7 Alterations in Core Signaling Pathways

A comprehensive genetic analysis of nearly all of the protein-coding genes in the human genome performed in 24 pancreatic cancers defined a core set of 12 cellular signaling pathways and processes that were altered in 67–100% of the pancreatic carcinomas examined. The specific component that may be altered in a specific tumor could vary widely. While individual studies have identified specific gene mutations, this process provides an understanding of the significance of certain pathways to the development of pancreatic cancer [61]. Table 16.1 lists the regulatory pathway and processes. Specific mutations or genetic alterations relating to a number of these pathways have been touched upon in the preceding discussion. Two pathways, the hedgehog signaling pathways and Wnt/Notch

Table 16.1 Regulatory processes or pathways altered in pancreatic carcinoma, identified using global genomic analysis

Regulatory process or pathway	Fraction of tumors with genetic alteration of at least one of the genes (%)
Apoptosis	100
DNA damage control	83
Regulation of G_1/S phase transition	100
Hedgehog signaling	100
Homophilic cell adhesion	79
Integrin signaling	67
c-Jun N-terminal kinase signaling	96
KRAS signaling	100
Regulation of invasion	92
Small GTPase-dependent signaling (other than KRAS)	79
TGF-β signaling	100
Wnt/Notch signaling	100

signaling pathways merit further discussion since these are relatively recently identified alterations in pancreatic carcinoma, and both pathways play a role in normal pancreatic development.

16.7.1 Developmental Signaling Pathways

Hedgehog signaling has a critical role in pancreatic development and results in malignant transformation when mutated. Misregulation of hedgehog signaling plays a role in both initiation and maintenance of pancreatic cancer. Hedgehog exerts its effects at the cellular level through two receptors, Smoothened (Smo) and Patched (PTCH). Mutational inactivation of PTCH or overexpression of Smo lead to activation of the Hegehog pathway. Immunohistochemical studies demonstrating overexpression of sonic hedgehog and Smo in PanINs and adenocarcinomas, but not in normal ducts, confirm that hedgehog is both an early and late mediator of pancreatic carcinogenesis [62]. This pathway is required for cell proliferation and suppression of apoptosis in pancreatic cancer.

Notch pathway receptors (Notch 1–4), ligands (Jagged 1 and 2), and transcriptional targets (Hes1), are overexpressed in both invasive adenocarcinomas and PanINs. Activation of Notch in PanINs is dependent on the ligand, particularly Jagged1, identified in microarray analysis Overexpression of Notch occurs in acinar-ductal metaplasia (see section on Pancreatic Cancer Cell of Origin) and in PanIN 1 lesions in the mouse model. Overexpression of TGFα leads to upregulation of Notch [63]. Augmented EGF, particularly TGFα activity, may be an initiating event, with resulting Notch pathway activation in exocrine tissue [63].

Activation of the Wnt pathway occurs via activating mutations in b-catenin or loss of function mutations in APC. Wnt pathways mutations are rare in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma, but are observed more frequently in nonductal tumors. As one would expect based on these findings, Wnt is a rare finding in PanIN lesions [37]

16.8 Altered Protein Expression

In addition to genetic mutations, alterations in protein expression occur due to upregulation.

16.8.1 Cyclooxygenase 2 (COX-2)

COX-2 levels are upregulated in pancreatic cancer. COX 2 inhibitors delay progression of PanIN to adenocarcinoma in the mouse model and slow the growth of pancreatic cancer cell lines [64–66]. COX 2 overexpression appears to occur early in PanIN, being identified in PanIN and in all of the subsequent grades.

16.8.2 Matrix Metalloproteinase 7 (MMP-7, Matrilysin)

MMP-7 is a member of the MMP family of zinc dependent extracellular proteases. This protein is observed in invasive adenocarcinoma and in greater than 70% of PanIN lesions. It is associated with resistance to apoptosis, and plays a role in cancer invasion and metastasis [67–69].

16.8.3 Mucins

MUC1 and MUC 4 are associated with pancreatic cancer. MUC1 is expressed at the early stage of gestation in the fetal pancreas. In normal pancreas, expression of MUC 1 is confined to the apical portion of intralobular ductules. During pancreatic carcinogenesis, it is expressed in PanIN, and its expression increases with the progression to invasive cancer. MUC 4 is not expressed in normal pancreatic development or the normal pancreas, but is expressed in PanIN and invasive cancer. Both of these mucins appear to exert their effects by disturbing cell–cell or cell–matrix interactions [70].

16.8.4 Cell Cycle Regulation Proteins

PAnIN lesions show abnormalities in cell cycle regulation demonstrated by utilization of immunohistochemistry for proliferation antigens such as ki-67 and for cell-cycle proteins. Immunohistochemical labeling for Ki-67 shows increasing expression from PanIN 1A to 3. The highest percentage of Ki-67 positive cells is identified in invasive carcinoma [71]. Topoisomerase IIα, needed for the relaxation of the DNA supercoil, is expressed in PanIN in concordance with the expression of Ki-67 [37]. Cyclin D1, a co-factor in the phosphorylation and inactivation of the Rb gene, is overexpressed in invasive pancreatic adenocarcinomas. Overexpression of cyclin D1 within PanIN occurs in a third of PanIN 2 and half of PanIN 3 lesions, placing it as an intermediate event [37].

$P21^{WAF/CIP1}$ is a cyclin dependent kinase inhibitor whose role is to prevent phosphorylation of the Rb gene. Immunohistochemical expression of $P21^{WAF/CIP1}$ shows expression of this protein at PanIN 1A level, preceding even cyclin D1 [72].

16.9 Gene Expression Profiling

A large number of studies have been published using a variety of platforms to evaluate gene expression abnormalities in pancreatic carcinoma. Novel genes identified include prostate stem cell antigen (PSCA) and mesothelin [73]. Genes that are overexpressed in pancreatic carcinoma compared to normal ducts include topoisomerase IIα, fascin, heat shock protein 47 and pleckstrin. Two members of the S100 family of genes, namely S100P and S100A6, showed significant upregulation in one study. S100P was found to be specific for pancreatic cancer [74].

16.10 miRNA Analysis

MicroRNAs (miRNAs) regulate cellular differentiation, apoptosis, and cell growth, thereby functioning as tumor suppressors or oncogenes. Recent studies have shown that miRNAs are deregulated in pancreatic cancer. One study identified eight miRNAs as being significantly upregulated in most pancreatic cancer tissues and cell lines. These include miR-196a, miR-190, miR-186, miR-221, miR-222, miR-200b, miR-15b, and miR-95 [75]. Another study found miR-221, -376a and -301 overexpressed by tumor cells and not stroma or normal acini or ducts [76]. Upregulation of these miRNAs must play a role in the control of various pathways involved in pancreatic carcinogenesis.

MicroRNAs are an important component of the p53 transcriptional pathway. A direct role for one miRNA, miR-34a, has been found in pancreatic cancer. This miRNA is directly transactivated by p53. It is commonly deleted in human cancers, including pancreatic cancers. It appears to modulate and fine-tune the gene expression program initiated by p53 [77]. The abnormalities in this particular miRNA illustrate the important role of miRNAs in normal cellular function and how they contribute to pancreatic carcinogenensis. Further studies of other specific miRNAs may lead to better understanding of the function of miRNAs in pancreatic cancer.

16.11 Progression Pathway in PanINs

A pancreatic adenocarcinoma progression model has been developed incorporating the molecular alterations with the stage of neoplasia at which they first occur [78]. Changes occurring prior to the development of PanIN lesions, in the precursor cells include upregulation of Notch signaling pathways. The earliest event

is telomere shortening. Other early events, occurring in PanIN 1 lesions, include KRAS mutations, Her2neu overexpression, p21 (WAF1/CIP1) up regulation, and overexpression of PSCA, mucin 5, fascin and MMP 7. Mutations occurring in the intermediate phase, in PanIN 2, include p16 inactivation, epigenetic alterations and cyclin D1 activation. Late phase alterations occurring in PanIN 3 include p53, BRCA 2 and DPC 4 mutations and upregulation of 14-3-3σ. Proliferation markers Ki-67 and topoisomeraseIIα are expressed late, also. Mesothelin is upregulated in the process of or after invasion by the neoplastic cells [37, 79].

16.12 Mouse Models of Pancreatic Cancer

The importance of the genetic alterations in KRAS, P53 and $p16^{INK4a}$ in the molecular pathogenesis of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma is underscored by studies in mouse models of pancreatic cancer [80–82]. In recent years, at least 12 different genetically engineered mouse models of pancreatic neoplasia have been generated [81]. The successes and failures of these various models to faithfully recapitulate the evolution from PanIN1 to invasive ductal adenocarcinoma that occurs in humans has been essential in the effort to define the minimal number of essential genetic lesions needed to produce pancreatic cancer.

Some of the first attempts to make a mouse model of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma employed transgenic expression of TGFα or mutated KRAS ($KRAS^{G12D}$) driven by the rat elastase gene promoter [81]. While the elastase promoter is active in the pancreas, it directs expression primarily in the acinar cell lineage. These mouse models are characterized by prominent acinar to ductal metaplasia. The mice developed primarily acinar cell carcinomas and a small number of undifferentiated carcinomas. Characteristic PanIN lesions were not a prominent feature of pancreatic carcinogenesis in these mice. Whether or not acinar to ductal metaplasia is a prominent feature of human pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma remains controversial, and will be discussed in the next section on cellular precursors of pancreatic carcinoma. In any case, the disease that results in these mice does not resemble the human disease.

Mice have also been engineered that have targeted disruption of $p16^{INK4a}$. These mice do not develop PanIN or ductal adenocarcinoma, indicating that this genetic change is not likely to be an initiating event in ductal carcinogenesis. Since targeting the expression of oncogenes to the acinar lineage did not yield a true mouse model of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma, efforts were made to use promoter elements from genes that are expressed in the ductal cell lineage. To this end a transgenic mouse model was made in which expression of mutated KRAS ($KRAS^{G12V}$) was driven by the Cytokeratin-19 promoter. This promoter is active in mature differentiated ductal epithelium. Remarkably, these mice did not develop pancreatic tumors of any kind or ductal neoplasia. This result may indicate that the presence of KRAS alone in the ductal epithelium is insufficient for tumorigenesis and that other mutations are required. Alternatively, expression of KRAS late in the terminally differentiated duct when Cytokeratin-19 is being expressed is not a permissive time to initiate neoplasia. An alternative strategy has been employed in which conditional mouse mutants are generated in a tissue specific manner. In the Pdx1-cre; LSL-$Kras^{G12D}$ model, an endogenous KRAS allele is modified to contain an activating mutation at codon 12. Constitutive expression of this allele is prevented by insertion of a segment of DNA that stops transcription and translation of the mutant allele. This DNA segment is flanked by LoxP recombination sites for Cre recombinase. A separate line of mice was generated that express Cre recombinase in pancreatic ductal epithelial progenitor cells using the Pdx-1 promoter. Pdx-1 is a transcription factor that is expressed at a very early stage during the development of the pancreas. When the Pdx1-Cre mice and the LoxP-Stop-LoxP-$Kras^{G12D}$ mice are crossed, the resulting line of mice expresses the mutant Kras allele only in the pancreatic epithelium. With this approach the mutant Kras is expressed at physiological levels. The mice develop PanIN1, PanIN2 and PanIN3 with 100% penetrance. Over a period of several months, these mice go on to develop invasive ductal adenocarcinomas that are well to moderately differentiated, with focal areas of anaplastic tumor. Metastatic spread of the tumors to lymph nodes and liver is also seen. The median survival of this mouse model is 16 months. When the Pdx1-cre; LSL-$Kras^{G12D}$ mouse is interbred with a mouse line that is deficient in $p16^{INK4a/Arf}$ or a mouse that carries the gain of function P53 mutation

($Trp53^{R172H}$), the development of invasive pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma is dramatically accelerated. Invasive cancer appears within 4 weeks. In the absence of $p16^{INK4a/Arf}$ the median survival is 10 weeks and in the presence of $Trp53^{R172H}$ the median survival is 5 months. Therefore, these mouse models have confirmed that mutation of KRAS and loss of p16 or p53 are sufficient to produce a disease in mice that is molecularly and histopathologically indistinguishable from human ductal adenocarcinoma [81].

16.13 Pancreatic Cancer Cell of Origin

The studies in the mouse models have not only confirmed that the proposed molecular progression pathway is accurate, but also introduced new questions about the cell of origin of pancreatic cancer. One mouse model which targeted the mature ductal epithelium did not produce mPanIN or neoplasia, suggesting that the mature ductal cell is not the cell of origin for pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma [83]. Other options include pancreatic cancer stem cells, centroacinar cells (CAC) and acinar cells. A highly tumorigenic subpopulation expressing the CD 44, CD 24 and epithelial specific antigen (ESA) was identified in human pancreatic adenocarcinomas [84]. These cells had a 100-fold increased tumorigenic potential compared to nontumorigenic cancer cells. They also had the stem cell properties of self renewal, the ability to produce differentiated progeny, and increased expression of sonic hedgehog. The centroacinar cell has the potential of being resident stem or progenitor cells based on the fact that they are the only cell in the mature exocrine pancreas with retained Notch activation, as assessed by Hes1 expression. Since Notch signaling is known to repress differentiation in the developing pancreas, this suggests that centroacinar cells may retain a precursor-like transcriptional program [63, 85]. While centroacinar cells appear to retain a precursor like transcriptional program, acinar cells appear to be facultative progenitor cells, taking on a progenitor role when the pancreas is damaged and regenerating.

Three lines of evidence support this theory. The first is that acinar cells dedifferentiate in caerulein induced chemical pancreatitis, expressing Pdx1 and Hes1, markers of progenitor cells [86]. The second is the presence of acinar-ductal metaplasia, induced by growth factors, specifically TGFα [63]. That acinar cells differentiate into ductal cells has been confirmed by lineage tracing experiments in reporter mice [87]. Finally, in a mouse model which targeted $KRAS^{G12D}$ allele to elastase expressing acinar cells, mPanIN and adenocarcinoma arose from acinar-ductal metaplasia. Acinar to ductal metaplasia is illustrated in Fig. 16.5.

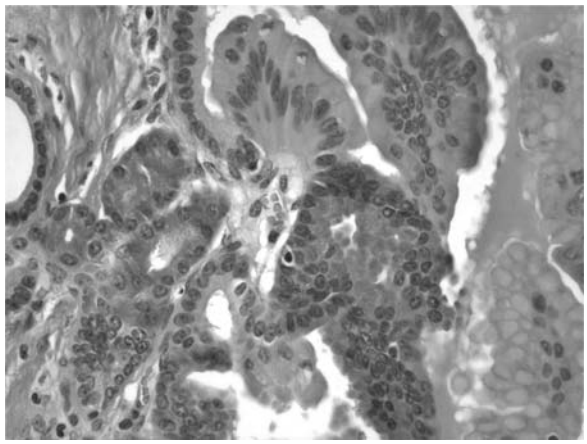


Fig. 16.5 Acinar-ductal metaplasia in human pancreas. This image is taken from a pancreatic resection specimen. This duct is lined by mucinous epithelium. Evident within the duct are also acinar cells. A transition from the acinar cells to the ductal mucinous cells is evident

16.14 Conclusion

PanIN has been established as the precursor lesion for invasive pancreatic carcinoma. A progression model with sequential accumulation of mutations and overexpression of various pathways has been elucidated through numerous studies. This model has been validated in the mouse model of pancreatic carcinogenesis. Future studies in the mouse model will lead to further understanding of the mechanisms involved in the development of pancreatic cancer, and identify new targets both for therapy and prevention.

References

1. Health NCINIo. In: Sheet SSF, editor. Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Results: 2008.
2. Cancer Prevention & Early Detection Facts & Figures 2008. In: American Cancer Society: 2008.

3. Lowenfels AB, Maisonneuve P. Risk factors for pancreatic cancer. J Cell Biochem 2005;95(4):649–56.
4. Gold EB, Goldin SB. Epidemiology of and risk factors for pancreatic cancer. Surg Oncol Clin N Am 1998;7(1):67–91.
5. Villeneuve PJ, Johnson KC, Mao Y, Hanley AJ. Environmental tobacco smoke and the risk of pancreatic cancer: findings from a Canadian population-based case-control study. Can J Public Health 2004;95(1):32–7.
6. Boffetta P, Hecht S, Gray N, Gupta P, Straif K. Smokeless tobacco and cancer. Lancet Oncol 2008;9(7):667–75.
7. Hassan MM, Abbruzzese JL, Bondy ML, Wolff RA, Vauthey JN, Pisters PW, et al. Passive smoking and the use of noncigarette tobacco products in association with risk for pancreatic cancer: a case-control study. Cancer 2007;109(12):2547–56.
8. Luo J, Margolis KL, Adami HO, LaCroix A, Ye W. Obesity and risk of pancreatic cancer among postmenopausal women: the Women's Health Initiative (United States). Br J Cancer 2008;99(3):527–31.
9. Stolzenberg-Solomon RZ, Adams K, Leitzmann M, Schairer C, Michaud DS, Hollenbeck A, et al. Adiposity, physical activity, and pancreatic cancer in the National Institutes of Health-AARP Diet and Health Cohort. Am J Epidemiol 2008;167(5):586–97.
10. Reeves GK, Pirie K, Beral V, Green J, Spencer E, Bull D. Cancer incidence and mortality in relation to body mass index in the Million Women Study: cohort study. BMJ 2007;335(7630);1134.
11. Berrington de Gonzalez A, Sweetland S, Spencer E. A meta-analysis of obesity and the risk of pancreatic cancer. Br J Cancer 2003;89(3):519–23.
12. Michaud DS, Skinner HG, Wu K, Hu F, Giovannucci E, Willett WC, et al. Dietary patterns and pancreatic cancer risk in men and women. J Natl Cancer Inst 2005;97(7): 518–24.
13. Stolzenberg-Solomon RZ, Cross AJ, Silverman DT, Schairer C, Thompson FE, Kipnis V, et al. Meat and meat-mutagen intake and pancreatic cancer risk in the NIH-AARP cohort. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2007;16(12):2664–75.
14. Permuth-Wey J, Egan KM. Family history is a significant risk factor for pancreatic cancer: results from a systematic review and meta- analysis. Fam Cancer 2009;8:109–17.
15. Klein AP, Beaty TH, Bailey-Wilson JE, Brune KA, Hruban RH, Petersen GM. Evidence for a major gene influencing risk of pancreatic cancer. Genet Epidemiol 2002;23(2):133–49.
16. Rulyak SJ, Brentnall TA. Inherited pancreatic cancer: improvements in our understanding of genetics and screening. Int J Biochem Cell Biol 2004;36(8):1386–92.
17. Grocock CJ, Vitone LJ, Harcus MJ, Neoptolemos JP, Raraty MG, Greenhalf W. Familial pancreatic cancer: a review and latest advances. Adv Med Sci 2007;52: 37–49.
18. Del Chiaro M, Zerbi A, Falconi M, Bertacca L, Polese M, Sartori N, et al. Cancer risk among the relatives of patients with pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. Pancreatology 2007;7(5–6):459–69.
19. Swift M, Chase CL, Morrell D. Cancer predisposition of ataxia- telangiectasia heterozygotes. Cancer Genet Cytogenet 1990;46(1):21–7.
20. Geoffroy-Perez B, Janin N, Ossian K, Lauge A, Croquette MF, Griscelli C, et al. Cancer risk in heterozygotes for ataxia- telangiectasia. Int J Cancer 2001;93(2):288–93.
21. Lynch HT, Voorhees GJ, Lanspa SJ, McGreevy PS, Lynch JF. Pancreatic carcinoma and hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer: a family study. Br J Cancer 1985;52(2): 271–3.
22. Goldstein AM, Fraser MC, Struewing JP, Hussussian CJ, Ranade K, Zametkin DP, et al. Increased risk of pancreatic cancer in melanoma- prone kindreds with p16INK4 mutations. N Engl J Med 1995;333(15): 970–4.
23. Su GH, Hruban RH, Bansal RK, Bova GS, Tang DJ, Shekher MC, et al. Germline and somatic mutations of the STK11/LKB1 Peutz-Jeghers gene in pancreatic and biliary cancers. Am J Pathol 1999;154(6):1835–40.
24. Goggins M, Schutte M, Lu J, Moskaluk CA, Weinstein CL, Petersen GM, et al. Germline BRCA2 gene mutations in patients with apparently sporadic pancreatic carcinomas. Cancer Res 1996;56(23): 5360–4.
25. Lowenfels AB, Maisonneuve P, DiMagno EP, Elitsur Y, Gates LK, Jr., Perrault J, et al. Hereditary pancreatitis and the risk of pancreatic cancer. International Hereditary Pancreatitis Study Group. J Natl Cancer Inst 1997;89(6):442–6.
26. Whitcomb DC, Gorry MC, Preston RA, Furey W, Sossenheimer MJ, Ulrich CD, et al. Hereditary pancreatitis is caused by a mutation in the cationic trypsinogen gene. Nat Genet 1996;14(2):141–5.
27. Al-Sukhni W, Rothenmund H, Borgida AE, Zogopoulos G, O'Shea AM, Pollett A, et al. Germline BRCA1 mutations predispose to pancreatic adenocarcinoma. Hum Genet 2008;124(3):271–8.
28. Hruban RH, Petersen GM, Ha PK, Kern SE. Genetics of pancreatic cancer. From genes to families. Surg Oncol Clin N Am 1998;7(1):1–23.
29. Hruban RH, Adsay NV, Albores-Saavedra J, Compton C, Garrett ES, Goodman SN, et al. Pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia: a new nomenclature and classification system for pancreatic duct lesions. Am J Surg Pathol 2001;25(5): 579–86.
30. Hruban RH, Wilentz RE, Kern SE. Genetic progression in the pancreatic ducts. Am J Pathol 2000;156(6):1821–5.
31. Maitra A, Fukushima N, Takaori K, Hruban RH. Precursors to invasive pancreatic cancer. Adv Anat Pathol 2005;12(2):81–91.
32. van Heek NT, Meeker AK, Kern SE, Yeo CJ, Lillemoe KD, Cameron JL, et al. Telomere shortening is nearly universal in pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia. Am J Pathol 2002;161(5):1541–7.
33. Schutte M, Hruban RH, Geradts J, Maynard R, Hilgers W, Rabindran SK, et al. Abrogation of the Rb/p16 tumor-suppressive pathway in virtually all pancreatic carcinomas. Cancer Res 1997;57(15):3126–30.
34. Maitra A, Kern SE, Hruban RH. Molecular pathogenesis of pancreatic cancer. Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol 2006;20(2):211–26.
35. Wilentz RE, Geradts J, Maynard R, Offerhaus GJ, Kang M, Goggins M, et al. Inactivation of the p16 (INK4A) tumor-suppressor gene in pancreatic duct lesions: loss of intranuclear expression. Cancer Res 1998;58(20): 4740–4.

36. Redston MS, Caldas C, Seymour AB, Hruban RH, da Costa L, Yeo CJ, et al. p53 mutations in pancreatic carcinoma and evidence of common involvement of homocopolymer tracts in DNA microdeletions. Cancer Res 1994;54(11): 3025–33.
37. Maitra A, Adsay NV, Argani P, Iacobuzio-Donahue C, De Marzo A, Cameron JL, et al. Multicomponent analysis of the pancreatic adenocarcinoma progression model using a pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia tissue microarray. Mod Pathol 2003;16(9): 902–12.
38. Wilentz RE, Iacobuzio-Donahue CA, Argani P, McCarthy DM, Parsons JL, Yeo CJ, et al. Loss of expression of Dpc4 in pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia: evidence that DPC4 inactivation occurs late in neoplastic progression. Cancer Res 2000;60(7):2002–6.
39. Goggins M, Shekher M, Turnacioglu K, Yeo CJ, Hruban RH, Kern SE. Genetic alterations of the transforming growth factor beta receptor genes in pancreatic and biliary adenocarcinomas. Cancer Res 1998;58(23): 5329–32.
40. Hempen PM, Zhang L, Bansal RK, Iacobuzio-Donahue CA, Murphy KM, Maitra A, et al. Evidence of selection for clones having genetic inactivation of the activin A type II receptor (ACVR2) gene in gastrointestinal cancers. Cancer Res 2003;63(5):994–9.
41. Su GH, Bansal R, Murphy KM, Montgomery E, Yeo CJ, Hruban RH, et al. ACVR1B (ALK4, activin receptor type 1B) gene mutations in pancreatic carcinoma. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2001;98(6):3254–7.
42. Giardiello FM, Brensinger JD, Tersmette AC, Goodman SN, Petersen GM, Booker SV, et al. Very high risk of cancer in familial Peutz- Jeghers syndrome. Gastroenterology 2000;119(6):1447–53.
43. Su GH, Hilgers W, Shekher MC, Tang DJ, Yeo CJ, Hruban RH, et al. Alterations in pancreatic, biliary, and breast carcinomas support MKK4 as a genetically targeted tumor suppressor gene. Cancer Res 1998;58(11):2339–42.
44. Gayther SA, Batley SJ, Linger L, Bannister A, Thorpe K, Chin SF, et al. Mutations truncating the EP300 acetylase in human cancers. Nat Genet 2000;24(3):300–3.
45. Calhoun ES, Jones JB, Ashfaq R, Adsay V, Baker SJ, Valentine V, et al. BRAF and FBXW7 (CDC4, FBW7, AGO, SEL10) mutations in distinct subsets of pancreatic cancer: potential therapeutic targets. Am J Pathol 2003;163(4):1255–60.
46. Almoguera C, Shibata D, Forrester K, Martin J, Arnheim N, Perucho M. Most human carcinomas of the exocrine pancreas contain mutant c-K-ras genes. Cell 1988;53(4): 549–54.
47. Lohr M, Kloppel G, Maisonneuve P, Lowenfels AB, Luttges J. Frequency of K-ras mutations in pancreatic intraductal neoplasias associated with pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma and chronic pancreatitis: a meta-analysis. Neoplasia 2005;7(1):17–23.
48. Ozcelik H, Schmocker B, Di Nicola N, Shi XH, Langer B, Moore M, et al. Germline BRCA2 6174delT mutations in Ashkenazi Jewish pancreatic cancer patients. Nat Genet 1997;16(1):17–8.
49. Goggins M, Hruban RH, Kern SE. BRCA2 is inactivated late in the development of pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia: evidence and implications. Am J Pathol 2000;156(5):1767–71.
50. Howlett NG, Taniguchi T, Olson S, Cox B, Waisfisz Q, De Die- Smulders C, et al. Biallelic inactivation of BRCA2 in Fanconi anemia. Science 2002;297(5581):606–9.
51. van der Heijden MS, Yeo CJ, Hruban RH, Kern SE. Fanconi anemia gene mutations in young-onset pancreatic cancer. Cancer Res 2003;63(10):2585–8.
52. van der Heijden MS, Brody JR, Gallmeier E, Cunningham SC, Dezentje DA, Shen D, et al. Functional defects in the fanconi anemia pathway in pancreatic cancer cells. Am J Pathol 2004;165(2):651–7.
53. Day JD, Digiuseppe JA, Yeo C, Lai-Goldman M, Anderson SM, Goodman SN, et al. Immunohistochemical evaluation of HER-2/neu expression in pancreatic adenocarcinoma and pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasms. Hum Pathol 1996;27(2):119–24.
54. Sato N, Goggins M. The role of epigenetic alterations in pancreatic cancer. J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg 2006;13(4):286–95.
55. Sato N, Fukushima N, Maehara N, Matsubayashi H, Koopmann J, Su GH, et al. SPARC/osteonectin is a frequent target for aberrant methylation in pancreatic adenocarcinoma and a mediator of tumor- stromal interactions. Oncogene 2003;22(32):5021–30.
56. Ueki T, Toyota M, Skinner H, Walter KM, Yeo CJ, Issa JP, et al. Identification and characterization of differentially methylated CpG islands in pancreatic carcinoma. Cancer Res 2001;61(23):8540–6.
57. Fukushima N, Sato N, Ueki T, Rosty C, Walter KM, Wilentz RE, et al. Aberrant methylation of preproenkephalin and p16 genes in pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia and pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. Am J Pathol 2002;160(5):1573–81.
58. Sato N, Ueki T, Fukushima N, Iacobuzio-Donahue CA, Yeo CJ, Cameron JL, et al. Aberrant methylation of CpG islands in intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasms of the pancreas. Gastroenterology 2002;123(1):365–72.
59. Rosty C, Ueki T, Argani P, Jansen M, Yeo CJ, Cameron JL, et al. Overexpression of S100A4 in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinomas is associated with poor differentiation and DNA hypomethylation. Am J Pathol 2002;160(1):45–50.
60. Sato N, Maitra A, Fukushima N, van Heek NT, Matsubayashi H, Iacobuzio-Donahue CA, et al. Frequent hypomethylation of multiple genes overexpressed in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. Cancer Res 2003;63(14):4158–66.
61. Jones S, Zhang X, Parsons DW, Lin JC, Leary RJ, Angenendt P, et al. Core signaling pathways in human pancreatic cancers revealed by global genomic analyses. Science 2008;321(5897):1801–6.
62. Thayer SP, di Magliano MP, Heiser PW, Nielsen CM, Roberts DJ, Lauwers GY, et al. Hedgehog is an early and late mediator of pancreatic cancer tumorigenesis. Nature 2003;425(6960):851–6.
63. Miyamoto Y, Maitra A, Ghosh B, Zechner U, Argani P, Iacobuzio- Donahue CA, et al. Notch mediates TGF alpha-induced changes in epithelial differentiation during pancreatic tumorigenesis. Cancer Cell 2003;3(6):565–76.
64. Xu XF, Xie CG, Wang XP, Liu J, Yu YC, Hu HL, et al. Selective inhibition of cyclooxygenase-2 suppresses the growth of pancreatic cancer cells in vitro and in vivo. Tohoku J Exp Med 2008;215(2):149–57.

65. Funahashi H, Satake M, Dawson D, Huynh NA, Reber HA, Hines OJ, et al. Delayed progression of pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia in a conditional Kras(G12D) mouse model by a selective cyclooxygenase- 2 inhibitor. Cancer Res 2007;67(15):7068–71.
66. Tseng WW, Deganutti A, Chen MN, Saxton RE, Liu CD. Selective cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor rofecoxib (Vioxx) induces expression of cell cycle arrest genes and slows tumor growth in human pancreatic cancer. J Gastrointest Surg 2002;6(6):838–43; discussion 844.
67. Fukushima H, Yamamoto H, Itoh F, Nakamura H, Min Y, Horiuchi S, et al. Association of matrilysin mRNA expression with K-ras mutations and progression in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinomas. Carcinogenesis 2001;22(7): 1049–52.
68. Vargo-Gogola T, Crawford HC, Fingleton B, Matrisian LM. Identification of novel matrix metalloproteinase-7 (matrilysin) cleavage sites in murine and human Fas ligand. Arch Biochem Biophys 2002;408(2):155–61.
69. Shiomi T, Okada Y. MT1-MMP and MMP-7 in invasion and metastasis of human cancers. Cancer Metastasis Rev 2003;22(2–3):145–52.
70. Moniaux N, Andrianifahanana M, Brand RE, Batra SK. Multiple roles of mucins in pancreatic cancer, a lethal and challenging malignancy. Br J Cancer 2004;91(9):1633–8.
71. Klein WM, Hruban RH, Klein-Szanto AJ, Wilentz RE. Direct correlation between proliferative activity and dysplasia in pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia (PanIN): additional evidence for a recently proposed model of progression. Mod Pathol 2002;15(4):441–7.
72. Biankin AV, Kench JG, Morey AL, Lee CS, Biankin SA, Head DR, et al. Overexpression of p21(WAF1/CIP1) is an early event in the development of pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia. Cancer Res 2001;61(24):8830–7.
73. Argani P, Iacobuzio-Donahue C, Ryu B, Rosty C, Goggins M, Wilentz RE, et al. Mesothelin is overexpressed in the vast majority of ductal adenocarcinomas of the pancreas: identification of a new pancreatic cancer marker by serial analysis of gene expression (SAGE). Clin Cancer Res 2001;7(12):3862–8.
74. Crnogorac-Jurcevic T, Missiaglia E, Blaveri E, Gangeswaran R, Jones M, Terris B, et al. Molecular alterations in pancreatic carcinoma: expression profiling shows that dysregulated expression of S100 genes is highly prevalent. J Pathol 2003;201(1):63–74.
75. Zhang Y, Li M, Wang H, Fisher WE, Lin PH, Yao Q, Chen C. Profiling of 95 microRNAs in pancreatic cancer cell lines and surgical specimens by real-time PCR analysis. World J Surg 2009;33:698–709.
76. Lee EJ, Gusev Y, Jiang J, Nuovo GJ, Lerner MR, Frankel WL, et al. Expression profiling identifies microRNA signature in pancreatic cancer. Int J Cancer 2007;120(5): 1046–54.
77. Chang TC, Wentzel EA, Kent OA, Ramachandran K, Mullendore M, Lee KH, et al. Transactivation of miR-34a by p53 broadly influences gene expression and promotes apoptosis. Mol Cell 2007;26(5):745–52.
78. Feldmann G, Beaty R, Hruban RH, Maitra A. Molecular genetics of pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia. J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg 2007;14(3):224–32.
79. Heinmoller E, Dietmaier W, Zirngibl H, Heinmoller P, Scaringe W, Jauch KW, et al. Molecular analysis of microdissected tumors and preneoplastic intraductal lesions in pancreatic carcinoma. Am J Pathol 2000;157(1): 83–92.
80. Aguirre AJ, Bardeesy N, Sinha M, Lopez L, Tuveson DA, Horner J, et al. Activated Kras and Ink4a/Arf deficiency cooperate to produce metastatic pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. Genes Dev 2003;17(24):3112–26.
81. Hruban RH, Adsay NV, Albores-Saavedra J, Anver MR, Biankin AV, Boivin GP, et al. Pathology of genetically engineered mouse models of pancreatic exocrine cancer: consensus report and recommendations. Cancer Res 2006;66(1):95–106.
82. Hingorani SR, Petricoin EF, Maitra A, Rajapakse V, King C, Jacobetz MA, et al. Preinvasive and invasive ductal pancreatic cancer and its early detection in the mouse. Cancer Cell 2003;4(6):437–50.
83. Brembeck FH, Schreiber FS, Deramaudt TB, Craig L, Rhoades B, Swain G, et al. The mutant K-ras oncogene causes pancreatic periductal lymphocytic infiltration and gastric mucous neck cell hyperplasia in transgenic mice. Cancer Res 2003;63(9):2005–9.
84. Li C, Heidt DG, Dalerba P, Burant CF, Zhang L, Adsay V, et al. Identification of pancreatic cancer stem cells. Cancer Res 2007;67(3):1030–7.
85. Leach SD. Epithelial differentiation in pancreatic development and neoplasia: new niches for nestin and Notch. J Clin Gastroenterol 2005;39(4 Suppl 2):S78–82.
86. Jensen JN, Cameron E, Garay MV, Starkey TW, Gianani R, Jensen J. Recapitulation of elements of embryonic development in adult mouse pancreatic regeneration. Gastroenterology 2005;128(3):728–41.
87. Means AL, Meszoely IM, Suzuki K, Miyamoto Y, Rustgi AK, Coffey RJ, Jr., et al. Pancreatic epithelial plasticity mediated by acinar cell transdifferentiation and generation of nestin-positive intermediates. Development 2005;132(16):3767–76.

Chapter 17

Recent Advances in the Pathogenesis of Pancreatic Endocrine Neoplasms

Omie Mills, Nelly A. Nasir, Jonathan R. Strosberg, Larry K. Kvols, Domenico Coppola, and Aejaz Nasir

Contents

A. Nasir (✉)
Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, Tampa, FL 33612, USA
e-mail: Nasir_Aejaz@Lilly.com

17.1 Introduction

The pancreas is thought by some to be the least understood organ after the brain [1, 2]. While the pancreas gets its name from the Greek *pankreas* meaning "all flesh," it is actually a complex lobulated organ with endocrine and exocrine functions. The exocrine pancreas, which produces digestive enzymes, accounts for 80–85% of the pancreatic volume and is composed mainly of ductal and acinar cells admixed with pancreatic parenchyma [3]. The endocrine pancreas is composed of endocrine cells that secrete polypeptide hormones and accounts for 2% of the pancreatic volume. The endocrine cells are found in the islets of Langerhans, which are scattered in the pancreatic parenchyma, and close to pancreatic ducts [1, 4, 5]. The pancreatic islet cell population consist of 10% alpha (α) cells, 70% beta (β) cells, 15% pancreatic polypeptide (PP) cells, and 5% delta (δ) cells [6]. Thus, the pancreas controls nutrient resorption and glucose metabolism via the functional activity of ductal, acinar, and endocrine cell types.

Tumors may develop in either the exocrine or endocrine pancreas. Endocrine pancreatic cancers, also known as Pancreatic Endocrine Neoplasms (PENs), are diverse rare tumors with a wide range of presenting symptoms that are thought to arise from the endocrine cells of the pancreas [7, 8]. PENs account for approximately 2% of all pancreatic neoplasms and are rare in comparison with pancreatic exocrine tumors [8]. Approximately 2,500 new PENs are diagnosed yearly [9, 10]. The incidence of PENs is less than 1 per 100,000 person-years in population studies, although at autopsy the incidence ranges from 0.8 to 10% as these tumors often go unnoticed [11].

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_17,

PENs have a better prognosis than exocrine pancreatic tumors. The 5-year survival rate is between 35 and 60% [12]. Currently, no environmental risk factors have been significantly associated with the development of PENs. A recent study found no association with first-hand tobacco exposure or alcohol use [11]. Further case-control and cohort studies are needed to investigate whether life-style factors are associated with the development of these rare tumors. The gene mutations of exocrine adenocarcinomas (TP53, p16INK4A, SMAD4, and K-ras) [13] are found only rarely in association with PENs. The molecular pathogenesis and histogenesis of PENs needs further elucidation. The purpose of this chapter is to summarize recent literature in the pathogenesis of PENs.

Table 17.2 WHO classification of pancreatic endocrine tumors

1. Well-differentiated endocrine tumor
1.1. Benign behavior
Confined to the pancreas, <2 cm in diameter, ≤2 mitoses per 10 HPF, ≤2% Ki-67-positive cells, no angioinvasion, or
perineural invasion
1.2. Uncertain behavior
Confined to the pancreas and one or more of the following
features: ≥2 cm in diameter, >2 mitoses per 10 HPF, >2%
Ki-67-positive cells, angioinvasion, perineural invasion
2. Well-differentiated endocrine carcinoma
Low-grade malignant
Gross local invasion and/or metastases
3. Poorly differentiated carcinoma
High-grade malignant
>10 mitoses per HPF

HPF, high-power field.

17.2 Categorization and Classification

PENs are categorized as functional or nonfunctional. Functional tumors secrete polypeptide hormones such as insulin, gastrin, glucagon, somatostatin, vasoactive intestinal peptide, adrenal corticotrophic hormone, parathyroid hormone-related peptide, growth hormone, calcitonin, melanocyte-stimulating hormone, vasopressin, and norephinephrine and elicit a clinically recognizable, hormone-related syndrome. Nonfunctional tumors secrete biologically inactive hormones and do not produce hormone-associated symptoms (Table 17.1) [14]. Approximately half of all PENs are nonfunctional [10].

In an attempt to define these diverse neoplasms, several classification systems have been proposed, of which the World Health Organization system is the most commonly used (Table 17.2).

Classifying PENs according to size, proliferative activity, angioinvasion, organ invasion, metastases, hormone activity, and clinical syndromes has been shown to be useful in predicting the clinical behavior of these tumors [10, 15]. However, a better understanding of the pathogenesis of these tumors will result in better tumor characterization and improved diagnostic, therapeutic, and prognositic modalities and may lead to a potential cure for patients with these unpredictable neoplasms [16].

Current genetic and molecular techniques have found that the biology of PENs is complex, without a well-recognized pathway being strongly influential. These tumors appear to develop in stages with multiple sequential mutations required to progress to malignancy (Fig. 17.1) [17]. Myriads of factors interact in complex ways to influence development, differentiation, secretion, and the interaction of tumor with its environment [18].

Table 17.1 Phenotyping and clinical features of the different types of PENs (Heitz 2004)

Tumor type	Hormone	Syndrome	Frequency (%)
Functioning tymors			
Insulinoma	Insulin	Hypoglycemia	27.2
Gastrinoma	Gastrin	Zollinger Ellison syndrome	12.5
Glucagonoma	Glucagon	Glucagonoma syndrome	8.0
Vipoma	Vasoactive intestinal peptide	Verner-Morrison syndrome	6.4
Somatostatinoma	Somatostatin	Somatostatinoma syndrome	3.8
ACTH producing Tumor	ACTH	Cushing syndrome	2.4
Serotonin producing Tumor	Serotonin	Carcinoid syndrome	<1
Non-Functioning tumors	Different hormones, slightly elevated	No syndrome	39.7

The table is reproduced from the WHO monograph on Pathology and Genetics, "Tumors of Endocrine Organs, 3rd edition", 2004.

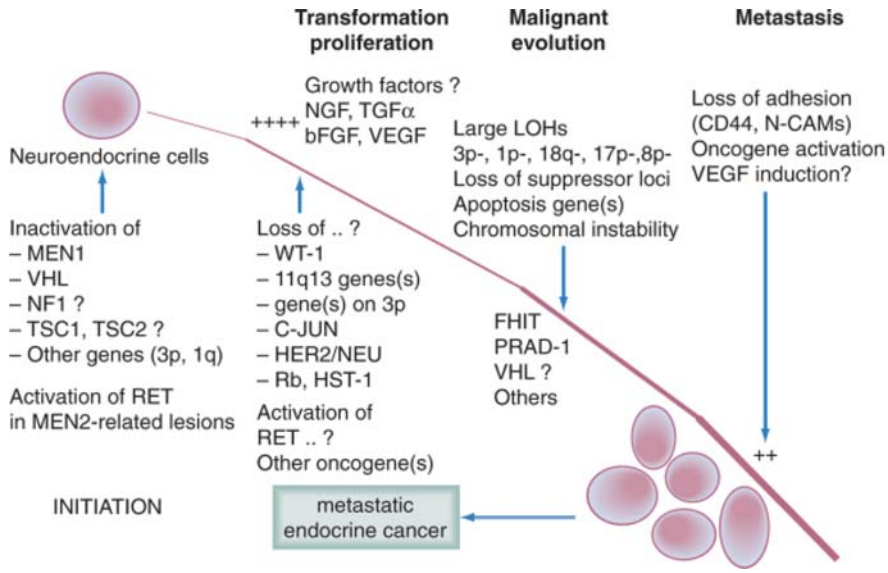


Fig. 17.1 [17] Diagram summaryizing the of major events involved in pancreatic endocrine tumor initiation, progression, and the pathogenic mechanisms involved in metastasis. bFGF, basic fibroblast growth factor; FHIT, fragile histidine triad; MEN1, multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1; NF1, neurofibromatosis type 1 (neurofibromin); NGF, nerve growth factor; PRAD-1, parathyroid adenoma–related protein; TGF, transforming growth factor; TSC1 and TSC2, tuberous sclerosis genes; VEGF, vasculoendothelial growth factor; VHL, von Hippel-Lindau genes

17.3 Composition and Development of the Normal Pancreas

A better understanding of normal pancreatic development will facilitate the understanding of the development of pancreatic neoplasia. The pancreas originates from the forgut endoderm [19]. During the seventh week of gestation, the dorsal and ventral foregut outpouchings rotate and fuse to form a single gland. The majority of the gland, including the body, the tail, the superior/anterior aspect of the head, and the accessory duct of Santorini, is derived from the dorsal outpouching of the foregut. The posterior/inferior part of the head of the pancreas is derived from the ventral outpouching of the foregut and drains into the papilla of Vater through the duct of Wirsung [3].

17.4 Formation and Regulation of Endocrine Cell Mass

Differentiation of the pancreas into a complex tissue structure combining duct, acinar, and islet cells is controlled by multiple physiologic, environmental, and hormonal mechanisms. The regulation of β-cell mass studied in diabetes best describes the current knowledge of endocrine cell formation and regulation.

Four physiological processes determine β-cell mass: neogenesis, replication, hypertrophy, and apoptosis [1, 20], abnormalities of which could be associated with tumorigenesis.

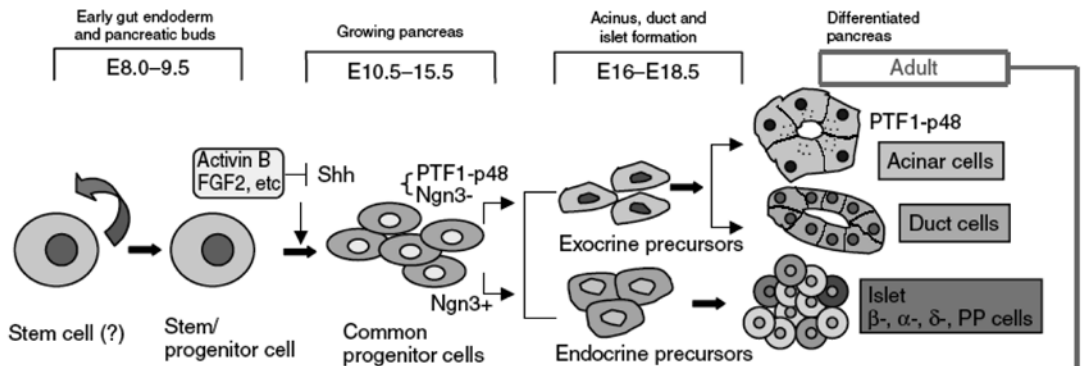
17.4.1 Beta-Cell Neogenesis

Neogenesis is the formation of new cells from pluripotent precursors. This mechanism appears to be the most significant mechanism to increase β-cell mass in humans. Neogenesis appears to occur in waves. The first wave of neogenesis occurs in the embryo. A second wave occurs during weaning. Thereafter, neogenesis occurs at a slow rate throughout adult life and may vary with diet [1, 21]. Neogenesis is demonstrated morphologically as endocrine cells budding from pancreatic ducts and/or clusters of β-cells scattered within the exocrine pancreas [1, 20, 22, 23]. The cell from which neogenesis derives has neither been definitively identified in embryogenesis nor in adult tissues. The neogenesis of β-cells is generally believed to originate

from stem/progenitor cells that reside among the duct cells from which they migrate to form new islets, differentiate, and regenerate both during organ formation and in regeneration of the adult pancreas [20, 24–28]. However, multiple studies suggest other possible locations of stem cells ranging from islets and/or acini to extrapancreatic cells [20, 24].

The inability to find islet stem/progenitor cells is due to the lack of specific cell markers [24]. Evidence exists that there may be more than one kind of stem cell. Studies have identified possible stem cell candidates expressing varied progenitor markers. These include glucose transporter 2, insulin, somatostatin (SST), nestin, pancreatic duodenal homeobox 1 (PDX-1), and islet neogenesis-associated protein [24, 29–31]. There are multiple transcription factors and other molecules that are potential candidates for islet progenitor markers (Fig. 17.2) [24].

Other mechanisms implicated in the neogenesis of β-cells include transdifferentiation of adult ductal, acinar, or even extra-pancreatic cells such as liver [32–35] or intestine [36]. Multipotential adult tissues (differentiated or stem cells) have been shown to cross lineage boundaries. For example, under proper stimulation, cells within the pancreas have been shown to give rise to hepatocytes [24, 37, 38]. Adenovirus-mediated uptake of PDX-1 into liver cells in vivo induced a β-cell phenotype that produced insulin and controlled the hyperglycemia of streptozocin-induced diabetes in rats [39]. Another study showed overexpression of an activated form of PDX-1-induced liver cells to become pancreatic cells in vitro and in vivo [33]. Hepatic stem/progenitor cells (also known as oval cells) can differentiate into insulin-producing cells [32]. There are several possible mechanisms of transdifferentiation. It is likely that a common progenitor cell from the



Transcription factors :

PDX-1, PBX 1	++	++	+	+				
Hlxb9	+	+/–	+	+				
PTF1-p48	+	+	+	–				
Isl-1, Nkx2.2, Nkx6.1	+	+	+	+				
Pax 4, Pax 6	+	+	+	+				
Ngn3	+	+	+	–				
Beta2/NeuroD	+	+	+	+				

			Adult pancreas			Adult pancreatic regeneration		
Other molecules:			Acinar cells	Duct cells	Islet	Acinar cells	Duct cells	Islet
Activins/Act RII	n.d.	+	–	+	+(α,δ)	–	+++	+(α,δ)
Nestin	–	+	–	+	+	–	+	+
PGP9.5	n.d.	+	–	–	+	–	++	+
PYY	+	+	–	–	+(α.δ)	–	+	+(α,δ)
TH	+	+	–	–	+(β)	–	+	+(β)
Glu-2	n.d.	+	–	–	+	–	–	++
Vimentin, Bcl-2, CK20	n.d.	+	–	+	–	–	+	+

Fig. 17.2 [24] A schematic model for the process of pancreatic differentiation. The identified transcription factors and other molecules that are candidates for islet progenitor markers are shown. + + + : high expression; + + : relative high expression; + : moderate expression; +/– : very low expression; – : no expression. n.d. : not determined

endoderm or adjacent area of the liver, intestine, and pancreas can be stimulated to dedifferentiate or transdifferentiate. Furthermore, mature tissues harbor a few pluripotent stem cells that have lineage plasticity.

Deregulated transdifferentiation or additional genetic events could lead to oncogenesis of islet cells. Evidence for this theory exists in the studies of hamsters treated with N-nitroso-bis (2-oxopropyl) amine, a carcinogen causing pancreatic ductal carcinomas. In this scenario, ductal structures begin to appear around and within islets, first exhibiting hyperplasia, then dysplasia, and finally malignant gland structures [2, 4, 40].

17.4.2 Beta-Cell Replication

Replication is the formation of cells from the mitotic division of preexisting mature cells. The term β-cell hyperplasia refers to an increase in β-cell numbers secondary to increased replication, increased neogenesis, or decreased apoptosis. Studies in rats have shown high rates of β-cell replication in the neonate, which slowly decreases to a rate of 2–3% new cells per day in the adult rat. This scenario is also likely in humans [1, 41], although the significance of replication as a means of maintaining β-cell mass in humans is controversial [42, 43].

17.4.3 Beta-Cell Hypertrophy

Hypertrophy is defined as an increase in the size of existing cells. Increasing β-cell mass via hypertrophy may be more important for cells that can no longer replicate [1]. Hyperglycemia has been implicated as a stimulus for β-cell hypertrophy in rat models [44, 45]. However, contradictory studies also exist [42].

17.4.4 Apoptosis in Beta Cells

Apoptosis is programmed cell death. The rate of β-cell apoptosis varies inversely with insulin requirements in the normal pancreas and occurs at slower rates with increasing age [20]. Apoptosis is a key process in islet plasticity. In a study by Jamal et al. [46], adult human islets cultured in vitro in specific medium were shown

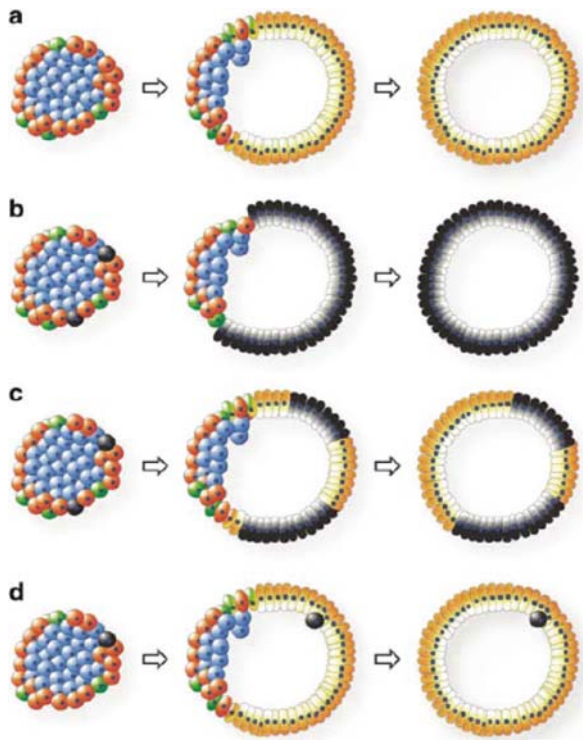


Fig. 17.3 [46] Proposed mechanisms for the phenotypic switch from a solid islet to a regeneration-competent DEC. (**a**) Direct transformation of islet mantle cells to duct-like cells, with concomitant loss of centrally located β-cells. (**b**) Activation and proliferation of an intra-islet progenitor cell that comes to form all cells of the cystic structure. (**c**) Cells of the newly formed duct-like structure are derived from both direct transformation of mantle endocrine cells and putative intra-islet progenitor cells. (**d**) The cystic duct-like structure forms solely through direct transformation of mantle endocrine cells, while an intra-islet progenitor cell remains associated with the duct-like structure

to change into ductlike epithelial cystic structures. The structures are formed by the islet cells located in the islet periphery. β-Cells, normally located in the islet core, undergo selective apoptosis forming the lumina of the duct-like epithelial structures (Figs. 17.3 and 17.4) [46].

Ductlike epithelial cystic structures can be transformed back to islet-like structures, which are morphologically and functionally similar to isolated islets (Fig. 17.5) [46]. The results of this study suggest that adult human islets possess morphogenetic plasticity. Of note, islet-to-duct transformation has been suggested to play a role in the development of pancreatic adenocarcinomas. The observations made in this study may contribute to better understanding of islet neogenesis and pancreatic carcinogenesis.

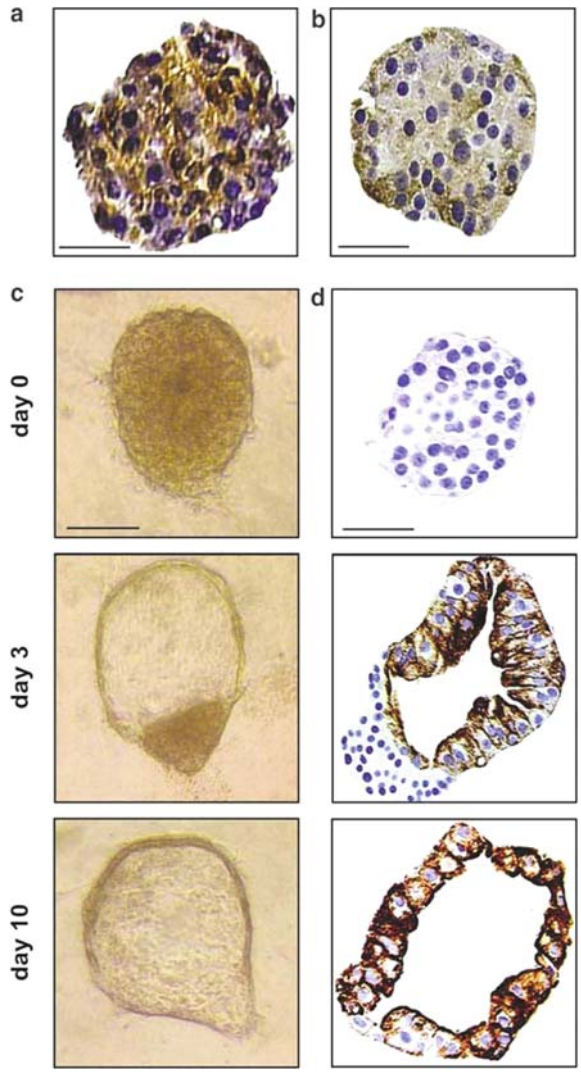


Fig. 17.4 [46] Islet-to-DEC transformation. Freshly isolated adult human islets expressed (**a**) insulin and (**b**) glucagon + somatostatin + pancreatic polypeptide. (**c**) Inverted microscopy and (**d**) CK-19 immunoreactivity demonstrated a typical islet-to-DEC transformation, starting from a freshly isolated islet (day 0), through a transitional structure (day 3), to a fully formed DEC (day 10, scale bars 100 mm)

17.5 Regulators of Pancreatic Endocrine Cell Mass

There are numerous hormones and growth factors that interact in the complex islet cell environment and that are affected by mediators from the exocrine pancreas and systemic circulation. Feedback mechanisms, adjusting to levels of islet hormones, regulate islet cell growth and morphology [1]. Once again, β-cells have been studied the most extensively in an effort to understand diabetes. However, generalizations of principles learned in these studies will increase understanding of the mediators in PENs.

Glucose seems to be the most important regulator of β-cells [1, 31, 47]. Hyperglycemia can induce either adaptation with an increase in β-cell mass or can result in failure to compensate with resultant diabetes [44]. Hyperglycemia-induced increase in β-cell mass may be secondary to an increased proportion of β-cells entering the cell cycle [48]. Also, hyperglycemia causes pancreatic duodenal homeobox 1, a transcription factor that activates the insulin gene, to migrate from the cytoplasm to the nucleus to increase insulin gene transcription [49]. However, hyperglycemia has also been shown to impair insulin secretion, β-cell replication, islet neogenesis, and increased β-cell apoptosis [50–52]. The effect of insulin on β-cell mass is not fully understood. Some studies suggest that it stimulates β-cell growth, while others show growth only in the presence of hyperglycemia [53–56].

c-Myc is a transcription factor of the basic helix-loop-helix leucine zipper. It is an extensively studied protooncogene, involved normally in cell cycle progression. c-Myc promotes cell growth and proliferation in several tissues, but induces apoptosis in others [57]. c-Myc is a key target gene of the Wnt/β-catenin pathway [58]. It is activated during pancreatic development [59]. Pelengaris et al. [205] noted that although Myc activation initially promotes both proliferation and apoptosis in pancreatic β-cells, apoptosis predominates, giving rise to islet involution and diabetes. The upregulation of cell cycle inhibitors, such as p21 that inhibits c-Myc induced proliferation and apoptosis, play a role in β-cell hypertrophy.

Activation of the *phosphatidylinositol 3-OH-kinase/protein kinase B (P13K-Akt/PKB)* pathway by *insulin growth factor-1 (IGF-1)* or *islet neogenesis-associated protein (INGAP)* upregulates β-cell mass. This pathway activates downstream messengers and transcription factors such as pancreatoduodenal homeobox gene-1 (PDX-1), neurogenin 3 (NGN-3), islet-1 (ISL-1), NeuroD/Beta2, and NK homeobox gene 2.2 (NKX-2.2), known to act during pancreatic embryogenesis [46].

PDX-1 is critical for pancreatic development [60]. It is also a key regulator of several factors that

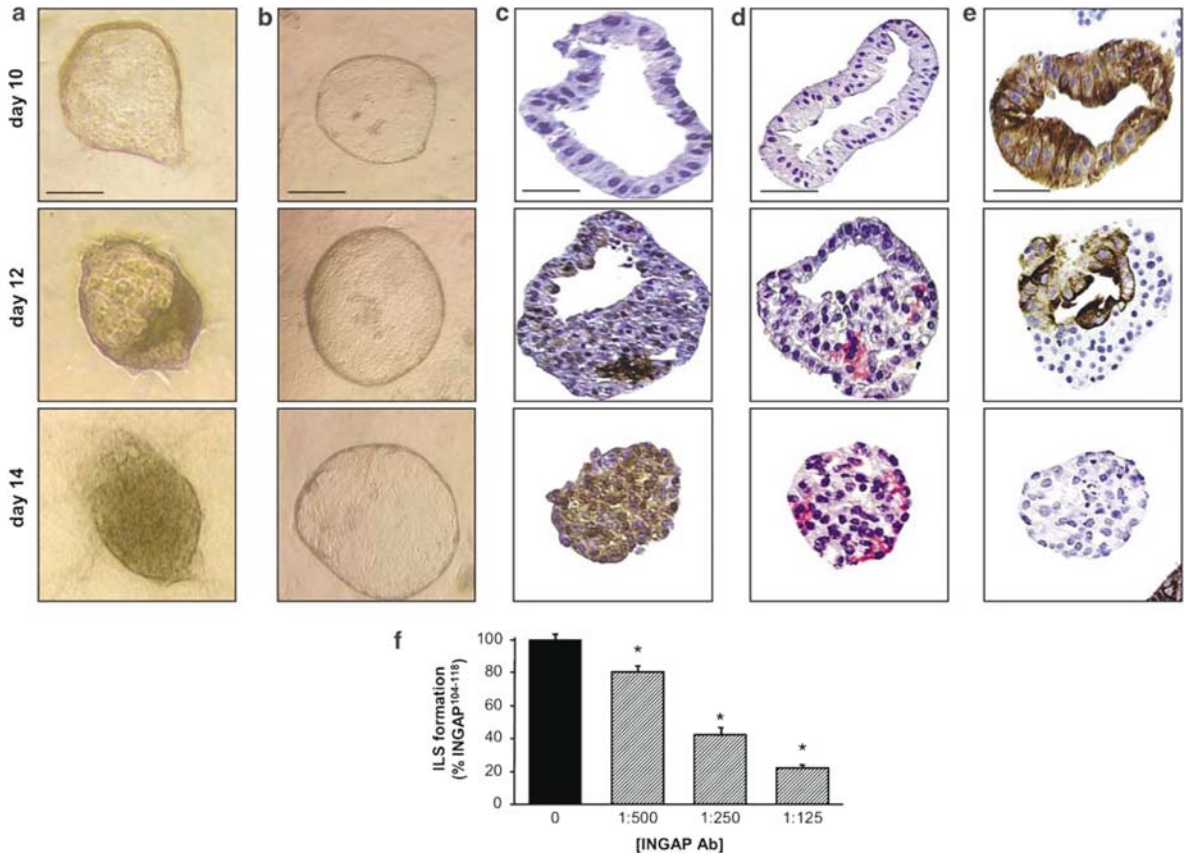


Fig. 17.5 [46] DECs can be transformed back to ILS that are morphologically similar to isolated islets. (**a**) INGAP104–118 induced the formation of neoislets, starting from a DEC (day 10), through a transitional structure (day 12), into an ILS (day 14). (**b**) Neither control medium, GLP-1 nor exendin-4, resulted in any phenotypic transformation (representative photomicrographs; scale bars 100 mm). Immunodetection of (**c**) insulin and (**d**) glucagon + somatostatin + pancreatic polypeptide established the reemergence of normal islet architecture during DEC-to-ILS progression (days 10, 12 and 14), while (**e**) CK-19 immunoreactivity was lost (scale bars 100 mm). (**f**) The effect of INGAP104–118 was inhibited in a dose-responsive manner by a rabbit polyclonal a-INGAP101–121 antibody (mean ± S.E.M.; $^{*}P<0.05$ versus INGAP104–118)

differentiate and maintain islet cell phenotype and function including insulin [61], glucokinase [62], and glucose transporter-2 (GLUT-2) [63]. PDX-1 has been associated with islet progenitors with both the development [64], and regeneration of the adult pancreas [29, 65].

NGN-3 is expressed in putative islet progenitors of pancreatic epithelium prior to their endocrine differentiation. NGN-3 expression initiates signaling events that result in the development and maintenance of progenitor cells in various tissue types. During pancreatic morphogenesis, NGN-3 helps to induce transcription factors such as ISL-1, NeuroD/Beta2, and NKX-2.2, that are involved in the development of mature islets [66, 67].

The intracellular signaling molecules and transcription factors above have been proposed to play a prominent role in the phenotypic differentiation of the developing pancreas. However, their exact role remains to be defined further. Hormones and growth factors affecting islet cell mass are summarized in Table 17.3 [1].

The following general observations have been made regarding the hormones and growth factors involved in β-cell mass regulation [1]:

1. β-Cell mass is not static but increases in response to increased insulin demand.
2. The same mechanisms that operate during pancreatic development in the embryo regulate β-cell mass in the adult [68–70].

Table 17.3 Hormones and growth factors affecting islet cell mass [1]

	Apoptosis	Hypertrophy	Neogenesis	Replication	Other effects	Mechanism	References
HGF	↓	↑		↑ X2.5	↑ Islet size and number, ↑ insulin production and secretion, ↑ Reg expression	Bcl-xL and BAG-1 overexpression	[249]
PL	↑	↑		↑			[250, 251]
hPRL				↑			[250]
hGH				↑			[250]
PTHrP		↔		↑	↑ X2 Islet size and number, ↑ insulin release, no changes in apoptotic rates		[252]
IGF-1				↑	Synergistic effect with glucose	Activation of P13K pathway	[202]
IGF-2	↑			↑	Increased insulin secretion, abnormal islet morphology with α-cells in islet core		[253]
INGAP			↑		Mediator of islet plasticity, reverses diabetes in mice	Activation of P13K pathway	[46]
Reg I	↑	↑		↑	Promotes acinar-to-islet cell transdifferentiation (β); reverses diabetes in mice and rats		[254, 255]
NeuroD/ βcellulin			↑				[35]
GLP-1	↓		↑	↑	Promotes transdifferentiation of acinar and ductal cells to islet cells		[256]

3. Some of the mechanisms of β-cell regulation may contribute to the pathogenesis of pancreatic endocrine neoplasia.

The precise effects of these hormones and mediators on different islet cell types as well as their specific roles in the genesis of pancreatic endocrine neoplasms remain to be further elucidated.

17.6 Pathways of Pathogenesis in Multiple Endocrine Neoplasia Syndromes

Further understanding of pathogenesis of PENs originates from elucidation of the genetic causes of multiple endocrine neoplasia syndromes, where endocrine neoplasms are associated with characteristic genetic abnormalities (Table 17.4) [71].

The multiple endocrine neoplasia syndromes associated with PENs include multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 (MEN1 gene), von Hippel-Lindau disease (vHL gene), neurofibromatosis (NF-1 gene), and tuberous sclerosis (TSC1 and TSC2 genes). Understanding the development of PENs as a part of these syndromes contributes to better understanding of the genesis of sporadic PENs.

17.7 Multiple Endocrine Neoplasia Type 1

Multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 (MEN-1) was identified as a clinical and familial syndrome by Moldawer and colleagues [72] and Wermer [73] in 1954 and presents with manifestations of parathyroid, pancreatic islet, or pituitary neoplasia or a combination of these [74]. Other rarer tumors include bronchial and thymic carcinoid tumors, adrenocortical tumors, and cutaneous lesions (lipomas, and collagenomas) [75]. While hyperparathyroidism is the most common endocrine manifestation of MEN-1,

Table 17.4 Genetic syndromes associated with an increased incidence of PENs [71]

Syndrome	Location of gene mutation and gene product	PEN's seen/frequency
Multiple endocrine neoplasia-type 1 (MEN-1)	11q13 (encodes 610 amino acid protein, MENIN)	80–100% develop PEN: (nonfunctional>gastrinoma> insulinoma)
von Hippel-Lindau disease	3q25 (encodes 213 amino acid protein)	12–17% develop PENs (almost always nonfunctional)
Von Recklinghausen's disease {neurofibromatosis 1 (NF-1)}	17q11.2 (encodes 2485 amino acid protein, neurofibromin)	Duodenal somatostatinomas
Tuberous sclerosis	9q34 (TSC1) (encodes 1164 amino acid protein, hamartin) 16p13 (TSC2) (encodes 1807 amino acid protein, tuberin)	Uncommonly develop PEN (nonfunctional and functional)

neoplasia of the pancreatic neuroendocrine cells is the second most common endocrine manifestation and eventually occurs in about 60% or more of MEN-1 patients. The most common enteropancreatic tumors are gastrinomas [76, 77], which often occur in the wall of the duodenum and in peri-pancreatic lymph nodes. Gastrinomas and insulinomas are the most common functional PENs associated with MEN-1. Nonfunctioning tumors are also common [76]. Clustering of subvariants of MEN-1 such as insulinomas [78, 79] and aggressive gastrinomas [80] within small MEN-1 families suggest specific MEN-1 mutations may correlate with specific clinical variants. Pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors in MEN-1 are invariably multifocal and may be widely dispersed in the pancreas and duodenum [76]. Consequently, the role of surgical management is controversial [81, 82]. PENs in MEN-1 may also present as multiple clinically silent enteropancreatic macroadenomas, discussed later, which may be found at surgery or at autopsy in almost 100% of MEN-1 patients older than 40 years [74, 78, 83]. Approximately 80% of MEN1 cases are familial, whereas 20% appear to be associated with mutations based on negative familial history [84].

17.7.1 MEN1 Gene

The *MEN1 gene* is a tumor suppressor gene [85–87] mapped to chromosome 11q13 that encodes a protein termed menin. Menin interacts with other proteins including junD, a member of the activator protein-1 (AP1) transcription factor family, although the importance of the menin-jun D interaction in the development of MEN-1 is unknown [88]. Other proteins that potentially interact with menin include SMAD1, SMAD3, SMAD5, PEM, NM23, nuclear factor kB, runx2, and several others, the importance of which is also unknown [89–95]. The precise physiologic role of menin has not been elucidated, and it is not clear why its absence results in endocrine tumor pathogenesis.

17.7.2 MEN-1 Tumorigenesis: A Two-Step Inactivation

The tumorigenesis in MEN-1 patients is thought to be a two-step inactivation of the MEN1 gene. Both copies of the MEN1 gene must be inactivated in order for tumorigenesis to occur. A "two-hit" hypothesis has been proposed whereby germline inactivation of one allele is followed by somatic inactivation of the second allele in a predisposed cell, leading to clonal proliferation [96]. Alfred Knudson [86, 87] developed the two-hit model for tumorigenesis to account for the epidemiologic observations in hereditary retinoblastoma in which tumors occurred earlier and in multiple sites compared to sporadic cases. Thus, current theory would suggest that, in every cell of MEN-1 patients, an obligatory germline mutation is present. Thus, multiple cells are susceptible for somatic mutations at the second allele, allowing for early development of multiple kinds of tumors [74].

17.7.3 First Step

Virtually all first hits at the MEN1 gene are small mutations involving one to several bases [97, 98].

Most MEN1 gene mutations occur in the locus of exon 2 [99]. However, hundreds of unique germline and somatic mutations, broadly distributed across the MEN1 open reading frame, have been found [74, 98, 100]. Most of the first-hit mutations predict premature truncation of the menin protein, while other mutations predict missense mutations or replacement of one to three amino acids, all with resultant inactivation or absence of menin.

17.7.4 Second Step

The second step in MEN-1 tumorigenesis occurs after the first hit, always occurs in somatic tissue, and usually occurs postnatally. Second-hit mutations are usually large chromosomal or subchromosomal rearrangements with a resultant deletion that includes the remaining normal MEN1 gene.

17.7.5 Loss of Heterozygosity at 11q13

Loss of heterozygosity (LOH) is used mainly to show loss of the normal copy of the MEN1 gene. In MEN-1, LOH at 11q13 was found in almost 100% of gastrinomas and other pancreatic islet tumors, as well as non-pancreatic endocrine neoplasia [101, 102]. Some sporadic endocrine tumors of the type found in MEN-1 show frequent LOH at 11q13. An underlying mutation at 11q13 has been traced to the MEN1 gene in approximately half of sporadic MEN-1 like tumors with 11q13 LOH. Somatic mutations of the MEN1 gene occur in approximately 20% of sporadic, solitary pancreatic endocrine tumors [84, 90, 103]. Therefore, MEN1 gene mutations are among the most common mutations in sporadic pancreatic endocrine tumors. The frequency of MEN1 gene mutations approximates 25% in gastrinomas [104–106], 10–20% in insulinomas [104, 107], and 50% in VIPomas [104, 107].

17.7.6 Events Following Inactivation of MEN1 Gene

After MEN1 gene inactivation, other unknown genes or undetected mutations in MEN1 gene may contribute to MEN-1 tumor development. Studies suggest that the tumorigenic pathway of MEN-1 overlaps and interacts with other homeostatic cell pathways, as illustrated in Fig. 17.1 above [108–111]. Early histologic effects in the tumorigenesis of MEN-1 have been subtle and ill-defined. Multifocal microadenoma is the term given the mono or oligoclonal islet lesion in MEN-1, which may represent a hyperplastic precursor stage to subsequent tumor development (Fig. 17.6) [112].

Evidence for microadenomas includes hyperplastic foci of gastrin cells seen by light microscopy in the duodenum of gastrinoma specimens from MEN-1 but not from sporadic gastrinomas [113]. Furthermore, in the heterozygous knockout of the MEN1 gene in mice, giant hyperplastic islets precede the development of insulinoma, suggesting that subtle islet hyperplasia may be an unrecognized precursor lesion in MEN-1 of humans despite the presence of one normal MEN1 allele. One could speculate that hyperplasia is an expression of MEN1 heterozygosity [114, 115]. Further studies are needed to link these findings with an as yet undiscovered genetic basis of tumor development.

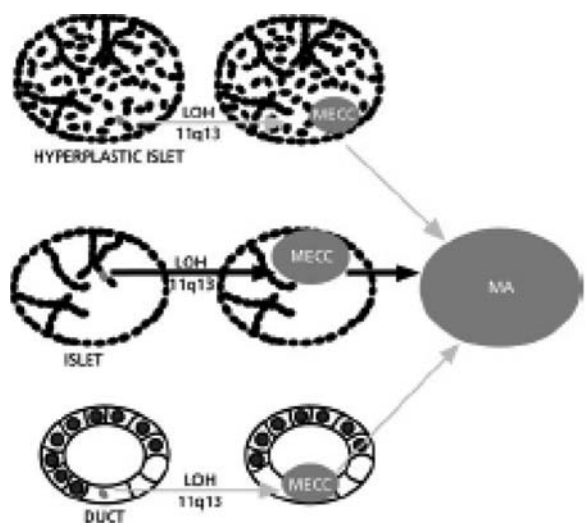


Fig. 17.6 [112] Proposed development of pancreatic microadenomas in MEN1. Monohormonal endocrine cell clusters (MECCs) develop most frequently within normal islets (*middle*) but also in ducts (*bottom*) and hyperplastic islets (*top*) through 11q13 LOH. MECCs progress to microadenomas (MA). The development of MECCs and their progression to microadenomas cause disruption of the normal islet structure. The pathogenetic mechanism leading to islet cell hyperplasia is unknown

17.8 Von Hippel-Lindau Syndrome

Von Hippel-Lindau syndrome (vHL) is an autosomal dominant syndrome characterized by hemangioblastomas of the central nervous system, renal cell carcinomas, retinal angiomas, visceral cysts, pheochromocytoma, and islet cell tumors (in 10–20% of patients) [116–119]. The *vHL gene*, mapped to chromosome 3p25.3 [120, 121], is a tumor suppressor gene that has an inhibitory effect on transcription elongation and facilitates the proteasome-mediated degradation of the hypoxia-inducible factor 1 (HIF-1) protein [74, 122]. The alpha subunit of HIF-1 is highly sensitive to tissue oxygen levels. In the presence of normal oxygen levels, it is bound by the vHL protein complex and covalently linked to ubiquitin in order to be targeted for degradation. In the absence of the vHL protein, HIF-1 alpha levels increase, leading to overproduction of hypoxia-associated cytokines, including erythropoietin, vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), and platelet-derived growth factor [8, 123–128]. These cytokines have been implicated in tumor growth. However, the precise mechanism of tumorigenesis is unknown. Other factors contributing to tumor pathogenesis may include matrix metalloproteinases such as MMP1 [129, 130]. VEGF inhibition, with resultant inhibition of angiogenesis in a PEN, may be a useful therapeutic strategy and is currently under investigation [131, 132].

The majority of patients present with a germline mutation of the gene from the affected parent and a normal copy of the gene from the unaffected parent. Tumor develops when both alleles are inactivated, usually as the result of a deletion [8]. Several studies support the role of the vHL gene in vHL-associated PEN tumorigenesis. In one study 12.3% of 155 patients with vHL went on to develop PENs [133]. Other studies found that PENs in patients with vHL were composed of clear cells, like renal carcinoma cells in vHL [101, 134]. LOH of the vHL gene was found in 100% of PENs (6 of 6 tumors) analyzed by PCR-single strand conformational polymorphism and fluorescent in situ hybridization. All the tumors in this study were nonfunctional [101]. These findings support a role for vHL gene mutation in the formation of vHL-associated PENs. In patients with sporadic PENs, no mutations specific to the vHL gene were found, although allelic loss on chromosome 3p was found in 33% of 43 patients with sporadic PENs [135].

17.9 Neurofibromatosis Type 1

Neurofibromatosis type 1 (NF-1) is a neurocutaneous syndrome with characteristic features of neurofibromas, Lisch nodules on the iris, and dermal café-au-lait spots, as well as a variety of endocrine neoplasms, including somatostatin-producing carcinoid tumors of the duodenal wall, pheochromocytoma, hyperparathyroidism, hypothalamic or optic nerve tumors [74], and rarely somatostatinoma of the pancreas [8, 136]. NF-1 is caused by a mutation of the *NF-1 gene*, a tumor suppressor gene located on chromosome 17q11 that encodes the protein neurofibromin. Mutations cause the premature truncation of neurofibromin. The precise role of the NF-1 gene in the development of PENs still remains to be elucidated.

17.10 Tuberous Sclerosis

Tuberous sclerosis is a rare autosomal dominant syndrome associated with the development of hamartomas and benign tumors in multiple organs, including skin, brain, and kidney. Two gene mutations have been described: *TSC1on 9q34 encoding hamartin* [137] and *TSC2 on 16p13.3 encoding tuberin* (with identification and characterization of the tuberous sclerosis gene on chromosome 16 [138]). Together, these proteins function as a tumor suppressor complex and control the activity of mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) [74]. A complex of hamartin and tuberin is thought to regulate cell-cycle progression, possibly through upregulation of the mTOR cell-signaling pathway [139, 140]. mTOR is an intracellular protein that is key in the control of cell growth, protein synthesis, and autophagy [132] and is involved in the regulation of β-catenin stability and activity [8, 141]. 1–5% of patients with tuberous sclerosis can develop PENs that demonstrate LOH on 16p13.3 or lack of tuberin immuoreactivity [8, 16, 141, 142]. Based on these findings, the RADIANT (RAD In Advanced Neuroendocrine Tumors) trial, a phase II study, is

under development to evaluate everolimus, an mTOR inhibitor, in patients with advanced PENs who have failed cytotoxic chemotherapy [132].

17.11 Findings of Molecular Genetic Analyses

The majority of PENs are sporadic and unassociated with germline mutations. The genetic aberrations implicated in sporadic PENs are poorly understood. Oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes that are mutated in common human malignancies (p53, APC, Rb, K-ras) do not appear to be associated with PENs [48, 143, 144]. Within genetic syndromes and in sporadic development of PENs, genomic studies have facilitated attempts to identify genomic patterns that characterize individual PENs. Investigation of the molecular processes underlying development and progression of insulinoma has unraveled a variety of molecules, genes, and pathways that seem to play a role in insulinoma tumorigenesis (Fig. 17.7, Table 17.5) [145]. These molecular and genetic studies investigated insulinoma development using primary tumors, transgenic mouse models, or tumor-derived cell lines. Several of these genes and markers have been studied in other PENs, and current findings are discussed below.

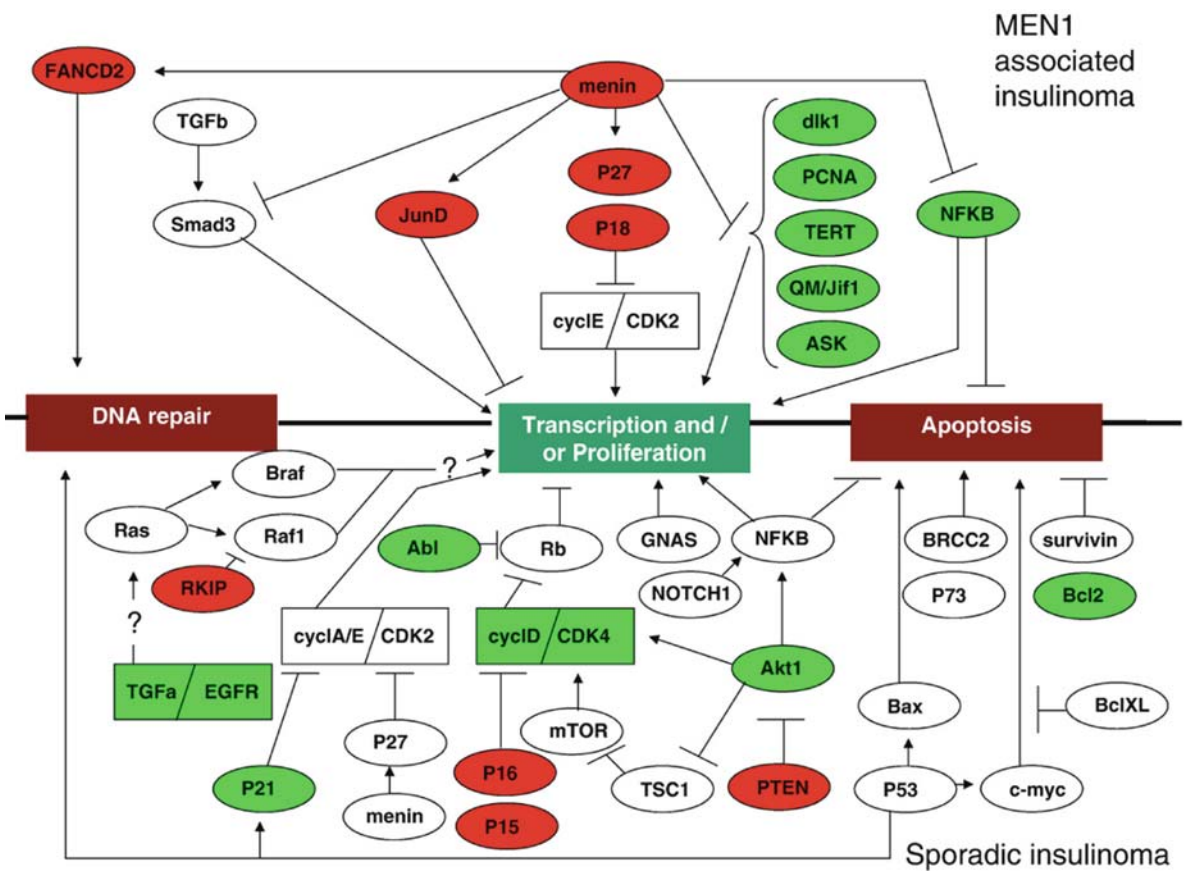


Fig. 17.7 [145] Schematic representation of the signaling molecules and pathways involved in insulinoma tumorigenesis. The upper part of the figure represents the proteins playing a role in MEN-1-associated insulinomas and the lower part those suggested to be involved in sporadic insulinoma tumorigenesis. Proteins with a loss of function are highlighted in red and those with a gain of function are highlighted in green. Proteins, whose role in insulinoma tumorigenesis has been suggested but is not yet clear, are represented in white

Table 17.5 Candidate genes for insulinoma tumorigenesis [145]

Gene symbol	Gene name	Chromosome localization	Function	Reference(s)	Array CGH result
Cell cycle progression					
K-Ras	C-K-Ras 2 protein	12p12	Control of cell cycle progression	[201]	Gain UB and M
ASK	S-phase kinase	7q21	S-phase entry	[257]	Gain M
P27	Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 1B	12p13	Inhibitor of cell cycle progression	[258, 259, 187]	Gain UB and M
P16	Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 2A	9p21	Inhibitor of cell cycle progression	[260, 261, 190]	No changes
P15	Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 2B	9p21	Inhibitor of cell cycle progression	[190]	No changes
P18	Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 2C	1p32	Inhibitor of cell cycle progression	[258, 259]	No changes
Proliferation/ transcription					
Dlk1/pref1	Delta like 1	14q32	Proliferation regulation	[262]	Gain UB and M
CCND1	Cyclin D1	11q13	Proliferation regulation	[193, 194]	No changes
Akt1	v-akt murine thymoma viral oncogene homolog 1	14q32	Proliferation regulation	[263]	Gain UB and M
GNAS	Guanine nucleotide binding protein α subunit	20q13	Proliferation regulation	[128]	No changes
PCNA	Proliferating cell nuclear antigen	20p12	Replication	[262]	Gain UB and M
TGFα	Transforming growth factor alpha	2p13	Growth factor	[263, 264]	No changes
EGFR	Epidermal growth factor receptor	7p11	Growth factor receptor	[263, 264]	Gain M
ABL	v-Abl Abelson murine leukaemia viral oncogene	9q34	Tyrosine kinase, proto-oncogene	[265, 266]	Gain B, UB, and M
TSC1	Tuberous sclerosis 1 protein	9q34	Anti-proliferative	[267]	Gain B, UB, and M
JunD	JunD proto-oncogene variant	19p13	Growth suppressor	[268]	No changes
QM/Jif1	Jun-interacting factor 1	Xq28	Jun binding gene tumor suppressor	[262]	Loss B, UB, and M
Rb	Retinoblastoma	13q14	Tumor suppressor gene	[213, 216, 269]	No changes
P21	Cyclin dependent kinase inhibitor 1A	6p21	Anti-proliferative kinase	[187]	Loss M

Table 17.5 (continued)

Gene symbol	Gene name	Chromosome localization	Function	Reference(s)	Array CGH result
PTEN	Phosphatase and tensin homolog	10q23	Anti-proliferative	[168, 270]	Loss UB and M
RKIP	Raf-1 kinase inhibitory protein	12q24	Raf-1 inhibition	[271]	Loss UB, loss and gain M
MEN1	Multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1	11q13	Growth suppressor	[107, 265, 104, 272, 273, 115]	No changes
Repair DNA damage					
TP53	Tumor protein p53	17p13	Repair DNA damage	[274, 201, 275]	Gain and Loss UB and M
FANCD2	Fanconi anemia complementation group D2 isoform	3p25	Repair DNA damage	[276]	Loss M
Apoptosis					
c-Myc	Cellular myelocytomatosis oncogene	8q24	Pro-apoptosis	[201, 277]	Loss M
BRCC2	Breast cancer cell 2	11q24	Pro-apoptosis	[278, 279]	Loss UB and M
TP73	Tumor protein p73	1p36	Pro-apoptosis	[157]	Loss UB and M
Bcl2	B-cell lymphoma protein 2 beta isoform	18q21	Anti-apoptosis	[277, 280]	Gain M
BIRC5	Baculoviral IAP repeat-containing protein 5	17q25	Anti-apoptosis	[281]	Gain M
NOTCH1	Notch1 preprotein	9q34	Cell growth, Anti-apoptosis	[282]	Gain B, UB, and M
NFKB	Nuclear factor kappa-B	4q24	Cell growth, anti-apoptosis	[93]	Gain M
Chromosomal instability					
TERT	Telomerase Reverse transcriptase	5p15	Telomere maintenance	[283]	Gain UB and M

17.11.1 Comparative Genomic Hybridization

The current status and recent advances in the assessment of the molecular basis of tumorigenesis of PENs from 1981 to 2004 was elegantly reviewed by Zikusoka et al. [16]. These investigators compared 6 studies using comparative genomic hybridization to detect gains and losses in chromosomes in PENs (Fig. 17.8) [16]. The most frequent gains were on chromosomes 7 and 20. The most frequent losses were on chromosomes 2, 6q, 21q, and Y. Chromosomal aberrations associated most frequently with metastasis included gains of chromosomes 7, 14q, 4, and Xq, as well as losses of chromosomes 6p, 3p, 6q, and 21q. Other chromosomal aberrations noted include gains of chromosomes 19, 5, 14p, 12q, 17, 20q, 15, 18, 9q, and 17p, as well as losses of chromosomes 1p, 6, 11q, 3q, 11p, and Xq [146–151]. Nonfunctional PENs contained more genetic aberrations than functional tumors [146], metastases had a higher average number of chromosomal aberrations than matched primaries [147], and 11q losses and 7q gains were commonalities between all 5 studies, pointing to their importance in PEN development.

17.11.2 Specific Chromosomal Aberrations

Many genetic alterations have been described in PENs [16, 145] as summarized in Table 17.6 [14, 145]. LOH

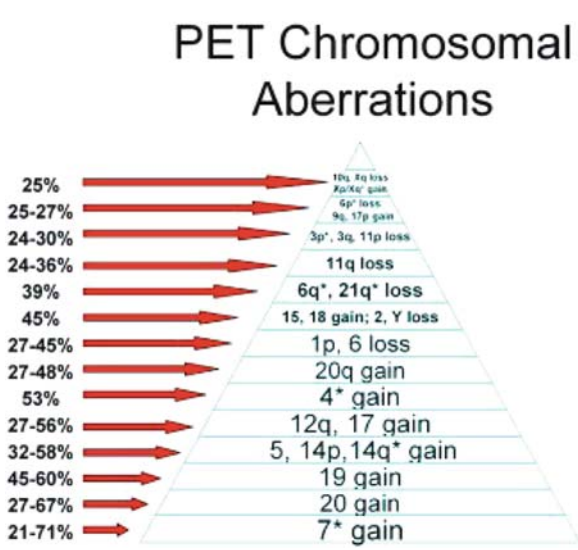


Fig. 17.8 [16] In this pancreatic endocrine tumor (PET) chromosomal aberration pyramid, chromosomal losses or gains from comparative genomic hybridization studies are listed from the most frequent (*bottom*) to the least frequent (*top*). An asterisk identifies the chromosomal aberrations that were associated most frequently with metastatic tissue, suggesting a possible role in tumor progression toward metastatic behavior. Adapted by Zikusoka, et al. [16] from Speel et al. [146]; Stumpf et al. [147]; Zhao et al. [148]; Tonnies et al. [149]; Terris et al. [150]; and Kytola et al. [151]

analysis is a powerful molecular tool and is used to identify tumor suppressor gene loci that are involved in the formation and progression of neoplasms. An LOH frequency greater than 35% at a specific chromosomal locus exceeds the rates of random genomic instability and strongly suggests a relevant tumor suppressor gene at that locus [152, 153].

A number of chromosomal aberrations have been identified in PENs. *Most common abnormalities are found in chromosomes 1, 3 and 6* as summarized in Table 17.7. Loss of heterozygosity at chromosome 1 was found in 34% of PETs and was found to be more common in tumors with hepatic metastasis [154, 155]. LOH for chromosome 1 has also been reported in several other tumors, including colorectal carcinoma, neuroblastoma, breast cancer, hepatocellular carcinoma, and melanoma [156]. In these tumors, the most frequently involved region is 1p36, the recently identified location of p73 [157], a possible tumor suppressor gene. One of two regions of LOH on chromosome 1 associated with malignant PENs includes a region of 1p between D1S1597 and p*ter*, the region of 1p36 lost in other tumor types. Chen et al. [158] identified chromosome 1 LOH on 1q31–32 and 1q21–23 in almost half of the gastrinomas studied and found

Table 17.6 Genetic alterations described to occur in PENs [14, 145]

Chromosomal locus	CGH	LOH	Gene	Mutation	Reference
1p36–	21/102 (21%)	10/29 (34%)			[154]
1q32–	16/102 (16%)	8/29 (28%)			[171]
3p23–	19/102 (19%)	23/31 (74%)			[161]
3p25–26–	19/102 (19%)	31/73 (42%)	vHL	1/75 (1%)	[171, 216, 284, 176]
6q22–	29/102 (28%)	43/69 (62%)			[171, 164]
9p–	0/102 (0%)	12/37 (32%)	CDKN2A/p16	1/44 (2%)	[165, 285]
9q+	29/102 (28%)				[167]
10q23–	14/102 (14%)	8/16 (50%)	PTEN	1/31 (3%)	[168]
11p14–	28/102 (27%)				[147]
11q13–	31/102 (30%)	75/111 (67%)	MEN1	33/155(21%)	[284, 176, 286, 107, 287]
11q22–23–	31/102 (30%)	20/37 (54%)	SDHD	0/20 (0%)	[172]
12p12+	23/102 (23%)		K-ras	1/39 (3%)	[165]
15q–	6/102 (6%)		SMAD3	0/18% (0%)	[175]
17p13–	2/102 (2%)	15/40 (38%)	TP53	1/40 (3%)	[171, 176]
17p+	32/102 (31%)				[167]
18q21–	6/102 (6%)	23/68 (34%)	DPC4	0/41 (0%)	[284, 288]
22q12.1–	4/102 (4%)	9/12 (75%)			[180]
Xq–	14/46 (30%)	11/23 (48%)			[184]
Y–	14/56 (25%)	5/14 (36%)			[184]

Table 17.7 Chromosomal aberrations in metastatic and non-metastatic pancraetic endocrine neeoplasms

Chromosome aberration	Total PENs analyzed	PENS with chromosomal aberration	PENs with chromosomal aberration (%)	Metastatic PENs				Non-metastatic PENS			Reference Number
				Site of metastasis	Analyzed	With aberration	Percentage	Analyzed	With aberration	Percentage	
1 LOH	26	10	38	LN, LIV	17	8	47	9	2	22	[162]
1LOH	29	10	34	LIV	16	7	44	13	3	23	[154]
1 LOH	32	13	41	LN, LIV	20	9	45	12	4	33	[171]
1q	27	11	41	LIV	12	8	67	15	3	20	[158]
3p26–3q 13LOH	4	2	50	LIV	2	2	100	2	0	0	[159]
3p14.2–3p21	21	13	62	LIV &/or LN	6	5	83	15	8	53	[160]
3p25.3-3p23	79	45	57	LIV &/or LN	41	17	41.5	38	28	73.7	[161]
3q LOH	16	4	25	LIV	12	4	33	4	0	0	[155]
6p LOH	44	12	27	LIV, LN, PPT	18	8	44	22	3	14	[146]
6q LOH	44	17	39	LIV, LN, PPT	18	11	61	22	5	23	[146]
6q	93	55	59	LN	36	26	72	55	27	49	[164]
9p	12	11	92	LIV, LN	6	5	83	6	6	100	[166]
11q LOH	44	16	36		22	6	27	18	8	44	[146]
22q LOH	23	22	96	LIV, LN, LUNG	20	20	100	3	2	67	[180]
X LOH	17	7	41	LIV, LN, 0, P	8	6	60	9	1	5	[152]
X LOH	25	10	40	LIV	11	8	73	14	2	14	[184]
Y LOH	15	5	33	LIV	8	4	50	7	1	15	[184]
TOTALS	551	263	**48%**	15 LIV, 10 LN	273	154	**56%**	264	103	**39%**	

LIV: Liver
LN: Lymph Node
PPT: Peripancreatic Tissue
O: Ovary
P: Peritoneum

an association with aggressive growth, liver metastasis, and post-surgical recurrence of liver metastasis. The specific genes involved were not identified. These studies indicate a worse prognosis for patients with chromosome 1 aberrations. Overall, 56% of 273 metatsatic PENs analysed in several different studies were found to show various chromosomal aberrations as opposed to 39% of 264 non-metastatic PENs (Table 17.7). These data point toward a potential association between chromosomal aberrations and progression of PENs.

Chromosome 3 is the location of the *vHL gene* (3p25.3) [120], which has been associated with vHL syndrome-associated PENs. Recent studies have shown LOH at loci proximal to vHL locus [159] and LOH at 3p14.2-3p21 more often in malignant insulinomas than in benign insulinomas [160]. Barghorn et al. [161] found an increased frequency of LOH at 3p25.3-p23 in malignant as compared to benign PENs (70.2% versus 28.0%; p=0.001) and in metastasizing as compared to non-metastasizing PENs (73.7% versus 41.5%; p=0.008). Additionally, a strong correlation was found between the loss of alleles on chromosome 3p and clinically metastatic disease (LOH 73.7% in metastasizing versus 41.5% in non-metastasizing tumors; p=0.008). These findings suggest a tumor suppressor gene at 3p25.3–p23 that may be associated with sporadic PEN development and that losses of larger centromeric regions are associated with metastatic progression.

In another study, *LOH at 3q* was found in half of sporadic PENs with hepatic metastases, while PENs without hepatic metastasis showed no LOH at this location [162]. Microsatellite markers demonstrate the smallest common deleted region at 3q27-qter, the region of p51 (a member of the p53 tumor suppressor family) [163]. These findings are suggestive of a late event in the tumorigenesis of PENs, consistent with advanced stage of tumor development [16].

Chromosome 6, studied in sporadic PENs, found a loss at 6q in 39% of tumors overall and in 100% of insulinomas, suggesting a chromosomal aberration specific to this type of PEN [146]. Further analysis found the smallest regions of allelic deletions at 6q22 (50%) and 6q23–24 (41.2–56.3%). Also, fluorescent in-situ hybridization analysis showed more aberrations in metastatic tumors than in benign PENs [164]. Thus, chromosome 6 alterations may play a specific role in the genesis of β-cell tumors (insulinomas) and may also have prognostic significance in these neoplasms.

LOH on chromosomal arm 9p, the home of p16, is a frequent finding in PENs. However, Moore et al. [165] found p16 mutation in only one insulinoma out of 41 PENs none of which showed methylation. Current studies seem to indicate p16 inactivation by promoter methylation may be restricted to functional gastrinomas. Although homozygous p16 gene deletions have also been observed in PENs [166], they seem to be rare events. Using comparative genomic hybridization, Speel et al. [167] found 9q gain to be the most common gain in insulinomas (50%).

Chromosome 10q23 is home to the tumor suppressor gene, PTEN. Perren et al. [168] performed a mutation analysis of the entire coding region of PTEN in 33 PENs but revealed only 1 tumor with a somatic mutation in exon 6. Although an intragenic PTEN mutation is rare in PENs, 10q23 region LOH was detected in 8 of 15 malignant (53%) and in 0 of 7 benign PENs. All samples with LOH were malignant PENs. This suggests that allelic loss of this region could be associated with malignant behavior. PTEN immunohistochemical expression in nonneoplastic islets is localized to the nucleus. PTEN expression was lost in the single malignant PEN with two structural hits; however, all of the PENs with LOH remained PTEN-immunopositive but were localized predominately in the cytoplasm and cell membrane in 23 of 24 (96%) PENs. No increase in malignant behavior is associated with this shifting of PTEN from the nucleus but is associated with the neoplastic state in general. Perren et al. [168] hypothesized that inappropriate compartmentalization of PTEN could be an initiating event in PENs with resultant neoplasia, whereas physical loss of 10q leads to progressive malignancy.

Chromosome 11q13, discussed previously, is associated with *MEN1* and the development of most MEN1-associated PENs as well as some sporadic PENs.

Chromosome 11p13–15 was studied in a comparative genomic hybridization investigation of 25 PENs from 23 patients. 11p13–15 loss was found in 24% of cases, likely representing uncharacterized tumor suppressor genes in this region [147].

Chromosome 11q23 harbors the tumor suppressor gene *succinate dehydrogenase subunit D (SDHD)* [169], a hydrophobic membrane anchor for the catalytically active subunits of cytochrome II. SDHD

also participates in electron transport and interacts with quinones [170]. SDHD is responsible for familial paraganglioma type 1. A number of studies have shown significant allelic loss of 11q extending to 11q23, or distal to 11q13, and have thus postulated that a previously unrecognized tumor suppressor in this region plays a role in PEN development [107, 146, 171]. Perren et al. [172] studied neuroendocrine tumors including PENs and found no somatic SDHD mutations. However, LOH rates ranged from 20 to 50%. These findings do not exclude SDHD from a role in the tumorigenesis of endocrine tumors since evidence exists that the gene is potentially imprinted in these tissues [173, 174].

Chromosome 12p12 is the location of the K-ras gene, which is commonly mutated in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinomas but is found only rarely in PENs [165], supporting the idea that exocrine and endocrine tumorigenesis involve different genetic pathways.

Chromosome 15q has been implicated to be the location of a tumor suppressor gene important in PENs, based on the findings of comparative genomic hybridization studies. SMAD3 localizes to 15q, and LOH at DNA markers surrounding SMAD3 was found in 20% of enteropancreatic tumors. However, further study revealed no acquired clonal mutations, insertions, or microdeletions in SMAD 3 in any tumor, making it an unlikely tumor suppression gene in PENs [175].

Chromosome 17p13 is home to TP53, which plays a significant role in the tumorigenesis of pancreatic ductal carcinomas, but not PENs. A study by Moore et al. [176] supported previous suggestions that the presence of a tumor suppressor gene other than TP53 on chromosomal arm 17p is involved in tumorigenesis of nonfunctional PENs.

Chromosome 18q21 mutations may play a role in the tumorigenesis of nonfunctional PENs, whereas select functional tumors lack this change [177]. 18q21 is the location of the *DPC4/Smad4 gene*, a cell cycle regulator [178]. However, in another series of PENs, these chromosomal aberrations were not detected in any of the 19 nonfunctional PENs analyzed [179].

Chromosome 22 was studied in gastrinomas, insulinomas, VIPomas, and nonfunctional PENs, and LOH was found on chromosome 22q in 22 of 23 tumors [180]. Another study of insulinomas found LOH in 57% of tumors at 22q12.1–q12.2 [181]. This site is the location of the hSNF5/INI1 gene, implicated in medulloblastoma and other pediatric central nervous system tumors [182]. Further studies could not find an alteration in this gene suggesting it is not the cause of tumor development [16, 181].

X chromosome losses were seen in patients with functional and nonfunctional PENs and were associated with shorter patient survival [11] and clinically aggressive behavior [152, 183, 184].

Y chromosome losses were found frequently in PENs from males (36%) and were associated with metastasis, local invasion, and high proliferation rates [184].

17.11.3 Cell Cycle Regulators

Regulation of the cell cycle, simply put, keeps cell death (apoptosis) in balance with cell growth (proliferation). Loss of cell cycle regulation is one of the hallmarks of neoplasia. Understanding the regulatory mechanisms of the cell cycle are complex, as multiple, often repetitive pathways may be involved. A number of studies have shown that common cell cycle regulators are involved in the tumorigenesis of PENs.

P27KIP1 is a cell kinase inhibitor that opposes cell cycle progression and is located on chromosome 12p12–p13.1 [185]. A study by Guo et al. [186] found overexpression of P27KIP in sporadic PENs. An elevation of P27KIP1 expression was found to be inversely related to Ki-67 in a study of 109 gastroenteropancreatic neuroendocrine tumors, suggesting that P27KIP1 may decrease proliferative rates in tumors [187].

Loss of *p16INK4/p14ARF*, a tumor suppressor gene located on 9p21 [188], leads to tumorigenesis as a result of deregulation of p53 and cyclin-dependent kinase/retinoblastoma pathways [189]. Reports found inactivating p16INK4 gene alterations (such as homozygous deletion and methylation at the 5'CpG islands of promoter regions) in 92% of gastrinomas and nonfunctional PENs. Loss of expression of genes in the 9p21 region was found in 57% of nonfunctional PENs, 30% of insulinomas, and 22% of gastrinomas. This study also found CpG promoter methylation of the p16 gene [190].

Cyclin D1, on chromosome 11q13 [191, 192], plays an important role in cell cycle regulation. Nuclear expression of Cyclin D1 was found to be increased in almost half of the PENS [193]. Sporadic PENs

were specifically studied and Cyclin D1 overexpression was found in 65% (20 out of 31) of the PENs studied compared to normal pancreatic tissue [194]. Pathways associated with Cyclin D1, specifically the P38/mitogen-activated protein kinase and Akt/PKB pathways, were activated in PENs, whereas down-regulation of the extracellular signal-regulated kinase pathway was also found with overexpression of Cyclin D1 [195–197].

K-RAS2, on chromosome 12p12.1 [198], is an important oncogene that transduces cell growth signals, mutations of which lead to growth factor-independent stimulation of cell proliferation [199]. K-RAS2 mutations were not detected in PENs in a study by Yashiro et al. [200]. Another study found strong K-RAS2 immunoreactivity and mutations in 4 of 6 insulinomas studied [201].

As described above, the *PI3K-Akt/PKB pathway* participates in the mediation of β-cell mass up-regulation [22, 202, 203]. This pathway activates downstream messengers and transcription factors such as PDX-1, Ngn-3, Isl-1, NeuroD/Beta2, and Nkx2.2, known to act during pancreatic embryogenesis. Glucose and insulin-like growth factor induce activation of the PI3K-Akt/PKB pathway and promote in vitro proliferation of insulinoma cells [202]. A persistant stimulus that promotes proliferation is seen in other tumors, including the persistence of achlorhydria inducing gastrinomas. Mouse studies found that up-regulation of the PI3K-Akt/PKB pathway is not sufficient for neoplastic transformation [22].

Somatostatin (SST) and G-protein-coupled transmembrane receptors (SSTRs) seem to have a role as regulators of islet morphology and cell proliferation in the endocrine pancreas [1]. Loss of SST/SSTR signaling may be a necessary but insufficient step in the pathogenesis of islet cell tumors. In support of this theory, MEN-1 studies showed decreased expression of SST and islet amyloid polypeptide in multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 [204], providing a link between loss of menin, suppression of SST and islet amyloid polypeptide expression, and oncogenesis.

The dominant effect of the protooncogene *c-Myc* is apoptosis of the islet cells. However, increased expression of c-Myc has been demonstrated in glucose-induced hyperplasia of islets. Thus, the effects of this gene depend on the environmental effects and the influences of other genes and proteins. Pelengaris and Khan [205] proposed a model of accumulating mutations leading to progression from hyperplasia to neoplasia. c-Myc is thought to be an early event in hyperplastic islets. c-Myc expression was found to be increased in hyperplastic islets and benign and malignant insulinomas.

RIP-Tag2 oncogene expression in transgenic mice leads to islet cell hyperplasia and neoplasia. Tag oncoprotein inactivates tumor suppressor proteins p53 and pRb. Decreased apoptosis is also seen due to overexpression of antiapoptotic protein Bcl-XL and Bcl-2. These antiapoptotic proteins counteract the effects of proapoptotic c-Myc [205] (Fig. 17.9) [206].

HER-2 neu, found on chromosome 11q21 [207], is a well-known oncogene that is overexpressed in some cases of breast carcinoma and is associated with increased malignant behavior, proliferation, and metastasis [208]. HER-2 neu has been studied in gastrinomas, where its overexpression was found in a minority of these tumors, and was associated with liver metastasis [209].

The CpG island methylation of the estrogen receptor gene, located on chromosome 6q24 [210], has also

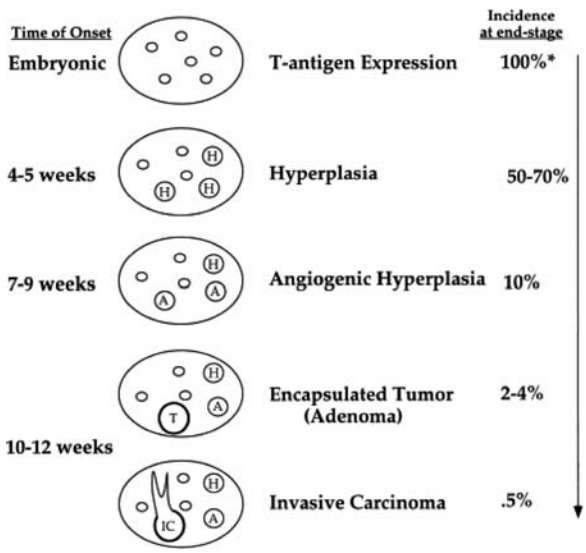


Fig. 17.9 [206] A schematic representation of RIPTag tumorigenesis. T-antigen expression commences during embryogenesis but is without apparent effect until 4–5 weeks when sporadic islets become hyperplastic (H); over time 50–70% become hyperplastic. At 7–9 weeks, angiogenic islets (A) appear. From these angiogenic islets emerge encapsulated tumors (10–12 weeks; T) (adenomas) of which a subset develop into invasive carcinoma (IC). *Incidence at all stages

been described in breast carcinoma and has significant therapeutic implications, indicating tamoxifen resistance [211]. Estrogen receptor gene methylation was found in 64% of PENs in one study [212].

Other cell cycle regulators have been studied with controversial results, including the retinoblastoma tumor suppressor gene initially found to be deleted in insulinomas [213, 214] but without further confirmation [135, 215, 216] and, as mentioned previously DPC4/Smad4 on chromosome 18q21 [178].

Cell cycle regulators studied and found not to be important contributors to PEN development to date include P53 located on chromosome 17p13.1 [176, 217–219], β-catenin located on chromosome 3p21 [220, 221], phospholipase CB3 located on chromosome 11q13 [222], and retinoic acid receptor β located on chromosome 3p24 [212, 223].

17.11.4 Gene Expression Profiling

Gene expression profiling using microarray analysis has identified a number of genes typical of PENs [204, 224–227]. Normal islets were compared with PENs, showing overexpression of 66 genes, especially IGFBP3 (a growth factor), fibronectin (a cell migration/adhesion molecule), and oncogenes MLLT10/AF10. 119 genes were underexpressed, including p21CIP1 (a cell cycle regulator), JunD (a transcription factor), and NME3 (a metastasis suppressor gene). A second study of gene expression in PENs compared normal islet cells and 3 neuroendocrine tumor cell lines; 667 genes were up-regulated, and 323 were down-regulated [224, 225]. Using well-characterized subsets of PENs and adjacent histologically normal pancreatic islets, we discovered a number of genes that were differentially expressed between normal pancreatic islets and PENs. These include RUNX1T1, paladin, and p21 [228, 229]. Subsequently, we have also validated these candidate genes as predictors of liver metastases on independent test sets of PENs with and without liver metastases [230]. Whether these genes are also important in the tumorigenesis is currently under investigation. Although gene expression profiling studies are identifying new candidate genes that may prove important in the pathogenesis of PENs, comparison among these studies is becoming difficult due to variations in study designs, patient populations, and tumor samples studied.

17.12 Additional Evidence in Support of Pancreatic Endocrine Tumorigenesis

Cathepsins are likely to mediate a proangiogenic change of hyperplastic islets, which is an important step in the progression from hyperplasia to neoplasia (Fig. 17.10) [231–233]. *CD44*, a chief component of T-cell activation signaling, plays a role in tumor progression through growth and migration [234, 235]. Imam et al. [236] found "strong" staining of v6 and v9 isoforms associated with benign PENs, decreased proliferation, and longer survival. *Neuroendocrine secretory peptide 55* (NESP-55), a chromogranin family member, is located on chromosome 20q13 [237]. Srivastava et al. [238] distinguished gastrointestinal and pulmonary carcinoids from PENs and pheochromocytomas by examining the expression of NESP-55. PENs and pheochromocytomas stained positive for the protein, whereas gastrointestinal and pulmonary carcinoids did not. This is just one of several recently discovered differences between carcinoids and PENs. NESP-55 may be useful in establishing the origin of metastatic endocrine tumors.

Human MutL homologue 1 (hMLH1), found on chromosome 3p21.3 [239], is a mismatch repair gene. One study found hMLH1 to be hypermethylated in 23% of PENs with evidence of microsatellite instability [240]. Promoter hypermethylation (gene silencing) was associated with an improved 5-year survival (100% versus 56%).

Telomerase, on chromosome 5p15.33 [241], is an enzyme that maintains the chromosomal telomere. Telomere degradation is a normal part of the cell cycle, but aberrations of telomerase can lead to tumorigenesis [16]. Telomerase activity may predict an unfavorable outcome in PENs [11, 242]. *Thrombomodulin*, an endothelial anticoagulant, when overexpressed, reduces cellular proliferation and promotes cellular adhesion in vitro, while expression of thrombomodulin in vivo is inversely correlated with metastatic spread [243, 244].

E-cadherin functions to promote cell-cell adhesion. Loss of E-cadherin is associated with invasion and metastasis in many malignancies. Chetty et al. [18] found aberrant E-cadherin expression in more than 50% of PENs, which strongly correlated with lymph node and liver metastasis. In addition, nuclear

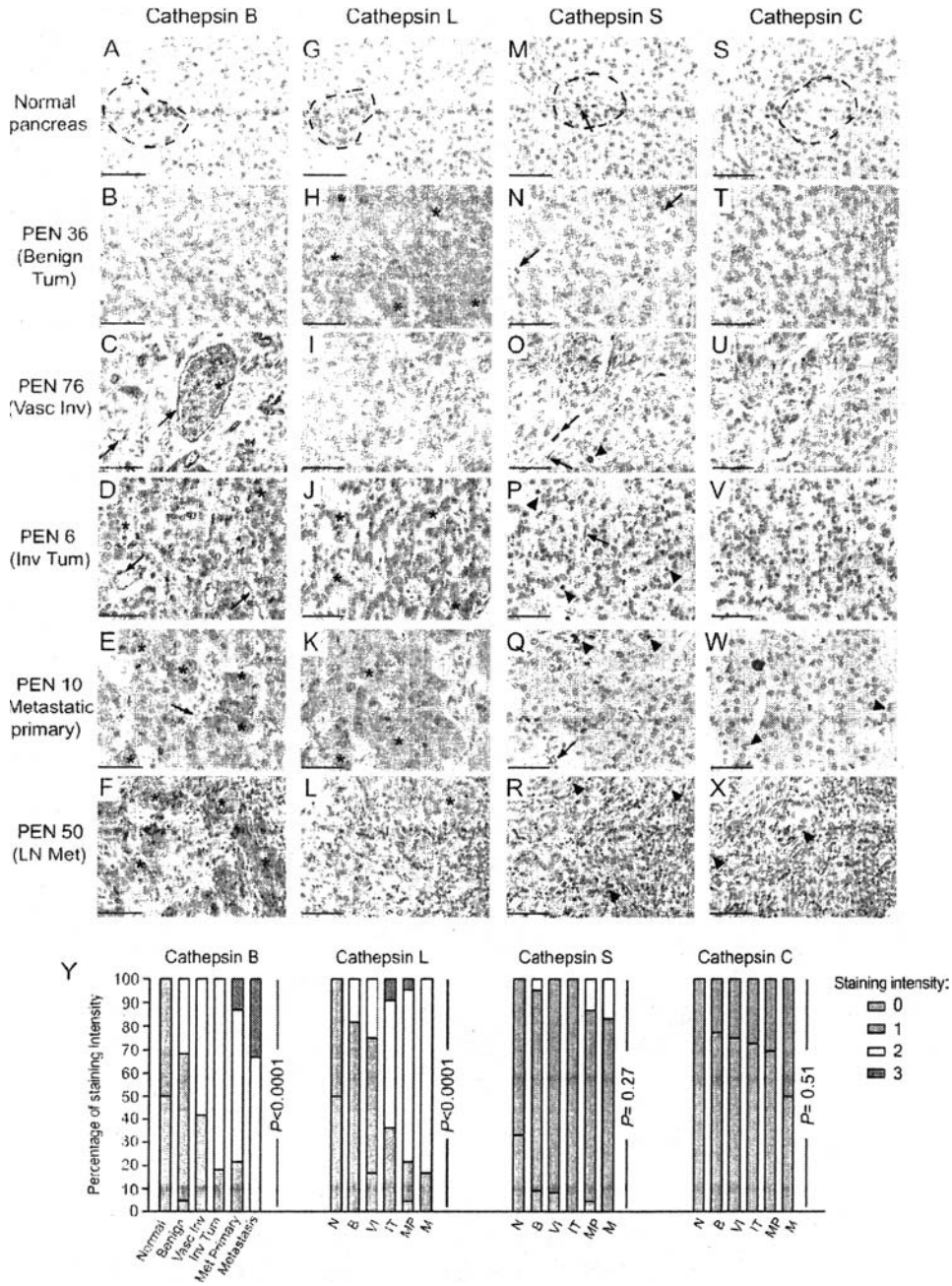


Fig. 17.10 Increased levels of cathepsins B and L are positively associated with tumor progression in human PEN lesions and associated metastases. A TMA was constructed from a panel of human PEN and normal pancreas tissues. (**A–X**) Tissue arrays were stained with antibodies against cathepsins B, L, S, and C as indicated. Cathepsin-positive cells are stained in brown, and hematoxylin (blue) was used as a counterstain. Representative images of normal human pancreas ($n = 6$) stained for each antibody are shown in the first row, with normal islets indicated with a dotted black line, surrounded by normal exocrine cells. Representative images for each of the tumor stages – Benign Tumor ($n = 22$), Vascular Invasive Tumor ($n = 12$), Invasive Tumor ($n = 11$), Metastatic Primary ($n = 23$), and Metastasis ($n = 6$) – are shown in the rows *below*. The PEN number corresponds to the position on the tissue array. Tumor cell staining is indicated by asterisks, endothelial cell staining by arrows, and immune cell staining by arrowheads. (**Y**) The cathepsin staining for each tissue specimen was scored as negative (0) or positive [three levels: weak (1); moderate (2); strong (3)] and graphed as the percentage of staining intensity for each stage. For each cathepsin, an overall test of differences among any of the groups (normal and tumor) was performed. An exact version of Mantel Haenszel's test for trend was performed to look for differences in staining in each tumor group compared with the normal controls and to calculate *P* values, which are shown next to each data set. Bars, 50 μm

E-cadherin was seen in 18/57 cases when stained with antibodies detecting the cytoplasmic fragment of E-cadherin. This is a previously undescribed staining pattern in PENs.

Cell signaling pathways influence tumor growth and hormonal activity. Neuroendocrine cells can express the *insulin-like growth factor (IGF) and its receptor (IGFR)* [245]. Cell line studies indicate that IGF-1 can act in autocrine and paracrine fashion to inhibit apoptosis and stimulate secretion of chromogranins, possibly by activating the P13K-AKT pathway. VEGF is also expressed by neuroendocrine tumors, and elevated levels of VEGF have been associated with tumor progression [246, 247].

17.13 Summary

While some consider that the pancreas may be the least understood organ after the brain, there is a rapid increase in our knowledge-base, as evidence is accumulating to construct a working hypothesis of the pathogenesis of PENs. We have learned, mainly through the study of β-cell regulation, that neogenesis and transdifferentiation, replication, hypertrophy, and apoptosis work together to control endocrine cell mass. However, the pluripotent stem cells thought to play a role in neogenesis and transdifferentiation have yet to be discovered. Studies have found many of the same mechanisms that operate during pancreatic development in the embryo regulate β-cell mass in adults. One could imagine how deregulation of these processes could lead to oncogenesis. All of these processes are steered by cell regulators such as glucose, c-Myc, P13K-AKT/PKB, PDX-1, Ngn-3, and others. Many of the members of these complex molecular pathways have been implicated in the pathogenesis of PENs. Genetic syndromes, which include PENs as one of their components, allow for the identification of genes associated with the genesis of PENs, including the MEN1 gene, vHL gene, NF-1 gene, TSC1 gene, and TSC2 gene. Advanced molecular testing is currently making it more feasible to pursue newer lines of genetic studies to unravel an increasing number of chromosomal aberrations associated with genesis and progression of PENs. Comparative genomic hybridization studies revealed the most frequent chromosomal gains were on chromosomes 7 and 20. The most frequent losses were on chromosomes 2, 6q, 21q, and Y. The chromosome aberrations most frequently associated with metastasis included gains of chromosomes 7, 14q, 4, and Xq, as well as losses of chromosomes 6p, 3p, 6q, and 21q. LOH analyses have identified multiple tumor suppressor gene loci that contribute to the pathogenesis of PENs. Gene expression profiling using microarray analysis has identified a number of genes differentially expressed in PENs when compared with normal islets and include IGFBP3, fibronectin, oncogene MLLT10/AF10, p21C1P1, JunD, NME3, RUNX1T1, paladin, and p21. One of the challenges is that comparison among these studies is becoming increasingly difficult due to variations in study designs, patient populations, and tumor samples (fresh-frozen versus archival) and variation in the technical platform used. A number of interesting lines of investigation are lending credence to various hypotheses regarding the pathogenesis of PENs. Some the recent studies have focused on cathepsins, CD44, NESP-55, hMLH1, telomerase, thrombomodulin, and E-cadherin expression/activity.

All in all, many studies have contributed significantly to our current knowledge of the tumorigenesis and progression of PENs. As understanding of the mechanisms and mediators of islet cell neogenesis increases, understanding the deregulation of various biologic pathways contributing to the pathogenesis of PENs will also improve. Recent findings suggest that PENs have as diverse a spectrum of genetic aberrations as are their clinical presentations. Nonfunctional PENs exhibit more molecular aberrations than functional PENs. Also, malignant behavior seems to be associated with increasing genetic aberrations, suggesting specific genes may be associated with metastases in PENs [16]. Multiple molecular alterations, involving migratory, cell cycle, and angiogenic functions, have been found to promote PEN development/growth, invasion, and metastases [226, 243, 248]. As a result of these findings, phase III trials of novel therapies targeting mTOR, VEGF and other target are in progress. Focused investigation of various mechanisms of tumorigenic pathways of PENsorigenesis will contribute to novel diagnostic, therapeutic and preventive stratagies, as well as facilitate the development of prognostic and predictive markers, while continuing to advance our understanding of the pathogenesis of PENs.

Acknowledgments The authors would like to acknowledge the excellent assistance of Jean Stern, Mary Willis, LuAnn Ellsperman, and Rasa Hamilton.

References

1. Ballian N, Hu M, Liu SH, Brunicardi FC. Proliferation, hyperplasia, neogenesis, and neoplasia in the islets of Langerhans. Pancreas 2007;35(3);199–206.
2. Hennig R, Ding XZ, Adrian TE. On the role of the islets of Langerhans in pancreatic cancer. Histol Histopathol 2004;19(3);999–1011.
3. Hruban R, Wilentz R. The pancreas. In: Kumar V, Abbas A, Fausto N, editors. Robbins and Cotran Pathologic Basis of Disease. 7th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Saunders; 2005. 939–53.
4. Pour PM, Pandey KK, Batra SK. What is the origin of pancreatic adenocarcinoma? Mol Cancer 2003;2:13.
5. Schmied BM, Ulrich AB, Friess H, Buchler MW, Pour PM. The patterns of extrainsular endocrine cells in pancreatic cancer. Teratog Carcinog Mutagen 2001;21(1); 69–81.
6. Grube D, Bohn R. The microanatomy of human islets of Langerhans, with special reference to somatostatin (D-) cells. Arch Histol Jpn 1983;46(3);327–53.
7. Buchanan KD, Johnston CF, O'Hare MM, Ardill JE, Shaw C, Collins JS, et al. Neuroendocrine tumors. A European view. Am J Med 1986;81(6B):14–22.
8. Mittendorf EA, Shifrin AL, Inabnet WB, Libutti SK, McHenry CR, Demeure MJ. Islet cell tumors. Curr Probl Surg 2006;43(10);685–765.
9. Rindi G, Capella C, Solcia E. Introduction to a revised clinicopathological classification of neuroendocrine tumors of the gastroenteropancreatic tract. Q J Nucl Med 2000;44(1);13–21.
10. Goldin SB, Aston J, Wahi MM. Sporadically occurring functional pancreatic endocrine tumors: review of recent literature. Curr Opin Oncol 2008;20(1);25–33.
11. Halfdanarson TR, Rubin J, Farnell MB, Grant CS, Petersen GM. Pancreatic endocrine neoplasms: epidemiology and prognosis of pancreatic endocrine tumors. Endocr Relat Cancer 2008;15(2);409–27.
12. Tomassetti P, Campana D, Piscitelli L, Casadei R, Santini D, Nori F, et al. Endocrine pancreatic tumors: factors correlated with survival. Ann Oncol 2005;16(11); 1806–10.
13. Bardeesy N, DePinho RA. Pancreatic cancer biology and genetics. Nat Rev Cancer 2002;2(12);897–909.
14. Heitz P, Komminoth P, Perren A, Klimstra D, Dayal Y, Bordi C, et al. Tumours of the endocrine pancreas. In: DeLellis R, Lloyd R, Heitz P, Eng C, editors. Pathology and Genetics: Tumours of the Endocrine System. Lyon, France: IARC Press; 2004. 177–208.
15. Heymann MF, Joubert M, Nemeth J, Franc B, Visset J, Hamy A, et al. Prognostic and immunohistochemical validation of the capella classification of pancreatic neuroendocrine tumours: an analysis of 82 sporadic cases. Histopathology 2000;36(5);421–32.
16. Zikusoka MN, Kidd M, Eick G, Latich I, Modlin IM. The molecular genetics of gastroenteropancreatic neuroendocrine tumors. Cancer 2005;104(11);2292–309.
17. Calender A. Molecular genetics of neuroendocrine tumors. Digestion 2000;62 Suppl 1:3–18.
18. Chetty R. An overview of practical issues in the diagnosis of gastroenteropancreatic neuroendocrine pathology. Arch Pathol Lab Med 2008;132(8);1285–9.
19. Thompson L, Heffess C. Pancreas. In: Mills S, Carter D, Greenson J, Oberman H, Reuter V, Stoler M, editors. Sternberg's Diagnostic Surgical Pathology. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2004. 1603–54.
20. Bonner-Weir S. Islet growth and development in the adult. J Mol Endocrinol 2000;24(3);297–302.
21. Del Zotto H, Borelli MI, Flores L, Garcia ME, Gomez Dumm CL, Chicco A, et al. Islet neogenesis: an apparent key component of long-term pancreas adaptation to increased insulin demand. J Endocrinol 2004;183(2); 321–30.
22. Bernal-Mizrachi E, Wen W, Stahlhut S, Welling CM, Permutt MA. Islet beta cell expression of constitutively active Akt1/PKB alpha induces striking hypertrophy, hyperplasia, and hyperinsulinemia. J Clin Invest 2001;108(11);1631–8.
23. Swenne I. Pancreatic beta-cell growth and diabetes mellitus. Diabetologia 1992;35(3);193–201.
24. Zhang YQ, Sarvetnick N. Development of cell markers for the identification and expansion of islet progenitor cells. Diabetes Metab Res Rev 2003;19(5);363–74.
25. Madsen OD, Jensen J, Blume N, Petersen HV, Lund K, Karlsen C, et al. Pancreatic development and maturation of the islet B cell. Studies of pluripotent islet cultures. Eur J Biochem 1996;242(3);435–45.
26. Rosenberg L. Induction of islet cell neogenesis in the adult pancreas: the partial duct obstruction model. Microsc Res Tech 1998;43(4);337–46.
27. Bouwens L, Pipeleers DG. Extra-insular beta cells associated with ductules are frequent in adult human pancreas. Diabetologia 1998;41(6);629–33.
28. Gu D, Sarvetnick N. A transgenic model for studying islet development. Recent Prog Horm Res 1994;49:161–5.
29. Guz Y, Nasir I, Teitelman G. Regeneration of pancreatic beta cells from intra-islet precursor cells in an experimental model of diabetes. Endocrinology 2001;142(11); 4956–68.
30. Zulewski H, Abraham EJ, Gerlach MJ, Daniel PB, Moritz W, Muller B, et al. Multipotential nestin-positive stem cells isolated from adult pancreatic islets differentiate ex vivo into pancreatic endocrine, exocrine, and hepatic phenotypes. Diabetes 2001;50(3);521–33.
31. Gagliardino JJ, Del Zotto H, Massa L, Flores LE, Borelli MI. Pancreatic duodenal homeobox-1 and islet neogenesis-associated protein: a possible combined marker of activateable pancreatic cell precursors. J Endocrinol 2003;177(2);249–59.
32. Yang L, Li S, Hatch H, Ahrens K, Cornelius JG, Petersen BE, et al. In vitro trans-differentiation of adult hepatic stem cells into pancreatic endocrine hormone-producing cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2002;99(12); 8078–83.

33. Horb ME, Shen CN, Tosh D, Slack JM. Experimental conversion of liver to pancreas. Curr Biol 2003;13(2);105–15.
34. Tuch BE, Szymanska B, Yao M, Tabiin MT, Gross DJ, Holman S, et al. Function of a genetically modified human liver cell line that stores, processes and secretes insulin. Gene Ther 2003;10(6);490–503.
35. Kojima H, Fujimiya M, Matsumura K, Younan P, Imaeda H, Maeda M, et al. NeuroD-betacellulin gene therapy induces islet neogenesis in the liver and reverses diabetes in mice. Nat Med 2003;9(5);596–603.
36. Yoshida S, Kajimoto Y, Yasuda T, Watada H, Fujitani Y, Kosaka H, et al. PDX-1 induces differentiation of intestinal epithelioid IEC-6 into insulin-producing cells. Diabetes 2002;51(8);2505–13.
37. Wang X, Al-Dhalimy M, Lagasse E, Finegold M, Grompe M. Liver repopulation and correction of metabolic liver disease by transplanted adult mouse pancreatic cells. Am J Pathol 2001;158(2);571–9.
38. Scarpelli DG, Rao MS. Differentiation of regenerating pancreatic cells into hepatocyte-like cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1981;78(4);2577–81.
39. Ferber S, Halkin A, Cohen H, Ber I, Einav Y, Goldberg I, et al. Pancreatic and duodenal homeobox gene 1 induces expression of insulin genes in liver and ameliorates streptozotocin-induced hyperglycemia. Nat Med 2000;6(5);568–72.
40. Schmied B, Liu G, Moyer MP, Hernberg IS, Sanger W, Batra S, et al. Induction of adenocarcinoma from hamster pancreatic islet cells treated with N-nitrosobis(2-oxopropyl)amine in vitro. Carcinogenesis 1999;20(2);317–24.
41. Tyrberg B, Eizirik DL, Hellerstrom C, Pipeleers DG, Andersson A. Human pancreatic beta-cell deoxyribonucleic acid-synthesis in islet grafts decreases with increasing organ donor age but increases in response to glucose stimulation in vitro. Endocrinology 1996;137(12); 5694–9.
42. Butler AE, Janson J, Bonner-Weir S, Ritzel R, Rizza RA, Butler PC. Beta-cell deficit and increased beta-cell apoptosis in humans with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes 2003;52(1);102–10.
43. Dor Y, Brown J, Martinez OI, Melton DA. Adult pancreatic beta-cells are formed by self-duplication rather than stem-cell differentiation. Nature 2004;429(6987);41–6.
44. Laybutt DR, Glandt M, Xu G, Ahn YB, Trivedi N, Bonner-Weir S, et al. Critical reduction in beta-cell mass results in two distinct outcomes over time. Adaptation with impaired glucose tolerance or decompensated diabetes. J Biol Chem 2003;278(5);2997–3005.
45. Weir GC, Bonner-Weir S. Five stages of evolving beta-cell dysfunction during progression to diabetes. Diabetes 2004;53 Suppl 3:S16–21.
46. Jamal AM, Lipsett M, Sladek R, Laganiere S, Hanley S, Rosenberg L. Morphogenetic plasticity of adult human pancreatic islets of Langerhans. Cell Death Differ 2005;12(7);702–12.
47. Steil GM, Trivedi N, Jonas JC, Hasenkamp WM, Sharma A, Bonner-Weir S, et al. Adaptation of beta-cell mass to substrate oversupply: enhanced function with normal gene expression. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab 2001;280(5):E788–96.
48. Swenne I. The role of glucose in the in vitro regulation of cell cycle kinetics and proliferation of fetal pancreatic B-cells. Diabetes 1982;31(9);754–60.
49. Al-Quobaili F, Montenarh M. Pancreatic duodenal homeobox factor-1 and diabetes mellitus type 2 (review). Int J Mol Med 2008;21(4);399–404.
50. Deng S, Vatamaniuk M, Huang X, Doliba N, Lian MM, Frank A, et al. Structural and functional abnormalities in the islets isolated from type 2 diabetic subjects. Diabetes 2004;53(3);624–32.
51. Maedler K, Spinas GA, Lehmann R, Sergeev P, Weber M, Fontana A, et al. Glucose induces beta-cell apoptosis via upregulation of the Fas receptor in human islets. Diabetes 2001;50(8);1683–90.
52. Leahy J. Impaired beta-cell function with chronic hyperglycemia: "overworked beta-cell" hypothesis. Diabetes Rev 1996;4:298–319.
53. Bernard C, Thibault C, Berthault MF, Magnan C, Saulnier C, Portha B, et al. Pancreatic beta-cell regeneration after 48-h glucose infusion in mildly diabetic rats is not correlated with functional improvement. Diabetes 1998;47(7);1058–65.
54. Andersson A. The influence of hyperglycaemia, hyperinsulinaemia and genetic background on the fate of intrasplenically implanted mouse islets. Diabetologia 1983;25(3);269–72.
55. Guillen C, Navarro P, Robledo M, Valverde AM, Benito M. Differential mitogenic signaling in insulin receptor-deficient fetal pancreatic beta-cells. Endocrinology 2006;147(4);1959–68.
56. Koiter TR, Wijkstra S, van Der Schaaf-Verdonk CJ, Moes H, Schuiling GA. Pancreatic beta-cell function and islet-cell proliferation: effect of hyperinsulinaemia. Physiol Behav 1995;57(4);717–21.
57. Dang CV. c-Myc target genes involved in cell growth, apoptosis, and metabolism. Mol Cell Biol 1999;19(1); 1–11.
58. He TC, Sparks AB, Rago C, Hermeking H, Zawel L, da Costa LT, et al. Identification of c-MYC as a target of the APC pathway. Science 1998;281(5382); 1509–12.
59. Dessimoz J, Bonnard C, Huelsken J, Grapin-Botton A. Pancreas-specific deletion of beta-catenin reveals Wnt-dependent and Wnt-independent functions during development. Curr Biol 2005;15(18);1677–83.
60. Stoffers DA, Zinkin NT, Stanojevic V, Clarke WL, Habener JF. Pancreatic agenesis attributable to a single nucleotide deletion in the human IPF1 gene coding sequence. Nat Genet 1997;15(1);106–10.
61. Ohlsson H, Karlsson K, Edlund T. IPF1, a homeodomain-containing transactivator of the insulin gene. Embo J 1993;12(11);4251–9.
62. Watada H, Kajimoto Y, Umayahara Y, Matsuoka T, Kaneto H, Fujitani Y, et al. The human glucokinase gene beta-cell-type promoter: an essential role of insulin promoter factor 1/PDX-1 in its activation in HIT-T15 cells. Diabetes 1996;45(11);1478–88.
63. Waeber G, Thompson N, Nicod P, Bonny C. Transcriptional activation of the GLUT2 gene by the IPF-1/STF-1/IDX-1 homeobox factor. Mol Endocrinol 1996;10(11);1327–34.

64. Gu G, Dubauskaite J, Melton DA. Direct evidence for the pancreatic lineage: NGN3+ cells are islet progenitors and are distinct from duct progenitors. Development 2002;129(10);2447–57.
65. Fernandes A, King LC, Guz Y, Stein R, Wright CV, Teitelman G. Differentiation of new insulin-producing cells is induced by injury in adult pancreatic islets. Endocrinology 1997;138(4);1750–62.
66. Gradwohl G, Dierich A, LeMeur M, Guillemot F. neurogenin3 is required for the development of the four endocrine cell lineages of the pancreas. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2000;97(4);1607–11.
67. Heremans Y, Van De Casteele M, in't Veld P, Gradwohl G, Serup P, Madsen O, et al. Recapitulation of embryonic neuroendocrine differentiation in adult human pancreatic duct cells expressing neurogenin 3. J Cell Biol 2002;159(2);303–12.
68. Krakowski M, Yeung B, Abdelmalik R, Good A, Mocnik L, Sosa-Pineda B, et al. IFN-gamma overexpression within the pancreas is not sufficient to rescue Pax4, Pax6, and Pdx-1 mutant mice from death. Pancreas 2000;21(4);399–406.
69. Arnush M, Gu D, Baugh C, Sawyer SP, Mroczkowski B, Krahl T, et al. Growth factors in the regenerating pancreas of gamma-interferon transgenic mice. Lab Invest 1996;74(6);985–90.
70. O'Reilly LA, Gu D, Sarvetnick N, Edlund H, Phillips JM, Fulford T, et al. alpha-Cell neogenesis in an animal model of IDDM. Diabetes 1997;46(4);599–606.
71. Jensen RT. Pancreatic endocrine tumors: recent advances. Ann Oncol 1999;10 Suppl 4:170–6.
72. Moldawer MP, Nardi GL, Raker JW. Concomitance of multiple adenomas of the parathyroids and pancreatic islets with tumor of the pituitary: a syndrome with a familial incidence. Am J Med Sci 1954;228(2); 190–206.
73. Wermer P. Genetic aspects of adenomatosis of endocrine glands. Am J Med 1954;16(3);363–71.
74. Kronenberg H, Melmeds S, Polonsky K, Larsen P, editors. Williams Textbook of Endocrinology. 11th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders Elsevier; 2008.
75. Brandi ML, Gagel RF, Angeli A, Bilezikian JP, Beck-Peccoz P, Bordi C, et al. Guidelines for diagnosis and therapy of MEN type 1 and type 2. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2001;86(12);5658–71.
76. Marx SJ, Agarwal SK, Kester MB, Heppner C, Kim YS, Skarulis MC, et al. Multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1: clinical and genetic features of the hereditary endocrine neoplasias. Recent Prog Horm Res 1999;54:397–438; discussion 438–9.
77. Pipeleers-Marichal M, Somers G, Willems G, Foulis A, Imrie C, Bishop AE, et al. Gastrinomas in the duodenums of patients with multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 and the Zollinger-Ellison syndrome. N Engl J Med 1990;322(11);723–7.
78. Skogseid B, Eriksson B, Lundqvist G, Lorelius LE, Rastad J, Wide L, et al. Multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1: a 10-year prospective screening study in four kindreds. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1991;73(2);281–7.
79. Gaitan D, Loosen PT, Orth DN. Two patients with Cushing's disease in a kindred with multiple endocrine neoplasia type I. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1993;76(6);1580–2.
80. Burgess JR, Greenaway TM, Parameswaran V, Challis DR, David R, Shepherd JJ. Enteropancreatic malignancy associated with multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1: risk factors and pathogenesis. Cancer 1998;83(3);428–34.
81. Norton JA, Fraker DL, Alexander HR, Venzon DJ, Doppman JL, Serrano J, et al. Surgery to cure the Zollinger-Ellison syndrome. N Engl J Med 1999;341(9);635–44.
82. Thompson NW. Current concepts in the surgical management of multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 pancreatic-duodenal disease. Results in the treatment of 40 patients with Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, hypoglycaemia or both. J Intern Med 1998;243(6);495–500.
83. Majewski JT, Wilson SD. The MEA-I syndrome: an all or none phenomenon? Surgery 1979;86(3);475–84.
84. Agarwal SK, Lee Burns A, Sukhodolets KE, Kennedy PA, Obungu VH, Hickman AB, et al. Molecular pathology of the MEN1 gene. Ann NY Acad Sci 2004;1014: 189–98.
85. Larsson C, Skogseid B, Oberg K, Nakamura Y, Nordenskjold M. Multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 gene maps to chromosome 11 and is lost in insulinoma. Nature 1988;332(6159);85–7.
86. Knudson AG, Jr. Mutation and cancer: statistical study of retinoblastoma. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1971;68(4); 820–3.
87. Knudson AG. Hereditary cancer: two hits revisited. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 1996;122(3);135–40.
88. Thepot D, Weitzman JB, Barra J, Segretain D, Stinnakre MG, Babinet C, et al. Targeted disruption of the murine junD gene results in multiple defects in male reproductive function. Development 2000;127(1);143–53.
89. Agarwal SK, Guru SC, Heppner C, Erdos MR, Collins RM, Park SY, et al. Menin interacts with the AP1 transcription factor JunD and represses JunD-activated transcription. Cell 1999;96(1);143–52.
90. Hendy GN, Kaji H, Sowa H, Lebrun JJ, Canaff L. Menin and TGF-beta superfamily member signaling via the Smad pathway in pituitary, parathyroid and osteoblast. Horm Metab Res 2005;37(6);375–9.
91. Kaji H, Canaff L, Lebrun JJ, Goltzman D, Hendy GN. Inactivation of menin, a Smad3-interacting protein, blocks transforming growth factor type beta signaling. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2001;98(7);3837–42.
92. Lemmens IH, Forsberg L, Pannett AA, Meyen E, Piehl F, Turner JJ, et al. Menin interacts directly with the homeobox-containing protein Pem. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 2001;286(2);426–31.
93. Heppner C, Bilimoria KY, Agarwal SK, Kester M, Whitty LJ, Guru SC, et al. The tumor suppressor protein menin interacts with NF-kappaB proteins and inhibits NF-kappaB-mediated transactivation. Oncogene 2001;20(36);4917–25.
94. Agarwal S, Scacheri P, Rice T, Kennedy P, Ozawa A, Burgess-Hickman A, et al. MEN1 gene: mutation and pathyphysiology. Ann Endocrinol (Paris) 2006;67(suppl 4):1S12–3.
95. Agarwal SK, Impey S, McWeeney S, Scacheri PC, Collins FS, Goodman RH, et al. Distribution of menin-occupied

regions in chromatin specifies a broad role of menin in transcriptional regulation. Neoplasia 2007;9(2);101–7.
96. Thakker RV, Bouloux P, Wooding C, Chotai K, Broad PM, Spurr NK, et al. Association of parathyroid tumors in multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 with loss of alleles on chromosome 11. N Engl J Med 1989;321(4);218–24.
97. Agarwal SK, Debelenko LV, Kester MB, Guru SC, Manickam P, Olufemi SE, et al. Analysis of recurrent germline mutations in the MEN1 gene encountered in apparently unrelated families. Hum Mutat 1998;12(2); 75–82.
98. Kishi M, Tsukada T, Shimizu S, Futami H, Ito Y, Kanbe M, et al. A large germline deletion of the MEN1 gene in a family with multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1. Jpn J Cancer Res 1998;89(1);1–5.
99. Agarwal SK, Kester MB, Debelenko LV, Heppner C, Emmert-Buck MR, Skarulis MC, et al. Germline mutations of the MEN1 gene in familial multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 and related states. Hum Mol Genet 1997;6(7);1169–75.
100. Kumar V, Fausto N, editors. Robbins and Cotran Pathologic Basis of Disease. 7th ed. Philadeplphia, PA: Elsevier Saunders; 2005.
101. Lubensky IA, Pack S, Ault D, Vortmeyer AO, Libutti SK, Choyke PL, et al. Multiple neuroendocrine tumors of the pancreas in von Hippel-Lindau disease patients: histopathological and molecular genetic analysis. Am J Pathol 1998;153(1);223–31.
102. Debelenko LV, Zhuang Z, Emmert-Buck MR, Chandrasekharappa SC, Manickam P, Guru SC, et al. Allelic deletions on chromosome 11q13 in multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1-associated and sporadic gastrinomas and pancreatic endocrine tumors. Cancer Res 1997;57(11);2238–43.
103. Eubanks PJ, Sawicki MP, Samara GJ, Gatti R, Nakamura Y, Tsao D, et al. Putative tumor-suppressor gene on chromosome 11 is important in sporadic endocrine tumor formation. Am J Surg 1994;167(1);180–5.
104. Zhuang Z, Vortmeyer AO, Pack S, Huang S, Pham TA, Wang C, et al. Somatic mutations of the MEN1 tumor suppressor gene in sporadic gastrinomas and insulinomas. Cancer Res 1997;57(21);4682–6.
105. Wang EH, Ebrahimi SA, Wu AY, Kashefi C, Passaro E, Jr., Sawicki MP. Mutation of the MENIN gene in sporadic pancreatic endocrine tumors. Cancer Res 1998;58(19);4417–20.
106. Goebel SU, Heppner C, Burns AL, Marx SJ, Spiegel AM, Zhuang Z, et al. Genotype/phenotype correlation of multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 gene mutations in sporadic gastrinomas. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2000;85(1);116–23.
107. Gortz B, Roth J, Krahenmann A, de Krijger RR, Muletta-Feurer S, Rutimann K, et al. Mutations and allelic deletions of the MEN1 gene are associated with a subset of sporadic endocrine pancreatic and neuroendocrine tumors and not restricted to foregut neoplasms. Am J Pathol 1999;154(2);429–36.
108. Williamson C, Pannett AA, Pang JT, Wooding C, McCarthy M, Sheppard MN, et al. Localisation of a gene causing endocrine neoplasia to a 4 cM region on chromosome 1p35–p36. J Med Genet 1997;34(8);617–9.
109. Kytola S, Makinen MJ, Kahkonen M, Teh BT, Leisti J, Salmela P. Comparative genomic hybridization studies in tumours from a patient with multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1. Eur J Endocrinol 1998;139(2);202–6.
110. Franklin DS, Godfrey VL, O'Brien DA, Deng C, Xiong Y. Functional collaboration between different cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitors suppresses tumor growth with distinct tissue specificity. Mol Cell Biol 2000;20(16);6147–58.
111. Pestell RG, Albanese C, Reutens AT, Segall JE, Lee RJ, Arnold A. The cyclins and cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitors in hormonal regulation of proliferation and differentiation. Endocr Rev 1999;20(4);501–34.
112. Perren A, Anlauf M, Henopp T, Rudolph T, Schmitt A, Raffel A, et al. Multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 (MEN1): loss of one MEN1 allele in tumors and monohormonal endocrine cell clusters but not in islet hyperplasia of the pancreas. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2007;92(3); 1118–28.
113. Anlauf M, Perren A, Meyer CL, Schmid S, Saremaslani P, Kruse ML, et al. Precursor lesions in patients with multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1-associated duodenal gastrinomas. Gastroenterology 2005;128(5); 1187–98.
114. Crabtree JS, Scacheri PC, Ward JM, Garrett-Beal L, Emmert-Buck MR, Edgemon KA, et al. A mouse model of multiple endocrine neoplasia, type 1, develops multiple endocrine tumors. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2001;98(3);1118–23.
115. Crabtree JS, Scacheri PC, Ward JM, McNally SR, Swain GP, Montagna C, et al. Of mice and MEN1: Insulinomas in a conditional mouse knockout. Mol Cell Biol 2003;23(17);6075–85.
116. Frosch M, Anthony D, Girolami U. In: Kumar V, Abbas A, Fausto N, editors. Robbin's & Cotran's Pathologic Basis of Disease. 7th ed. Philadelphia, PA.: Elsevier Saunders; 2005. p. 939–53.
117. Binkovitz LA, Johnson CD, Stephens DH. Islet cell tumors in von Hippel-Lindau disease: increased prevalence and relationship to the multiple endocrine neoplasias. AJR Am J Roentgenol 1990;155(3);501–5.
118. Hough DM, Stephens DH, Johnson CD, Binkovitz LA. Pancreatic lesions in von Hippel-Lindau disease: prevalence, clinical significance, and CT findings. AJR Am J Roentgenol 1994;162(5);1091–4.
119. Neumann HP, Dinkel E, Brambs H, Wimmer B, Friedburg H, Volk B, et al. Pancreatic lesions in the von Hippel-Lindau syndrome. Gastroenterology 1991;101(2);465–71.
120. LaForgia S, Lasota J, Latif F, Boghosian-Sell L, Kastury K, Ohta M, et al. Detailed genetic and physical map of the 3p chromosome region surrounding the familial renal cell carcinoma chromosome translocation, t(3;8)(p14.2;q24.1). Cancer Res 1993;53(13);3118–24.
121. Richards FM, Maher ER, Latif F, Phipps ME, Tory K, Lush M, et al. Detailed genetic mapping of the von Hippel-Lindau disease tumour suppressor gene. J Med Genet 1993;30(2);104–7.
122. Pugh CW, Ratcliffe PJ. Regulation of angiogenesis by hypoxia: role of the HIF system. Nat Med 2003;9(6); 677–84.

123. Maxwell PH, Pugh CW, Ratcliffe PJ. The pVHL-hIF-1 system. A key mediator of oxygen homeostasis. Adv Exp Med Biol 2001;502:365–76.
124. Ratcliffe PJ, O'Rourke JF, Maxwell PH, Pugh CW. Oxygen sensing, hypoxia-inducible factor-1 and the regulation of mammalian gene expression. J Exp Biol 1998;201(Pt 8):1153–62.
125. Kim WY, Kaelin WG. Role of VHL gene mutation in human cancer. J Clin Oncol 2004;22(24);4991–5004.
126. Lamberts SW, Krenning EP, Reubi JC. The role of somatostatin and its analogs in the diagnosis and treatment of tumors. Endocr Rev 1991;12(4);450–82.
127. Na X, Wu G, Ryan CK, Schoen SR, di'Santagnese PA, Messing EM. Overproduction of vascular endothelial growth factor related to von Hippel-Lindau tumor suppressor gene mutations and hypoxia-inducible factor-1 alpha expression in renal cell carcinomas. J Urol 2003;170(2 Pt 1):588–92.
128. Wang XC, Xu SY, Wu XY, Song HD, Mao YF, Fan HY, et al. Gene expression profiling in human insulinoma tissue: genes involved in the insulin secretion pathway and cloning of novel full-length cDNAs. Endocr Relat Cancer 2004;11(2);295–303.
129. Petrella BL, Lohi J, Brinckerhoff CE. Identification of membrane type-1 matrix metalloproteinase as a target of hypoxia-inducible factor-2 alpha in von Hippel-Lindau renal cell carcinoma. Oncogene 2005;24(6);1043–52.
130. Petrella BL, Brinckerhoff CE. Tumor cell invasion of von Hippel Lindau renal cell carcinoma cells is mediated by membrane type-1 matrix metalloproteinase. Mol Cancer 2006;5:66.
131. Konno H, Arai T, Tanaka T, Baba M, Matsumoto K, Kanai T, et al. Antitumor effect of a neutralizing antibody to vascular endothelial growth factor on liver metastasis of endocrine neoplasm. Jpn J Cancer Res 1998;89(9);933–9.
132. Yao JC, Hoff PM. Molecular targeted therapy for neuroendocrine tumors. Hematol Oncol Clin North Am 2007;21(3);575–81; x.
133. Hammel PR, Vilgrain V, Terris B, Penfornis A, Sauvanet A, Correas JM, et al. Pancreatic involvement in von Hippel-Lindau disease. The Groupe Francophone d'Etude de la Maladie de von Hippel-Lindau. Gastroenterology 2000;119(4);1087–95.
134. Hoang MP, Hruban RH, Albores-Saavedra J. Clear cell endocrine pancreatic tumor mimicking renal cell carcinoma: a distinctive neoplasm of von Hippel-Lindau disease. Am J Surg Pathol 2001;25(5);602–9.
135. Chung DC, Smith AP, Louis DN, Graeme-Cook F, Warshaw AL, Arnold A. A novel pancreatic endocrine tumor suppressor gene locus on chromosome 3p with clinical prognostic implications. J Clin Invest 1997;100(2);404–10.
136. Tan CC, Hall RI, Semeraro D, Irons RP, Freeman JG. Ampullary somatostatinoma associated with von Recklinghausen's neurofibromatosis presenting as obstructive jaundice. Eur J Surg Oncol 1996;22(3);298–301.
137. van Slegtenhorst M, de Hoogt R, Hermans C, Nellist M, Janssen B, Verhoef S, et al. Identification of the tuberous sclerosis gene TSC1 on chromosome 9q34. Science 1997;277(5327);805–8.
138. European Chromosome 16 Tuberous Sclerosis Consortium. Identification and characterization of the tuberous sclerosis gene on chromosome 16. Cell 1993;75(7);1305–15.
139. Sandsmark DK, Pelletier C, Weber JD, Gutmann DH. Mammalian target of rapamycin: master regulator of cell growth in the nervous system. Histol Histopathol 2007;22(8);895–903.
140. Castro AF, Rebhun JF, Clark GJ, Quilliam LA. Rheb binds tuberous sclerosis complex 2 (TSC2) and promotes S6 kinase activation in a rapamycin- and farnesylation-dependent manner. J Biol Chem 2003;278(35); 32493–6.
141. Mak BC, Takemaru K, Kenerson HL, Moon RT, Yeung RS. The tuberin-hamartin complex negatively regulates beta-catenin signaling activity. J Biol Chem 2003;278(8);5947–51.
142. Verhoef S, van Diemen-Steenvoorde R, Akkersdijk WL, Bax NM, Ariyurek Y, Hermans CJ, et al. Malignant pancreatic tumour within the spectrum of tuberous sclerosis complex in childhood. Eur J Pediatr 1999;158(4);284–7.
143. Bonner-Weir S, Deery D, Leahy JL, Weir GC. Compensatory growth of pancreatic beta-cells in adult rats after short-term glucose infusion. Diabetes 1989;38(1);49–53.
144. Paris M, Bernard-Kargar C, Berthault MF, Bouwens L, Ktorza A. Specific and combined effects of insulin and glucose on functional pancreatic beta-cell mass in vivo in adult rats. Endocrinology 2003;144(6);2717–27.
145. Jonkers YM, Ramaekers FC, Speel EJ. Molecular alterations during insulinoma tumorigenesis. Biochim Biophys Acta 2007;1775(2);313–32.
146. Speel EJ, Richter J, Moch H, Egenter C, Saremaslani P, Rutimann K, et al. Genetic differences in endocrine pancreatic tumor subtypes detected by comparative genomic hybridization. Am J Pathol 1999;155(6);1787–94.
147. Stumpf E, Aalto Y, Hoog A, Kjellman M, Otonkoski T, Knuutila S, et al. Chromosomal alterations in human pancreatic endocrine tumors. Genes Chromosomes Cancer 2000;29(1);83–7.
148. Zhao J, Moch H, Scheidweiler AF, Baer A, Schaffer AA, Speel EJ, et al. Genomic imbalances in the progression of endocrine pancreatic tumors. Genes Chromosomes Cancer 2001;32(4);364–72.
149. Tonnies H, Toliat MR, Ramel C, Pape UF, Neitzel H, Berger W, et al. Analysis of sporadic neuroendocrine tumours of the enteropancreatic system by comparative genomic hybridisation. Gut 2001;48(4);536–41.
150. Terris B, Meddeb M, Marchio A, Danglot G, Flejou JF, Belghiti J, et al. Comparative genomic hybridization analysis of sporadic neuroendocrine tumors of the digestive system. Genes Chromosomes Cancer 1998;22(1);50–6.
151. Kytola S, Hoog A, Nord B, Cedermark B, Frisk T, Larsson C, et al. Comparative genomic hybridization identifies loss of 18q22-qter as an early and specific event in tumorigenesis of midgut carcinoids. Am J Pathol 2001;158(5); 1803–8.
152. Pizzi S, D'Adda T, Azzoni C, Rindi G, Grigolato P, Pasquali C, et al. Malignancy-associated allelic losses on the X-chromosome in foregut but not in midgut endocrine tumours. J Pathol 2002;196(4);401–7.

153. Brown MR, Kohn EC, Hutter RV. The new millennium: applying novel technology to the study of the cancer cell in situ. Cancer 2000;88(1);2–5.
154. Ebrahimi SA, Wang EH, Wu A, Schreck RR, Passaro E, Jr., Sawicki MP. Deletion of chromosome 1 predicts prognosis in pancreatic endocrine tumors. Cancer Res 1999;59(2);311–5.
155. Guo SS, Arora C, Shimoide AT, Sawicki MP. Frequent deletion of chromosome 3 in malignant sporadic pancreatic endocrine tumors. Mol Cell Endocrinol 2002;190 (1–2):109–14.
156. Schwab M, Praml C, Amler LC. Genomic instability in 1p and human malignancies. Genes Chromosomes Cancer 1996;16(4);211–29.
157. Kaghad M, Bonnet H, Yang A, Creancier L, Biscan JC, Valent A, et al. Monoallelically expressed gene related to p53 at 1p36, a region frequently deleted in neuroblastoma and other human cancers. Cell 1997;90(4); 809–19.
158. Chen YJ, Vortmeyer A, Zhuang Z, Huang S, Jensen RT. Loss of heterozygosity of chromosome 1q in gastrinomas: occurrence and prognostic significance. Cancer Res 2003;63(4);817–23.
159. Lott ST, Chandler DS, Curley SA, Foster CJ, El-Naggar A, Frazier M, et al. High frequency loss of heterozygosity in von Hippel-Lindau (VHL)-associated and sporadic pancreatic islet cell tumors: evidence for a stepwise mechanism for malignant conversion in VHL tumorigenesis. Cancer Res 2002;62(7);1952–5.
160. Nikiforova MN, Nikiforov YE, Biddinger P, Gnepp DR, Grosembacher LA, Wajchenberg BL, et al. Frequent loss of heterozygosity at chromosome 3p14.2–3p21 in human pancreatic islet cell tumours. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 1999;51(1);27–33.
161. Barghorn A, Komminoth P, Bachmann D, Rutimann K, Saremaslani P, Muletta-Feurer S, et al. Deletion at 3p25.3–p23 is frequently encountered in endocrine pancreatic tumours and is associated with metastatic progression. J Pathol 2001;194(4);451–8.
162. Guo SS, Wu AY, Sawicki MP. Deletion of chromosome 1, but not mutation of MEN-1, predicts prognosis in sporadic pancreatic endocrine tumors. World J Surg 2002;26(7);843–7.
163. Ikawa S, Nakagawara A, Ikawa Y. p53 family genes: structural comparison, expression and mutation. Cell Death Differ 1999;6(12);1154–61.
164. Barghorn A, Speel EJ, Farspour B, Saremaslani P, Schmid S, Perren A, et al. Putative tumor suppressor loci at 6q22 and 6q23–q24 are involved in the malignant progression of sporadic endocrine pancreatic tumors. Am J Pathol 2001;158(6);1903–11.
165. Moore PS, Orlandini S, Zamboni G, Capelli P, Rigaud G, Falconi M, et al. Pancreatic tumours: molecular pathways implicated in ductal cancer are involved in ampullary but not in exocrine nonductal or endocrine tumorigenesis. Br J Cancer 2001;84(2);253–62.
166. Muscarella P, Melvin WS, Fisher WE, Foor J, Ellison EC, Herman JG, et al. Genetic alterations in gastrinomas and nonfunctioning pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors: an analysis of p16/MTS1 tumor suppressor gene inactivation. Cancer Res 1998;58(2);237–40.
167. Speel EJ, Scheidweiler AF, Zhao J, Matter C, Saremaslani P, Roth J, et al. Genetic evidence for early divergence of small functioning and nonfunctioning endocrine pancreatic tumors: gain of 9Q34 is an early event in insulinomas. Cancer Res 2001;61(13);5186–92.
168. Perren A, Komminoth P, Saremaslani P, Matter C, Feurer S, Lees JA, et al. Mutation and expression analyses reveal differential subcellular compartmentalization of PTEN in endocrine pancreatic tumors compared to normal islet cells. Am J Pathol 2000;157(4);1097–103.
169. Hirawake H, Taniwaki M, Tamura A, Amino H, Tomitsuka E, Kita K. Characterization of the human SDHD gene encoding the small subunit of cytochrome b (cybS) in mitochondrial succinate-ubiquinone oxidoreductase. Biochim Biophys Acta 1999;1412(3); 295–300.
170. Scheffler IE. Molecular genetics of succinate:quinone oxidoreductase in eukaryotes. Prog Nucleic Acid Res Mol Biol 1998;60:267–315.
171. Rigaud G, Missiaglia E, Moore PS, Zamboni G, Falconi M, Talamini G, et al. High resolution allelotype of nonfunctional pancreatic endocrine tumors: identification of two molecular subgroups with clinical implications. Cancer Res 2001;61(1);285–92.
172. Perren A, Barghorn A, Schmid S, Saremaslani P, Roth J, Heitz PU, et al. Absence of somatic SDHD mutations in sporadic neuroendocrine tumors and detection of two germline variants in paraganglioma patients. Oncogene 2002;21(49);7605–8.
173. Badenhop RF, Cherian S, Lord RS, Baysal BE, Taschner PE, Schofield PR. Novel mutations in the SDHD gene in pedigrees with familial carotid body paraganglioma and sensorineural hearing loss. Genes Chromosomes Cancer 2001;31(3);255–63.
174. van der Mey AG, Maaswinkel-Mooy PD, Cornelisse CJ, Schmidt PH, van de Kamp JJ. Genomic imprinting in hereditary glomus tumours: evidence for new genetic theory. Lancet 1989;2(8675);1291–4.
175. Shattuck TM, Costa J, Bernstein M, Jensen RT, Chung DC, Arnold A. Mutational analysis of Smad3, a candidate tumor suppressor implicated in TGF-beta and menin pathways, in parathyroid adenomas and enteropancreatic endocrine tumors. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2002;87(8);3911–4.
176. Moore PS, Missiaglia E, Antonello D, Zamo A, Zamboni G, Corleto V, et al. Role of disease-causing genes in sporadic pancreatic endocrine tumors: MEN1 and VHL. Genes Chromosomes Cancer 2001;32(2);177–81.
177. Bartsch D, Hahn SA, Danichevski KD, Ramaswamy A, Bastian D, Galehdari H, et al. Mutations of the DPC4/Smad4 gene in neuroendocrine pancreatic tumors. Oncogene 1999;18(14);2367–71.
178. Hahn SA, Schutte M, Hoque AT, Moskaluk CA, da Costa LT, Rozenblum E, et al. DPC4, a candidate tumor suppressor gene at human chromosome 18q21.1. Science 1996;271(5247);350–3.
179. Perren A, Saremaslani P, Schmid S, Bonvin C, Locher T, Roth J, et al. DPC4/Smad4: no mutations, rare allelic imbalances, and retained protein expression in pancreatic endocrine tumors. Diagn Mol Pathol 2003;12(4); 181–6.

180. Wild A, Langer P, Celik I, Chaloupka B, Bartsch DK. Chromosome 22q in pancreatic endocrine tumors: identification of a homozygous deletion and potential prognostic associations of allelic deletions. Eur J Endocrinol 2002;147(4);507–13.
181. Wild A, Langer P, Ramaswamy A, Chaloupka B, Bartsch DK. A novel insulinoma tumor suppressor gene locus on chromosome 22q with potential prognostic implications. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2001;86(12);5782–7.
182. Biegel JA, Fogelgren B, Zhou JY, James CD, Janss AJ, Allen JC, et al. Mutations of the INI1 rhabdoid tumor suppressor gene in medulloblastomas and primitive neuroectodermal tumors of the central nervous system. Clin Cancer Res 2000;6(7);2759–63.
183. Chen YJ, Vortmeyer A, Zhuang Z, Gibril F, Jensen RT. X-chromosome loss of heterozygosity frequently occurs in gastrinomas and is correlated with aggressive tumor growth. Cancer 2004;100(7);1379–87.
184. Missiaglia E, Moore PS, Williamson J, Lemoine NR, Falconi M, Zamboni G, et al. Sex chromosome anomalies in pancreatic endocrine tumors. Int J Cancer 2002;98(4);532–8.
185. Ponce-Castaneda MV, Lee MH, Latres E, Polyak K, Lacombe L, Montgomery K, et al. p27Kip1: chromosomal mapping to 12p12–12p13.1 and absence of mutations in human tumors. Cancer Res 1995;55(6);1211–4.
186. Guo SS, Wu X, Shimoide AT, Wong J, Sawicki MP. Anomalous overexpression of p27(Kip1) in sporadic pancreatic endocrine tumors. J Surg Res 2001;96(2);284–8.
187. Canavese G, Azzoni C, Pizzi S, Corleto VD, Pasquali C, Davoli C, et al. p27: a potential main inhibitor of cell proliferation in digestive endocrine tumors but not a marker of benign behavior. Hum Pathol 2001;32(10);1094–101.
188. Mao L, Merlo A, Bedi G, Shapiro GI, Edwards CD, Rollins BJ, et al. A novel p16INK4A transcript. Cancer Res 1995;55(14);2995–7.
189. Liggett WH, Jr., Sidransky D. Role of the p16 tumor suppressor gene in cancer. J Clin Oncol 1998;16(3);1197–206.
190. Lubomierski N, Kersting M, Bert T, Muench K, Wulbrand U, Schuermann M, et al. Tumor suppressor genes in the 9p21 gene cluster are selective targets of inactivation in neuroendocrine gastroenteropancreatic tumors. Cancer Res 2001;61(15);5905–10.
191. Schuuring E, Verhoeven E, Mooi WJ, Michalides RJ. Identification and cloning of two overexpressed genes, U21B31/PRAD1 and EMS1, within the amplified chromosome 11q13 region in human carcinomas. Oncogene 1992;7(2);355–61.
192. Arnold A, Motokura T, Bloom T, Rosenberg C, Bale A, Kronenberg H, et al. PRAD1 (cyclin D1): a parathyroid neoplasia gene on 11q13. Henry Ford Hosp Med J 1992;40(3–4):177–80.
193. Chung DC, Brown SB, Graeme-Cook F, Seto M, Warshaw AL, Jensen RT, et al. Overexpression of cyclin D1 occurs frequently in human pancreatic endocrine tumors. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2000;85(11);4373–8.
194. Guo SS, Wu X, Shimoide AT, Wong J, Moatamed F, Sawicki MP. Frequent overexpression of cyclin D1 in sporadic pancreatic endocrine tumours. J Endocrinol 2003;179(1);73–9.
195. Lavoie JN, L'Allemain G, Brunet A, Muller R, Pouyssegur J. Cyclin D1 expression is regulated positively by the p42/p44MAPK and negatively by the p38/HOGMAPK pathway. J Biol Chem 1996;271(34);20608–16.
196. Gille H, Downward J. Multiple ras effector pathways contribute to G(1) cell cycle progression. J Biol Chem 1999;274(31);22033–40.
197. Weber JD, Raben DM, Phillips PJ, Baldassare JJ. Sustained activation of extracellular-signal-regulated kinase 1 (ERK1) is required for the continued expression of cyclin D1 in G1 phase. Biochem J 1997;326 (Pt 1):61–8.
198. McBride OW, Swan DC, Tronick SR, Gol R, Klimanis D, Moore DE, et al. Regional chromosomal localization of N-ras, K-ras-1, K-ras-2 and myb oncogenes in human cells. Nucleic Acids Res 1983;11(23);8221–36.
199. McCormick F. Ras-related proteins in signal transduction and growth control. Mol Reprod Dev 1995;42(4);500–6.
200. Yashiro T, Fulton N, Hara H, Yasuda K, Montag A, Yashiro N, et al. Comparison of mutations of ras oncogene in human pancreatic exocrine and endocrine tumors. Surgery 1993;114(4);758–63; discussion 763–4.
201. Pavelic K, Hrascan R, Kapitanovic S, Karapandza N, Vranes Z, Belicza M, et al. Multiple genetic alterations in malignant metastatic insulinomas. J Pathol 1995;177(4);395–400.
202. Hugl SR, White MF, Rhodes CJ. Insulin-like growth factor I (IGF-I)-stimulated pancreatic beta-cell growth is glucose-dependent. Synergistic activation of insulin receptor substrate-mediated signal transduction pathways by glucose and IGF-I in INS-1 cells. J Biol Chem 1998;273(28);17771–9.
203. Jetton TL, Lausier J, LaRock K, Trotman WE, Larmie B, Habibovic A, et al. Mechanisms of compensatory beta-cell growth in insulin-resistant rats: roles of Akt kinase. Diabetes 2005;54(8);2294–304.
204. Dilley WG, Kalyanaraman S, Verma S, Cobb JP, Laramie JM, Lairmore TC. Global gene expression in neuroendocrine tumors from patients with the MEN1 syndrome. Mol Cancer 2005;4(1);9.
205. Pelengaris S, Khan M. Oncogenic co-operation in beta-cell tumorigenesis. Endocr Relat Cancer 2001;8(4); 307–14.
206. Hager JH, Hanahan D. Tumor cells utilize multiple pathways to down-modulate apoptosis. Lessons from a mouse model of islet cell carcinogenesis. Ann NY Acad Sci 1999;887:150–63.
207. Muleris M, Almeida A, Malfoy B, Dutrillaux B. Assignment of v-erb-b2 avian erythroblastic leukemia viral oncogene homolog 2 (ERBB2) to human chromosome band 17q21.1 by in situ hybridization. Cytogenet Cell Genet 1997;76(1–2):34–5.
208. Bacus SS, Zelnick CR, Plowman G, Yarden Y. Expression of the erbB-2 family of growth factor receptors and their ligands in breast cancers. Implication for tumor biology and clinical behavior. Am J Clin Pathol 1994;102(4 Suppl 1):S13–24.
209. Goebel SU, Iwamoto M, Raffeld M, Gibril F, Hou W, Serrano J, et al. Her-2/neu expression and gene amplification in gastrinomas: correlations with tumor

biology, growth, and aggressiveness. Cancer Res 2002;62(13);3702–10.
210. Gosden JR, Middleton PG, Rout D. Localization of the human oestrogen receptor gene to chromosome 6q24–q27 by in situ hybridization. Cytogenet Cell Genet 1986;43(3–4):218–20.
211. Altundag O, Altundag K, Gunduz M. DNA methylation inhibitor, procainamide, may decrease the tamoxifen resistance by inducing overexpression of the estrogen receptor beta in breast cancer patients. Med Hypotheses 2004;63(4);684–7.
212. Chan AO, Kim SG, Bedeir A, Issa JP, Hamilton SR, Rashid A. CpG island methylation in carcinoid and pancreatic endocrine tumors. Oncogene 2003;22(6);924–34.
213. Iwamura Y, Futagawa T, Kaneko M, Nakagawa K, Kawai K, Yamashita K, et al. Co-deletions of the retinoblastoma gene and Wilms' tumor gene and rearrangement of the Krev-1 gene in a human insulinoma. Jpn J Clin Oncol 1992;22(1);6–9.
214. Nakamura T, Iwamura Y, Kaneko M, Nakagawa K, Kawai K, Mitamura K, et al. Deletions and rearrangements of the retinoblastoma gene in hepatocellular carcinoma, insulinoma and some neurogenic tumors as found in a study of 121 tumors. Jpn J Clin Oncol 1991;21(5);325–9.
215. Kawahara M, Kammori M, Kanauchi H, Noguchi C, Kuramoto S, Kaminishi M, et al. Immunohistochemical prognostic indicators of gastrointestinal carcinoid tumours. Eur J Surg Oncol 2002;28(2);140–6.
216. Chung DC, Smith AP, Louis DN, Graeme-Cook F, Warshaw AL, Arnold A. Analysis of the retinoblastoma tumour suppressor gene in pancreatic endocrine tumours. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 1997;47(5);523–8.
217. Nishikura K, Watanabe H, Iwafuchi M, Fujiwara T, Kojima K, Ajioka Y. Carcinogenesis of gastric endocrine cell carcinoma: analysis of histopathology and p53 gene alteration. Gastric Cancer 2003;6(4);203–9.
218. Weckstrom P, Hedrum A, Makridis C, Akerstrom G, Rastad J, Scheibenpflug L, et al. Midgut Carcinoids and Solid Carcinomas of the Intestine: Differences in Endocrine Markers and p53 Mutations. Endocr Pathol 1996;7(4);273–9.
219. Oberg K, Eriksson B. Endocrine tumours of the pancreas. Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol 2005;19(5);753–81.
220. Kraus C, Liehr T, Hulsken J, Behrens J, Birchmeier W, Grzeschik KH, et al. Localization of the human beta-catenin gene (CTNNB1) to 3p21: a region implicated in tumor development. Genomics 1994;23(1);272–4.
221. Gerdes B, Ramaswamy A, Simon B, Pietsch T, Bastian D, Kersting M, et al. Analysis of beta-catenin gene mutations in pancreatic tumors. Digestion 1999;60(6);544–8.
222. Sinke RJ, Geurts van Kessel AG. Localization of the human phosphatidylinositol-specific phospholipase c beta 3 gene (PLCB3) within chromosome band 11q13. Genomics 1995;25(2);568–9.
223. Mattei MG, de The H, Mattei JF, Marchio A, Tiollais P, Dejean A. Assignment of the human hap retinoic acid receptor RAR beta gene to the p24 band of chromosome 3. Hum Genet 1988;80(2);189–90.
224. Metz DC, Jensen RT. Gastrointestinal neuroendocrine tumors: pancreatic endocrine tumors. Gastroenterology 2008;135(5);1469–92.
225. Capurso G, Lattimore S, Crnogorac-Jurcevic T, Panzuto F, Milione M, Bhakta V, et al. Gene expression profiles of progressive pancreatic endocrine tumours and their liver metastases reveal potential novel markers and therapeutic targets. Endocr Relat Cancer 2006;13(2);541–58.
226. Hansel DE, Rahman A, House M, Ashfaq R, Berg K, Yeo CJ, et al. Met proto-oncogene and insulin-like growth factor binding protein 3 overexpression correlates with metastatic ability in well-differentiated pancreatic endocrine neoplasms. Clin Cancer Res 2004;10(18 Pt 1):6152–8.
227. Maitra A, Hansel DE, Argani P, Ashfaq R, Rahman A, Naji A, et al. Global expression analysis of well-differentiated pancreatic endocrine neoplasms using oligonucleotide microarrays. Clin Cancer Res 2003;9(16 Pt 1):5988–95.
228. Nasir A, McCarthy S, Agrawal D, Bloom G, Zeringer E, Chen D, et al. Novel progression-associated genes in pancreatic endocrine neoplasms. In: American Society of Clinical Oncology Annual Meeting; Chicago, IL; 2008.
229. Nasir A, McCarthy S, Zeringer E, Bloom G, Eschrich S, Chen D, et al. Discovery and Validation of Progression-associated Genes in Primary Pancreatic Endocrine Tumors. In: North American NeuroEndocrine Tumor Society; 2008.
230. Nasir A, Helm J, Strosberg J, Henderson-Jackson E, Turner L, Hafez N, et al. Molecular markers outclass pathologic criteria of malignancy in predicting liver metastases in primary pancreatic endocrine neoplasms. In: European Neuroendocrine Tumor Society; Granada, Spain; 2009.
231. Gannon G, Mandriota SJ, Cui L, Baetens D, Pepper MS, Christofori G. Overexpression of vascular endothelial growth factor-A165 enhances tumor angiogenesis but not metastasis during beta-cell carcinogenesis. Cancer Res 2002;62(2);603–8.
232. Gocheva V, Zeng W, Ke D, Klimstra D, Reinheckel T, Peters C, et al. Distinct roles for cysteine cathepsin genes in multistage tumorigenesis. Genes Dev 2006;20(5); 543–56.
233. Joyce JA, Baruch A, Chehade K, Meyer-Morse N, Giraudo E, Tsai FY, et al. Cathepsin cysteine proteases are effectors of invasive growth and angiogenesis during multistage tumorigenesis. Cancer Cell 2004;5(5); 443–53.
234. Huet S, Groux H, Caillou B, Valentin H, Prieur AM, Bernard A. CD44 contributes to T cell activation. J Immunol 1989;143(3);798–801.
235. Marhaba R, Zoller M. CD44 in cancer progression: adhesion, migration and growth regulation. J Mol Histol 2004;35(3);211–31.
236. Imam H, Eriksson B, Oberg K. Expression of CD44 variant isoforms and association to the benign form of endocrine pancreatic tumours. Ann Oncol 2000;11(3);295–300.
237. Ischia R, Lovisetti-Scamihorn P, Hogue-Angeletti R, Wolkersdorfer M, Winkler H, Fischer-Colbrie R. Molecular cloning and characterization of NESP55, a novel chromogranin-like precursor of a peptide with 5-HT1B receptor antagonist activity. J Biol Chem 1997;272(17);11657–62.

238. Srivastava A, Padilla O, Fischer-Colbrie R, Tischler AS, Dayal Y. Neuroendocrine secretory protein-55 (NESP-55) expression discriminates pancreatic endocrine tumors and pheochromocytomas from gastrointestinal and pulmonary carcinoids. Am J Surg Pathol 2004;28(10);1371–8.
239. Kolodner RD, Hall NR, Lipford J, Kane MF, Morrison PT, Finan PJ, et al. Structure of the human MLH1 locus and analysis of a large hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal carcinoma kindred for mlh1 mutations. Cancer Res 1995;55(2);242–8.
240. House MG, Herman JG, Guo MZ, Hooker CM, Schulick RD, Cameron JL, et al. Prognostic value of hMLH1 methylation and microsatellite instability in pancreatic endocrine neoplasms. Surgery 2003;134(6);902–8; discussion 909.
241. Wick M, Zubov D, Hagen G. Genomic organization and promoter characterization of the gene encoding the human telomerase reverse transcriptase (hTERT). Gene 1999;232(1);97–106.
242. Vezzosi D, Bouisson M, Escourrou G, Laurell H, Selves J, Seguin P, et al. Clinical utility of telomerase for the diagnosis of malignant well-differentiated endocrine tumours. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 2006;64(1);63–7.
243. House MG, Schulick RD. Endocrine tumors of the pancreas. Curr Opin Oncol 2006;18(1);23–9.
244. Iino S, Abeyama K, Kawahara K, Yamakuchi M, Hashiguchi T, Matsukita S, et al. The antimetastatic role of thrombomodulin expression in islet cell-derived tumors and its diagnostic value. Clin Cancer Res 2004;10(18 Pt 1):6179–88.
245. von Wichert G, Jehle PM, Hoeflich A, Koschnick S, Dralle H, Wolf E, et al. Insulin-like growth factor-I is an autocrine regulator of chromogranin A secretion and growth in human neuroendocrine tumor cells. Cancer Res 2000;60(16);4573–81.
246. Terris B, Scoazec JY, Rubbia L, Bregeaud L, Pepper MS, Ruszniewski P, et al. Expression of vascular endothelial growth factor in digestive neuroendocrine tumours. Histopathology 1998;32(2);133–8.
247. La Rosa S, Uccella S, Finzi G, Albarello L, Sessa F, Capella C. Localization of vascular endothelial growth factor and its receptors in digestive endocrine tumors: correlation with microvessel density and clinicopathologic features. Hum Pathol 2003;34(1);18–27.
248. Hansel DE, Rahman A, Hermans J, de Krijger RR, Ashfaq R, Yeo CJ, et al. Liver metastases arising from well-differentiated pancreatic endocrine neoplasms demonstrate increased VEGF-C expression. Mod Pathol 2003;16(7);652–9.
249. Garcia-Ocaña A, Takane KK, Syed MA, et al. Hepatocyte growth factor overexpression in the islet of transgenic mice increases beta cell proliferation, enhances islet mass, and induces mild hypoglycemia. J Biol Chem 2000;275:1226–32.
250. Sorenson RL, Brelje TC. Adaptation of islets of Langerhans to pregnancy: beta-cell growth, enhanced insulin secretion and the role of lactogenic hormones. Hor Metab Res 1997;29:301–7.
251. Vasavada RC, Garcia-Ocaña A, Zawalich WS, et al. Targeted expression of placental lactogen in the beta cells of transgenic mice results in beta cell proliferation, islet mass augmentation, and hypoglycemia. J Biol Chem 2000;275:15399–406.
252. Porter SE, Sorenson RL, Dann P, et al. Progressive pancreatic islet hyperplasia in the islet-targeted, parathyroid, hormone-related protein-overexpressing mouse. Endocrinology 1998;139:3743–51.
253. Devedjian JC, George M, Casellas A, et al. Transgenic mice overexpressing insulin-like growth factor-II in beta cells develop type 2 diabetes. J Clin Invest 2000;105: 731–40.
254. Okamoto H. The Reg gene family and Reg proteins: with special attention to the regeneration of pancreatic beta-cells. J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg 1999;6: 254–62.
255. Bouwens L, Rooman I. Regulation of pancreatic beta-cell mass. Physiol Rev 2005;85:1255–70.
256. Drucker DJ. Glucagon-like peptides: regulators of cell proliferation, differentiation, and apoptosis. Mol Endocrinol 2003;17:161–71.
257. Schnepp RW, Hou Z, Wang H, Petersen C, Silva A, Masai H, Hua X. Functional interaction between tumor suppressor menin and activator of S-phase kinase. Cancer Res 2004;64:6791–6.
258. Karnik SK, Hughes CM, Gu X, Rozenblatt-Rosen O, McLean GW, Xiong Y, Meyerson M, Kim SK. Menin regulates pancreatic islet growth by promoting histone methylation and expression of genes encoding p27KIP1 and p18INK4C. Proc Natl Acad Sci 2005;102:14659–64.
259. Schnepp RW, Chen YX, Wang H, Cash T, Silva A, Diehl JA, Brown E, Hua X. Mutation of tumor suppressor gene MEN1 acutely enhances proliferation of pancreatic islet cells. Cancer Res 2006;66:5707–l5.
260. Tomita T. Cyclin-dependent kinase (cdk6) and p16 in pancreatic endocrine neoplasms. Pathology 2004;36:566–70.
261. Bartch DK, Kersting M, Wild A, Ramaswamy A, Gerdes B, Schuermann M, Simon B, Rothmund M. Low frequency of p16 (INK4a) alterations in insulinomas. Digestion 2000;62:171–7.
262. Stalberg P, Grimfjard P, Santesson M, Zhou Y, Lindberg D, Gobl A, Oberg K, Westin G, Rastad J, Wang S, Skogseid B. Transfection of multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 gene to a human endocrine pancreatic tumor cell line inhibits cell growth and affects expression of JunD, (-like protein 1/preadipocyte factor-1), proliferating cell nuclear antigen, and QM/Jif-1. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2004;89:2326–37.
263. Fatrai S, Elghazi L, Balcazar N, Cras-Meneur C, Krits I, Kiyokawa H, Bernal-Mizrachi E. Akt induces β-cell proliferation by regulating cyclin D1, cyclin D2, and p21 levels and cyclin-dependent kinase-4 activity. Diabetes 2006;55:318–25.
264. Hsieh ET, Shepherd FA, Tsao MS. Co-expression of epidermal growth factor and transforming growth factor-alpha is independent of ras mutations in lung adenocacinoma. Lung Cancer 2000;29:151–7.
265. Jonkers YMH, Claessen SMH, Perren A, Schmid S, Komminoth P, Verhofstad AA, Hofland U, de Krijger RR, Slootweg PJ, Ramaekers FCS, Speel EJM. Chromosomal instability predicts metastatic disease in patients with insulinomas. Endocr Relat Cancer 2005;12: 435–47.

266. DeAizpurua HJ, Cram DS, Naselli G, Devereux L, Dorow DS. Expression of mixed lineage kinase-1 in pancreatic β-cell lines at different stages of maturation and during embryonic pancreas development. J Biol Chem 1997;272:16364–73.
267. Davoren PM, Epstein MT. Insulinoma complicating tuberous sclerosis. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 1992;55:1209.
268. Balogh K, Racz K, Patocs A, Hunyadi L. Menin and its interacting proteins: elucidation of menin function. Trends Endocrinol Metab 2006;17:357–64.
269. Harvey M, Vogel H, Lee EYHP, Bradley A, Donehower LA. Mice deficient in both p53 and Rb develop tumors primarily of endocrine origin. Concer Res 1995;55: 1146–51.
270. Nguyen KTT, Tajmir P, Lin CH, Liadis N, Zhu XD, Eweida M, Tolasa-Karaman G, Cai F, Wang R, Kitamura T, Belsham DD, Wheeler MB, Suzuki A, Mak TW, Woo M. Essential role of PTEN in body size determination and pancreatic β-cell homeostasis in vivo. Mol Cell Biol 2006;26:4511–18.
271. Zhang L, Fu Z, Binkley C, Giordano T, Burant CF, Logsdon CD, Simeone DM. Raf kinase inhibitory protein inhibits β-cell proliferation. Surgery 2004;136: 708–l5.
272. Moore PS, Beghelli S, Zamboni G, Scarpa A. Genetic abnormalities in pancreatic cancer. Mol Cancer 2003;2: 7–12.
273. Bertolino P, Tong WM, Herrera PL, Casse H, Zhang CX, Wang ZQ. Pancreatic β-cell-specific ablation of the multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 (MEN1) gene causes full penetrance of insulinoma development in mice. Cancer Res 2003;63:4836–41.
274. Jonkers YMH, Claessen SMH, Feuth T, Geurts van Kessel A, Ramaekers FCS, Veltman JA, Speel EJM. Novel candidate tumor suppressor gene loci on chromosomes 11q23-24 and 22ql3 involved in human insulinoma tumorigenesis. J Pathol 2006;210:450–8.
275. Lee CS. Lack of p53 immunoreactivity in pancreatic endocrine tumors. Pathology 1996;28:139–41.
276. Jin S, Mao H, Schnepp RW, Sykes SM, Silva AC, D'Andrea AD, Hua X. Menin associates with FANCD2, a protein involved in repair of DNA damage. Cancer Res 2003;63:4204–l0.
277. Wang DG, Johnston CF, Buchanan KD. Oncogene expression in gastroenteropancreatic neuroendocrine tumors. Implications for pathogenesis. Cancer 1997;80:668–75.
278. Jonkers YMH, Claessen SMH, Feuth T, Geurts van Kessel A, Ramaekers FCS, Veltman JA, Speel EJM. Novel candidate tumor suppressor gene loci on chromosomes 11q23-24 and 22ql3 involved in human insulinoma tumorigenesis. J Pathol 2006;210:450–58.
279. Broustas CG, Gokhale PC, Rahman A, Dritschilo A, Ahmad I, Kasid U. BRCC2, a novel BH3-like domain-containing protein, induces apoptosis in a caspase-dependent manner. JBiol Chem 2004;279:26780–8.
280. Hockenbery D, Nunez G, Milliman C, Schreiber RD, Korsmeyer SJ. Bcl-2 is an inner mitochondrial membrane protein that blocks programmed cell death. Nature 1990;348:334–6.
281. Grabowski P, Griss S, Arnold CN, Horsch D, Goke R, Arnold R, Heine B, Stein H, Zeitz M, Scherubl H. Nuclear survivin is a powerful novel prognostic marker in gastroenteropancreatic neuroendocrine tumor disease. Neuroendocrinology 2005;81:1–9.
282. Wang Z, Zhang Y, Li Y, Banerjee S, Liao J, Sarkar FH. Down-regulation of Notch-1 contributes to cell growth inhibition and apoptosis in pancreatic cancer cells. Mol Cancer Ther 2006;5:483–93.
283. Lin SY, Elledge SJ. Multiple tumor suppressor pathways negatively regulate telomerase. Cell 2003;113:881–9.
284. Hessman O, Lindberg D, Einarsson A, Lilllhager P, Carling T, Grimelius L, Eriksson B, Akerstrom G, Westin G, Skogseid B. Genetic alterations on 3p, 11ql3, and 18q in nonfamilial and MEN1-associated pancreatic endocrine tumors. Genes Chromosomes Cancer 1999;26:258–64.
285. Serrano J, Goebel SU, Peghini PL, Lubensky IA, Gibril F, Jensen RT. Alterations in the p161NK4a/CDKN2A tumor suppressor gene in gastrinomas. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2000;85:4146–56.
286. Cupisti K, Hoppner W, Dotzenrath C, Simon D, Berndt I, Roher HD, Goretzki PE. Lack of MEN1 gene mutations in 27 sporadic insulinomas. Eur J Clin lnvest 2000;30: 325–29.
287. Hessman O, Lindberg D, Skogseid B, Carling T, Hellman P, Rastad J, Akerstrom G, Westin G. Mutation of the multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 gene in nonfamilial, malignant tumors of the endocrine pancreas. Cancer Res 1998;58:377–9.
288. Perren A, Hurlimann S, Saremaslani P, Schmid S, Bonvin C, Roth J, Heitz PU, Komminoth P. DPC4/Smad4 expression is lost in a subset of ductal adenocarcinomas of the pancreas but not in endocrine pancreatic tumors and chronic pancreatitis. Mod Pathol 2002;15:199A.

Chapter 18

Mechanisms of Carcinogenesis in Colorectal Cancer

Shaokun Shu and Jin Q. Cheng

Contents

18.1 Introduction

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is the third most common malignancy and the fourth cause of cancer mortality, with over 1 million new cases diagnosed worldwide each year. The lifetime incidence for patients at average risk is 5%, with 90% of cases occurring after age 50. Approximately 1 in 3 people who develop CRC die of this disease [1, 2]. The prognosis of CRC is closely associated with disease stage at the time of diagnosis. While early stage CRC is frequently curable with surgery, unresectable metastatic CRC is a fatal disease. Compelling evidence indicates that early detection and prevention by removal of premalignant polyps can reduce colorectal cancer mortality.

S. Shu (✉)
Department of Molecular Oncology,
H. Lee Moffitt Cancer Center, Tampa, FL 33612, USA
e-mail: Shaokun.Shu@moffitt.org

The mechanism of colorectal carcinogenesis is complex, influenced by genetic and environmental factors. These different risk factors reflect the mode of presentation of CRC that follows one of the three: inherited, familial and sporadic. The patients with inherited predisposition to CRC account for less than 10% of cases, and these patients are subdivided according to whether or not colonic polyps are a major disease manifestation. The diseases with polyposis include familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP) and the hamartomatous polyposis syndromes (e.g., Peutz-Jeghers, juvenile polyposis), those without polyposis include hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC, Lynch syndrome I), and the cancer family syndrome (Lynch syndrome II). These conditions are associated with a high risk of developing CRC, and the genetic mutations underlying many of them have been identified. Familial CRC is the least understood subgroup. Up to 25% of affected patients have a family history of CRC, but the pattern is not consistent with one of the inherited syndromes. Individuals from these families are at increased risk of developing CRC, although the risk is not as high as with the inherited syndromes. Genome-wide association studies might offer the potential to uncover the genetic alterations for familial CRC [3, 4]. Sporadic disease, in which there is no family history, accounts for approximately 70% of all CRC. The patients are usually older than 50 years of age. The dietary and environmental factors, as well as genetic changes, have been etiologically implicated. In general, two essential requirements are needed for an intestinal cell to develop into a cancer: a selective advantage to allow for the initial clonal expansion, and genetic instability to permit for multiple hits in other genes that are responsible for tumor progression and malignant transformation.

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_18, © Springer Science+Business Media B.V. 2010

18.2 Chromosomal Instability and Microsatellite Instability Pathways

In 1990, Fearon and Vogelstein described the molecular basis for CRC as a multistep process in which each accumulated genetic event conferred a selective growth advantage to the colonic epithelial cell [5]. A progression from normal mucosa to adenoma to carcinoma was supported by the demonstration of accumulating mutations in genes of K-ras, adenomatous polyposis coli (APC), tumor protein P53 (TP53), and deleted in colorectal carcinoma (DCC), all of which are thought to be of significance, but are not able successfully to account for all CRCs. There is heterogeneity in the pathogenetic pathway leading to CRCs, and there are two major tumorigenic pathways. The first is driven by chromosomal instability (CIN), the progress of which involves both oncogenes and tumor-suppressor genes residing on chromosomes 5q, 17p, and 18q [6, 7]. Chromosome 5q genes are responsible for APC, 17p for TP53, and 18q for DCC or SMAD4, respectively. K-ras is the most common oncogene following this pattern. As far as tumor-suppressor genes are concerned, genes of APC, TP53, DCC/SMAD4 play important roles in this sequential adenoma to carcinoma pattern. The second pathway is a pathway that involves microsatellite instability that has well be depicted as a consequence of the alteration in mismatch repair (MMR) genes [8, 9].

Interestingly, the first pathway is prevalent in the distal colon. It was reported that the frequency of allelic loss on the three chromosomes, 5q, 17p, and 18q, was more than double in distal tumors as compared to proximal CRC [6], and that close to 100% of FAP individuals will develop CRC in the left colon [10]. However, as for the proximal colon, the second pathway is predominant, and this is reflected in the high incidence of MSI phenotype in the proximal colon [8, 9], which is up to as much as ten times higher than that in distal tumors in sporadic CRCs. FAP and HNPCC, the two major familial forms of CRC, exhibit a distal location preference and a proximal location preference, respectively. The former has an involvement in the CIN pathway, while the latter in the MSI pathway [8, 9, 11]. It has been reported that 60%~70% of HNPCC carcinomas are located proximal to the splenic flexure, compared with 30% among the sporadic cases.

18.3 APC and β-Catenin

Homozygous Apc knockout mouse is embryonic lethal and heterozygous ($Apc^{+/Min}$) mice developed multiple polyps throughout the intestinal tract, mostly in the small intestine [12, 13]. The earliest polyps arose multifocally during the third week after birth, and new polyps continued to appear thereafter. Surprisingly, every nascent polyp consisted of a microadenoma covered with a layer of normal villous epithelium. Genotyping showed that all microadenomas had lost the wildtype Apc allele, whereas the mutant allele remained unchanged. These results indicated that loss of heterozygosity, followed by formation of intravillous microadenomas, was responsible for polyposis in the intestinal mucosa. Further, conditional targeted deletion of exon 3 in mice, which encodes serines and threonines phosphorylated by GSK3β, caused adenomatous intestinal polyps resembling those in APC knockout mice [14]. Some nascent microadenomas were also found in the colon. Thus, the APC/β-catenin pathway plays a major role in early colorectal carcinogenesis.

Mutations of the APC are common to most sporadic colorectal cancers and are also responsible for FAP. APC encodes a large (312 kDa) protein that forms a multiprotein complex containing β-catenin, axin/axin2, casein kinase I, and glycogen synthase kinase 3β [15–17], where β-catenin is phosphorylated by GSK3β and CKI. Phosphorylation of β-catenin leads to its ubiquitination and subsequent degradation. Inactivation of APC results in the accumulation of β-catenin protein and resembles constitutively active Wnt signaling [10–20]. The accumulated β-catenin protein translocates into the nucleus, where it forms a complex with TCF/LEF-family nuclear proteins and drives the transcription of multiple genes (e.g., c-Myc, cyclin D1) implicated in tumor growth and invasion. In addition, 50% of sporadic tumors with intact APC are reported to show mutations of β-catenin itself. Recent data suggest that β-catenin mutations largely occur in the context of the hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer syndrome, which is caused by germline mutations in DNA mismatch repair genes MSH2 and MLH1 [21]. Mutation of the β-catenin gene is often detected in the casein kinase I and glycogen synthase kinase 3β phosphorylation sites of the β-catenin protein, which results in the accumulation of β-catenin and activation of LEF/TCF.

18.4 K-ras and p53

Approximate 15–68% of sporadic colorectal adenomas and in 40–65% of cancers carry K-ras mutations [22–26]. The majority of K-ras mutations occur as an activating point mutation in codons 12, 13, and 64 [27, 28]. Several signal transduction pathways could be activated by actively mutated K-ras, including phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K)/Akt, MAPK and Ral cascades, leading to cell survival, growth and angiogenesis [29]. The p53 mutations have been identified in 40–50% of sporadic colorectal cancers [30]. The frequency of p53 mutations is higher in distal colon and rectal cancers than in proximal colon cancers [31]. Further, p53 mutations are associated with poor prognosis [32]. Tumor suppressor function of p53 has been well documented. However, p53-knockout mice predominantly develop lymphoma rather than epithelial tumors. The underlying mechanism needs to be further investigated.

18.5 DCC

Loss of heterozygosity on chromosome 18q21.3 have been detected in approximately 70% of primary colorectal cancers, particularly in advanced colorectal cancers with hepatic metastasis, suggesting that a gene on 18q plays a significant role in CRC progression. The DCC (deleted in colorectal cancer) gene was long ago proposed as a candidate tumor suppressor gene on 18q [33]. However, point mutations of the DCC gene are only identified in approximately 6% of sporadic colorectal cancers [34]. Mice heterozygous for DCC have been reported to lack the tumor predisposition phenotype [35], suggesting that other candidate gene(s) should be examined in this region.

18.6 DNA Mismatch Repair (MMR) Genes

Accumulated studies have shown that MMR enzymes, hMSH2, hMLH1, hPMS1, hPMS2, and hMSH6, are responsible for microsatellite instability (MSI) in CRC [36–39]. Tumors with instability at two or more of these markers were defined as being MSI-H (high-frequency MSI), whereas those with instability at one or showing no instability were defined as MSI-L (low-frequency MSI) and MSS (microsatellite stable) tumors, respectively. MSI-H cancers have distinct clinicopathological features from MSI-L and MSS tumors. They can occur in the context of the HNPCC syndrome [35, 36, 40, 41] and as many as 10–15% of sporadic CRC [42]. These cancers are also characterized by distinct histopathological features, including mucinous or signet-ring cell differentiation, medullary features, and excess lymphocyte infiltrations. However, neither MSI-L nor MSS tumors demonstrate such characteristic features. Because the simple inactivation of an MMR gene is not enough for a transforming event, additional genetic changes are believed to be necessary for cells to become malignant. To date, most of these have been found in genes containing coding repeat sequences that are particularly prone to alterations in MSI-H cancers. Accumulation of such alterations appears to be the main molecular mechanism by which MSI-H cells accumulate functional changes with putative oncogenic effects. These mutations occur in many genes at variable frequencies. They can affect genes with a putative role in human carcinogenesis involved in different or similar pathways, and are thus thought to be inactivating or activating events selected for in these cancers in a recessive or dominant manner. In 1995, frameshift mutation in repeat sequence of TGFßRII was first reported in human colorectal MSI-H tumors [43]. More recently, other genes containing coding repeats were shown to be altered at various frequencies in MSI-H cancers. These include BAX, hMSH3, hMSH6, IGFIIR ACTRII, AIM2, APAF-1, AXIN-2, BCL-10, BLM, Caspase-5, CDX-2, CHK-1, FAS, GRB-14, cell cycle protein hG4-1, KIAA0977, MBD-4, hMLH3, NADH ubiquinone oxidoreductase, OGT, PTEN, RAD-50, RHAMM, RIZ, SEC63, SLC23AT, TCF-4, and WISP-3 [44–62]. In addition, approximately 30–40% of sporadic MSI-H cancers have APC mutations. Similarly, approximately 36% of sporadic MSI-H cancers have p53 mutations. Thus, a subset of CRC are associated with both MSI and mutations of the APC, p53 and other genes. Recent studies have shown that epigenetics is an important mechanism of colorectal carcinogenesis. HNPCC is mostly due to mutations of MMR genes which show MSI phenotype. Epigenetic, rather than genetic silence of the transcription of MMRs and a number of tumor

suppressor genes, has been detected in sporadic colorectal cancers with MSI [63]. Methylation is believed to be a crucial epigenetic regulation in colorectal carcinoma.

18.7 TGFβ Pathway

The TGFβ family of cytokines has 33 members in humans [64], including TGF-β isoforms, activins, bone morphogenetic proteins (BMPs), and growth and differentiation factors (GDFs). TGFβ family members exert their cellular effects by forming heterotetrameric complexes of type I and type II serine/threonine kinase receptors. In the complex, the type II receptor phosphorylates and activates the type I receptor, which thereafter phosphorylates downstream effectors of the Smad family [65, 66]. The Smad family consists of eight members which form three subfamilies; receptor-activated (R-)Smads (Smad2 and Smad3 are phosphorylated by TGF-β and activin receptors, and Smad1, Smad5, and Smad8 by BMP receptors), a single common-mediator (Co-)Smad (Smad4), and two inhibitory (I-)Smads (Smad6 and Smad7). After R-Smads have been phosphorylated in their C-terminals by type I receptors, they form oligomeric complexes with Smad4, which are translocated to the nucleus where they in collaboration with other nuclear factors regulate the expression of specific genes [65–67]. I-Smads are induced by Smad signaling and act in negative feedback control mechanisms [68].

TGF-β inhibits growth of normal intestinal epithelium and colonic adenoma cells in culture. However, conversion of adenoma to an adenocarcinoma and a metastatic lesion is associated with loss of growth-inhibitory responses to TGF-β. Rather, TGFβ promotes cell proliferation, epithelial-mesochymal transition (EMT), invasion and metastasis. One mechanism by which tumor cells become resistant to the growth inhibitory actions of TGF-β is through downregulation or mutation of the TβRII. TβRII has been shown to be inactivated in a subgroup of colorectal carcinomas associated with the MSI [69]. Mutations of TβRII have also been identified in 15% of MSS colorectal cancers [70]. A recent report shows that conditional loss of TβRII in breast cancer cells resulted in chemokine-mediated recruitment of myeloid cells into the tumor stroma and promotion of invasion and metastasis [71]. Furthermore, Smad2 mutations have been identified in a small subset of colorectal cancers [72, 73]. The most commonly altered Smad mediator in CRC is Smad4. Mutations of Smad4 have been detected in 20–30% of CRC [74, 75]. Downregulation of Smad4 is correlated with loss of E-cadherin expression [76], liver metastasis, and poor prognosis in CRC [77, 78], suggesting that loss of Smad4 expression could be a causal factor for tumorigenesis in CRC.

In addition, it have been well documented that TGFβ induces CRC metastasis by promoting EMT and cell motility and invasion. In response to TGFβ, the type II receptor kinases phosphorylates the type I receptors, which then leads to activation of the cellular responses to TGFβ. Inhibition of TGFβ type II receptor function reverses EMT in colon cancer cells and inhibits EMT in skin and mammary cancer models in vivo [79–81]. The type I receptor also plays a critical role in TGFβ-induced EMT. Expression of an activated version of the TβRI receptor ALK-5 (e.g., the major TGFβ type I receptor) or ActRIB/ALK-4 (e.g., the major type I receptor for activin and nodal) recapitulates TGFβ induced EMT in NMuMG cells [82, 83], whereas dominant negative type I receptor block TGFβ-induced EMT [83]. Further, increased expression of Smad2 or Smad3 with Smad4 induces EMT, or enhances the induction of EMT by the activated form of TβRI, in NMuMG cells, whereas expression of dominant negative versions of Smad2 or Smad3 blocks TGFβ-induced EMT. Similarly, Smad4 is indispensable for EMT. Knockdown of Smad4 expression or expression of a dominant negative mutant of Smad4 abrogates TGFb-induced EMT phenotype. Furthermore, genetic ablation of Smad4 leads to preservation of epithelial markers and a lower degree of EMT in adenocarcinoma [84]. In contrast, the inhibitory Smads (Smad6 and 7) function as negative regulators and thus repress TGFβ-induced EMT. Underlying mechanisms include induction of expression of three families of transcription factors, the Snail, ZEB and bHLH families, by TGFβ, either through a Smad-dependent mechanism (in the case of Snail proteins) or indirectly through activation of other transcription factors or relief of repression. Upon activation these transcription factors in turn repress epithelial marker gene expression and concomitantly activate mesenchymal gene expression.

18.8 MicroRNAs

MicroRNA (miRNAs) are transcripts of 19–25 nucleotides that are conserved among invertebrates, vertebrates, and plants, suggesting that these molecules participate in essential processes [85]. MiRNAs function as negative regulators of gene expression and each miRNA regulates hundreds, even thousands of genes. Accumulated studies showed that miRNAs have been deregulated in various types of human malignancy including CRC. The expression profiles of miRNAs can be used for the classification, diagnosis and prognosis of human malignancies. Further, miRNAs could function as oncogenes or tumor suppressors to regulate cell survival, growth, migration, invasion, angiogenesis and metastasis.

The first miRNA profile of CRC showed consistently reduced accumulation of the specific mature miR-143 and miR-145 in the adenomatous and carcinoma stages of colorectal neoplasia [86]. Since consistent levels of the ~70-bp pre-miR-143 present in each of the cell lines examined, the different levels of mature miR-143 in these cells were controlled by a post-transcriptional mechanism, suggesting that abnormal processing might affect miRNAs expression in colon cancer cells. A further miRNA profiling study evaluated the expression of miRNAs in CRC samples characterized by microsatellite stability (MSS) or by high levels microsatellite instability (MSI-H). Their analysis of miRNA expression profiles of MSI-H ($n = 16$) and MSS CRCs ($n = 23$) identified 14 differentially expressed miRNAs [87]. The most prominent class of differentially expressed miRNAs is various members of the oncogenic miR-17-92 family, suggesting that these miRNAs have a role in the bio-pathologic characteristics that distinguish MSS from MSI-H CRCs. Moreover, miR-17-5p, miR-20, miR-25, miR-92-1, miR-92-2, miR-93-1, and miR-106a were significantly up-regulated in MSS CRCs relative to MSI-H CRCs [87]. Because members of the miR-17-92 family can act as oncogenes to promote cell growth and inhibit apoptosis [88], up-regulation of these miRNAs may be involved in the more aggressive clinical behavior of MSS tumor than MSI-H neoplasm. Lu et al. [89] and Volinia et al. [90] were able to classify the tissues of origin for metastases from poorly differentiated tumors as well as categorize human CRC and normal colon tissues with low rates of misclassification using upregulated expression of 21 miRNAs and the downregulated expression of one miRNA (miR-9-3).

Accumulated studies have demonstrated that miRNAs play a critical role in cancer initiation and progression by negative regulation of their target genes. MiR-10b has been shown to initiate breast cancer invasion and metastasis [91], whereas miR-335 suppresses breast cancer metastasis and migration by targeting the transcription factor SOX4 and tenascin C, an extracellular matrix component with anti-adhesive properties [92]. MiR-15a and miR-16 exert their tumor suppressor function by targeting multiple oncogenes, including BCL2, MCL1, CCND1, and WNT3A [93]. MiR-214 induces cell growth and survival by inhibition of PTEN, Patched and Sufu expression [94–96]. A recent report showed that miR-135a and miR-135b function as oncoemiRs by direct targeting the 3′ untranslated region of the adenomatous polyposis coli gene (APC), suppress its expression, and induce downstream activity in the Wnt signaling pathway [97]. Underlying mechanisms of dysregulation of miRNAs in human cancer include chromosomal alterations, epigenetic silencing, aberrant processing and transcriptional regulation. It was shown that upregulation and downregulation of a number of miRNAs correlate with chromosomal gain and lose or epigenetic changes. Imbalance of pri-, pre- and mature miRNAs is due to altered miRNA processing. A growing list of publications showed that alterations of transcriptional factors are responsible for a number of miRNA dysregulation in human cancer. For example, miR-34 is controlled by p53 [98–100] and NF-kappa B induces miR-155 [101]. Further, c-Myc has been shown to transcriptionally upregulate miR-17-92 family [102]. However, the extent of miRNA regulation by various transcription factors in colon cancer cells, as well as miRNA as diagnostic/prognostic marker and therapeutic targets, remain to be further investigated.

18.9 Conclusion Remarks

During the last 2 decades, several important breakthroughs have been achieved in understanding the molecular basis of colorectal cancer. Mutation of the APC gene makes a significant contribution to tumor initiation and progression in CRC. Likewise, the DNA

MMR genes have gatekeeper and caretaker function in the development of CRC. While stepwise of CRC progression model is valuable, each step could require for multiple genetic alterations, some of which might be overlapped. Further, CRC from different anatomic sites, i.e., proximal colon, distal colon, and rectum, have unique genetic changes and should not be assumed to be constant in their biological behavior or relative risk factors. Animal models are needed to document the importance of miRNAs in CRC carcinogenesis. Ultimately, major challenge is how these genetic changes translate to therapeutic approach to improve the survival of CRC patients.

References

1. World Health Organization. World Cancer Report (Eds Stewart B. W. & Kleihues P.) 13 (IARC, Lyon, 2003).
2. Jemal A, Siegel R, Ward E, Hao Y, Xu J, Murray T, et al. Cancer statistics, 2008. CA Cancer J Clin 2008;58:71–96.
3. Tomlinson I, Webb E, Carvajal-Carmona L, Broderick P, Kemp Z, et al. A genome-wide association scan of tag SNPs identifies a susceptibility variant for colorectal cancer at 8q24.21. Nature Genet 2007;39:984–8.
4. Zanke BW, Greenwood CM, Rangrej J, Kustra R, Tenesa A, Farrington SM. et al. Genome-wide association scan identifies a colorectal cancer susceptibility locus on chromosome 8q24. Nature Genet 2007;39:989–94.
5. Fearon ER, Vogelstein B. A genetic model for colorectal tumorigenesis. Cell 1990 Jun 1;61(5);759–67.
6. Delattre O, Olschwang S, Law DJ, Melot T, Remvikos Y, Salmon RJ, et al. Multiple genetic alterations in distal and proximal colorectal cancer. Lancet 1989;334(8659); 353–6.
7. Gervaz P, Bouzourene H, Cerottini JP, Chaubert P, Benhattar J, Secic M, et al. Dukes B colorectal cancer: distinct genetic categories and clinical outcome based on proximal or distal tumor location. Dis Colon Rectum 2001;44(3);364–72.
8. Thibodeau SN, Bren G, Schaid D. Microsatellite instability in cancer of the proximal colon. Science 1993;260(5109);816–9.
9. Miyakura Y, Sugano K, Konishi F, Ichikawa A, Maekawa M, Shitoh K, et al. Extensive methylation of hMLH1 promoter region predominates in proximal colon cancer with microsatellite instability. Gastroenterology 2001;121(6);1300–9.
10. Iacopetta B. Are there two sides to colorectal cancer? Int J Cancer 2002;101(5);403–8.
11. Patchett SE, Alstead EM, Saunders BP, Hodgson SV, Farthing MJ. Regional proliferative patterns in the colon of patients at risk for hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer. Dis Colon Rectum 1997;40(2);168–71.
12. Oshima M, Oshima H, Kitagawa K, Kobayashi M, Itakura C, Taketo M. Loss of Apc heterozygosity and abnormal tissue building in nascent intestinal polyps in mice carrying a truncated Apc gene. Proc Nat Acad Sci 1995;92:4482–6.
13. Fodde R, Edelmann W, Yang K, van Leeuwen, C Carlson, C Renault B, et al. A targeted chain-termination mutation in the mouse Apc gene results in multiple intestinal tumors. Proc Nat Acad Sci 1994;91:8969–73.
14. Harada N, Tamai Y, Ishikawa T, Sauer B, Takaku K, Oshima M, et al. Intestinal polyposis in mice with a dominant stable mutation of the beta-catenin gene. EMBO J 1999;18: 5931–42.
15. Su LK, Vogelstein B, Kinzler KW. Association of the APC tumor suppressor protein with catenins. Science 1993;262:1734–7.
16. Rubinfeld B, Souza B, Albert I, Muller O, Chamberlain SH, Masiarz FR, et al. Association of the APC gene product with beta-catenin. Science 1993;262:1731–4.
17. Behrens J, Jerchow BA, Wurtele M, Grimm J, Asbrand C, Wirtz R, et al. Functional interaction of an axin homolog, conductin, with beta-catenin, APC, and GSK3beta. Science 1998;280:596–9.
18. De Filippo C, Luceri C, Caderni G, Pacini M, Messerini L, Biggeri A, et al. Mutations of the APC gene in human sporadic colorectal cancers. Scand J Gastroenterol 2002;37:1048–53.
19. Diergaarde B, van Geloof WL, van Muijen GN, Kok FJ, Kampman E. Dietary factors and the occurrence of truncating APC mutations in sporadic colon carcinomas: a Dutch population-based study. Carcinogenesis 2003;24:283–90.
20. Powell SM, Zilz N, Beazer-Barclay Y, Bryan TM, Hamilton SR, Thibodeau SN, et al. APC mutations occur early during colorectal tumorigenesis. Nature 1992;359:235–7.
21. Johnson V, Volikos E, Halford SE, Eftekhar Sadat ET, Popat S, Talbot I, et al. Exon 3 beta-catenin mutations are specifically associated with colorectal carcinomas in hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer syndrome. Gut 2005 Feb;54(2);264–7.
22. Umetani N, Sasaki S, Masaki T, Watanabe T, Matsuda K, Muto T. Involvement of APC and K-ras mutation in non-polypoid colorectal tumorigenesis. Br J Cancer 2000;82:9–15.
23. Takayama T, Katsuki S, Takahashi Y, Ohi M, Nojiri S, Sakamaki S, et al. Aberrant crypt foci of the colon as precursors of adenoma and cancer. N Engl J Med 1998;339:1277–84.
24. Takayama T, Ohi M, Hayashi T, Miyanishi K, Nobuoka A, Nakajima T, et al. Analysis of K-ras, APC and β-catenin in aberrant crypt foci in patients with adenoma and cancer, and familial adenomatous polyposis. Gastroenterology 2001;121:599–611.
25. McLellan EA, Owen RA, Stepniewska KA, Sheffield JP, Lemoine NR. High frequency of K-ras mutations in sporadic colorectal adenomas. Gut 1993;34:392–6.
26. Ando M, Maruyama M, Oto M, Takemura K, Endo M, Yuasa Y. Higher frequency of point mutations in the c-K-ras 2 gene in human colorectal adenomas with severe atypia than in carcinomas. Jpn J Cancer Res 1991;82: 245–9.
27. Capella G, Cronauer-Mitra S, Pienado MA, Perucho M. Frequency and spectrum of mutations at codons 12 and

13 of the c-Kras gene in human tumors. Environ Health Perspect 1991;93:125–31.
28. Toyooka S, Tsukuda K, Ouchida M, Tanino M, Inaki Y, Kobayashi K, et al. Detection of codon 61 point mutations of the K-ras gene in lung and colorectal cancers by enriched PCR. Oncol Rep 2003;10:1455–9.
29. Reuther GW, Der CJ. The Ras branch of small GTPases: Ras family members don't fall far from the tree. Curr Opin Cell Biol. 2000 Apr;12(2);157–65.
30. Baker SJ, Fearon ER, Nigro JM, Hamilton SR, Preisinger AC, Jessup JM, et al. Chromosome 17 deletions and p53 gene mutations in colorectal carcinomas. Science 1989;244:217–21.
31. Hamelin R, Laurent-Puig P, Olschwang S, Jego N, Asselain B, Remvikos Y, et al. Association of p53 mutations with short survival in colorectal cancer. Gastroenterology 1994;106:42–8.
32. Russo A, Bazan V, Iacopetta B, Kerr D, Soussi T, Gebbia N, TP53-CRC Collaborative Study Group. The TP53 colorectal cancer international collaborative study on the prognostic and predictive significance of p53 mutation: influence of tumor site, type of mutation, and adjuvant treatment. J Clin Oncol 2005;23:7518–28.
33. Fearon ER, Cho KR, Nigro JM, Kern SE, Simons JW, Ruppert JM, et al. Identification of a chromosome 18q gene that is altered in colorectal cancers. Science 1990;247:49–56.
34. Cho KR, Oliner JD, Simons JW, Hedrick L, Fearon ER, Preisinger AC, et al. The DCC gene: structural analysis and mutations in colorectal carcinomas. Genomics 1994;19:525–31.
35. Fazeli A, Dickinson SL, Hermiston ML, Tighe RV, Steen RG, Small CG, et al. Phenotype of mice lacking functional Deleted in colorectal cancer (Dcc) gene. Nature 1997;386:796–804.
36. Fishel R, Lescoe MK, Rao MR, Copeland NG, Jenkins NA, Garber J, et al. The human mutator gene homolog MSH2 and its association with hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer. Cell 1993;75:1027–38.
37. Bronner CE, Baker SM, Morrison PT, Warren G, Smith LG, Lescoe MK, et al. Mutation in the DNA mismatch repair gene homologue hMLH1 is associated with hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer. Nature 1994;368: 258–61.
38. Nicolaides NC, Papadopoulos N, Liu B, Wei YF, Carter KC, Ruben SM, et al. Mutations of two PMS homologues in hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer. Nature 1994;371:75–80.
39. Nicolaides NC, Carter KC, Shell BK, Papadopoulos N, Vogelstein B, Kinzler KW. Genomic organization of the human PMS2 gene family. Genomics 1995;30:195–206.
40. Papadopoulos N, Nicolaïdes NC, Wei YF, Ruben SM, Carter KC, Rosen CA, et al. Mutation of a MutL homolog in hereditary colon cancer. Science 1994;263:1625–9.
41. Leach FS, Nicolaïdes NC, Papadopoulos N, Liu B, Jen J, Parsons R, et al. Mutation of a MutS homolog in hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer. Cell 1993;75: 1215–25.
42. Boland CR, Thibodeau SN, Hamilton SR, Sidransky D, Eshleman JR, Burt RW, et al. A National Cancer Institute workshop on microsatellite instability for cancer detection and familial predisposition: development of international criteria for the determination of microsatellite instability in colorectal cancer. Cancer Res 1998;58:5248–57.
43. Markowitz S, Wang J, Myeroff L, Parsons R, Sun L, Lutterbaugh J, et al. Inactivation of the type II TGF-ß receptor in colon cancer cells with microsatellite instability. Science (Wash. DC), 1995;268:1336–8.
44. Souza RF, Appel R, Yin J, Wang S, Smolinski KN, Abraham JM, et al. Microsatellite instability in the insulin-like growth factor II receptor gene in gastrointestinal tumours. Nat Genet 1996;14:255–7.
45. Malkhosyan S, Rampino N, Yamamoto H, Perucho M. Frameshift mutator mutations. Nature (Lond.) 1996;382: 499–500.
46. Rampino N, Yamamoto H, Ionov Y, Li Y, Sawai H, Reed JC, et al. Somatic frameshift mutations in the BAX gene in colon cancers of the microsatellite mutator phenotype. Science (Wash. DC) 1997;275:967–9.
47. Calin G, Herlea V, Barbanti-Brodano G, Negrini M. The coding region of the Bloom syndrome BLM gene and of the CBL proto-oncogene is mutated in genetically unstable sporadic gastrointestinal tumors. Cancer Res 2000;58:3777–81.
48. Wicking C, Simms LA, Evans T, Walsh M, Chawengsaksophak K, Beck F, et al. CDX2, a human homologue of Drosophila caudal, is mutated in both alleles in a replication error positive colorectal cancer. Oncogene 1998;17:657–9.
49. Schwartz S, Yamamoto H, Navarro M, Maestro M, Reventos J, Perucho M. Frameshift mutations at mononucleotide repeats in caspase-5 and other target genes in endometrial and gastrointestinal cancer of the microsatellite mutator phenotype. Cancer Res 2000;59: 2995–3002.
50. Bertoni F, Codegoni AM, Furlan D, Tibiletti MG, Capella C, Broggini M. CHKI frameshift mutations in genetically unstable colorectal and endometrial cancers. Genes Chromosomes Cancer 1999;26:176–80.
51. Riccio A, Aaltonen LA, Godwin AK, Loukola A, Percesepe A, Salovaara R, et al. The DNA repair gene MBD4 (MED1) is mutated in human carcinomas with microsatellite instability. Nat Genet 1999;23:266–8.
52. Duval A, Gayet J, Zhou XP, Iacopetta B, Thomas G, Hamelin R. Frequent frameshift mutations of the TCF-4 gene in colorectal cancers with microsatellite instability. Cancer Res 1999;59: 4213–5.
53. Yamamoto H., Gil J, Schwartz S, Perucho M. Frameshift mutations in Fas, Apaf-1, and Bcl-10 in gastro-intestinal cancer of the microsatellite mutator phenotype. Cell Death Differ 2000;7: 238–9.
54. Liu W, Dong X, Mai M, Seelan RS, Taniguchi K, Krishnadath KK, et al. Mutations in AXIN2 cause colorectal cancer with defective mismatch repair by activating ß-catenin/TCF signaling. Nat Genet 2000;26:146–7.
55. Loukola A, Vilkki S, Singh J, Launonen V, Aaltonen LA. Germline and somatic mutation analysis of MLH3 in MSI-positive colorectal cancer. Am J Pathol 2000;157: 347–52.
56. Guanti G, Resta N, Simone C, Cariola F, Demma I, Fiorente P, et al. Involvement of PTEN mutations in the genetic pathways of colorectal cancerogenesis. Hum Mol Genet 2000;9:283–7.

57. Chadwick RB, Jiang GL, Bennington GA, Yuan B, Johnson CK, Stevens MW, et al. Candidate tumor suppressor RIZ is frequently involved in colorectal carcinogenesis. Proc Natl Acad Sci 2000;97: 2662–7.
58. Kim NG., Choi YR, Baek MJ, Kim YH, Kang H, Kim NK, et al. Frameshift mutations at coding mononucleotide repeats of the hRAD50 gene in gastrointestinal carcinomas with microsatellite instability. Cancer Res 2001;61:36–8.
59. Duval A, Rolland S, Compoint A, Tubacher E, Iacopetta B, Thomas G, et al. Evolution of instability at coding and non-coding repeat sequences in human MSI-H colorectal cancers. Hum Mol Genet 2001;10: 513–8.
60. Mori Y, Yin J, Rashid A, Leggett BA, Young J, Simms L, et al. Instabilotyping: comprehensive identification of frameshift mutations caused by coding region microsatellite instability. Cancer Res 2001;61: 6046–9.
61. Woerner SM, Gebert J, Yuan YP, Sutter C, Ridder R, Bork P, et al. Systematic identification of genes with coding microsatellites mutated in DNA mismatch repair-deficient cancer cells. Int J Cancer 2001;93:12–9.
62. Thorstensen L, Diep CB, Meling GI, Aagesen TH, Ahrens CH, Rognum TO, et al. WNT1 inducible signaling pathway protein 3, WISP-3, a novel target gene in colorectal carcinomas with microsatellite instability. Gastroenterology 2001;121: 1275–80.
63. Anacleto C, Leopoldino AM, Rossi B, Soares FA, Lopes A, Rocha JC, et al. Colorectal cancer "methylator phenotype": fact or artifact? Neoplasia 2005;7(4); 331–5.
64. Derynck R, Miyazono K (Eds). The TGF-b Family. Woodbury, NY: Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press; 2007.
65. Feng XH, Derynck R: Specificity and versatility in TGF-β signaling through Smads. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol 2005; 21:659–93.
66. Massagué J, Seoane J, Wotton D. Smad transcription factors. Genes Dev 2005; 19:2783–810.
67. Ten Dijke P, Heldin C-H (Eds). Smad Signal Transduction. Smads in Proliferation, Differentiation and Disease. Dordrecht, The Netherlands: Springer; 2006.
68. Itoh S, ten Dijke P: Negative regulation of TGF-b receptor/Smad signal transduction. Curr Opin Cell Biol 2007; 19:176–84.
69. Markowitz S, Wang J, Myeroff L, Parsons R, Sun L, Lutterbaugh J, et al. Inactivation of the type II TGF-beta receptor in colon cancer cells with microsatellite instability. Science 1995;268:1336–8.
70. Grady WM, Myeroff LL, Swinler SE, Rajput A, Thiagalingam S, Lutterbaugh JD, et al. Mutational inactivation of transforming growth factor beta receptor type II in microsatellite stable colon cancers. Cancer Res 1999;59:320–4.
71. Yang L, Huang J, Ren X, Gorska AE, Chytil A, Aakre M, et al. Abrogation of TGF beta signaling in mammary carcinomas recruits Gr-1+CD11b+ myeloid cells that promote metastasis. Cancer Cell 2008;13:23–35.
72. Eppert K, Scherer SW, Ozcelik H, Pirone R, Hoodless P, Kim H, et al. MADR2 maps to 18q21 and encodes a TGFbeta-regulated MAD-related protein that is functionally mutated in colorectal carcinoma. Cell 1996;86: 543–52.
73. Ohtaki N, Yamaguchi A, Goi T, Fukaya T, Takeuchi K, Katayama K, et al. Somatic alterations of the DPC4 and Madr2 genes in colorectal cancers and relationship to metastasis. Int J Oncol 2001;18:265–70.
74. Riggins GJ, Thiagalingam S, Rozenblum E, Weinstein CL, Kern SE, Hamilton SR, et al. Mad-related genes in the human. Nat Genet 1996;13:347–9.
75. Riggins GJ, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B, Thiagalingam S. Frequency of Smad gene mutations in human cancers. Cancer Res 1997;57:2578–80.
76. Reinacher-Schick A, Baldus SE, Romdhana B, Landsberg S, Zapatka M, Monig SP, et al. Loss of Smad4 correlates with loss of the invasion suppressor E-cadherin in advanced colorectal carcinomas. J Pathol 2004;202: 412–20.
77. Alazzouzi H, Alhopuro P, Salovaara R, Sammalkorpi H, Jarvinen H, Mecklin JP, et al. SMAD4 as a prognostic marker in colorectal cancer. Clin Cancer Res 2005;11: 2606–11.
78. Miyaki M, Iijima T, Konishi M, Sakai K, Ishii A, Yasuno M, et al. Higher frequency of Smad4 gene mutation in human colorectal cancer with distant metastasis. Oncogene 1999;18:3098–103.
79. Portella G, Cumming SA, Liddell J, et al. Transforming growth factor b is essential for spindle cell conversion of mouse skin carcinoma in vivo: implications for tumor invasion. Cell Growth Differ 1998; 9:393–404.
80. Oft M, Heider KH, Beug H. TGFb signaling is necessary for carcinoma cell invasiveness and metastasis. Curr Biol 1998; 8:1243–52.
81. Han G, Lu SL, Li AG, et al. Distinct mechanisms of TGF-b1-mediated epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition and metastasis during skin carcinogenesis. J Clin Invest 2005; 115:1714–23.
82. Piek E, Moustakas A, Kurisaki A, Heldin CH, ten Dijke P. TGF-b type I receptor/ALK-5 and Smad proteins mediate epithelial to mesenchymal transdifferentiation in NMuMG breast epithelial cells. J Cell Sci 1999; 112:4557–68.
83. Valcourt U, Kowanetz M, Niimi H, Heldin CH, Moustakas A. TGF-b and the Smad signaling pathway support transcriptomic reprogramming during epithelial-mesenchymal cell transition. Mol Biol Cell 2005; 16:1987–2002.
84. Bardeesy N, Cheng KH, Berger JH, et al. Smad4 is dispensable for normal pancreas development yet critical in progression and tumor biology of pancreas cancer. Genes Dev 2006; 20:3130–46.
85. Carrington JC, Ambros V. Role of microRNAs in plant and animal development. Science. 2003 Jul 18;301(5631); 336–8.
86. Michael MZ, O' Connor SM, van Holst Pellekaan NG, Young GP, James RJ. Reduced accumulation of specific microRNAs in colorectal neoplasia. Mol Cancer Res 2003;1:882–91.
87. Lanza G, Ferracin M, Gafà R, Veronese A, Spizzo R, Pichiorri F, et al. mRNA/microRNA gene expression profile in microsatellite unstable colorectal cancer. Mol Cancer 2007;6:54.
88. Mendell JT. miRiad roles for the miR-17-92 cluster in development and disease. Cell. 2008 Apr 18;133(2); 217–22.

89. Lu J, Getz G, Miska EA, Alvarez-Saavedra E, Lamb J, Peck D, et al. MicroRNA expression profiles classify human cancers. Nature 2005;435:834–8.
90. Volinia S, Calin GA, Liu CG, Ambs S, Cimmino A, Petrocca F, et al. A microRNA expression signature of human solid tumors defines cancer gene targets. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2006;103:2257–61.
91. Ma L, Teruya-Feldstein J, Weinberg RA. Tumour invasion and metastasis initiated by microRNA-10b in breast cancer. Nature 2007 Oct 11;449(7163);682–8.
92. Tavazoie SF, Alarcón C, Oskarsson T, Padua D, Wang Q, Bos PD, et al. Endogenous human microRNAs that suppress breast cancer metastasis. Nature 2008 Jan 10;451(7175);147–52.
93. Aqeilan RI, Calin GA, Croce CM. miR-15a and miR-16-1 in cancer: discovery, function and future perspectives. Cell Death Differ 2009 Jun 5. [Epub ahead of print]
94. Yang H, Kong W, He L, Zhao JJ, O'Donnell JD, Wang J, et al. MicroRNA expression profiling in human ovarian cancer: miR-214 induces cell survival and cisplatin resistance by targeting PTEN. Cancer Res 2008 Jan 15;68(2);425–33.
95. Flynt AS, Li N, Thatcher EJ, Solnica-Krezel L, Patton JG. Zebrafish miR-214 modulates Hedgehog signaling to specify muscle cell fate. Nat Genet 2007 Feb;39(2); 259–63.
96. Li N, Flynt AS, Kim HR, Solnica-Krezel L, Patton JG. Dispatched Homolog 2 is targeted by miR-214 through a combination of three weak microRNA recognition sites. Nucleic Acids Res 2008 Aug;36(13);4277–85.
97. Nagel R, le Sage C, Diosdado B, van der Waal M, Oude Vrielink JAF, Bolijn A, et al. Regulation of the adenomatous polyposis coli gene by the miR-135 family in colorectal cancer. Cancer Res 2008;68:5795–802.
98. Raver-Shapira N, Marciano E, Meiri E, Spector Y, Rosenfeld N, Moskovits N, et al. Transcriptional activation of miR-34a contributes to p53-mediated apoptosis. Mol Cell 2007 Jun 8;26(5);731–43.
99. Chang TC, Wentzel EA, Kent OA, Ramachandran K, Mullendore M, Lee KH, et al. Transactivation of miR-34a by p53 broadly influences gene expression and promotes apoptosis. Mol Cell 2007 Jun 8;26(5);745–52.
100. He L, He X, Lim LP, de Stanchina E, Xuan Z, Liang Y, et al. A microRNA component of the p53 tumour suppressor network. Nature 2007 Jun 28;447(7148);1130–4.
101. O'Connell RM, Taganov KD, Boldin MP, Cheng G, Baltimore D. MicroRNA-155 is induced during the macrophage inflammatory response. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2007 Jan 30;104(5);1604–9.
102. O'Donnell KA, Wentzel EA, Zeller KI, Dang CV, Mendell JT. c-Myc-regulated microRNAs modulate E2F1 expression. Nature 2005 Jun 9;435(7043);839–43.

Chapter 19

Carcinogenetic Pathway of Superficial Low-Grade Urothelial Carcinoma

Shang-Tian Chuang, Robert A. Tracy, and Ximing J. Yang

Contents

19.1 Introduction

Bladder cancer is a major cause of health expenses. It is estimated to be the seventh most prevalent malignancy worldwide and accounts for approximately 3.2% of the international cancer burden [1]. Bladder cancer is more common in men than in women [2] and more prevalent in industrialized than in developing countries [3].

The bladder is lined by urothelium, so it is no surprise that urothelial carcinoma represents greater than 90% of the tumors within the bladder [4]. Other carcinomas involving the bladder include adenocarcinoma and squamous cell carcinoma. Most cases of urothelial carcinoma are sporadic. Risk factors, such as, cigarette smoking, exposure to arylamines (particularly 2-naphthylamine), Schistosoma haematobium infection, and radiation therapy, have been strongly associated with urothelial carcinoma [5].

Urothelial carcinoma of the bladder is classified into superficial (stage Ta, Tis, and T1) and muscle invasive (T2, T3, T4) tumors. Superficial tumors include non-invasive papillary carcinoma, carcinoma in situ, and tumors that invade the subepithelial connective tissue (lamina propria). They account for 75–85% of urothelial carcinoma of the bladder [6]. More than 70% of patients with superficial tumors will have one or more recurrences after initial treatment [7]. Progression to muscle invasive disease will develop in 10–20% of these patients with superficial tumors [7].

Muscle invasive tumors, which include tumors that invade the muscularis propria, perivesical tissue, and adjacent organs, comprise the remaining 15–25% of urothelial carcinoma of the bladder [6]. Unfortunately, regardless of radical cystectomy and/or systemic therapy, approximately 50% of patients with muscle invasive urothelial carcinoma die from metastases within 2 years of diagnosis [8, 9].

In addition, urothelial carcinoma of the bladder is classified into papillary with low and high grade and non-papillary (flat) tumors. Histologically, urothelial papillary tumors are those that generally consist of fibrovascular cores lined by neoplastic urothelial cells. Low grade papillary carcinoma can have fused papillae lined by predominantly ordered neoplastic urothelial cells that exhibit enlarged nuclei which vary in size and shape. High grade papillary carcinoma demonstrates fused papillae that are branched and lined by neoplastic urothelial cells that show marked variation in size and shape of the nuclei. Non-invasive low grade papillary tumors account for approximately 80% of urothelial carcinoma [10]. These lesions often recur multiple times but are limited in their potential to

S. Chuang (✉)
Department of Pathology, Moffitt Cancer and Research Center, Tampa, FL, USA
e-mail: tian.chuang@moffitt.org

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_19,

become muscle invasive. The 5 year survival rate is about 90% if these lesions are treated early by surgical resection and intravesical immunotherapy [11].

On the other hand, non-papillary (flat lesions), such as, urothelial carcinoma in situ (CIS), are lesions in which the urothelium contains cells that are cytologically malignant as defined by a neoplastic urothelial cell with a nuclear size of five times or greater than that of a lymphocyte's nucleus. De novo (primary) CIS accounts for about 1–3% of urothelial neoplasms [10] and can present as invasive tumors.

Interestingly, urothelial carcinoma of the bladder is distinct from other epithelial carcinomas in that it is thought to have two divergent pathways of carcinogenesis. Studies have shown that superficial/low grade papillary tumors develop along one molecular pathway while muscle invasive tumors and CIS develop along a different molecular pathway. Deletions of chromosome 9 are more commonly associated with superficial/papillary tumors while loss of heterozygosity on chromosome 17 is more frequently seen in carcinoma in situ and invasive tumors [12–16]. In addition, low grade papillary tumors are shown to have activating mutations involving tyrosine kinase receptors, such as, fibroblast growth factor receptor 3 (FGFR3) [17, 18], and its pathways, such as, Ras (19) and phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K) pathways [19]. In contrast, most CIS and high grade invasive tumors have defects in the p53 and retinoblastoma (RB) protein genes and their pathways [20].

Chromosomal 9 alterations and activating mutations of tyrosine kinase receptors and its pathways involving superficial/papillary tumors will be discussed in this chapter.

19.2 Chromosomal Aberrations

Chromosomal aberrations, which include deletions, amplifications, and aneusomies, are common in urothelial carcinoma and appear to involve almost all the chromosomes [21]. Chromosome 9 monosomy can be seen in non-invasive papillary tumors [22]. However, there are also more localized deletions of various chromosomal regions. Deletions of chromosome 9, although identified in urothelial carcinomas of all grades and stages, is often the only genetic alteration found in low grade tumors [22]. Deletions of both arms of chromosome 9 (9p-/9q-) have been shown to occur during early urothelial carcinogenesis and are frequently present in superficial low grade papillary tumors [13, 23]. According to Simoneau et al., 48% of superficial tumors had at least one deletion in chromosome 9 [24].

The 9p deletion (9p21) affects the cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 2A (CDKN2A) gene. This CDKN2A gene encodes for the tumor suppressor proteins p16 and alternative reading frame (ARF). p16, also known as, inhibitor of cyclin-dependent kinase 4A (INK4A) is a member of the INK4 family. It arrests the G1/S cell cycle transition by preventing the phosphorylation of the retinoblastoma protein (pRB). Loss of p16 expression would, therefore, result in lack of regulatory control of the cell cycle [25].

In addition, loss of heterozygosity of 9q is more common in non-invasive low-grade papillary tumors than in CIS and muscle invasive tumors [13]. Deletions on 9q (9q22.3, 9q31–32, 9q33, and 9q34) are found to be twice as common as deletions on 9p, which so happen to be mostly associated with 9q deletions [26]. This suggests the possibility that gene alterations on 9q may be an early event in superficial papillary tumors [26]. Of interest, even deletions of chromosome 9 are described in normal-appearing urothelium adjacent to areas demonstrating early precursor changes [27]. Furthermore, chromosome 9 deletions are seen in cells taken from voided urine of patients who currently have no detectable tumor and negative urine cytologies [27]. These chromosomal aberrations found in normal-appearing urothelium adjacent to precursor lesions could explain the frequent recurrence of papillary urothelial carcinoma.

However, as previously mentioned, although chromosome 9 deletions may be the only genetic alteration identified in superficial papillary tumors, chromosome 9 deletions have been demonstrated in both urothelial dysplasia and CIS. This would imply that chromosome 9 deletions do not distinguish between the two tumorigenesis pathways [28].

19.3 Activation of Tyrosine Kinase Receptor and Pathway

In addition to chromosomal aberrations, mutations in tyrosine kinase receptors and pathways, such as, FGFR3, PI3KCA, and Ras have been identified in low grade papillary urothelial tumors.

19.3.1 Fibroblastic Growth Factor Receptor 3 (FGFR3)

Typically, when a ligand binds to a cell surface receptor, an extracellular signal is tranduced into the cell creating changes in gene expression. Tyrosine kinase is a family of cell surface receptors and consists of an extracellular ligand-binding domain, a transmembrane region, and a cytoplasmic tail that has intrinsic tyrosine kinase activity. Fibroblast growth factor receptor 3 (FGFR3) is a member of the tyrosine kinase family. It is involved in cell growth and differentiation, angiogenesis, and embryogenesis [29]. Specific point mutations in FGFR3 have been associated with human skeletal dysplasias with severe impairment in cranial, digital and skeletal development [30]. Somatic FGFR3 mutations have also been identified in urothelial carcinoma. Seventy percent of low grade papillary non-invasive tumors exhibit FGFR3 mutations [18, 31, 32]. In contrast, only 10–20% of invasive tumors harbor FGFR3 in genes, suggesting that low grade papillary non-invasive tumors have an alternative pathogenesis than invasive tumors [18, 31, 32].

Most of the mutations identified in FGFR3 have been missense mutations that cause amino acid substitutions that involve the extracellular domain, transmembrane region, and cytoplasmic tail [31, 33, 34]. The extracellular ligand-binding domain of FGFR3 consists of three extracellular immunoglobulin-like domains which are connected by loops. The most common mutation results in the conversion of a non-cysteine residue into a cysteine in these loops, with the loop between the extracellular immunoglobulin I and immunoglobulin II being the most common [11]. These mutations can result in autophosphorylation of the intracellular kinase region and decreased translocation to the lysosomal degradative pathway which would could result in increased and prolonged activation of the receptor [35, 36].

19.3.2 Phosphatidylinositol 3 Kinase p110 α (PI3KCA)

Activated FGFR3 can trigger the downstream phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K) pathway. PI3K generates 3′-phosphoinositides which bind to the pleckstrin homology domain of 3′-phosphoinositides-dependent kinase 1 and Akt with subsequent activation of this pathway [37]. Depending on the substrate specificity, activation mechanisms, and expression patterns, the PI3K family is separated into three classes. Class I is further divided into class 1A subgroup which are coupled to signal transduction by receptor tyrosine kinase upon growth factor binding and class 1B subgroup which signal from G-coupled receptors [38]. Class I PI3K consists of a catalytic (p110) and a regulatory subunit. There are four (α, β, γ, and δ) different catalytic subunits of which the catalytic p110α subunit is encoded by the PI3KCA locus [38]. Activating somatic mutations in the PI3KCA have been identified in cancers of the breast, colon, ovary, and stomach [39]. Recently, PI3KCA hotspot mutations in codons 542, 545, and 1047, have been found in approximately 20% of superficial bladder tumors in contrast to a very low prevalence in muscle invasive tumors [19]. In addition, a subset of the superficial tumors with PI3KCA has FGFR3 mutations [19]. Therefore, it is quite possible that FGFR3 and PI3KCA may represent a similar pathway of tumor progression. It has been postulated by Lopez-Knowles et al. that activation of PI3K pathway in bladder cancer may enhance malignant behavior in FGFR3-mutant tumors [19].

19.3.3 Ras

In the tyrosine kinase pathway, Ras proteins are also downstream from FGFR3. Ras genes encode membrane-bound guanine nucleotide-binding proteins that are responsible for the transduction of signals that regulate cell growth and differentiation. Ras proteins are activated when bound by GTP and with subsequent hydrolysis of the bound GTP to GDP and phosphate is inactivated. GTP binding can be catalyzed by guanine nucleotide exchange factors. In addition, the rate of conversion from GTP to GDP can be accelerated by guanine nucleotide activating proteins (GAPs). Proto-oncogenes in the Ras family include HRAS, KRAS, RRAS, and NRAS [40].

HRAS was the first human oncogene identified in the bladder cancer cell line T24 [41]. HRAS mutations, which have been found on codons 12, 13 and 61 [42], occur in about 30–40% of low grade non-invasive papillary tumors [43–45]. One specific mutation

frequently found in bladder tumors substitutes the amino acid glycine with amino acid valine at position 12 (G12V) [7]. With this substitution, the HRAS gene is constantly activated which may result in uncontrolled cell division and subsequent tumor formation.

Mutations have not only been found in HRAS but also two other Ras genes, NRAS and KRAS2 [7]. Mutations found in NRAS were G12R, Q61L, and Q61R while mutations found in KRAS2 were G12A and G12V [7]. It is unclear whether both Ras and FGFR3 mutations can co-exist in the same tumor. However, Jebar et al. recently discovered that in no cases were Ras and FGFR3 mutation found together, suggesting mutual exclusion [7].

19.3.4 Other Tyrosine Kinase Receptors

In addition to FGFR3, other tyrosine kinase receptors, such as, the ErbB family can be over-expressed in urothelial carcinoma. The ErbB family includes epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR or ErbB-1), ERBB2 (HER2/c-neu or c-ErbB-2), ERBB3 (HER3 or c-ErbB-3), and ERBB4 (HER4 or c-ErbB-4). In general, binding of specific ligands leads to dimerization followed by activation of the receptor. Activated receptors are responsible for DNA synthesis and proliferation [46].

Similar to other tyrosine kinase receptors, EGFR is composed of an extracellular ligand-binding domain, a transmembrane region, and an intracellular domain with intrinsic tyrosine kinase activity [47]. Mutations in EFGR may result in persistent activation of the cascades which may lead to uncontrolled cell division [48]. ERBB2 has no external ligand; however, it is believed to be the preferred dimerization partner for other receptors [49]. ERBB3 does not have tyrosine kinase activity, and is therefore, restricted in activation of downstream pathways alone [50]. ERBB4 is more direct in activating the transcription of target genes by moving a portion of its intracellular domain to the nucleus [51].

Interestingly, over-expression of ERBB3 and ERBB4 has been found to be associated with superficial low grade tumors [52]. In contrast, the over-expression of EGFR and ERBB2 are associated with muscle invasive tumors [53–55]. These findings would once again support the two distinct pathways of urothelial carcinoma.

19.4 Conclusion

Even though superficial/low grade papillary tumors are generally are not life-threatening, the disease still places a heavy burden on patients and healthcare providers. Following surgical resection of these tumors, patients typically require long-term follow up with invasive procedures. Although their mutual exclusivity is still debatable, tumorigenesis of urothelial carcinoma of the bladder is believed to develop through divergent pathways with division between superficial/low grade papillary tumors and muscle invasive tumors and CIS. With this knowledge, possibly potential markers for non-invasive disease monitoring and for targeted therapy for patients with superficial/low grade papillary tumors may be discovered.

References

1. Beaglehole R, Irwin, A., Prentice, T. Changing history. The World Health Report 2004. 2004; 122.
2. Parkin DM, Pisani P, Ferlay J. Estimates of the worldwide incidence of 25 major cancers in 1990. Int J Cancer 1999;80(6):827–41.
3. Pisani P, Bray F, Parkin DM. Estimates of the world-wide prevalence of cancer for 25 sites in the adult population. Int J Cancer 2002;97(1):72–81.
4. Hernandez S, Lopez-Knowles E, Lloreta J, et al. FGFR3 and Tp53 mutations in T1G3 transitional bladder carcinomas: independent distribution and lack of association with prognosis. Clin Cancer Res 2005;11(15):5444–50.
5. Johansson SL, Cohen SM. Epidemiology and etiology of bladder cancer. Semin Surg Oncol 1997;13(5):291–8.
6. Sanchez-Carbayo M, Cordon-Cardo C. Molecular alterations associated with bladder cancer progression. Semin Oncol 2007;34(2):75–84.
7. Jebar AH, Hurst CD, Tomlinson DC, et al. FGFR3 and Ras gene mutations are mutually exclusive genetic events in urothelial cell carcinoma. Oncogene 2005;24(33):5218–25.
8. Steinberg GD, Trump DL, Cummings KB. Metastatic bladder cancer. Natural history, clinical course, and consideration for treatment. Urol Clin North Am 1992;19(4):735–46.
9. Liebert M, Seigne J. Characteristics of invasive bladder cancers: histological and molecular markers. Semin Urol Oncol 1996;14(2):62–72.
10. Farrow GM. Pathology of carcinoma in situ of the urinary bladder and related lesions. J Cell Biochem Suppl 1992;16I:39–43.
11. Wu XR. Urothelial tumorigenesis: a tale of divergent pathways. Nat Rev Cancer 2005;5(9):713–25.
12. Knowles MA. Molecular genetics of bladder cancer: pathways of development and progression. Cancer Surv 1998;31:49–76.

13. Spruck CH, 3rd, Ohneseit PF, Gonzalez-Zulueta M, et al. Two molecular pathways to transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder. Cancer Res 1994;54(3):784–8.
14. Rosin MP, Cairns P, Epstein JI, et al. Partial allelotype of carcinoma in situ of the human bladder. Cancer Res 1995;55(22):5213–6.
15. Primdahl H, von der Maase H, Christensen M, et al. Allelic deletions of cell growth regulators during progression of bladder cancer. Cancer Res 2000;60(23): 6623–9.
16. Hartmann A, Schlake G, Zaak D, et al. Occurrence of chromosome 9 and p53 alterations in multifocal dysplasia and carcinoma in situ of human urinary bladder. Cancer Res 2002;62(3):809–18.
17. Billerey C, Chopin D, Aubriot-Lorton MH, et al. Frequent FGFR3 mutations in papillary non-invasive bladder (pTa) tumors. Am J Pathol 2001;158(6):1955–9.
18. van Rhijn BW, van der Kwast TH, Vis AN, et al. FGFR3 and P53 characterize alternative genetic pathways in the pathogenesis of urothelial cell carcinoma. Cancer Res 2004;64(6):1911–4.
19. Lopez-Knowles E, Hernandez S, Malats N, et al. PIK3CA mutations are an early genetic alteration associated with FGFR3 mutations in superficial papillary bladder tumors. Cancer Res 2006;66(15):7401–4.
20. Mitra AP, Datar RH, Cote RJ. Molecular pathways in invasive bladder cancer: new insights into mechanisms, progression, and target identification. J Clin Oncol 2006;24(35):5552–64.
21. Sandberg AA. Cytogenetics and molecular genetics of bladder cancer: a personal view. Am J Med Genet 2002;115(3):173–82.
22. Florl AR, Schulz WA. Chromosomal instability in bladder cancer. Arch Toxicol 2008;82(3):173–82.
23. Obermann EC, Junker K, Stoehr R, et al. Frequent genetic alterations in flat urothelial hyperplasias and concomitant papillary bladder cancer as detected by CGH, LOH, and FISH analyses. J Pathol 2003;199(1):50–7.
24. Simoneau M, LaRue H, Aboulkassim TO, et al. Chromosome 9 deletions and recurrence of superficial bladder cancer: identification of four regions of prognostic interest. Oncogene 2000;19(54):6317–23.
25. Ortega S, Malumbres M, Barbacid M. Cyclin D-dependent kinases, INK4 inhibitors and cancer. Biochim Biophys Acta 2002;1602(1):73–87.
26. Simoneau M, Aboulkassim TO, LaRue H, et al. Four tumor suppressor loci on chromosome 9q in bladder cancer: evidence for two novel candidate regions at 9q22.3 and 9q31. Oncogene 1999;18(1):157–63.
27. Czerniak B, Chaturvedi V, Li L, et al. Superimposed histologic and genetic mapping of chromosome 9 in progression of human urinary bladder neoplasia: implications for a genetic model of multistep urothelial carcinogenesis and early detection of urinary bladder cancer. Oncogene 1999;18(5):1185–96.
28. Hartmann A, Moser K, Kriegmair M, et al. Frequent genetic alterations in simple urothelial hyperplasias of the bladder in patients with papillary urothelial carcinoma. Am J Pathol 1999;154(3):721–7.
29. Ornitz DM, Itoh N. Fibroblast growth factors. Genome Biol 2001;2(3):REVIEWS3005.
30. Eswarakumar VP, Lax I, Schlessinger J. Cellular signaling by fibroblast growth factor receptors. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev 2005;16(2):139–49.
31. Rieger-Christ KM, Mourtzinos A, Lee PJ, et al. Identification of fibroblast growth factor receptor 3 mutations in urine sediment DNA samples complements cytology in bladder tumor detection. Cancer 2003;98(4):737–44.
32. Bakkar AA, Wallerand H, Radvanyi F, et al. FGFR3 and TP53 gene mutations define two distinct pathways in urothelial cell carcinoma of the bladder. Cancer Res 2003;63(23):8108–12.
33. Cappellen D, De Oliveira C, Ricol D, et al. Frequent activating mutations of FGFR3 in human bladder and cervix carcinomas. Nat Genet 1999;23(1):18–20.
34. van Rhijn BW, Montironi R, Zwarthoff EC, et al. Frequent FGFR3 mutations in urothelial papilloma. J Pathol 2002;198(2):245–51.
35. Monsonego-Ornan E, Adar R, Feferman T, et al. The transmembrane mutation G380R in fibroblast growth factor receptor 3 uncouples ligand-mediated receptor activation from down-regulation. Mol Cell Biol 2000;20(2): 516–22.
36. Cho JY, Guo C, Torello M, et al. Defective lysosomal targeting of activated fibroblast growth factor receptor 3 in achondroplasia. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2004;101(2):609–14.
37. Cantley LC. The phosphoinositide 3-kinase pathway. Science 2002;296(5573):1655–7.
38. Hafner C, Lopez-Knowles E, Luis NM, et al. Oncogenic PIK3CA mutations occur in epidermal nevi and seborrheic keratoses with a characteristic mutation pattern. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2007;104(33):13450–4.
39. Samuels Y, Wang Z, Bardelli A, et al. High frequency of mutations of the PIK3CA gene in human cancers. Science 2004;304(5670):554.
40. McCormick F. Ras-related proteins in signal transduction and growth control. Mol Reprod Dev 1995;42(4):500–6.
41. Der CJ, Krontiris TG, Cooper GM. Transforming genes of human bladder and lung carcinoma cell lines are homologous to the ras genes of Harvey and Kirsten sarcoma viruses. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1982;79(11):3637–40.
42. Reddy EP, Reynolds RK, Santos E, et al. A point mutation is responsible for the acquisition of transforming properties by the T24 human bladder carcinoma oncogene. Nature 1982;300(5888):149–52.
43. Buyru N, Tigli H, Ozcan F, et al. Ras oncogene mutations in urine sediments of patients with bladder cancer. J Biochem Mol Biol 2003;36(4);399–402.
44. Dinney CP, McConkey DJ, Millikan RE, et al. Focus on bladder cancer. Cancer Cell 2004;6(2):111–6.
45. Zhu D, Xing D, Shen X, et al. A method to quantitatively detect H-ras point mutation based on electrochemiluminescence. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 2004;324(2): 964–9.
46. Oda K, Matsuoka Y, Funahashi A, et al. A comprehensive pathway map of epidermal growth factor receptor signaling. Mol Syst Biol 2005;1:2005–10.
47. Herbst RS. Review of epidermal growth factor receptor biology. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2004;59(2 Suppl): 21–6.

48. Lynch TJ, Bell DW, Sordella R, et al. Activating mutations in the epidermal growth factor receptor underlying responsiveness of non-small-cell lung cancer to gefitinib. N Engl J Med 2004;350(21):2129–39.
49. Graus-Porta D, Beerli RR, Daly JM, et al. ErbB-2, the preferred heterodimerization partner of all ErbB receptors, is a mediator of lateral signaling. Embo J 1997;16(7): 1647–55.
50. Chen X, Levkowitz G, Tzahar E, et al. An immunological approach reveals biological differences between the two NDF/heregulin receptors, ErbB-3 and ErbB-4. J Biol Chem 1996;271(13):7620–9.
51. Ni CY, Murphy MP, Golde TE, et al. gamma - Secretase cleavage and nuclear localization of ErbB-4 receptor tyrosine kinase. Science 2001;294(5549): 2179–81.
52. Memon AA, Sorensen BS, Melgard P, et al. Expression of HER3, HER4 and their ligand heregulin-4 is associated with better survival in bladder cancer patients. Br J Cancer 2004;91(12):2034–41.
53. Lipponen P, Eskelinen M. Expression of epidermal growth factor receptor in bladder cancer as related to established prognostic factors, oncoprotein (c-erbB-2, p53) expression and long-term prognosis. Br J Cancer 1994;69(6):1120–5.
54. Messing EM. Growth factors and bladder cancer: clinical implications of the interactions between growth factors and their urothelial receptors. Semin Surg Oncol 1992;8(5):285–92.
55. Coogan CL, Estrada CR, Kapur S, et al. HER-2/neu protein overexpression and gene amplification in human transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder. Urology 2004;63(4):786–90.

Chapter 20

Carcinogenetic Pathway of Urothelial Carcinoma

Shohreh Iravani Dickinson

Contents

20.1 Introduction

Urothelial carcinoma (UC) is the second most common cancer of the genitourinary tract, representing the fourth most common malignancy in males and the ninth most common in females in the United States [1, 2]. An average of 260,000 new cases are diagnosed worldwide yearly, with approximately 68,810 new cases in 2008 in the USA with corresponding 14,100 deaths [3]. UC has a high recurrence rate and generally does not present as metastatic disease. The current treatment for UC is based on pathological staging. For the past two decades, the molecular pathways of progression and evolution of bladder cancer have been the center of investigation [4].

Two discrete biologically significant pathways involving bladder carcinogenesis are recognized, one leading to superficial papillary carcinomas and the other leading to more aggressive either flat (carcinoma in situ) or invasive carcinoma.

Approximately 70% of urothelial neoplasms are superficial papillary carcinomas with a tendency to frequently recur locally, however, rarely invade or metastasize. In contrast, 30% are the more aggressive non-papillary flat, carcinomas that have a higher propensity to invade and metastasize [2, 4–6]. For patients with invasive or metastatic disease, despite aggressive therapeutic intervention, the overall cure is 20–50% [7]. Papillary and the more aggressive non-papillary flat urothelial carcinomas (UC) have unique molecular profiles and appear to develop and advance through two distinct molecular pathways. However, it is not known if these two pathways are mutually exclusive [6, 8, 9].

The majority of non-papillary flat urothelial carcinomas (UC) show alterations in the p53 (TP53)-Mdm2-p14 and the retinoblastoma-p16 (Rb) genes and pathways [6, 8, 10–14]. Both p53 and Rb maintain cellular homeostasis and control normal cell cycle, cellular growth and proliferation [5, 6, 15]. Cell cycle alterations are the most common cause of molecular modifications in UC [8]. The retinoblastoma (Rb) pathway regulates cell cycle by receiving extracellular growth signals via the Ras-mitogen activated protein kinase (Ras-MAPK) signal transduction pathway. The Ras-MAPK pathway transfers extracellular growth signals to the nucleus, where cyclin/CDK (cyclin-dependent kinase) complexes induce phosphorylation of Rb. In response to cellular stress, Rb is the main regulator of cell cycle progression, while p53's main function is to trigger apoptosis or growth arrest in the G1 phase. Rb is regulated by factors such as cyclin D1 and p16 (a CDK inhibitor) [5, 15]. Mutations of p53,

S.I. Dickinson (✉)
Department of Pathology, H. Lee Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, Tampa, FL, USA
e-mail: Shoreh.Dickinson@moffitt.org

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_20,

or the components of its pathway, ie $p21^{WAF1/CIP1}$ gene, interrupt cellular growth and apoptosis, leading to neoplastic transformation [5, 16]. p53 is regulated by the p14/ARF (a CDK inhibitor) and the oncoprotein Mdm2 [16]. P14 is known to inhibit the function of Mdm2. Mdm2 suppresses the activity of p53 and triggers its degradation [8]. Clinically aggressive UC also exhibits discrete molecular gene alterations involving cell-stroma interactions [5, 9]. Tumor angiogenesis plays a role in UC progression by providing oxygen, nutrients and growth factors to the neoplastic cells [5, 6].

Alterations in the p53 pathway are reported to be a significant independent predictor of survival [16]. p53 mutations have been linked as the major contributory factor for the proclivity of in situ carcinoma to invade the lamina propria and urinary bladder muscle wall [6, 17]. Patients with normal p53 pathways are reported to show significantly low death rate and therefore considered low-risk. However, patients with abnormalities of the p53 pathway have significantly aggressive clinical course, high death rate, decreased overall survival and considered high-risk [15, 16]. In UC, Rb and p53 are commonly both altered [18]. Molecular alterations of p53 and Rb genes and their pathways in conjunction with overexpression of Mdm2 and loss of p21 have been found to be significantly associated with poor prognosis and advanced stage in UC [6, 8, 16]. Distinct genetic events portray the interaction between the molecules involved in these pathways, lending to their use as prognostic indicators. Alterations of p53 and Rb may help identify patients with high risk superficial cancers more likely to progress to invasive carcinoma, identifying patients who may be managed without radical cystectomy [16]. Aberrant levels of p53 and Rb may also identify individual patients who may fail conventional treatment and who may benefit from therapies targeting specific markers of carcinogenesis. Novel pharmacologic agents targeting altered pathway-specific molecules are currently in development. There is an increased risk of bladder cancer recurrence and disease progression with increasing number of unregulated altered markers. Patients with unaltered wild type p53 and Rb bladder cancers show significant decreased risk of recurrence and mortality when compared to those who have mutational alteration in both p53 and Rb. Future therapeutic modalities for urothelial carcinoma will take advantage of multimarker panels using a combination of altered markers exerting synergistic action [6, 12–15, 18–22].

20.2 p53 Cell Cycle Regulation Pathway

The p53 oncoprotein is a crucial molecule involved in cell cycle control in urothelial carcinoma (UC). The p53 protein is encoded by the tumor suppressor gene TP53 located on the short arm of chromosome 17 p13.1. Inactivation of the p53 tumor suppressor gene is important for cancer development, progression and therapeutic response. Loss of heterozygosity of one allele, followed by mutation of the remaining allele, is an important mechanism for gene inactivation [6, 8, 10, 23, 24]. p53 protein is a transcription factor activating genes involved in apoptosis (BAX gene), cell cycle arrest (p21/WAF1 genes) [6, 15] and identifying DNA damage [5, 16, 22]. p53 also plays an important role in angiogenesis [6, 8]. p53 pathway genes preside over the programs of cell growth and death, playing a critical role in G_1-S cell cycle transition in response to cellular stress [6, 16, 25, 26]. Mutations of p53 result in loss of its control over apoptosis, cell cycle progression and transcription of genes involved in DNA repair [6, 22]. Tumors exhibiting uninhibited proliferation and lack of apoptosis show a selective growth advantage and typically are resistance to treatment [6, 16, 27, 28].

Mutation in the TP53 gene is accepted as a critical event in numerous cancers, including UC [6, 15]. These mutations are in general missense point mutations. Mutated p53 is more stable with a longer half-life that is resistant to standard regulatory degradation by the ubiquitin pathway and thus accumulates in the nucleus. Both nuclear accumulation and gene mutations are a factor in tumor progression. Determining the status of both the gene and the protein can give added synergistic data concerning prognosis. The site of mutation may also be imperative in understanding tumor behavior [6]. Accumulation of p53 within the nucleus and TP53 gene mutations are associated with aggressive clinical behavior, a greater risk of recurrence and progression and decreased overall survival in UC [9, 16]. This is particularly observed in patients with invasive, organ-confined, node-negative (T1-2bN0) tumors [6, 8]. Chatterjee, et al. [15],

reported significantly better overall survival and lower rates of recurrence for normal wide type p53 UC than mutated p53 UC [15]. The 5-year recurrence rates for wide type p53 UC versus mutated p53 UC are reported as 30% versus 70% ($P < 0.001$), whereas the 5-year survival rates as 61% versus 26% ($P < 0.001$) [15].

Cellular transition through the G1 to S phase is regulated by cyclin-dependent kinases (CDKs). P53 protein inhibits cell cycle progression at G1-S cell phase thereby arresting cell growth. P53 implements its control and influences tumor progression through the transcriptional activation of the $p21^{WAF1/CIP1}$ [6, 8, 15, 16, 23] gene, an integral part of the p53 pathway. The $p21^{WAF1/CIP1}$ gene encodes the p21 protein, a universal cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor *(*CDKI) that can arrest cells in the G1 phase by inhibiting DNA replication [6, 15, 22, 29, 30] (Fig. 20.1). $p21^{WAF1/CIP1}$ is upregulated by p53 in response to DNA damage and cellular stress. p21 arrests the cell cycle by inhibiting cyclin/CDK complexes, and in this manner prevents Rb phosphorylation [6, 15, 16, 23, 31]. Unphosphorylated Rb can then bind and sequester the transcription factor E2F thus preventing it from transcribing genes necessary for DNA synthesis [6, 15, 32]. Hence, there is an essential interaction between the components of the p53, p21 and Rb pathways [6, 15]. Rb also arrests cells in the G1/S phase in response to DNA damage, suggesting a possible link between Rb and p21 [6, 16, 22]. Loss of expression of p21 is considered to be abnormal [6, 16, 33, 34]. Loss of p21 expression has been shown to be a predictor of UC progression, tumor recurrence and decreased overall survival [6, 8, 15, 16, 33, 34]. The p21/WAF1 gene, itself, is not a target for mutations [35]. A p21-negative phenotype likely represents the existence of a nonfunctional, mutated p53 imparting an aggressive clinical course [25].

The Mdm2 proto-oncogene, encoded on chromosome 12q14.3–q15, is also an integral part of the p53 pathway. Mdm2 is involved in an autoregulatory feedback loop with p53 and is known to stabilize p53 [6, 8, 36]. p53 upregulates expression of Mdm2. Activated mdm2 then binds to p53 and serves as a negative regulator, inactivating its function by inhibiting its transcriptional activity [6, 16, 36–38]. Mdm2 is amplified in UC and the frequency of nuclear amplification increases with tumor grade and stage. Mdm2-positive tumors are associated with early tumor stage and poor survival [6, 16, 33, 34]. Deregulation of the p53 pathway, associated with overexpression of mdm2 (mdm2-positive) and loss of p21 (p21-negative) phenotypes, influences prognosis and outcome in UC [16]. Lymph node negative patients with p21-negative, p53-mutated, mdm2-positive tumors show a greater recurrence and lower survival rate than those with p21-positive, p53-negative, mdm2-negative tumors, independent of tumor grade or pathologic stage [6, 8, 16]. Studies have shown that p21 mutations and mdm2 amplification, by themselves, may not be clinically significant. However, in conjunction with mutated p53, it has been shown that p21 and mdm2 can exert a cooperative effect impacting tumor progression and survival [16]. It is postulated that alterations of p53 and mdm2 influence clinical outcome during initial stages of UC, possibly accredited to their inhibition of apoptosis and cell growth. On the other hand, additive effects of other molecular defects, such as lack of p21, are postulated to influence later stages of UC progression [16].

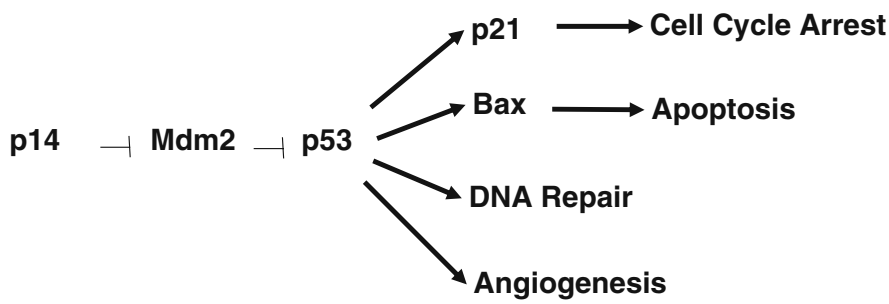


Fig. 20.1 The p53 pathway. Mutations of p53 or components of its pathway, i.e., p21 or Bax, interrupt cellular growth and apoptosis, leading to neoplastic transformation. The p53 gene is regulated through p14 which inhibits Mdm2 function. Mdm2 is known to suppress p53 activity and trigger its degradation. P53 also plays a role in angiogenesis and the transcription of genes involved in DNA repair

Patients with organ-confined invasive bladder cancer who show p53 mutations may benefit from adjuvant chemotherapy containing DNA-damaging agents such as cisplatin since DNA damage to p53-altered urothelial cells results in apoptosis [6, 39]. There has been an ongoing effort in the investigation of molecular and viral vectors that can store functional TP53. Adenoviral vectors containing a functional wild-type TP53 gene have inhibited tumor growth in bladder cancer cell lines. Initial clinical trials, using a combination of cisplatin with TP53 containing adenovirus, have been shown to have a synergistic effect leading to increased apoptosis, thus implying that the combination of adenoviral vector-mediated TP53 delivery with DNA-damaging agents should be further studied in the treatment UC [6].

20.3 Ras-MAPK Signal Transduction Pathway

The key target in the signal transduction pathway in UC is epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) protein, a receptor tyrosine kinase. In invasive UC, there is continuous activation of the Ras-MAPK (mitogen activated protein kinase) pathway, typically through the activation of receptor tyrosine kinases such as EGFR. EGFR expression is associated with a more aggressive clinical course. Under consideration for the targeted therapy for UC are inhibitory monoclonal antibodies raised against the extracellular domains of EGFR. Two members of the EGFR family, Erb-B-1 and Her-2/neu (Erb-B-2), have been the focus of several targeted therapies in UC [6, 9].

MAPK regulates cell proliferation and survival. Binding of epidermal growth factor (EGF) causes activation of the already overexpressed EGFR. The activated EFGR receptor then recruits proteins that activate Ras. This activated Ras protein can then transmit a mitogenic signal via the Ras-MAPK pathway through the MAPK/ERK (extracellular signal-regulated kinase) system.

RASSF1A (Ras association domain family 1), a tumor-suppressor gene, encodes a protein that inhibits the function of activated Ras protein. RASSF1A is commonly highly methylated in bladder cancer, and its increased methylation is associated with increasing tumor stage. The death-associated protein kinase (DAPK), an apoptosis promoter, prevents the transfer of extracellular-signal regulated kinase (ERK) protein from the cytoplasm into nucleus, thus inhibiting signal transduction. It is controversial as to whether ERK methylation level is a prognostic indicator by itself, since several studies have shown varying levels of methylation for the ERK gene in UC [6]. Transfer of ERK into the nucleus from the cytoplasm activates MSK1 (mitogen-activated and stress-activated protein kinase1), a histone H3 kinase, that can relax chromatin, causing it to be more transcriptionally available. This alteration in the chromatin stimulates MYC, a gene that encodes the c-Myc protein, a transcription factor that controls the cell cycle. Correlation has not yet been found between the MYC methylation pattern and clinical stage of UC, and there is conflicting data on the significance of c-Myc protein expression relating to prognosis. C-Myc gene promotes expression of cyclins that complex with cyclin-dependent kinases (CDKs), which in conjunction regulate the RB pathway [6].

20.4 Retinoblastoma Pathway

Nuclear phosphoprotein (Rb) is encoded by the retinoblastoma (Rb) gene located on chromosome 13q14 [6, 8, 9, 23, 24, 40]. Rb is involved in senescence, cell-cycle regulation and apoptosis and is regarded as a key tumor suppressor in UC [6, 8]. Rb is essential in cell cycle regulation typically at the G1/S transition. The active, dephosphorylated form of Rb binds transcription factor E2F, preventing it from transcribing genes required for DNA synthesis during the S phase of the cell cycle [5, 6, 8, 15, 23, 24, 32]. Rb releases E2F after phosphorylation by cyclin-dependent kinases (CDKs). Unbound released E2F can then transcribe genes required for DNA synthesis and activate genes needed for G1 to S cell cycle phase transition [15, 23, 41] (Fig. 20.2).

Both high Rb protein expression and loss of Rb function, even in the presence of detectable nuclear RB protein, have been implicated in high-grade and invasive UC. Gene deletions and dysfunctional mutations of Rb are mainly associated with more aggressive tumor behavior [6, 13, 14, 42, 43]. Deletion of chromosome 13q is the most common cause of RB gene inactivation. Chatterjee, et al. [15], reported significantly increased recurrence ($P < 0.001$) and decreased

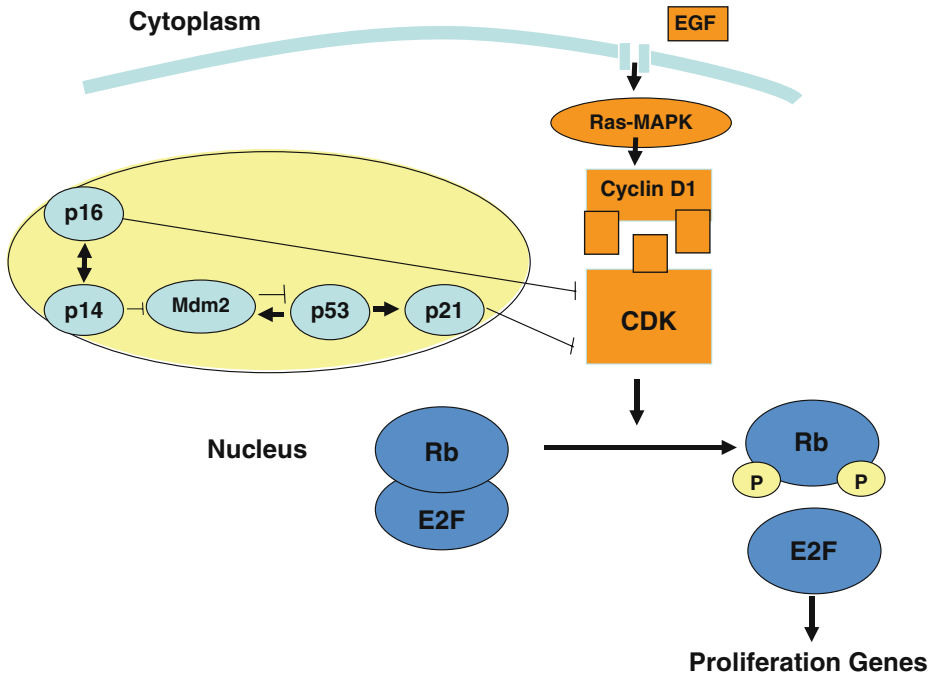


Fig. 20.2 Interactions of the p53 (*yellow*) and retinoblastoma (*blue*) pathways in urothelial carcinogenesis. Extracellular growth signals, i.e., EGF, stimulate the Ras-MAPK signal transduction pathway. The Ras-MAPK pathway then transfers signals to the nucleus, where cyclin/CDK complexes induce phosphorylation of Rb. Phosphorylated Rb releases E2F which then causes transcription of genes that promote proliferation. This process is also regulated by the p53 pathway. EGF, epidermal growth factor; Ras-MAPK, Ras-mitogen activated protein kinase; CDK, cyclin-dependent kinase; Rb, retinoblastoma

overall survival ($P = 0.001$) for UC patients with altered Rb, with estimated 5-year recurrence rates for wide type Rb versus altered Rb as 29% versus 57%, and estimated 5-year survival rates as 67% versus 33%, respectively [15].

Poor prognosis in UC is associated with genetically altered Rb, hyperphosphorylated Rb or increased Rb protein expression. Hyperphosphorylation (inactivation) of Rb and increased Rb protein expression results from decreased $p16^{ink4a}$ expression (encoded on CDKN2a gene located on chromosome 9q21) and/or overexpression of cyclin D1 (Fig. 20.3). Cyclin D1 is crucial positive regulator of the G1-S cell cycle transition and is activated by CDKs [8]. Phosphorylation of Rb promotes release of bound E2F resulting in cell cycle progression. Increased p16 expression, a cyclin dependent kinase inhibitor (CDKI), has been shown to result in hypophosphorylation of Rb, decreased cell proliferation, and decreased levels of Rb expression therefore acting as a negative cell cycle regulator. Hypophosphorated Rb remains complexed to E2F resulting in G1 cell cycle arrest resulting in lack of regulatory control of cell cycle progression [6].

Since hyperphosphorylation of Rb has been demonstrated to be a means of tumor suppressor pathway inactivation in UC, it may be conceivable that hypophosphorylation of the wild-type Rb protein using cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitors (CDKIs), may improve prognosis. Recently, INK4 and KIP, the genes encoding CDKI's, have been identified. Initial experiments using the protein kinase inhibitor staurosporine, which stimulates G_1 and G2 phase arrest in normal urothelium, have shown growth arrest after transfection with retrovirus containing functioning Rb [8]. Currently, CDKIs such as flavopiridol (L86-8275), a semisynthetic flavonoid that is a derivative of an indigenous Indian plant, and UCN-01 (7-hydroxystaurosporine) have been successful in phase I and II clinical trials for the treatment of UC. Flavopiridol directly inhibits cyclin dependent kinases, and additionally decreases cyclin D1 levels which may be elevated in UC [6, 8].

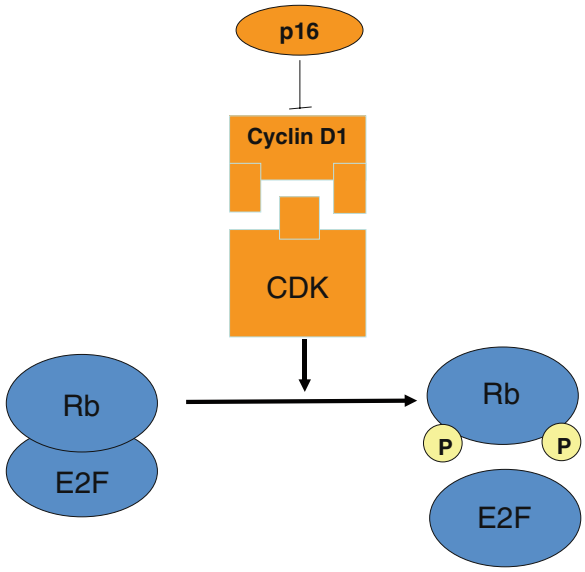


Fig. 20.3 The Rb pathway. Active dephosphorylated Rb binds transcription factor E2F. Rb releases E2F after phosphorylation by CDKs. Unbound released E2F can then transcribe genes required for DNA synthesis and activate genes necessary for G1 to S cell cycle phase transition. Rb, retinoblastoma; E2F, transcriptional factor; CDK, cyclin dependent kinases

20.5 Combined Effects of p53, p21 and Rb

Various studies have proposed that a combination of complementary markers such as p53, Rb and cyclin dependent kinase inhibitors such as p21 and p16 may give a more accurate prediction of outcome than a single marker [6, 12–15, 19–22]. In the absence of molecular alterations of all markers, patients show extremely low recurrence rates and increased survival. A significant number of patients with alterations in one of the markers show increased recurrence and decreased survival, [12–15, 19–22]. However, alterations in two or three markers cause a significant reduction in survival and increase in recurrence. The majority of patients with all three markers altered show recurrence and die within 5 years. Mitra et al. reported on the 5 year survival and recurrence rates of patients with no altered markers as 70 and 23% respectively, in contrast to patients with all three markers altered as 8 and 93% respectively [6, 8]. Thus, analysis of all markers p53, p21 and pRb provides additive prognostic data than of a single marker [15].

Chatterjee et al. reported on the 5-year recurrence rates in patients with UC who exhibit three altered markers, two altered markers, one altered marker and no altered markers as follows: 23, 32, 57, and 93%, respectively ($P < 0.001$). The 5-year survival rates were reported as 70, 58, 33, and 8%, respectively ($P < 0.001$). When stratified by stage, there remained a significant association of combined altered marker expression with recurrence rates and overall survival [6, 9, 15]. Alterations in two or more markers exert the greatest impact on recurrence and disease free survival than one marker which has a lessor effect. In patients whose tumors are altered in all three markers, more than 90% show tumor recurrence, and only 8% of survived at 5 years [15]. Therefore, multiple individual molecular alterations act synergistically in multiple interacting molecular pathways in bladder carcinogenesis and progression [6, 9, 15, 19, 21, 22].

20.6 Angiogenesis

Tumor angiogenesis has been shown to an independent prognostic factor in UC, showing significant association with disease-free and overall survival. VEGF (vascular endothelial growth factor), a pro-angiogenic factor, is a main molecule in the tumor angiogenesis pathway. VEGF is associated with early recurrence and progression to invasive tumor. High serum VEGF levels are associated with high stage, high grade, vascular invasion, and poor disease-free survival. VEGF stimulates the formation of urokinase-type plasminogen activator, which degrades extracellular matrix, aiding endothelial cell migration and invasion. Therapeutic agents have been designed against pro-angiogenic factors that induce endothelial cell apoptosis and inhibit tumor growth [6].

The p53 protein also plays an important role in tumor angiogenesis. The p53 has been reported to inhibit angiogenesis by upregulating thrombospondin-1 (TSP-1), a potent angiogenesis inhibitor. The p53 molecular alterations are associated with low TSP-1 expression and increased tumor angiogenesis. Decreased TSP-1 levels are associated with increased recurrence and reduced overall survival rates in UC. Thus, tumor angiogenesis is a complex interaction of stimulatory and inhibitory molecules [6].

20.7 DNA Methylation

DNA methylation in the promoter regions of tumor suppressor genes is an important mechanism of transcriptional suppression in UC. DNA methylation inhibits tumor suppressor gene expression by suppressing transcription through modifications in chromatin structure [4, 6]. It involves adding a methyl group to the cytosine ring of CpG dinucleotide. Specific proteins attached to methylated DNA trigger compounds containing histone deacetylases. Histone deacytylation results in chromatin compression and thus transcriptional inhibition. Many tumor suppressor genes contain CpG dinucleotides and demonstrate evidence of DNA methylation. Aberrant promoter hypermethylation has been shown to be an early event in UC carcinogenesis and significantly associated with advanced stage, tumor progression, tumor recurrence, and increased mortality compared to tumors without methylation. Targeting DNA hypermethylation in UC by novel demethylating agents has been suggested to be a critical therapeutic approach. Demethylating agents can be used to reverse the hypermethylation of tumor suppressor gene promoters in UC, thus making these genes functionally active [4, 6].

20.8 Conclusion

In UC, carcinogenesis and tumor progression result from a variety of genetic mutations such as oncogene activation, gene deletions and inactivation of tumor suppressor genes affecting the signal transduction and cell cycle pathways [15, 17, 44–46]. Detecting these genetic mutations may possibly help predict clinical outcome, recurrence rate, survival and therapeutic response in treating individual patients [15]. The mechanisms involved in the control of Ras-MAPK signal transduction (cyclin-dependent kinase and their inhibitors), p53 cell cycle regulation, Rb (retinoblastoma) and angiogenesis pathways are currently implicated in the carcinogenesis of aggressive flat and invasive bladder carcinomas. Mutations in tumor suppressor genes such as p53 and Rb are associated with UC tumor progression [11–14, 19–21, 47, 48]. Within the past several years, components of these pathways have been shown to be important prognostic and therapeutic response indicators and probable therapeutic targets. No single marker has been shown to be exclusively responsible for disease outcome since bladder cancer develops along multiple molecular pathways. Abnormal nuclear accumulations of p53-mdm2, loss of p21 expression, and alterations of Rb (either absent Rb or overexpressed Rb) are reported to have synergistic effects promoting UC progression than a single marker alone [15, 19, 21].

Interactions between the molecular pathways involved in UC will allow clinicians to identify key molecules that can be targeted therapeutically based on molecular alterations that are biologically and prognostically important. The ultimate goal is to elucidate targeted specific therapies to which the tumor is most and least likely to respond to, thereby individualizing treatment. Currently, investigators are studying numerous combinations of genes controlling cell cycle, apoptosis, angiogenesis, transcription, signal transduction and cell growth in order to develop new molecular targets which may enhance pathological staging, correlation with prognosis, therapeutic response, and overall clinical outcome in UC. Novel therapeutic agents, including viral vectors carrying wild-type genes, small molecule inhibitors and monoclonal antibodies are under development targeted to specific pathways and molecules. Clinical trials are being conducted on many of these agents. Therapeutic use of combined markers targeting multiple pathways may lead to synergistic tumor-suppressing effects, thus improving response to therapy.

References

1. Mitra AP, Datar RH, Cote RJ. Molecular staging of bladder cancer. BJU International 2005;96:7–12.
2. Barboro P, Rubagotti A, Orecchia P, Spina B, Truini M, Repaci E, Carmignani G, Romagnoli A, Introini C, Boccardo F, Canemolia B, Balbi C. Differential proteomic analysis of nuclear matrix in muscle-invasive bladder cancer: potential to improve diagnosis and prognosis. Cell Oncol 2008; 30(1):13–26.
3. American Cancer Society. Cancer Facts and Figures 2008. Atlanta: American Cancer Society; 2008.
4. Kim W-J and Bae S-C. Molecular biomarkers in urothelial bladder cancer. Cancer Sci 2008; 99(4):646–52.
5. Ehdaie B and Theodorescu D. Predicting tumor outcomes in urothelial bladder carcinoma: turning pathways into clinical biomarkers of prognosis. Expert Rev Anticancer Ther 2008; 8(7):1103–10.
6. Mitra AP, Datar RH, Cote RJ. Molecular pathways in invasive bladder cancer: new insights into mechanisms,

progression, and target identification. J Clin Oncol 2006; 24(35):5552–64.
7. Sanchez-Carbayo M and Cordon-Cardo C. Molecular alterations associated with bladder cancer progression. Semin Oncol 2007; 34(2):75–84.
8. Mitra AP, Birkhahn M, Cote JR. p53 and retinoblastoma pathways in bladder cancer. World J Urol 2007; 25(6): 563–71.
9. Spiess PE and Czerniak B. Dual-track pathway of bladder carcinogenesis: practical implications. Arch Pathol Lab Med 2006; 130(6):844–52.
10. Sugano K and Kakizoe T. Genetic alterations in bladder cancer and their clinical applications in molecular tumor staging. Nat Clin Pract Urol 2006; 3(12):642–52.
11. Esrig D, Elmajian D, Groshen S, Freeman JA, Stein JP, Chen S-C, Nichols PW, Skinner DG, Jones PA, Cote RJ. Accumulation of nuclear p53 and tumor progression in bladder cancer. New Engl J Med 1994; 331: 1259–64.
12. Sarkis AS, Dalbagni G, Cordon-Cardo C, Zhang ZF, Sheinfeld J, Fair WR, Herr HW, Reuter VE. Nuclear overexpression of p53 protein in transitional cell bladder carcinoma: a marker for disease progression. J Natl Cancer Inst 1993; 85(1):53–9.
13. Cordon-Cardo C, Wartinger D, Petrylak D, Dalbagni G, Fair WR, Fuks Z, Reuter VE. Altered expression of the retinoblastoma gene product: Prognostic indicator in bladder cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 1992;84:1251–6.
14. Logothetis CJ, Xu HJ, Ro JY, Hu S-X, Sahin A, Ordonez N, Benedict WF. Altered expression of retinoblastoma protein and known prognostic variables in locally advanced bladder cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 1992; 84:1256–61.
15. Chatterjee SJ, Datar R, Youssefzadeh D, George B, Goebell PJ, Stein JP, Young L, Shi S-R, Gee C, Groshen S, Skinner DG, Cote RJ. Combined effects of p53, p21, and pRb expression in the progression of bladder transitional cell carcinoma. J Clinical Oncol 2004; 22(6):1007–13.
16. Lu M-L, Wikman F, Orntoft TF, Charytonowicz E, Rabbani F, Zhang Z, Dalbagni G, Pohar KS, Yu G, Cordon-Cardo C. Impact of alterations affecting the p53 pathway in bladder cancer on clinical outcome, assessed by conventional and array-based methods. Clin Cancer Res 2002; 8: 171–9.
17. Spruck CH 3rd, Ohneseit PF, Gonzalez-Zulucta M, Esrig D, Miyao N, Tsai YC, Lerner SP, Schmutte C, Yang AS, Cote R, Dubeau L, Nichols PW, Hermann GG, Steven K, Horn T, Skinner DG, Johns PA. Two molecular pathways to transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder. Cancer Res 1994;54:784–8.
18. Cordon-Cardo C. p53 and RB: simple interesting correlates or tumor markers of critical predictive nature? J Clin Oncol 2004; 22(6):975–7.
19. Cote RF, Dunn MD, Catterjee SJ, Stein JP, Shi S-R, Tran Q-C, Hu SX, Xu HJ, Groshen S, Taylor CR, Skinner DG, Benedict WF. Elevated and absent pRb expression is associated with bladder cancer progression and has cooperative effects with p53. Cancer Res 1998; 58:1090–4.
20. Cordon-Cardo C, Zhang Z-F, Dalbagni G, Brobnjak M, Charytonowicz E, Hu S-X, Xu H-J, Reuter VE, Benedict WF. Cooperative effects of p53 and pRB alterations in primary superficial bladder tumors. Cancer Res 1997;57:1217–21.
21. Stein JP, Ginsberg DA, Grossfeld GD, Chatterjee SJ, Esrig D, Dickinson MG, Groshen S, Taylor CR, Jones PA, Skinner DG, Cote RJ. Effects of p21WAF1/CIP1 expression on tumor progression in bladder cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 1998; 90(14):1072–9.
22. Shariat SF, Tokunaga H, Zhou J, Kim J, Ayala GE, Benedict WF, Lerner SP. P53, p21, pRB, and p16 expression predict clinical outcome in cystectomy with bladder cancer. J Clin Oncol 2004;22(6):1014–24.
23. Mitra AP, Lin H, Datar RH, Cote RJ. Molecular biology of bladder cancer: prognostic and clinical implications. Clin Genitourin Cancer 2006 5(1):67–77.
24. Williams SG and Stein JP. Molecular pathways in bladder cancer. Urol Res 2004; 32(6): 373–85.
25. Presti JC, Reuter VE, Galan T, Fair WR, Cordon-Cardo C. Molecular genetic alterations in superficial and locally advanced human bladder cancer. Cancer Res 1991; 51:5405–9.
26. Dalbagni G, Presti J, Reuter V, Fair WR, Cordon-Cardo C. Genetic alterations in bladder cancer. Lancet 1993;324:469–71.
27. Dalbagni G, Presti JC, Reuter VE, Zhang ZF, Sarkis AS, Fair WR, Cordon-Cardo C. Molecular genetic alterations of chromosome 17 and p53 nuclear overexpression in human bladder cancer. Diagn Mol Pathol 1993;2(1):4–13.
28. Sarkis A, Zhang Z, Cordon-Cardo C, Dalbagni G, Sheinfeld J, Fair WR, Herr H, Reuter VE. P53 nuclear overexpression and disease progression in Ta bladder carcinoma. Int J Oncol 1993;3:355–60.
29. Xiong Y, Hannon GJ, Zhang H, Casso D, Kobayshi R, Beach D. p21 is a universal inhibitor of cyclin kinases. Nature 1993; 366:701–4.
30. El-Deiry WS, Tokino T, Velculescu VE, Levy DB, Parsons R, Trent JM, Lin D, Mercer WE, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B. WAF1, a potential mediator of p53 tumor suppression. Cell 1993; 75:817–25.
31. Cordon-Cardo C. Mutations of cell cycle regulators: biological and clinical implication for human neoplasia. Am J Pathol 1995; 147:545–60.
32. Weinberg RA. The retinoblastoma protein and cell cycle control. Cell 1995; 81:323–30.
33. Stein JP, Ginsberg DA, Grossfeld GD, Chatterjee SJ, Esrig D, Dickinson MG, Groshen S, Taylor CR, Jones PA, Skinner DG, Cote RJ. Effect of $^{p21\ WAF1/CIP1}$ expression on tumor progression in bladder cancer. J Natl Cancer Instit 1998;90(14):1072–9.
34. Lianes P, Charytonowicz E, Cordon-Cardo C, Fradet Y, Grossman HB, Hemstreet GP, Waldman FM, Chew D, Wheeless LL, Faraggi D and the National Cancer Institute Bladder Tumor Marker Network. Biomarker study of primary nonmetastatic versus metastatic invasive bladder cancer. Clin Cancer Res 1998;4:1267–71.
35. Lacombe L, Orlow I, Silver D, Gerald W, Fair WR, Reuter VE, Cordon- Cardo C. Analysis of p21 WAF1/CIP1 in primary bladder tumors. Oncol Res 1997;8:409–14.
36. Chen J, Marechal V, Levine AJ. Mapping of the p53 and mdm-2 interaction domains. Mol Cell Biol 1993;13(7):4107–14.
37. Momand J, Zambetti GP, Olson DC, George D, Levine AJ. The mdm-2 oncogene product forms a complex with the p53 protein and inhibits p53- mediated transactivation. Cell 1992;69(7):1237–45.

38. Wu X, Bayle H, Olson D, Levine AJ. The p53-mdm-2 autoregulatory feedback loop. Genes Develop 1993;7:1126–32.
39. Cote RJ, Esrig D, Groshen S, Jones PA, Skinner DG. P53 and treatment of bladder cancer. Nature 1997;385:123–5.
40. Syrigos KN, Karapanagiotou E, Harrington KJ. The clinical significance of molecular markers to bladder cancer. Hybrid Hybridomics 2004; 23(6):335–42.
41. Yin M, Bastacky S, Parwani A, McHale T, Dhir R. p16ink4 immunoreactivity is a reliable marker for urothelial carcinoma in situ. Hum Pathol 2008; 39(4):527–35.
42. Cairns P, Proctor AJ, Knowles MA. Loss of heterozygosity at the RB locus is frequent and correlates with muscle invasion in bladder carcinoma. Oncogene 1991; 6: 2305–9.
43. Miyamoto H, Shuin T, Torigoe S, Iwasaki Y, Kubota Y. Retinoblastoma gene mutations in primary human bladder cancer. Br J Cancer 1995;71:831–5.
44. Weinberg RA. How cancer arises. Sci Am 1996;275(3): 62–70.
45. Cavanee WK, White RL. The genetic basis of cancer. Sci Am 1995;272:72–9.
46. Reznikoff CA, Belair CD, Yeager TR, Savelieva E, Blelloch RH, Puthenveettil JA, Cuthill S. A molecular genetic model of human bladder cancer pathogenesis. Semin Oncol 1996; 23(5):571–84.
47. Benedict WF, Lerner SP, Zhou J, Shen X, Tokunaga H, Czerniak B. Level of retinoblastoma protein expression correlates with p16 (MTS- 1/INK4A/CDKN2) status in bladder cancer. Oncogene 1999;18:1197–203.
48. Grossman HB, Liebert M, Antelo M, Dinney CPN, Hu S-X, Palmer JL, Benedict WF. P53 and RB expression predict progression in T1 bladder cancer. Clin Cancer Res 1998; 4:829–34.

Chapter 21

Mechanisms of Carcinogenesis in Prostate Cancer

Jose J. Correa and Julio Pow-Sang

Contents

21.1 Introduction

Prostate cancer (Pc) is the most common non-cutaneous, malignant neoplasm in men in Western countries. The estimated new cases in 2007 are 218.890 and there will be 27.050 deaths by this disease, in the same year, in the United States [1]. It is the fourth most common male malignant neoplasm world wide, with an incidence variation between countries and ethnic populations. The lowest incidence is reported in Asia (1.9 cases per 100.000/year in Tianjin, China) and the highest in North America and Scandinavia (272 cases per 100.000/year in African Americans) [2].

Cancer represents the dysregulation of cell growth, which is normally tightly controlled. In normal, non-cancerous cells, the cell cycle integrates the numerous growth-regulating signals acting on the cell and determines when the cell should undergo division. In cancerous cells, the process of cell division is disrupted and unregulated, resulting in cell proliferation and tumor growth.

The development of cancer is a complex process that involves genetic and biochemical steps. The first event in carcinogenesis is termed "initiation", in which a genetic change occurs and the cell gains a malignant potential. The second event, "promotion," is an additional genetic change that is irreversible and gives abnormal cell growth and "progression" of the tumor. The causes of these events appear to be multifactoral: genetic predisposition, environmental factors. Genes and environment interact to cause the cancer.

21.1.1 Prostate Cancer Subtypes

We can divide Pc in subtypes [3].

21.1.1.1 Hereditary (Genetic Material Damage): Familial, Racial

In the hereditary type usually the age of onset is younger than 55 years of age and there are one or more

J. Pow-Sang (✉)
Moffitt Cancer Center, Tampa, FL, USA
e-mail: Julio.Powsang@moffitt.org

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_21,

first-degree relatives with the diagnosis. Forty percent of patients younger than 55 years have the hereditary type compared with nine percent of patients at 85 years old [4].

21.1.1.2 Sporadic (Genetic Material Damage): Diet, Age, Occupation

Sporadic types constitute approximately 85% of cases with, 15% being hereditary.

Despite the recognition of various events during prostate cancer, such as deregulation of receptors, oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes, the molecular events involved in neoplastic initiation and progression are poorly understood. Also there are other unsolved questions about prostate cancer:

- Why is it so common?
- Why the selectivity to this organ, but less common to organs in the vicinity (e.g., Seminal vesicles or bulbourethral gland)?
- Why the geographic variation (less common in Asian countries)?
- Why the zonal predilection in the prostate (more common in peripheral zone)?
- Why the racial differences (more common in African Americans)?

Given the heterogeneity of prostate cancers a unifying etiology for the disease may not exist, but different mechanisms interact to produce the disease.

In this chapter we are going to discuss some of the genetic and molecular theories involved in prostate carcinogenesis.

21.2 Genetics

Pc is more associated with a strong hereditary component than any other type of cancer in humans (different studies in twins confirm this issue) [5, 6]. According to the study by Steinberg et al., men with a family history of prostate cancer are at an increased risk of having the disease. This risk increases with the number of first degree relatives with Pc: with one relative, the risk increases by 2; with two, by 5; and with three, by 11 [7]. Different germline prostate cancer susceptibility genes and somatic genome alterations have been identified. Several loci are likely to have dominant susceptibility genes, suggesting that it is a genetically heterogeneous disease. The chromosomal region 1q25–25 is called the hereditary prostate cancer gene (HPC1 gene) and is one of the most investigated [8]. The HPC1 locus was the first prostate-cancer locus to be reported and has been found to predict risk of prostate cancer in families with a high frequency of the disease [9].

21.2.1 RNASEL

The ribonuclease L gene (RNASEL) encodes a widely expressed latent endoribonuclease that is involved in interferon inducible RNA degradation. It has been linked to HPC1. HPC1 encodes the RNASEL enzyme [10]. The RNASEL/HPC1 gene has proapoptoic activity and it has a role in the mediation of the antiviral and proapoptoic effect induced by interferon [11]. When activated by interferon, cells containing a functional RNASEL/HPC1 gene produce an enzyme that degrades single stranded RNA, leading to apoptosis. This pathway is thought to be one method that cells utilize to combat viral infections [12]. In research on mice with homozygous deletion in the RNASEL gene, they display diminished anti-viral activity in response to interferon alpha [13]. This may lead to infectious agent mediated damage and persistent infection, chronic inflammation and histologic change in the prostatic epithelium that we will discuss later in this chapter and that potentially ends in Pc.

21.2.2 MSR1

The macrophage-scavenger receptor 1 (MSR1) gene is located on 8p22, an area associated with frequent allelic loss in prostate cancer. Mutations in the gene have been reported in some families with hereditary prostate cancer [14]. Studies, in mice deficient in MSR, show that they are highly susceptible to infection by Listeria monocytogenes, Staphylococcus aureus, Escherichia coli and HSV1 [15]. Other studies have not found any association between MSR1 mutations and prostate cancer risk [16]. MSR1 is a similar mechanism to RNASEL, with the alteration causing inadequate ability to fight infections leading to persistent infection and inflammation.

21.3 Inflammation and Prostate Cancer

Approximately twenty percent of all human cancers, in adults, result from chronic inflammatory states or recurrent inflammation [17–19]. The potential causes of inflammation are diverse, including infectious diseases (e.g., Prostatitis) and environmental exposure.

Different infectious diseases can compromise the prostate, including bacteria (sexually and non-sexually transmitted diseases), viruses such as Human papillomavirus (HPV), cytomegalovirus (CMV), human herpes virus (HHV), and human herpes simplex virus type 2 (HSV2). Not all of them produce inflammation of the prostate, and it is still unknown if there is a role of the different pathogens that can infect the prostate in the development of Pc [20, 21].

Apparently, it is not the infection or environmental exposure, per se, that derives in Pc, but the response to these events that induces the inflammatory cells to generate oxidative damage to the DNA in the epithelial cells or to initiate a free-radical chain reaction that finally will create the environment to produce Pc. The "Injury and regeneration" hypothesis by De Marzo, Nelson et al., suggests that repeated injury to the prostate epithelium by oxidative or nitrosative damage from inflammatory cells, in response to pathogens or autoimmune disease from direct injury from circulating carcinogens and toxins derived from the diet or from urine reflux to the prostate, causes morphological change called proliferative inflammatory atrophy (PIA). The association between PIA and chronic inflammation suggests that the lesions, caused by regenerative proliferation of the epithelial cells in response to injury caused by inflammatory oxidants and the hyperproliferative state, may lead to cancer. They have demonstrated transition between areas of PIA with Prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia (PIN) [22–24]. Proliferative inflammatory atrophy (PIA) areas have epithelial cells that fail to differentiate into columnar secretory cells, and are usually located in the peripheral area of the prostate and often near PIN or cancer areas [25].

21.3.1 Proliferative Inflammatory Atrophy (PIA)

Prostate atrophy can occur in two forms: diffuse and focal. The diffuse form results from decreased levels of androgens and involves the entire prostate. The focal form is not related to decreased androgens and occurs in patches of atrophic epithelium surrounded by normal epithelium. They are also located mainly in the prostatic peripheral zone [26].

An interesting article by Putzi and De Marzo et al., suggested that there are morphologic transitions within the same acinar/duct unit between high-grade prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia (HGPIN) and PIA, which occur frequently. This finding supports a model in which the proliferative epithelium in PIA may progress to HGPIN [27].

In a recent European study by Tomas et al., analyzing different types of atrophy in normal of benign hyperplastic prostatic tissue and in Pc tissue, they found an association between PIA and Pc. PIA was significantly more frequent in prostates with carcinoma (1.63 vs 1.27 atrophic lesions per slide) ($p < 0.001$), whereas Proliferative Atrophy (PA) displayed an increased frequency in BPH (2.28 vs 0.76 atrophic lesions per slide) ($p < 0.001$) [28].

Also, molecular pathways involved in prostate cancer have been shown to be altered in PIA lesions:

21.3.2 GSTP1 (π Class Gluthatione S-Transferase Gene)

GSTP1 is a gene that encodes an enzyme that acts as a reactive oxygen species scavenger, and as a carcinogen detoxifier [29]. GSTP1 is expressed in basal cells; but under environmental stress may be expressed by benign luminal or columnar cells, a finding of the proliferative inflammatory atrophy (PIA) [23]. When there is hypermetilation of the cytosine residues in the CpG islands, the protective effect of the GSTP1 is lost and that change prevents the transcription of GSTP1. The CpG island hypermetilation of sequences in the promoter region of the GSTP1 gene is a common finding in prostate cancer cells [29, 30]. Cells with defective GSTP1 genes become vulnerable to oxidants that cause genomic damage and change in the epithelium, with transforming potential into prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia (PIN) and cancer.

Interestingly, in invitro studies, the heterocyclic amines produced by charred protein products such as meat, specifically 2-amino-1-methyl-6-phenylimidazol (4, 5-b) pyridine (PhIP), have shown that it produces changes in certain cancer cell lines.

In the prostate cancer cell-line LNCaP, modified to express GSTP1 when exposed to PhIP, expresses less GSTP1 than the unexposed cells [31]. Others have found that PhIP induce inflammation and atrophy before inducing PIN and cancer [32].

21.3.3 NKX3.1

NKX3.1 is located at 8p21, encodes a prostate-specific homebox gene that is necessary for normal prostate development, and represses PSA gene transcription [33]. In mice research, NKX3.1 homozygous or heterozygous deletion produces PIN like lesions [34]. In humans, the loss has also been detected in PIN lesions and in cancer lesions [35]. However, it is not clear that NKX3.1 is a somatic target for inactivation during prostate carcinogenesis. The reason is that somatic mutations have been detected in one of the alleles in prostate cancer cells, but not in both alleles [36]. However, loss of NKX3.1 expression in Pc has been reported when there is cancer progression (e.g., High grade Pc, androgen independent metastases) [37].

As mentioned above, some molecular pathways involved in prostate cancer are also altered in PIA lesions. The gene for phosphatase and tensin homologue (PTEN) is a tumor suppressor gene, suppressing cell proliferation and increasing apoptosis. It is present in normal prostatic cells and PIN cells, but is reduced in high grade Pc. As in NKX3.1, somatic allelic losses are common in prostate cancer cells, but the remaining allele are not frequently affected. More mutations are found in metastatic lesions.

21.3.4 Additional Genes

Other genes that have been identified as being linked to prostate cancer are:

21.3.4.1 OOG1

This gene is located in 3p26.2 and works in DNA repair, caused by oxidative damage and polymorphisms at this locus, and has been associated with increased risk of prostate cancer [38].

21.3.4.2 CHECK2

This gene, located in 22q12.1, is also linked to DNA repair. It prevents DNA replication when defective [39].

21.3.4.3 BRCA2

BRCA2, located in 13q12.3, is also linked to DNA repair. According to the inflammation model of prostate carcinogenesis, the oxidative stress caused by inflammation is the first step in causing mutations and DNA damage; and, if the defense mechanisms against the oxidative stress are defective by different causes (inherited or acquired alterations), prostate cancer may develop.

21.4 Cyclooxygenase 2(COX-2) Pathway and Pc Relation

Another inflammatory pathway that has been implicated in Pc is the production of prostaglandins; in this pathway the Cyclooxygenase (COX) enzyme converts arachidonic acid to prostaglandin endoperoxide synthase (PGG2), an intermediate prostaglandin [40]. Two isoforms of COX have been identified. COX1 is a constitutive enzyme involved in "protective mechanisms:" renal blood flow, platelet aggregation, water re-absorption, mucosa protection, and acid secretion [41].

The COX2, on the other hand, is an inducible and pro-inflammatory (mediates acute and chronic inflammation) enzyme that can be induced by cytokines, growth factors, mitogens and tumor promoters. The relation of COX2 to different types of cancer is based on studies that demonstrate that overexpression of COX2 leads to cancer in different tissues [42, 43]. In prostate tissue, specifically different studies have demonstrated how high levels of COX2 are found in prostate cancer cells [44, 45].

Other studies have even found low or no expression of COX2 in benign prostatic tissue; and inconsistently high expression, not in PIN and malignant prostatic tissues, but in prostatic inflammation and PIA areas, is up regulated [46, 47]. This can be related to the malignant

potential of the inflammation theory and PIA areas exposed by De Marzo et al. as discussed previously.

Epidemiological studies have found a diminished risk of prostate cancer, associated with the use of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), which suggest that blocking the inflammation pathway controlled by COX2 may prevent the Pc development [48–51]. In one in vitro study using two prostate cancer cell lines PC3 and LNCaP, Celecoxib (a selective COX-2 inhibitor) inhibited the cell growth by blocking the cell cycle in G1 stage and reducing DNA synthesis. With the highest dose, there was also a 52% decrease in tumor volume and a 50% decrease in cell proliferation and microvessel density [52].

But, because of cardiovascular risk associated with COX-2 inhibitors [53–56], the clinical studies using this agent to prevent Pc or other type of tumors were terminated early [57].

21.5 Hormonal Related Theories of Prostate Carcinogenesis

The precise role of androgens in the etiology of human prostate cancer is unclear, but different epidemiological data have related serum androgen levels and an increased prostate cancer incidence in some populations. African Americans have higher levels of total serum testosterone than the Japanese population [58]. Also, men with 5-alpha reductase (5-AR) deficiency do not develop prostate cancer [59]; and prostate cancer is rare in men castrated before puberty or early in adulthood. According to epidemiological studies, direct or indirect influences of androgens can have a role in the transformation of normal prostatic tissue in cancer. Despite some findings, the precise role of androgens in Pc development is unclear. Some genes having been involved:

21.5.1 Androgen Receptor Gene (AR)

AR is part of the superfamily of nuclear hormone receptors, which are ligand inducible regulators of gene expression. AR is located on the long arm of the X chromosome.

The AR functions as a ligand activated transcription factor by inducing the expression of numerous mitotic gene products which are important signaling elements for the normal and abnormal prostate development. Also, AR integrates cellular signals by interacting with central signal transduction pathways [60, 61].

Different polymorphisms of the AR gene have been identified. One of the most studied ones is the exon 1 of the AR gene, where a highly conserved CAG (glutamine) repeat exists. The length of this CAG repeat is variable depending on the population studied, with the longest one in Asian Americans (22.4) and the shortest in African Americans (20.1) [62, 63]. AR, containing shorter repeats, have higher transactivating potentials, which can explain the differences in prostate cancer incidence between races: according to epidemiological studies, African Americans have a relatively high risk of prostate cancer and Asians have a relatively low risk. Some studies have found that short CAG repeats are associated with an increased risk of prostate cancer [64–66]. Other studies have failed to demonstrate this association [67–69]. The variability of results between studies can be explained by another unidentified genetic change, as well as potential confounding variables that can be present such as the diets or androgen levels between populations.

21.5.2 Cytochrome P-450c17 (CYP17) Gene

This gene is located on chromosome 10 and is involved in the synthesis of androgens. It encodes the cytochrome p450c17-alpha that mediates 17-alpha hydroxylase and 17–20-lyase activities in the testosterone biosynthesis in gonads and adrenals, being the last step in the production of testosterone [70].

A T-to-C polymorphism in the 5′ promoter region of the CYP17 gene that encodes the cytochrome P450c17-alpha has been implicated as a risk factor for prostate cancer. Different studies have found a correlation between the T-to-C polymorphism and increased prostate cancer risk [71, 72]. Others found no association [73, 74]. The meta-analysis by C. Ntais, A. Polycarpou, et al. suggests that the CYP17 polymorphism is unlikely to considerably increase the risk of sporadic prostate cancer on a wide population basis,

and specifically in European descent patients; but they also consider that it is possible that the polymorphism may be important in subjects of African descent [73].

21.5.3 5-Alpha-Reductase Type II (SRD5A2) Gene

There are two known 5-alpha reductase isoenzymes: 5-alpha reductase-1 and 2. Type 1 is present in low levels in different tissues, and type 2 is found in androgen sensitive cells of the skin and prostate.

The SRD5A2 gene codes for the SRD5A2 protein. This protein converts testosterone to the more active form, dihydrotestosterone. A polymorphism that is associated with prostate cancer is the A49T variant (alanine by threonine at codon 49). This variant increases concentrations of SRD5A2 by five times and, according to some studies, increases the risk of prostate cancer especially in African Americans and Hispanics, also giving a poor prognosis [75, 76].

In theory, decreasing the androgenic stimulation of prostate cells may lower the probability for entering in a carcinogenic process, but it has been difficult to test this hypothesis.

In the Prostate Cancer Prevention Trial, finasteride a 5-alpha reductase inhibitor was compared to a placebo in 18,000 healthy men treated for 7 years, either with a placebo or finasteride. Prostate biopsy was performed at the end of the trial, for prostate specific antigen changes (PSA changes), or for suspicious rectal examination. At the end of the study, 24.4% of men who received placebo were diagnosed with Pc as compared with 18.4% who received Finasteride: a 25% reduction in diagnosis. The risk of being diagnosed with higher grade Pc was increased in the finasteride group, 37% with a Gleason score of 7 or higher as compared to 22.2% in the placebo group. When analyzing the group of patients who had a full seven years of treatment with finasteride, there was essentially no difference in the number of high grade tumors: 89 with placebo and 92 with finasteride. Patients with the shortest exposure to finasteride (between 1 and 7 years), have the greatest risk of high grade disease than the placebo treated group [76]. The hypothesis that finasteride really reduces the numbers of low grade prostate cancer and/or unmasks the high grade ones is under discussion.

There is another trial under development that compares dutasteride, another 5-alpha-reductase inhibitor, with a placebo. This is a 4-year, phase III, placebo controlled study to determine whether 0.5 mg dutasteride daily decreases the risk of biopsy detectable prostate cancer. All men underwent biopsy before study entry, allowing review of the relationship between histological prostate inflammation and prostatitis symptoms. Dutasteride blocks both isoforms of 5-alpha-reductase [77].

21.5.4 Estrogens and Prostate Cancer

Estrogens also have been implicated in prostate carcinogenesis. The two main estrogen receptors (ER): alpha (ER-α) and Beta (ER-β) are expressed in the adult human prostate. ER-β is mostly localized to the basal epithelial compartment and, to a much lesser extent, in stromal cells and ER-α predominantly in the stromal compartment. Also, aromatase, the enzyme required for the metabolism of androgens to estrogen, is expressed in the stroma of the normal prostate [78, 79]. As men get older, the androgen to estrogen ratio decreases: testosterone decreases, while estrogens (estradiol 17-β) maintain a sustained level suggesting that estrogens may have a role in prostate carcinogenesis.

In animal models, using Noble rats and giving testosterone and estradiol results in high incidence of adenocarcinomas, the authors in these studies suggest that androgen supported estrogen enhanced stimulation of cell proliferation may be required for dysplasic lesions to develop [80]. Also, when androgens and estrogens were administered independently they could not produce malignancy [80–82].

The estrogen effect in the prostate is dual: ER-α mediates the "adverse" effects or promotes abnormal proliferation, while ER-β may be protective against abnormal proliferation of epithelial cells. In studies using knockout mice for ER-β receptor, they develop prostate hyperplasia; while ER-α knockout mice do not [83]. Also, some studies have shown that ER-β expression is reduced or lost in cancer compared to benign tissues, while ER-α persists in malignant tissues [84, 85]. According to these studies, the stimulation of the ER-α promotes aberrant proliferation, inflammation and cancer, while ER-β

stimulation prevents hypertrophy and hyperplasia [86]. With regard to ER-β stimulation, studies show that consumption of genistein and other phytoestrogens apparently act as ER-β agonists [87, 88]. Also, because of the activity of ER-α, there is a rationale for the use of ER-α-specific antagonists in the chemoprevention of Pc [89].

As mentioned above, estrogen can also cause inflammation of the prostate gland which links this hypothesis to the one on inflammation, explained previously. In the studies by Bianco et al., using hypogonadal (hpg) mice exposed to estradiol for 6 weeks, additional to the proliferative response, they identified neutrophils in the stroma that migrate through the epithelium to the lumen where accumulated cellular debris, inflammatory cells and anuclear keratinized deposits where found. The hpg mice, deficient in pituitary gonadotropins and sex steroids, avoid the confounding effect of the androgen withdrawal and, thus, the inflammatory pathology must be a response of the tissue to estrogen [90].

The imprinting theory of prostate cancer hypothesises that a predisposition to develop prostate cancer occurs through estrogen-mediated embryonic events that in later life, "trigger" aberrant growth. The exposure of male rats or mice to high levels of estrogens during the neonatal period leads to permanent alterations in growth and function of the prostate gland and a reduced responsiveness to androgens during adulthood. This process, referred to as neonatal imprinting, is associated with an increased incidence of prostatic lesions with aging, which include extensive immune cell infiltrate and epithelial cell hyperplasia and severe dysplasia similar to high grade prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia [91]. In another study by Bianco et al., androgen receptor knock out mice were treated with diethyl stilboestrol (DES) in neonatal life, and they developed prostatic epithelial dysplasia and inflammatory cell infiltrates in the ventral and dorsolateral prostate lobes, upon aging. This may also link the imprinting theory with the inflammation theory [92]. Maternal exposure to pharmacological levels of DES has been shown to induce prostatic abnormalities in human offspring [93]. With regard to imprinting, different theories try to explain the phenomenon: one through enhanced AR expression; and others through findings of estrogenized prostate that has a thick layer of fibroblasts beneath the basement membrane and a continuous layer of basal epithelial cells between the basement membrane and the luminal cells, creating a physical barrier that impedes differentiation and inhibiting paracrine signalling between stroma and epithelium [93, 95].

21.6 Conclusion

Prostate carcinogenesis is complex. Epidemiologic and research studies have being trying to find the etiology of prostate cancer that appears multifactorial. Different factors have being associated to the carcinogenesis process: ethnicity, geographic area, diet, lifestyle; genetic and heritable factors. The environmental factors contribute to induce changes in the prostatic environment that may eventually lead to prostate cancer development. Hormonal and inflammation hypothesis, with studies demonstrating how they can induce Pc, are interesting models of the disease. Even hormonal and inflammation correlate when estrogenic inflammation of the prostate is demonstrated in some studies.

References

1. Jemal A, et al. Cancer Statistics. CA Cancer J Clin 2007 Jan–Feb; 57(1): 43–66.
2. Quinn M, Babb P. Patterns and trends in prostate cancer incidence, survival, prevalence and mortality. Part I: international comparisons. BJU Int 2002; 90(2) 162–73.
3. Uribe JF. Cáncer de próstata (Parte I). Urología Colombiana, XIV, April 2005; 1: 19–32.
4. Carter BS, Bova GS, Beaty TH, et al. Hereditary prostate cancer: epidemiologic and clinical features. J Urol 1993; 150:797–802.
5. Lichtenstein P, Holm NV, Verkasalo PK, Iliadou A, Kaprio J, Koskenvouo M, Pukkala E, Skytthe A, Hemminiki K. Enviromental and hereditable factors in the causation of cancer – analyses of cohorts of twins from Sweden, Denmark and Finland. N Engl J Med 2000; 343: 78–85.
6. Page WP, Braun MM, Partin AW, Caporaso N, Walsh P. Heredity and prostate cancer: a study of World War II veterans twins. Prostate 1997; 33: 240–5.
7. Steinberg GD, Carter BS, Beaty TH, Childs B, Walsh PC. Family history and the risk of prostate cancer. Prostate 1990; 17: 337–47.
8. Smith JR, Freije D, Carpten JD, et al. Major susceptibility locus for prostate cancer on chromosome 1 suggested by a genome-wide search. Science 1996; 274:1371–4.
9. Xu J, Zheng SL, Chang B., et al. Linkage of prostate cancer susceptibility loci to chromosome 1. Hum Genet 2001; 108: 335–45.

10. Carpten J, Nupponen N, Isaacs S, et al. Germline mutations in the ribonuclease L gene in families showing linkage with HPC1. Nat Genet 2002; 30: 181–4.
11. Deutsch E, Maggiorella L, Eschwege P, Bourhis J, Soria JC, Abdulkarim B. Environmental, genetic, and molecular features of prostate cancer. Lancet Oncol 2004 May; 5(5): 303–13.
12. Palapattu GS, Sutcliffe S, Bastian PJ, Platz EA, De Marzo AM, Isaacs WB, Nelson WG. Prostate carcinogenesis and inflammation: emerging insights. Carcinogenesis 2005 Jul; 26(7): 1170–81.
13. Zhou A, Paranjape P, Brown TL, et al. Interferon action and apoptosis are defective in mice devoid of 2′,5′-oligoadenylate-dependent RNaseL. EMBO J 1997; 16: 6355–63.
14. Xu J, Zheng SL, Komiya A, et al. Germline mutations and sequence variants of the macrophage scavenger receptor 1 gene are associated with prostate cancer risk. Nature Genet 2002; 32: 321–5.
15. Ishiguro T, Naito M, Yamamoto T, Hasegawa G, Gejyo F, Mitsuyama M, Suzuki H, Kodama T. Role of the macrophage scavenger receptors in response to Listeria monocytogenes infection in mice. Am J Pathol 2001; 158: 179–88.
16. Wang L, McDonnell SK, Cunningham JM, Hebbring S, Jacobsen SJ, Cerhan JR, Slager SL, Blute ML, Schaid DJ, Thibodeau SN. No association of germline alteration of MSR1 with prostate cancer risk. Nature Genet 2003; 35: 128–9.
17. Coussens LM, Werb Z. Inflammation and cancer. Nature 2002; 420: 860–7.
18. Dennis LK, Lynch CF, Tomer JC. Epidemiologic association between prostatitis and prostate cancer. Urology 2002; 60: 78–83.
19. Platz EA, De Marzo AM. Epidemiology of Inflammation and prostate cancer. J Urol 2004; 171: S36–S40.
20. Strickler H D, Goedert JJ. Sexual behavior and evidence for an infectious cause of prostate cancer. Epidemiol Rev 2001; 23: 144–51.
21. Samanta M, Harkins L, Klemm K, Britt W, Cobbs C S. High prevalence of human cytomegalovirus in prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia and prostatic carcinoma. J Urol 2003; 170: 998–1002.
22. De Marzo AM, Platz EA, Sutcliffe S, Xu J, Gronberg H, Drake CG, Nakai Y, Isaacs WB, Nelson WG. Inflammation in prostate carcinogenesis. Nat Rev Cancer 2007 Apr; 7(4): 256–69. Review.
23. De Marzo AM, Marchi VL, Epstein JI, Nelson WG. Proliferative inflammatory atrophy of the prostate: implications for prostatic carcinogenesis. Am J Pathol 1999; 155: 1985–92.
24. Van Leenders GJ, et al. Intermediate cells in human prostate epithelium are enriched in proliferative inflammatory atrophy. Am J Pathol 2003; 162: 1529–37.
25. Lin X, Tascilar M, Lee WH, et al. GSTP1 CpG island hypermetilation is responsible for the absence of GSTP1 expression in human prostate cancer cells. Am J Pathol 2001; 159: 1815–26.
26. Billis A. Prostatic atrophy: an autopsy study of a histologic mimic of adenocarcinoma. Mod Pathol 1998; 11: 47–54.
27. Putzi MJ, De Marzo AM. Morphological transitions between proliferative inflammatory atrophy and high-grade prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia. Urology 2000; 56: 828–32.
28. Tomas D, Kruslin B, Rogatsch H, Schäfer G, Belicza M, Mikuz G. Different types of atrophy in the prostate with and without adenocarcinoma. Eur Urol 2007 Jan; 51(1): 98–103.
29. Brooks JD, Weinstein M, Lin X, Sun Y, Pin SS, Bova, GS, Epstein JI, Isaacs WB, Nelson WG. CG island methylation changes near the GSTP1 gene in prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 1998; 7: 531–6.
30. Nelson CP, Kidd LC, Sauvageot J, et al. Protection against 2- hydroxyamino-1-methyl-6-phenylimidazo [4, 5-b] pyridine cytotoxicity and DNA adduct formation in human prostate by glutathione S-transferase P1. Cancer Res 2001; 61: 103–9.
31. Borowsky AD, et al. Inflammation and atrophy precede prostatic neoplasia in a PhIP-induced rat model. Neoplasia 2006; 8: 708–15.
32. Steadman DJ, Giuffrida D, Gelmann EP. DNA-binding sequence of the human prostate-specific homeodomain protein NKX3.1. Nucleic Acids Res 2000; 28: 2389–95.
33. Kim MJ, Cardiff RD, Desai N, Banach-Petrosky WA, Parsons R, Shen MM, Abate-Shen C. Cooperativity of Nkx3.1 and Pten loss of function in a mouse model of prostate carcinogenesis. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2002; 99: 2884–9.
34. Ornstein DK, Cinquanta M, Weiler S, Duray PH, Emmert-Buck MR, Vocke CD, Linehan WM, Ferretti JA. Expression studies and mutational analysis of the androgen regulated homeobox gene NKX3.1 in benign and malignant prostate epithelium. J Urol 2001; 165: 1329–34.
35. Voeller HJ, Augustus M, Madike V, Bova GS, Carter KC, Gelmann EP. Coding region of NKX3.1, a prostate-specific homeobox gene on 8p21, is not mutated in human prostate cancers. Cancer Res 1997; 57: 4455–9.
36. Bowen C, Bubendorf L, Voeller HJ, et al. Loss of NKX3.1expression in human prostate cancers correlates with tumor progression. Cancer Res 2000; 60: 6111–5.
37. Olinski R, Gackowski D, Foksinski M, Rozalski R, Roszkowski K, Jaruga P. Oxidative DNA damage: assessment of the role in carcinogenesis, atherosclerosis and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. Free Radic Biol Med 2002; 33: 192–200.
38. Dong X, Wang L, Taniguchi K, et al. Mutations in CHEK2 associated with prostate cancer risk. Am J Hum Genet 2003; 72: 270–80.
39. Ross RK, Bernstein L, Lobo RA, et al. 5α-Reductase activity and risk of prostate cancer among Japanese and US white and black males. Lancet 1992; 339: 887–9.
40. Vane JR, Bakhle YS, Botting RM. Cyclooxygenases 1 and 2. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 1998; 38: 97–120.
41. Hla T, Bishop-Bailey D, Liu CH, Schaefers HJ, Trifan OC. Cyclooxygenase-1 and -2 isoenzymes. Int J Biochem Cell Biol 1999; 31: 551–7.
42. Zha S, Yegnasubramanian V, Nelson WG, et al. Cyclooxygenases in cancer: Progress and perspective. Cancer Lett 2004; 215: 1–20.

43. Liu CH, Chang SH, Narko K, Trifan OC, Wu MT, Smith E, Haudenschild C, Lane TF, Hla T. Overexpression of cyclooxygenase-2 is sufficient to induce tumorigenesis in transgenic mice. J Biol Chem 2001; 276: 18563–9.
44. O'Neill GP, Ford-Hutchinson AW. Expression of mRNA for cyclooxygenase-1 and cyclooxygenase-2 in human tissues, FEBS Lett 1993; 330:156–60.
45. Gupta S, Srivastava M, Ahmad N, Bostwick DG, Mukhtar H. Over- expression of cyclooxygenase-2 in human prostate adenocarcinoma. Prostate 2000; 42: 73–8.
46. Yoshimura R, Sano H, Masuda C, Kawamura M, Tsubouchi Y, Chargui J, Yoshimura N, Hla T, Wada S. Expression of cyclooxygenase- 2 in prostate carcinoma, Cancer 2000; 89: 589–96.
47. Zha S, Gage WR, Sauvageot J, et al. Cyclooxygenase-2 is upregulated in proliferative inflammatory atrophy of the prostate, but not in prostate carcinoma. Cancer Res 2001; 61: 8617–23.
48. Dempke W, Rie C, Grothey A, Schmoll HJ. Cyclooxygenase-2: a novel target for cancer chemotherapy? J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 2001; 127: 411–7.
49. Nelson WG, DeMarzo AM, DeWeese TL. The molecular pathogenesis of prostate cancer: focus on the earliest steps. Eur Urol 2001; 39: 8–11.
50. Hussain T, Gupta S, Mukhtar H: Cyclooxygenase-2 and prostate carcinogenesis. Cancer Lett 2003; 191: 125–35.
51. Roberts RO, Jacobson DJ, Girman CJ, et al. A population-based study of daily nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug use and prostate cancer. Mayo Clin Proc 2002; 77:219.
52. Patel M I, Subbaramaiah K, et al. Celecoxib inhibits prostate cancer growth: evidence of a cyclooxygenase-2-independent mechanism. Clin Cancer Res 2005; 11(5) 1999–2007.
53. Graham DJ, Campen D, Hui R, et al. Risk of acute myocardial infarction and sudden cardiac death in patients treated with cyclo-oxygenase 2 selective and non-selective non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs: nested case-control study. Lancet 2005; 365: 475–81.
54. Levesque LE, Brophy JM, Zhang B. The risk for myocardial infarction with cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors: a population study of elderly adults. Ann Intern Med 2005; 142: 481–9.
55. Shaya FT, Blume SW, Blanchette CM, Weir MR, Mullins CD. Selective cyclooxygenase-2 inhibition and cardiovascular effects: an observational study of a Medicaid population. Arch Intern Med 2005;165:181–6.
56. Solomon DH, Schneeweiss S, Glynn RJ, et al. Relationship between selective cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors and acute myocardial infarction in older adults. Circulation 2004; 109: 2068–73.
57. Vanchieri, C. Vioxx withdrawal alarms cancer prevention researchers. J Natl Cancer Inst 2004; 96(23) 1734–5.
58. Imperato-McGinley J, Guerrero L, Gautier T, Peterson RE. Steroid 5a.- reductase deficiency in man: an inherited form of male pseudohermaphroditism. Science 1974; 186: 1213.
59. Edwards A, Hammond HA, Jin L, et al. Genetic variation at five trimeric and tetrameric tandem repeat loci in four human population groups. Genomics 1992; 12(2) 241–53.
60. Suzuki H, Ueda T, Ichikawa T, Ito H. Androgen receptor involvement in the progression of prostate cancer. Endocr Relat Cancer 2003; 10: 209–16.
61. Lange CA, Gioeli D, Hammes SR, Marker PC. Integration of rapid signaling events with steroid hormone receptor action in breast and prostate cancer. Annu Rev Physiol 2006; PMID: 17037979.
62. Chamberlain NL, Driver ED, Miesfeld RL. The length and location of CAG trinucleotide repeats in the androgen receptor N-terminal domain affect transactivation function. Nucleic Acids Res 1994; 22(15) 3181–6.
63. Balic I, Graham ST, Troyer DA, et al. Androgen receptor length polymorphism associated with prostate cancer risk in Hispanic men. J Urol 2002; 168(5) 2245–8.
64. Irvine RA, Yu MC, Ross RK, et al. The CAG and GGC microsatellites of the androgen receptor gene are in linkage disequilibrium in men with prostate cancer. Cancer Res 1995; 55(9):1937–40.
65. Zeegers MP, Kiemeney LA, Nieder AM, et al. How strong is the association between CAG and GGN repeat length polymorphisms in the androgen receptor gene and prostate cancer risk? Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2004; 13(11 Pt 1): 1765–71.
66. Giovannucci E, Stampfer M J, Krithivas K, Brown M, Dahl D, Brufsky A, et al. The CAG repeat within the androgen receptor gene and its relationship to prostate cancer. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1997;94: 3320–3.
67. Gilligan T, Manola J, Sartor O, et al. Absence of a correlation of androgen receptor gene CAG repeat length and prostate cancer risk in an African-American population. Clin Prostate Cancer 2004; 3(2) 98–103.
68. Platz EA, Leitzmann MF, Rifai N, et al. Sex steroid hormones and the androgen receptor gene CAG repeat and subsequent risk of prostate cancer in the prostate-specific antigen era. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2005; 14(5) 1262–9.
69. Kittles RA, Panguluri RK, et al. Cyp17 promoter variant associated with prostate cancer aggressiveness in African Americans. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2001; 10(9) 943–7.
70. Hall PF. Cytochrome P-450 C21scc: one enzyme with two actions: hydroxylase and lyase. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 1991; 40 (4–6): 527–32.
71. Antognelli C, Mearini L, et al. Association of CYP17, GSTP1, and PON1 polymorphisms with the risk of prostate cancer. Prostate 2005 ; 63(3): 240–51.
72. Madigan MP, Gao YT, et al. CYP17 polymorphisms in relation to risks of prostate cancer and benign prostatic hyperplasia: a population-based study in China. Int J Cancer 2003; 107(2) 271–5.
73. Ntais C, Polycarpou A, et al. Association of the CYP17 gene polymorphism with the risk of prostate cancer: a meta-analysis. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2003; 12(2) 120–6.
74. Jaffe JM, Malkowicz SB, et al. Association of SRD5A2 genotype and pathological characteristics of prostate tumors. Cancer Res 2000; 60(6) 1626–30.
75. Tong M, Ai JK, et al. Association between A49T polymorphism of SRD5A2 gene and risk of prostate cancer. Zhonghua Yi Xue Za Zhi 2005; 85(19) 1319–21.

76. Thompson IM, Goodman PJ, Tangen CM, et al. The influence of finasteride on the development of prostate cancer. N Engl J Med 2003; 349(3):215–24.
77. Gomella LG. Chemoprevention using dutasteride: the REDUCE trial. Curr Opin Urol 2005; 15(1) 29–32.
78. Carruba G. Estrogen and prostate cancer: An eclipsed truth in an androgen-dominated scenario. J Cell Biochem 2007; Nov 1;102(4);899–911.
79. Carruba G. Estrogens and mechanisms of prostate cancer progression. Ann NY Acad Sci 2006 Nov; 1089: 201–17.
80. Leav I, Merk FB, Kwan PW, Ho SM. Androgen-supported estrogen- enhanced epithelial proliferation in the prostates of intact Noble rats. Prostate 1989; 15(1) 23–40.
81. Wang Y, Hayward SW, Donjacour AA, et al. Sex hormone-induced carcinogenesis in Rb-deficient prostate tissue. Cancer Res 2000; 60: 6008–17.
82. Risbridger GP, Bianco JJ, Ellem SJ, McPherson SJ. Oestrogens and prostate cancer. Endocrine-Related Cancer 2003; 10: 187–91.
83. Krege JH, Hodgin JB, Couse JF, et al. Generation and reproductive phenotypes of mice lacking estrogen receptor beta. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1998; 95: 15677–82.
84. Bardin A, Boulle N, Lazennec G, et al. Loss of ER expression as a common step in estrogen-dependent tumor progression. Endocr Related Cancer 2004; 11: 537–51.
85. Fixemer T, Remberger K, Bonkhoff H. Differential expression of the estrogen receptor beta (ERb) in human prostate tissue, premalignant changes, and in primary, metastatic, and recurrent prostatic adenocarcinoma. Prostate 2003; 54: 79–87.
86. Risbridger GP, Ellem SJ, McPherson SJ. Estrogen action on the prostate gland: a critical mix of endocrine and paracrine signaling. J Mol Endocrinol 2007 Sept; 39(3): 183–8.
87. Mentor-Marcel R, Lamartiniere CA, Eltoum IA, Greenberg NM, Elgavish A. Dietary genistein improves survival and reduces expression of osteopontin in the prostate of transgenic mice with prostatic adenocarcinoma (TRAMP). J Nutr 2005; 135: 989–95.
88. Wang J, Eltoum IE, Lamartiniere CA. Genistein chemoprevention of prostate cancer in TRAMP mice. J Carcinog 2007 Mar 16; 6: 3.
89. Ellem SJ, Risbridger GP. Treating prostate cancer: a rationale for targeting local oestrogens. Nat Rev Cancer 2007; 7: 621–7.
90. Bianco JJ, Handelsman DJ, Pedersen JS, Risbridger GP. Direct response of the murine prostate gland and seminal vesicles to estradiol. Endocrinology 2002; 143: 4922–33.
91. Prins GS. Neonatal estrogen exposure induces lobe-specific alterations in adult rat prostate androgen receptor expression. Endocrinology 1992; 130: 3703–14.
92. Bianco JJ, McPherson SJ, Wang H, Prins GS, Risbridger GP. Transient neonatal estrogen exposure to estrogen deficient mice (Aromatase knockout) reduces prostate weight and induces inflammation in late life. Am J Pathol 2006; 168: 1869–78.
93. Santti R, Newbold RR, Makela S, Pylkkanen L, McLachlan, JA. Developmental estrogenization and prostatic neoplasia. Prostate 1994; 24: 67–78.
94. Naslund M, Coffey D. The differential effects of neonatal androgen, estrogen and progesterone on adult rat prostate growth. J Urol 1986; 136: 1136–40.
95. Prins GS, Birch L. The developmental pattern of androgen receptor expression in rat prostate lobes is altered after neonatal exposure to estrogen. Endocrinology 1995; 136: 1303–14.

Chapter 22

HPV in Cervical Carcinoma

Elizabeth Sagatys and Ardeshir Hakam

Contents

22.1 Introduction

When Papanicolaou described the diagnostic value of vaginal smears in the evaluation of carcinoma of the uterus in 1941, he estimated that the death rate for uterine cancers (cervical cancer included) to be approximately 26,000 per year [1]. That number has been reduced dramatically due to Papanicolaou's introduction of the cervical/vaginal smear. Today, approximately 11,000 women in the United States and 500,000 women worldwide are diagnosed with cervical cancer annually. Each year cervical cancer is responsible for more than 250,000 deaths worldwide and is the second most common cancer in women worldwide [2, 3]. In some locations, particularly Central America and Southern Africa, it is the most prevalent cancer in women [4].

E. Sagatys (✉)
Department of Pathology Moffitt Cancer Center and Research Institute, Tampa, FL, USA
e-mail: Elizabeth.Sagatys@moffitt.org

Human papillomavirus (HPV) has been strongly associated with the development of skin and mucosal carcinomas, particularly cervical carcinoma. In the course of this chapter, we will explore the HPV virus, its transmission, detection and role in cervical carcinogenesis.

22.2 Human Papillomavirus (HPV)

Human papillomavirus (HPV) is a member of the nonenveloped DNA papovavirus family. HPV is mainly transmitted by direct skin or genital contact. HPV DNA is double stranded and circular with approximately eight thousand bases. Within the genome are 9 important genes – 7 "early" genes (E genes) and 2 "late" genes (L genes) [5]. The E genes are transcribed early in the replication process and are involved in controlling DNA replication and transcription [5]. In contrast, the L genes are transcribed later in the replication process and encode proteins that form the intact viral capsid structures [5].

Of the E genes, three (E2, E6 and E7) have been shown to be involved in HPV integration. Studies have shown that E6 and E7 are conserved when incorporated into the host genome [6, 7]. E6 and E7 are involved in alterations of the cell cycle, while E2 normally acts as a suppressor gene for E6 and E7. However, when HPV is incorporated into the host genome, the E2 locus is broken [5]. The E6 product then binds and suppresses the activity of p53. This allows the cell to enter the S phase (DNA replication) [5]. There is also loss of normal G1 arrest for DNA repair. On the other hand, the E7 product binds to the retinoblastoma (Rb) suppressor gene product. This binding frees transcription promoter E2F

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis*, Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1_22, © Springer Science+Business Media B.V. 2010

to bind to DNA, which moves the cell through S phase [5]. Both E6 and E7 work simultaneously to disregulate the cell cycle; thereby promoting cellular transformation and subsequent uncontrolled growth (malignancy) [8, 9].

Currently there are about one hundred genetically distinct subtypes of HPV identified [10]. These subtypes have been divided into "high risk" and "low risk" subtypes according to their propensity to lead to high-grade lesions and invasive carcinoma. High-risk HPV subtype infections typically resolve spontaneously (>90%). However, they can lead to high-grade dysplasia or malignancy, but it usually takes 20–30 years for infection with HPV to result in invasive carcinoma [11–13]. Common high risk strains include HPV 16, 18, 31, 33, 35, 39, 45, 51, 52, 56, 58, 59, and 68 [10]. Of these, HPV 16 and 18 are the most prevalent [14]. Low risk HPV subtype infections are usually asymptomatic and most commonly cause benign lesions such as warts and condyloma acuminatum. Common low risk strains include HPV 6, 11, 42, 43, and 44 [11, 15].

HPV is transmitted by direct skin contact. Microtrauma allows the virus to initially reside in the basal epithelial cells [16]. As the epithelial cells differentiate and migrate toward the surface, HPV genes, particularly E6 and E7, are expressed and the cells begin to manifest the viral changes seen under microscopy. These changes include perinuclear vacuolization (koilocytosis) of the upper spinous layers. Mature virions are produced in the cells within the granular layer. As the cell move into the stratum corneum, the virus is shed [17].

22.3 Detection of HPV and Cervical Lesions

22.3.1 Papanicolaou (PAP) Smear

Since its introduction in the early 1940s, the Papanicolaou (PAP) smear has drastically reduced the death rate due to cervical cancer through early detection of dysplastic lesions. Normal superficial squamous cells have a nucleus the size of a lymphocyte with a large amount of cytoplasm. A progressive increase in the nuclear to cytoplasmic (N:C) ratio correlates with a progression from low to high-grade dysplasia. Smears that are designated as atypical squamous cells of undetermined significance (ASCUS) should be promptly followed with HPV testing in patients over 21 years of age [18]. The main goal of this testing is to identify high risk strains. There is no need to do HPV testing on high-grade lesions because they are nearly always associated with a high-risk HPV strain.

The American Society for Colposcopy and Cervical Pathology (ASCCP) recently released updated consensus guidelines for the pathologic classification of cervical lesions and for HPV testing. Cytologic samples should still be classified using the 2001 Bethesda System. For histologic specimens, a two-tiered system is recommended for precursor lesions: CIN1 and CIN2, 3. CIN 2 and 3 should be classified together except in adolescents, where every attempt at discriminating CIN2 from CIN3 should be made. CIN2 lesions in adolescents should be followed conservatively initially [19].

22.3.2 Immunohistochemistry

HPV can be detected using immunohistochemical methods. These stains are performed on formalin-fixed paraffin embedded tissues. The monoclonal or polyclonal antibodies are targeted at the L1 capsid protein for most known papilloma viruses.

Other immunohistochemical stains used in evaluating cervical lesions for HPV and dysplasia are Ki-67

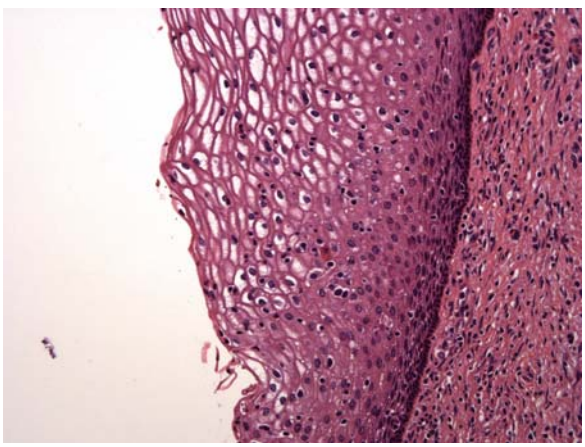


Fig. 22.1 Koilocytic atypia (HPV changes) involving cervical squamous mucosa, H&E stain

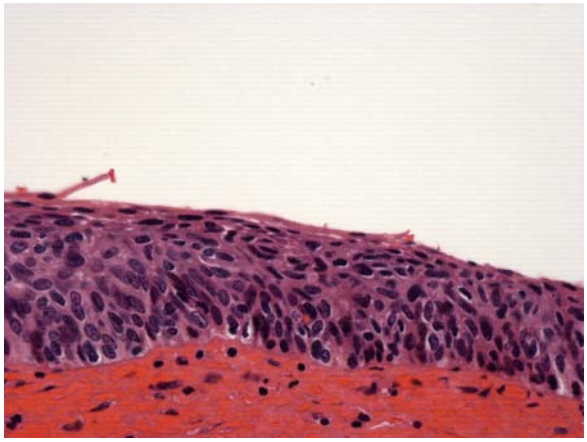


Fig. 22.2 Ki-67, the Koilocytes demonstrate nuclear staining

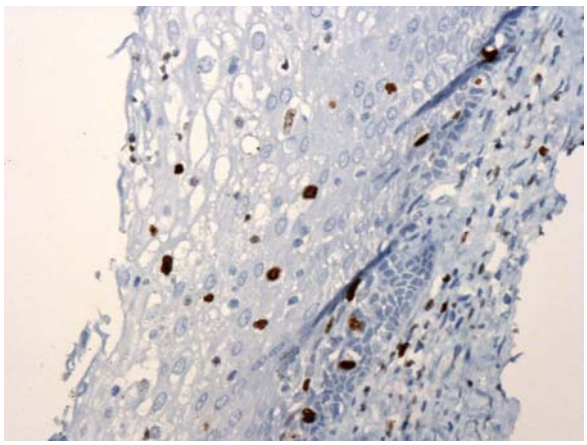


Fig. 22.3 Severe dysplasia of the cervix, H&E stain

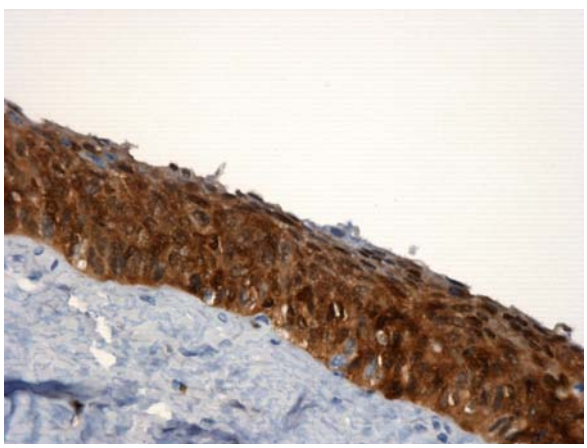


Fig. 22.4 P-16 staining of the dysplastic epithelium

(MIB1) (Figs. 22.1 and 22.2) and p16 (Figs. 22.3 and 22.4). The p16 immunohistochemical stain is directed toward p16, a cyclin-dependant kinase inhibitor that has been shown to positively correlated with HPV integration [20]. p16 is thought to be involved in the early events of HPV associated cervical carcinogenesis and could be useful in the early diagnosis of cervical cancer [21]. As such, p16 is used as a surrogate marker for HPV genome integration.

22.3.3 In Situ Hybridization (ISH) Assays

In situ hybridization (ISH) assays can be utilized to detect HPV DNA in tissue [22]. This technique localizes the HPV inside individual cells. The intensity of the signal is directly proportional to the HPV copy number present. Some authors contend that low copy numbers of HPV16 due to high level of viral integration may lead to false negatives [22]. ISH assays also preserves cell and tissue morphology, making correlation with associated histomorphology easier [23]. This process utilizes a flouorescin-labeled probe specific for the target HPV DNA and primary antibody. A secondary antibody binds with associated colorimetric indicator, allowing for identification under the microscope [24]. ISH assays allow for the detection of HPV DNA in tissue and liquid based PAP samples. It also has a high sensitivity (10–50 copies of target DNA per nucleus). The type of signal seen (confluent vs. punctate) demonstrates either episomal or integrated HPV DNA, respectively [25, 26].

Another HPV test currently used is the Hybrid Capture II test. This test utilizes an RNA probe cocktail to detect HPV. The cocktail detects HPV 16, 18, 31, 33, 35, 39, 45, 51, 52, 56, 58, 59, and 68 [27]. The DNA is released from the cells and denatured. The RNA probe cocktails are added and are allowed to hybridize with the target DNA. These hybrids are then bound to antibodies coating detection wells/tubes and detection antibodies are added. If there is successful binding, the detection antibodies release a chemiluminescent signal and the sample is positive for high risk HPV [28, 29].

Another detection method for HPV is the Linear Array HPV Genotyping Test from Roche Molecular Systems. This test uses a four step process: preparation of the specimen, PCR amplification, hybridization

with specific probes and colorimetric detection using hybrid strips to identify 37 highly prevalent strains of HPV [30]. These strains include low, intermediate and high risk strains: 6, 11, 16, 18, 26, 31, 33, 35, 39, 40, 42, 45, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 58, 59, 61, 62, 64, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 81, 82, 83, 84, IS39, and CP6108 [27].

HPV can also be detected using polymerase chain reaction (PCR). There are currently two types of probes utilized for HPV detection – general and type specific. The general probes target the more conserved regions of the L1 capsid gene [31–33]. The type specific probes target the more specific variations in E6 and E7 genes [34]. PCR is sensitive to about 10–200 copies of HPV DNA. However, currently it is predominantly used in the research setting. There are problems using PCR for general probes –as deletions in the L1 capsid gene can lead to false negatives [35].

22.4 Dysplasia and the Progression to Carcinoma

Cervical squamous intraepithelial lesions are divided into low grade and high-grade lesions. Low-grade lesions are predominantly transient and true neoplastic transformation only occurs with persistent infections in these cases. High-grade lesions result from integration of portions of the HPV genome into the host genome. The actions of E6 and E7 on p53 and Rb respectively lead to a loss of normal presynthesis repair mechanisms and uncontrolled DNA synthesis and cell proliferation with the host genes [4]. As the uncontrolled DNA synthesis continues, DNA mutations accumulate leading to dysplasia. It has been shown that the entire HPV genome is not present in high-grade lesions. Only a portion of the high risk HPV genome is incorporated into the host cell genome [5]. High-grade lesions show no evidence of koilocytic viral cytopathic effect or intact virions.

E6 and E7 oncoproteins alter the expression and function of p16INK4A, p21waf1 and p27KIP1 [36]. These are cyclin dependent kinase inhibitors (CDKI) that alter the expression of G1 cyclin dependent kinases [21]. Aberrations in these CKDI are associated with lower grade lesions (CIN1 and CIN2) [21]. When functioning normally, the CDKI prevent the progression from G1 to S phase [21]. P16INK4A has been shown to be increased, while p27KIP1 is decreased, following incorporation of HPV in the normal benign epithelium to progression to neoplastic epithelium [21]. Other studies have reported that p27KIP1 is actually increased in invasive squamous carcinoma of the cervix. This is believed to be associated with cdk2 and cyclin E binding and sequestration [21, 37].

Not only are CDKI linked with the development of cervical cancer, but cyclin D1 is as well. Bahnassy et al. found that cyclin D1 levels were upregulated in CIN3 and invasive squamous carcinoma of the cervix. Overexpression of cyclin D1 was seen in approximately 46.5% of invasive squamous carcinoma and 18.4% of CIN3 [21].

In addition, E6 and E7 oncoproteins have been shown to cause polyploidy quickly after their introduction into squamous epithelial cells. It is believed that this is due to deregulation of polo-like kinase 1 (Plk1) by the loss of p53 and the phosphorylation of Rb [38].

Recent studies have shown that the E7 gene has three conserved regions, CR1, CR2 and CR3. These regions are necessary for the virus' oncogenic activities [16]. E7 binds to Rb in both high and low risk strains. However, the binding of E7 in high risk strains is approximately 10-fold that of low risk strains [39]. After CR2 binds to the Rb gene, there is an exposure of two areas in CR3, which help potentiate the displacement of E2F from Rb [40]. The release of E2F leads to subsequent progression of the cell cycle, stimulation of proliferation of basal cells, and inhibition of cellular differentiation and death [41, 42].

Rb and p53 are not the only genes affected by HPV. Matrix metalloproteinase-2 (MMP-2) expression has been found to be upregulated in high grade CIN and squamous cell carcinoma (SCC) [43]. MMP-2 is type IV collagenase that cleaves collagen type IV and other extracellular membrane glycoproteins. Collagen type IV is a major component of the basement membrane. The level of activation of MMP-2 was also found to be increased in cervical carcinogenesis; thereby facilitating cervical invasion by in situ lesions [43].

Matrix metalloproteinase-9 (MMP-9) has also been linked to invasion by in situ cervical lesions [44]. Like MMP-2, MMP-9 acts to cleave type IV collagen and other basement membrane components including laminin-5. MMP-9 has been shown recently to be increased in patients with high grade CIN or SCC when compared to patients without cervical lesions [44].

This has clinical applications as MMP-9 and MMP-2 plasma levels can be measured and utilized as a testing method to separate those with significant lesions from those without [44].

22.5 Prevention and Therapy

Regular screening has markedly decreased the incidence of cervical carcinoma in the United States and worldwide. Recent attention has turned to prevention of cervical lesions through a vaccine. The development of the vaccine was met with many issues, both scientific and social [45–47]. Since cervical carcinoma has been linked to several of the known types of HPV a multivalent vaccine, targeting several different strains, would be necessary for better disease suppression. HPV 16, 18, 31 and 45 are the four most common strains associated with cervical carcinoma, linked to approximately 80% of cervical carcinoma in 22 countries [4]. Currently, vaccines the FDA approved cervical vaccine available in the United States includes HPV 6, 11, 16 and 18 [47]. With a reduction in cervical carcinomas associated with HPV 16 and 18 possible in this age of vaccination, continued cytologic cervical screening must still be performed. The suppression of the most common types of carcinogenic HPV may lead to an increased prevalence of other, currently less common, HPV strains. As such, future vaccines may require additions of these HPV types as the prevalence increases.

References

1. Papanicolaou GN, Traut HF. The diagnostic value of vaginal smears in carcinoma of the uterus. 1941. Arch Pathol Lab Med 1997;121(3):211–24.
2. National Cancer Institute. In: Surveillance epidemiology and end results www.seer.cancer.gov .; 2008.
3. Hoory T, Monie A, Gravitt P, et al. Molecular epidemiology of human papillomavirus. J Formos Med Assoc 2008;107(3):198–217.
4. Wells M, Ostor AG, Crum CP, et al. Epithelial Tumors. In: Tavassoli FA, Devilee P, editors. Tumors of the Breast and Female Genital Organs. Lyon: IARCPress; 2003. pp. 262–79.
5. Alani RM, Munger K. Human papillomaviruses and associated malignancies. J Clin Oncol 1998;16(1):330–7.
6. Schneider-Gadicke A, Schwarz E. Different human cervical carcinoma cell lines show similar transcription patterns of human papillomavirus type 18 early genes. Embo J 1986;5:2285–92.
7. Zur Hausen H. Viruses in human cancer. Science 1991;254:1167–72.
8. Munger K. Disruption of oncogene/tumor suppressor networks during human carcinogenesis. Cancer Invest 2002;20(1):71–81.
9. Munger K, Howley PM. Human papillomavirus immortalization and transformation functions. Virus Res 2002;89(2):213–28.
10. Fontaine V, Mascaux C, Weyn C, et al. Evaluation of combined general primer-mediated PCR sequencing and type-specific PCR strategies for determination of human papillomavirus genotypes in cervical cell specimens. J Clin Microbiol 2007;45(3):928–34.
11. zur Hausen H. Papillomavirus infections – a major cause of human cancers. Biochem Biophys Acta 1996;1288(2): F55–78.
12. Walboomers JM, Jacobs MV, Manos MM, et al. Human papillomavirus is a necessary cause of invasive cervical cancer worldwide. J Pathol 1999;189:12–9.
13. Franco E, Rohan TE, Villa LL. Epidemiologic evidence and human papillomavirus infection as a necessary cause of cervical cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst Monogr 1999;91:506–11.
14. Munoz N, Bosch FX, de Sanjose S, et al. Epidemiologic classification of human papillomavirus types associated with cervical cancer. N Engl J Med 2003;348(6):518–27.
15. Meisels A, Fortin R. Condylomatous lesions of the cervix and vagina. I. Cytologic patterns. Acta Cytol 1976;20(6):505–9.
16. Wise-Draper TM, Wells SI. Papillomavirus E6 and E7 proteins and their cellular targets. Front Biosci 2008; 13:1003–17.
17. Burd EM. Human papillomavirus and cervical cancer. Clin Microbiol Rev 2003;16(1):1–17.
18. NCCN. Cervical Cancer Screening. In: Practice Guidelines in Oncology. 2008.
19. Darragh TM, Colgan TJ. ASCCP ′06 Consensus Guidelines – What's New and Different? CAP Today 2007(93):93–8.
20. Van Niekerk D, Guillaud M, Matisic J, et al. p16 and MIB1 improve the sensitivity and specificity of the diagnosis of high grade squamous intraepithelial lesions: methodological issues in a report of 447 biopsies with consensus diagnosis and HPV HCII testing. Gynecol Oncol 2007;107(1 Suppl 1):S233–40.
21. Bahnassy AA, Zekri AR, Alam El-Din HM, et al. The role of cyclins and cyclins inhibitors in the multistep process of HPV-associated cervical carcinoma. J Egypt Natl Canc Inst 2006;18(4):292–302.
22. Guo M, Gong Y, Deavers M, et al. Evaluation of commercialized in situ hybridization assay for detecting human papillomavirus DNA in tissue specimens from patients with cervical intraepithelial neoplasia and cervical carcinoma. J Clin Microbiol 2008;46(1):274–80.
23. Guo M, Gong Y, Deavers M, et al. Evaluation of a commercialized in situ hybridization assay for detecting human papillomavirus DNA in tissue specimens from patients with cervical intraepithelial neoplasia and cervical carcinoma. J Clin Microbiol 2008;46(1):274–80.
24. Brigati DJ, Myerson D, Leary JJ, et al. Detection of viral genomes in cultured cells and paraffin-embedded

tissue sections using biotin-labeled hybridization probes. Virology 1983;126(1):32–50.
25. Cooper K, Herrington CS, Strickland JE, et al. Episomal and integrated human papillomavirus in cervical neoplasia shown by non-isotopic in situ hybridization. J Clin Pathol 1991;44:990–6.
26. Evans MF, Mount SL, Beatty BG, et al. Biotinyltyramide-based in situ hybridization signal patterns distinguish human papillomavirus type and grade of cervical intraepithelial neoplasia. Mod Pathol 2002;15:1339–47.
27. Monsonego J, Pollini G, Evrard MJ, et al. Detection of human papillomavirus genotypes among high-risk women: a comparison of hybrid capture and linear array tests. Sexually Transmitted Diseases 2008;35(5):521–7.
28. Lorinez AT, Richart RM. Human papillomavirus DNA testing as an adjunct to cytology in cervical screening programs. Arch Pathol Lab Med 2003;127:959–68.
29. Howard M, Sellors J, Kaczorowski J, et al. Optimal cut-off of the hybrid capture II human papillomavirus test for self-collected vaginal, vulvar, and urine specimens in a colposcopy referral population. J Low Genit Tract Dis 2004;8:33–7.
30. Stevens MP, Garland SM, Tabrizi S. Human papillomavirus genotyping using modified linear array detection protocol. J Virol Methods 2006;135:124–6.
31. Manos MM, Ting Y, Wright DK, et al. The use of polymerase chain reaction amplification for the detection of genital human papillomaviruses. Cancer Cells 1989;7: 209–14.
32. Yoshikawa H, Kawana T, Kitagawa K, et al. Amplification and typing of multiple cervical cancer-associated human papillomavirus DNAs using a single pair of primers. Int J Cancer 1990;45:990–2.
33. Snijders PJF, Van den Brule AJ, Schrijnemakers HF, et al. The use of general primers in the polymerase chain reaction permits the detection of a broad spectrum of human papillomavirus genotypes J Gen Virol 1990;71:173–81.
34. Resnick RM, Cornelissen MTE, Wright DK, et al. Detection and typing of human papillomavirus in archival cervical cancer specimens by DNA amplification with consensus primers. J Natl Cancer Inst 1990;82:1477–84.
35. Husnjak K, Grce M, Magdic L, et al. Comparison of five different polymerase chain reaction methods for detection of human papillomavirus in cervical cell specimens. J Virol Methods 2000;88:125–34.
36. Mishina T, Dosaka-Akita H, Hommura F, et al. Cyclin E expression, a potential prognostic marker for non-small cell lung cancers. Clin Cancer Res 2000;6(1):11–6.
37. Shiozawa T, Shiohara S, Kanai M, et al. Expression of the cell cycle regulator p27(Kip1) in normal squamous epithelium, cervical intraepithelial neoplasia, and invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the uterine cervix. Immunohistochemistry and functional aspects of p27(Kip1). Cancer 2001;92(12):3005–11.
38. Incassati A, Patel D, McCance DJ. Induction of tetraploidy through loss of p53 and upregulation of Plk1 by human papillomavirus type-16 E6. Oncogene 2006;25(17): 2444–51.
39. Munger K, Scheffner M, Huibregtse JM, et al. Interactions of HPV E6 and E7 oncoproteins with tumour suppressor gene products. Cancer Surv 1992;12: 197–217.
40. Gonzalez SL, Stremlau M, He X, et al. Degradation of the retinoblastoma tumor suppressor by the human papillomavirus type 16 E7 oncoprotein is important for functional inactivation and is separable from proteasomal degradation of E7. J Virol 2001;75(16): 7583–91.
41. Knudsen ES, Knudsen KE. Retinoblastoma tumor suppressor: where cancer meets the cell cycle. Exp Biol Med (Maywood) 2006;231(7):1271–81.
42. Ruiz S, Santos M, Segrelles C, et al. Unique and overlapping functions of pRb and p107 in the control of proliferation and differentiation in epidermis. Development 2004;131(11):2737–48.
43. Tee YT, Han CP, Ko JL, et al. Evaluation of matrix metalloproteinase 2 expression in cervical carcinogenesis using tissue array and integrated optical density for immunoreactivity. Reprod Sci 2007;14(7):719–26.
44. Yang SF, Wang PH, Lin LY, et al. A significant elevation of plasma level of matrix metalloproteinase-9 in patients with high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia and early squamous cell carcinoma of the uterine cervix. Reprod Sci 2007;14(7):710–8.
45. Kim JJ, Goldie SJ. Health and economic implications of HPV vaccination in the United States. N Engl J Med 2008;359(8):821–32.
46. Rosenthal SL, Rupp R, Zimet GD, et al. Uptake of HPV vaccine: demographics, sexual history and values, parenting style, and vaccine attitudes. J Adolesc Health 2008;43(3):239–45.
47. Braaten KP, Laufer MR. Human Papillomavirus (HPV), HPV-Related Disease, and the HPV Vaccine. Rev Obstet Gynecol 2008;1(1):2–10.

Index

D. Coppola (ed.), *Mechanisms of Oncogenesis,* Cancer Growth and Progression 12,
DOI 10.1007/978-90-481-3725-1,